



Dataverse Documentation

Release 5.12.1

Dataverse Team

Jan 17, 2023

CONTENTS

1 User Guide	3
1.1 Account Creation + Management	3
1.2 Finding and Using Data	10
1.3 Dataverse Collection Management	16
1.4 Dataset + File Management	27
1.5 Tabular Data File Ingest	53
1.6 Appendix	61
2 Admin Guide	63
2.1 Dashboard	63
2.2 External Tools	64
2.3 Managing Harvesting Clients	68
2.4 Managing Harvesting Server and Sets	69
2.5 Metadata Customization	72
2.6 Metadata Export	82
2.7 Dataverse Installation Application Timers	84
2.8 Make Data Count	86
2.9 Integrations	91
2.10 User Administration	96
2.11 Managing Datasets and Dataverse Collections	99
2.12 Solr Search Index	105
2.13 IP Groups	107
2.14 Mail Domain Groups	108
2.15 Monitoring	111
2.16 Reporting Tools and Common Queries	115
2.17 Maintenance	115
2.18 Backups	115
2.19 Troubleshooting	116
3 API Guide	123
3.1 Introduction	123
3.2 Getting Started with APIs	128
3.3 API Tokens and Authentication	132
3.4 Search API	133
3.5 Data Access API	149
3.6 Native API	157
3.7 Metrics API	250
3.8 SWORD API	260
3.9 Client Libraries	268
3.10 Building External Tools	270

3.11	Dataset Curation Label API	278
3.12	Linked Data Notification API	280
3.13	Apps	281
3.14	Frequently Asked Questions	285
4	Installation Guide	289
4.1	Introduction	289
4.2	Preparation	291
4.3	Prerequisites	294
4.4	Installation	305
4.5	Configuration	312
4.6	Upgrading	390
4.7	Shibboleth	390
4.8	OAuth Login Options	405
4.9	OpenID Connect Login Options	409
4.10	External Tools	410
4.11	Advanced Installation	411
5	Developer Guide	415
5.1	Introduction	415
5.2	Development Environment	417
5.3	Windows Development	422
5.4	Tips	424
5.5	Troubleshooting	430
5.6	Version Control	433
5.7	SQL Upgrade Scripts	438
5.8	Testing	440
5.9	Writing Documentation	453
5.10	Security	456
5.11	Dependency Management	457
5.12	Debugging	465
5.13	Coding Style	466
5.14	Consuming Configuration	470
5.15	Deployment	472
5.16	Docker, Kubernetes, and Containers	476
5.17	Making Releases	476
5.18	Tools	481
5.19	Universal Numerical Fingerprint (UNF)	487
5.20	Make Data Count	494
5.21	Shibboleth, OAuth and OIDC	497
5.22	Geospatial Data	499
5.23	SELinux	501
5.24	Big Data Support	504
5.25	Auxiliary File Support	514
5.26	Direct DataFile Upload/Replace API	516
5.27	Dataset Semantic Metadata API	522
5.28	Dataset Migration API	525
5.29	Workflows	526
5.30	Font Custom	531
6	Container Guide	535
6.1	Application Base Image	535
7	Style Guide	541
7.1	Foundations	541

7.2	Patterns	546
7.3	Text	556
8	How the Guides Are Organized	557
9	Other Resources	559

These documentation guides are for the 5.12.1 version of Dataverse. To find guides belonging to previous versions, guides_versions has a list of all available versions.

**CHAPTER
ONE**

USER GUIDE

Contents:

1.1 Account Creation + Management

Contents:

- *Account Information*
 - *Account Log In Options*
 - *Create Account*
 - *Edit Account*
 - *Convert Account*
 - *Reset Account Password*
- *Remote Authentication*
 - *Institutional Log In*
 - * *Create a Dataverse installation account using Institutional Log In*
 - * *Convert your Dataverse installation account to use your Institutional Log In*
 - * *Convert your Dataverse installation account away from your Institutional Log In*
 - *ORCID Log In*
 - * *Create a Dataverse installation account using ORCID*
 - * *Convert your Dataverse installation account to use ORCID for log in*
 - * *Convert your Dataverse installation account away from ORCID for log in*
 - *Microsoft Azure AD, GitHub, and Google Log In*
- *My Data*
- *Notifications*
- *API Token*
 - *What APIs Are and Why They Are Useful*
 - *How Your API Token Is Like a Password*

- [*How to Create Your API Token*](#)
- [*How to Recreate Your API Token*](#)
- [*Additional Information about API Tokens and Dataverse Software APIs*](#)

1.1.1 Account Information

As a registered user, you can:

- Create your own Dataverse collection, if permitted, and customize it.
- Add datasets to Dataverse collections, if permitted.
- Contribute to existing datasets, if permitted.
- Request access to restricted files, if permitted.

Account Log In Options

The Dataverse installation has been configured for one or more of the following log in options:

- Username/Email and Password
- Institutional Log In
- ORCID
- Microsoft Azure AD
- GitHub
- Google

Please note that once you create your Dataverse installation account, it will be associated with only one of the log in options above.

The Institutional Log In, ORCID, Microsoft, GitHub, and Google options are described in more detail below under “Remote Authentication.”

Create Account

To create a Dataverse installation account with the Username/Email log in option, use the “Sign Up” page. Fill out the fields, and then click the ‘Create Account’ button. Please note that the Username field does not support email addresses but will allow the following characters: a-Z, 0-9, _ (underscores), - (hyphens), and . (periods).

To create a Dataverse installation account associated with the log in option for your institution, ORCID, GitHub, or Google, use the “Log In” page and select one of the authentication providers. See the “Remote Authentication” section below for details.

Edit Account

1. To edit your account after you have logged in, click on your account name in the header on the right hand side and click on Account Information.
2. On the top right of your account page, click on the “Edit Account” button and from there you can select to edit either your Account Information or your Account Password.
3. Select “Save Changes” when you are done.

Please note that you cannot edit your account information within the Dataverse installation if you use the Institutional Log In option. Instead, you should contact your institution to change your name, email, etc. Once the change is made by your institution, it will be reflected in the Dataverse installation the next time you log in. Users of the Institutional Log In option are not required to verify their email address because the institution providing the email address is trusted.

Convert Account

If more than one log in option is available, you can convert from one to another and use the new option from now on.

If you are converting from the Email/Username log in option you will need to have your password ready to complete the conversion process. Click Log In, select the new log in option, and go through the log in process. When you return to the Dataverse installation, look for an option allowing you to convert and enter your password to complete the conversion. The section on Remote Authentication below has more specific information on converting to Institutional Log In, ORCID, GitHub, and Google.

If you need to perform any other conversion (i.e. from Google to GitHub), use the Support link at the top of the page for assistance.

Reset Account Password

Only Dataverse installation accounts using the Username/Email log in option have an associated password stored (securely!) in the Dataverse installation. If you cannot remember this password, click on Log In in the top right corner of any page and click the “Forgot Password?” link below where you would enter your username/email and password. Enter your email address and click “Submit Password Request” to receive an email with a link to reset your password.

Please note that if you have forgotten your username, you can use this same process to receive your username in an email.

1.1.2 Remote Authentication

Too many passwords? You can set up your Dataverse installation account to use log in credentials from one of the following remote authentication providers. This way, you can log in using your existing credentials from another service.

Institutional Log In

Institutional log in allows you to use your log in information for your university (e.g. HarvardKey at Harvard) to log in to your Dataverse installation account.

Create a Dataverse installation account using Institutional Log In

1. Click the “Log In” link in the navbar.
2. Select the “Your Institution” button under the “Other options” header
3. Using the dropdown menu, select your institution then click the Continue button to go to your institution’s log in page.
4. After you put in your institutional credentials successfully, you will be brought back to the Dataverse installation to confirm your account information, and click “Create Account”.
5. A username has been selected for you. You won’t use this username to log in but it will appear next to your name when other users search for you to assign permissions within the system. To see what your username is, click on your name in the top right corner and click Account Information.

If you do not find your institution listed, you will need to request that it is added to the Research & Scholarship category of InCommon. Contact support for assistance on how to get this process started with the identity provider support team at your institution.

Convert your Dataverse installation account to use your Institutional Log In

If you already have a Dataverse installation account associated with the Username/Email log in option, but you want to convert it to use your institutional log in, you can easily do so as long as your account uses an email address from that institution.

1. Go to the Account Information page to confirm that your account email address is the same as your institutional email address. If not, you will need to update your Dataverse installation account to make them match.
2. Log out of the Dataverse installation.
3. Click the “Log In” link in the navbar.
4. Select the “Your Institution” button under the “Other options” header.
5. Using the dropdown menu, select your institution then click the Continue button to go to your institution’s log in page.
6. After you put in your institutional credentials successfully, you will be brought back to the Dataverse installation to confirm your account information.
7. Enter your current password for your Dataverse installation account and click “Convert Account”.
8. Now you have finished converting your Dataverse installation account to use your institutional log in.

Note that you cannot go through this conversion process if your Dataverse installation account associated with the Username/Email log in option has been deactivated.

Convert your Dataverse installation account away from your Institutional Log In

If you are leaving your institution and need to convert your Dataverse installation account to the Dataverse Username/Email log in option, you will need to contact support for the Dataverse installation you are using. On your account page, there is a link that will open a popup form to contact support for assistance.

ORCID Log In

You can set up your Dataverse installation account to allow you to log in using your ORCID credentials. ORCID® is an independent non-profit effort to provide an open registry of unique researcher identifiers and open services to link research activities and organizations to these identifiers. Learn more at orcid.org.

Create a Dataverse installation account using ORCID

1. Click the “Log In” link in the navbar.
2. Click the “ORCID” button under the “Other options” header.
3. Click the “Log In with ORCID” button to go to the ORCID website.
4. If you do not already have an ORCID account, you can create one on this page. If you already have an ORCID account, click on “Sign in” and then enter your login under the “Personal account” tab.
5. After you put in your ORCID credentials successfully, you will be brought back to Dataverse installation to confirm the creation of your Dataverse installation account. If your ORCID account’s privacy settings permit it, the email address you’ve linked to your ORCID account will be suggested to you as an option. You can use this email if you like, or you can use any other email you might wish. If you have entered employment information within your ORCID account, the name of your employer will be suggested for the “Affiliation” field.

Convert your Dataverse installation account to use ORCID for log in

If you already have a Dataverse installation account associated with the Username/Email log in option, but you want to convert it to use ORCID for log in, follow these steps:

1. Log out of the Dataverse installation.
2. Click the “Log In” link in the navbar.
3. Click the “ORCID” button under the “Other options” header.
4. Click the “Log In with ORCID” button to go to the ORCID website.
5. If you do not already have an ORCID account, you can create one on this page. If you already have an ORCID account, click on “Sign in” and then enter your login under the “Personal account” tab.
6. After you put in your ORCID credentials successfully, you will be brought back to the Dataverse installation. Click the “convert your account” link.
7. Enter your username and password for your Dataverse installation account and click “Convert Account”.
8. Now you have finished converting your Dataverse installation account to use ORCID for log in.

Note that you cannot go through this conversion process if your Dataverse installation account associated with the Username/Email log in option has been deactivated.

Convert your Dataverse installation account away from ORCID for log in

If you don't want to log in to the Dataverse installation using ORCID any more, you will want to convert your Dataverse installation account to the Dataverse installation Username/Email log in option. To do this, you will need to contact support for the Dataverse installation you are using. On your account page, there is a link that will open a popup form to contact support for assistance.

Microsoft Azure AD, GitHub, and Google Log In

You can also convert your Dataverse installation account to use authentication provided by GitHub, Microsoft, or Google. These options may be found in the “Other options” section of the log in page, and function similarly to how ORCID is outlined above. If you would like to convert your account away from using one of these services for log in, then you can follow the same steps as listed above for converting away from the ORCID log in.

1.1.3 My Data

The My Data section of your account page displays a listing of all the Dataverse collections, datasets, and files you have either created, uploaded or that you have a role assigned on. You are able to filter through all the Dataverse collections, datasets, and files listed on your My Data page using the filter box. You may also use the facets on the left side to only view a specific Publication Status or Role.

Note: If you see unexpected Dataverse collections or datasets in your My Data page, it might be because someone has assigned your account a role on those Dataverse collections or datasets. For example, some institutions automatically assign the “File Downloader” role on their datasets to all accounts using their institutional login.

You can use the Add Data button to create a new Dataverse collection or dataset. By default, the new Dataverse collection or dataset will be created in the root Dataverse collection, but from the create form you can use the Host Dataverse collection dropdown menu to choose a different Dataverse collection, for which you have the proper access privileges. However, you will not be able to change this selection after you create your Dataverse collection or dataset.

1.1.4 Notifications

Notifications appear in the notifications tab on your account page and are also displayed as a number next to your account name. You also receive notifications via email.

If your admin has enabled the option to change the notification settings, you will find an overview of the notification and email settings in the notifications tab. There, you can select which notifications and/or emails you wish to receive. If certain notification or email options are greyed out, you can't change the setting for this notification because the admin has set these as never to be muted by the user. You control the in-app and the email notifications separately in the two lists.

You will typically receive a notification or email when:

- You've created your account.
- You've created a Dataverse collection or added a dataset.
- Another Dataverse installation user has requested access to restricted files in a dataset that you published. (If you submitted your dataset for review, and it was published by a curator, the curators of the Dataverse collection that contains your dataset will get a notification about requests to access your restricted files.)
- A file in one of your datasets has finished the ingest process.

There are other notification types that you can receive, e.g., notification on granted roles, API key generation, etc. These types of notifications are less common and are not described here. Some other notifications are limited to specific roles. For example, if the installation has a curation workflow, reviewers get notified when a new dataset is submitted for review.

Notifications will only be emailed once, even if you haven't read the in-app notification.

It's possible to manage notifications via API. See [Notifications](#) in the API Guide.

1.1.5 API Token

What APIs Are and Why They Are Useful

API stands for “Application Programming Interface” and the Dataverse Software APIs allow you to take advantage of integrations with other software that may have been set up by admins of your Dataverse installation. See the [External Tools](#) and [Integrations](#) sections of the Admin Guide for examples of software that is commonly integrated with a Dataverse installation.

Additionally, if you are willing to write a little code (or find someone to write it for you), APIs provide a way to automate parts of your workflow. See the [Getting Started with APIs](#) section of the API Guide for details.

How Your API Token Is Like a Password

In many cases, such as when depositing data, an API Token is required to interact with Dataverse Software APIs. The word “token” indicates a series of letters and numbers such as c6527048-5bdc-48b0-a1d5-ed1b62c8113b. Anyone who has your API Token can add and delete data as you so you should treat it with the same care as a password.

How to Create Your API Token

To create your API token, click on your account name in the navbar, then select “API Token” from the dropdown menu. In this tab, click “Create Token”.

How to Recreate Your API Token

If your API Token becomes compromised or has expired, click on your account name in the navbar, then select “API Token” from the dropdown menu. In this tab, click “Recreate Token”.

Additional Information about API Tokens and Dataverse Software APIs

The Dataverse Software APIs are documented in the [API Guide](#) but the following sections may be of particular interest:

- [Getting Started with APIs](#)
- [API Tokens and Authentication](#)
- [Frequently Asked Questions](#)

1.2 Finding and Using Data

Contents:

- *Finding Data*
 - *Basic Search*
 - * *Sorting and Viewing Search Results*
 - *Advanced Search*
 - *Geospatial Search*
 - *Browsing a Dataverse Installation*
 - *Saved Search*
- *Using Data*
 - *View Dataverse Collections + Datasets*
 - *View Files*
 - *File Search within Datasets*
 - *Tree View*
 - *Cite Data*
 - *Download Files*
 - * *Tabular Data*
 - * *Downloading via URL*
 - * *Downloading a Dataverse File Package via URL*
 - * *Downloading a Dataverse File Package via rsync*
 - *Explore Data*
 - *Exploratory Data Analysis Using Differentially Private Metadata (Experimental)*

1.2.1 Finding Data

Without logging in, users can browse a Dataverse installation and search for Dataverse collections, datasets, and files, view dataset descriptions and files for published datasets, and subset, analyze, and visualize data for published (restricted & not restricted) data files. To view an unpublished Dataverse collection, dataset, or file, a user will need to be given permission from that Dataverse installation's administrator to access it.

A user can search within a specific Dataverse collection for the Dataverse collections, datasets, and files it contains by using the search bar and facets displayed on that Dataverse collection's page.

Basic Search

You can search the entire contents of the Dataverse installation, including Dataverse collections, datasets, and files. You can access the search by clicking the “Search” button in the header of every page. The search bar accepts search terms, queries, or exact phrases (in quotations).

Sorting and Viewing Search Results

Facets: to the left of the search results, there are several facets a user can click on to narrow the number of results displayed.

- Choosing a facet: to choose a facet to narrow your results by, click on that facet.
- Removing a facet: A chosen facet can be removed by clicking on the X on it, either in the facets panel to the left, or above the results.
- Viewing more or fewer facets: Each category in the facets panel lists the top 5 most common facets from that category. To view more, click on “More...” in the bottom right of that category. Once you’ve chosen to see more, an option to view less will appear in the bottom left of the facet.

Result cards: after entering a search term or query, result cards that match your term or query appear underneath the search bar and to the right of the facets.

- Relevancy of results: each result card shows which metadata fields match the search query or term you entered into the search bar, with the matching term or query bolded. If the search term or query was found in the title or name of the Dataverse collection, dataset, or file, the search term or query will be bolded within it.

Other basic search features:

- Sorting results: search results can be sorted by name (A-Z or Z-A), by date (newest or oldest), or by relevancy of results. The sort button can be found above the search results, in the top right.
- Bookmarkable URLs: search URLs can be copied and sent to a fellow researcher, or can be bookmarked for future sessions.

Advanced Search

To perform an advanced search, click the “Advanced Search” link next to the search bar. There you will have the ability to enter search terms for Dataverse collections, dataset metadata (citation and domain-specific), and file-level metadata. If you are searching for tabular data files you can also search at the variable level for name and label. To find out more about what each field searches, hover over the field name for a detailed description of the field.

Geospatial Search

Geospatial search is available from the [Search API](#) (look for “geo” parameters). The metadata fields that are geospatially indexed are “West Longitude”, “East Longitude”, “North Latitude”, and “South Latitude” from the “Geographic Bounding Box” field in the “Geospatial Metadata” block.

Browsing a Dataverse Installation

In a Dataverse installation, browsing is the default view when a user hasn't begun a search on the root Dataverse collection page or on a specific Dataverse collection's page. When browsing, only Dataverse collections and datasets appear in the results list and the results can be sorted by Name (A-Z or Z-A) and by Newest or Oldest. You can toggle the "Files" facet on the left to include files in the results list.

Saved Search

Saved Search is currently an experimental feature only available to superusers. Please see [Saved Search](#) in the API Guide for more information.

1.2.2 Using Data

View Dataverse Collections + Datasets

After performing a search and finding the Dataverse collection or dataset you are looking for, click on the name of the Dataverse collection or dataset or on the thumbnail image to be taken to the page for that Dataverse collection or dataset. Once on a Dataverse collection page, you can view the Dataverse collections, datasets, and files within that Dataverse collection.

Once on a dataset page, you will see the title, citation, description, and several other fields, as well as a button to email the dataset contact and a button to share the dataset on social media. Below that information, the files, metadata, terms of use, and version information for the dataset are available.

View Files

Files in a Dataverse installation each have their own landing page that can be reached through the search results or through the Files table on their parent dataset's page. The dataset page and file page offer much the same functionality in terms of viewing and editing files, with a few small exceptions.

- In installations that have enabled support for persistent identifiers (PIPs) at the file level, the file page includes the file's DOI or handle, which can be found in the file citation and also under the Metadata tab.
- Previewers for several common file types are available and can be added by installation administrators.
- The file page's Versions tab gives you a version history that is more focused on the individual file rather than the dataset as a whole.

File Search within Datasets

Datasets containing multiple files offer a file search function. On the Dataset page, under the Files tab, you'll see a search bar you can use to locate an individual file. It searches within the filename and file description. Performing a search will filter the file table to list only files matching your search. After you perform a search, if you'd like to return to the full list of files, just perform an empty search.

Under the search bar, you'll see file search facets you can use to filter the dataset's files by file type, access level, and file tags (see the example below).

tree*

Filter by

File Type: All ▾ Access: All ▾ File Tag: All ▾

All	
Image (2)	g nage - 26.1 KB - May 14, 2019 - 0 Downloads ce332f38cabad13fc74f0619a4437e9ecd260204
Audio (1)	ation
Document (1)	ok.pdf PDF - 50.5 KB - May 14, 2019 - 0 Downloads SHA-1: 32ab0d27cc5444885dd817a2156fa2523658abd3
Tabular Data (1)	Documentation
Text (1)	treeinfo.txt Plain Text - 56 B - May 14, 2019 - 0 Downloads SHA-1: 32e66f4013cd1290d4323e1d234b7ea51d0ee25a
	Documentation
	trees.jpg JPEG Image - 106.7 KB - May 14, 2019 - 0 Downloads SHA-1: aff9ed2e3f888ce1c3738b1b2dda2888a762d230
	Illustration
	treessound.mp3 audio/mpeg - 81 B - May 14, 2019 - 0 Downloads SHA-1: d83ae761d796991b6d50faf79fbcd80a9e6b2a
	Soundtrack
	treestata.tab Tabular Data - 4 B - May 14, 2019 - 0 Downloads 1 Variables, 1 Observations - UNF:6:kA2n0P2XnO2MxvaXKfEUAg==
	Data

(To provide these search facets, we rely on the Solr search engine. Only the latest published version and any draft version of each dataset are indexed in Solr. Because of that, facets cannot be offered for older versions of a dataset.)

Tree View

Files can be organized in one or more folders (directories) within a dataset. If the folder structure is defined, the Dataset Page will present an option for switching between the traditional table view, and the tree-like view showing folder and file hierarchy, as in the example below:

Change View

Table Tree

- codebooks
 - codebook.pdf (50.5 KB)
 - format.txt (1.9 KB)
- data
 - aggregate
 - aggregates.tab (40 B)
 - raw
 - output_data.tab (126.7 KB)
 - quality_data.tab (121.7 KB)
- README.txt (109 B)

Cite Data

You can find the citation for the dataset at the top of the dataset page in a blue box. Additionally, there is a Cite Data button that offers the option to download the citation as EndNote XML, RIS Format, or BibTeX Format.

In installations that have added file-level citations, you can find and download the file's citation on the file page in a similar manner.

Download Files

If you want to download all files in a dataset, you can click the Access Dataset dropdown on the dataset page and select one of the download options. The dataset's files will download in .zip format and will preserve any folder structure that the dataset owner had set up.

If you'd like to download a single file or some subset of the dataset's files, you can use the Files tab. To download more than one file at a time, select the files you would like to download and then click the Download button above the files. The dataset's files will download in .zip format and will preserve any folder structure that the dataset owner had set up.

You may also download a file from the Access File button on its file page or by *Downloading via URL* under the Metadata tab.

Tabular data files offer additional options: You can explore using any data exploration or visualization *External Tools* (if they have been enabled), or choose from a number of tabular-data-specific download options available.

Tabular Data

Ingested files can be downloaded in several different ways.

- The default option is to download a tab-separated-value file which is an easy and free standard to use.
- The original file, which may be in a proprietary format which requires special software
- RData format if the installation has configured this
- The variable metadata for the file in DDI format

Downloading via URL

The Dataverse installation displays a plaintext URL for the location of the file under the Metadata tab on the file page. This Download URL can be used to directly access the file via API (or in a web browser, if needed). When downloading larger files, in order to ensure a reliable, resumable download, we recommend using [GNU Wget](#) in a command line terminal or using a download manager software of your choice.

Certain files do not provide Download URLs for technical reasons: those that are restricted, have terms of use associated with them, or are part of a Dataverse collection with a guestbook enabled.

Downloading a Dataverse File Package via URL

Dataverse File Packages are typically used to represent extremely large files or bundles containing a large number of files. Dataverse File Packages are often too large to be reliably downloaded using a web browser. When you click to download a Dataverse File Package, instead of automatically initiating the download in your web browser, the Dataverse installation displays a plaintext URL for the location of the file. To ensure a reliable, resumable download, we recommend using [GNU Wget](#) in a command line terminal or using a download manager software of your choice. If you try to simply paste the URL into your web browser then the download may overwhelm your browser, resulting in an interrupted, timed out, or otherwise failed download.

Downloading a Dataverse File Package via rsync

rsync is typically used for synchronizing files and directories between two different systems. Some Dataverse installations allow downloads using rsync, to facilitate large file transfers in a reliable and secure manner.

rsync-enabled Dataverse installations offer a new file download process that differs from traditional browser-based downloading. Instead of multiple files, each dataset uploaded via rsync contains a single “Dataverse File Package”. When you download this package you will receive a folder that contains all files from the dataset, arranged in the exact folder structure in which they were originally uploaded.

In a dataset containing a Dataverse File Package, the information to download and/or access is in outlined the **Data Access** listed under the Access File button. If the data is locally available to you (on a shared drive, for example) you will find the folder path to access the data locally. To download, use one of the rsync commands provided. There may be multiple commands, each corresponding to a different mirror that hosts the Dataverse File Package. Go outside your browser and open a terminal (AKA command line) window on your computer. Use the terminal to run the command that corresponds with the mirror of your choice. It's usually best to choose the mirror that is geographically closest to you. Running this command will initiate the download process.

After you've downloaded the Dataverse File Package, you may want to double-check that your download went perfectly. Under **Verify Data**, you'll find a command that you can run in your terminal that will initiate a checksum to ensure that the data you downloaded matches the data in the Dataverse installation precisely. This way, you can ensure the integrity of the data you're working with.

Explore Data

Some file types and datasets offer data exploration options if external tools have been installed. The tools are described in the [External Tools](#) section of the Admin Guide.

Exploratory Data Analysis Using Differentially Private Metadata (Experimental)

Through an integration with tools from the OpenDP Project (opendp.org), the Dataverse Software offers an experimental workflow that allows a data depositor to create and deposit Differentially Private (DP) Metadata files, which can then be used for exploratory data analysis. This workflow allows researchers to view the DP metadata for a tabular file, determine whether or not the file contains useful information, and then make an informed decision about whether or not to request access to the original file.

If the data depositor has made available DP metadata for one or more files in their dataset, these access options will appear on the access dropdown on both the Dataset Page and the File Page. These access options will be available even if a file is restricted. Three types of DP metadata will be available:

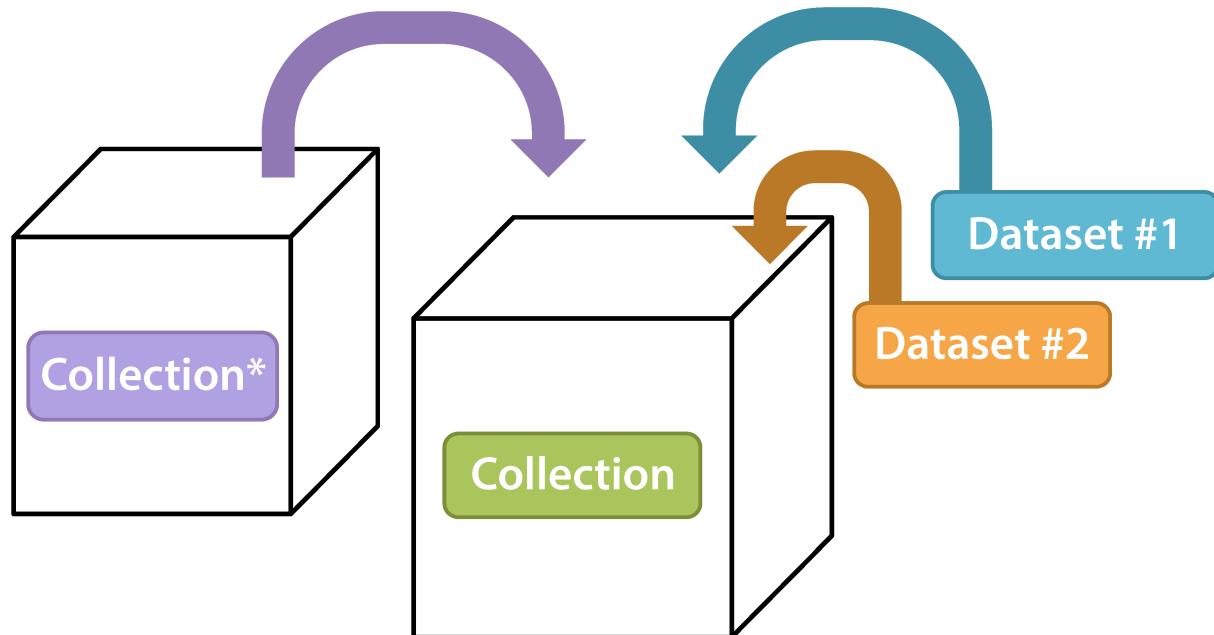
- .PDF
- .XML
- .JSON

For more information about how data depositors can enable access using the OpenDP tool, visit the [Dataset + File Management](#) section of the User Guide.

1.3 Dataverse Collection Management

A Dataverse collection is a container for datasets (research data, code, documentation, and metadata) and other Dataverse collections, which can be setup for individual researchers, departments, journals and organizations.

Schematic Diagram of a **Collection** in Dataverse Software 5.0



Container for your Datasets and/or Collections*

* Collections can contain other Collections

Once a user creates a Dataverse collection they, by default, become the administrator of that Dataverse collection. The Dataverse collection administrator has access to manage the settings described in this guide.

Contents:

- [Create a New Dataverse Collection](#)
- [Edit Dataverse Collection](#)
 - [General Information](#)
 - [Theme](#)
 - [Widgets](#)
 - * [Dataverse Collection Search Box Widget](#)
 - * [Dataverse Collection Listing Widget](#)
 - * [Adding Widgets to an OpenScholar Website](#)
 - [Roles & Permissions](#)
 - * [Setting Access Configurations](#)
 - * [Assigning Roles to Users and Groups](#)
 - [Dataset Templates](#)

- *Dataset Guestbooks*
- *Featured Dataverse Collection*
- *Dataset Linking*
- *Dataverse Collection Linking*
- *Publish Your Dataverse Collection*

1.3.1 Create a New Dataverse Collection

Creating a Dataverse collection is easy but first you must be a registered user (see [Account Creation + Management](#)). Once you are logged in, click on the “Add Data” button, or “Add Data” navbar link and in the dropdown menu select “New Dataverse”.

1. **Fill in the following fields on the “New Dataverse” page (required fields in the form are denoted by a red asterisk, next to the label):**

- **Host Dataverse:** Select a Dataverse collection you would like to create the new Dataverse collection in, by default the root Dataverse collection is selected if you click the Add Data button from the root Dataverse collection, your My Data page, the Add Data link in the navbar, or the Add a dataset button on the custom homepage (if configured), but you can select any Dataverse collection for which you have the proper permissions to create Dataverse collections.
- **Dataverse Name:** Enter the name of your Dataverse collection.
- **Affiliation:** Add any affiliation that can be associated with this particular Dataverse collection (e.g., project name, institute name, department name, journal name, etc). This is automatically filled out if you have added an affiliation for your user account.
- **Identifier:** This is an abbreviation, usually lower-case, that becomes part of the URL for the new Dataverse collection. Special characters (~, !, @, #, \$, %, ^, &, and *) and spaces are not allowed. **Note:** if you change this field in the future, the URL for your Dataverse collection will change (<http://.../identifier>), which will break older links to the page.
- **Category:** Select a category that best describes the type of Dataverse collection this will be. For example, if this is a Dataverse collection for an individual researcher’s datasets, select *Researcher*. If this is a Dataverse collection for an institution, select *Organization or Institution*.
- **Email:** This is the email address that will be used as the contact for this particular Dataverse collection. You can have more than one contact email address for your Dataverse collection.
- **Description:** Provide a description of this Dataverse collection. This will display on the landing page of your Dataverse collection and in the search result list. The description field supports certain HTML tags, if you’d like to format your text (`<a>`, ``, `<blockquote>`, `
`, `<code>`, ``, `<dd>`, `<dl>`, `<dt>`, ``, `<hr>`, `<h1>-<h3>`, `<i>`, ``, `<kbd>`, ``, ``, `<p>`, `<pre>`, `<s>`, `<sup>`, `<sub>`, ``, `<strike>`, `<u>`, ``).

2. **Choose the sets of Metadata Fields for datasets in this Dataverse collection:**

- By default the metadata elements will be from the host Dataverse collection that this new Dataverse collection is created in.
- The Dataverse Software offers metadata standards for multiple domains. To learn more about the metadata standards in the Dataverse Software please check out the [Appendix](#).
- Most metadata fields can be hidden or can be selected as required or optional. Some fields may be selected as conditionally required, depending on metadata options chosen for the Dataverse installation.

- Selected metadata fields are also used to pick which metadata fields you would like to use for creating *Dataset Templates*: after you finish creating your Dataverse collection.
3. **Choose which metadata fields will be used as browse/search facets on your Dataverse collection:**
- These facets will allow users browsing or searching your Dataverse collection to filter its contents according to the fields you have selected. For example, if you select “Subject” as a facet, users will be able to filter your Dataverse collection’s contents by subject area.
 - By default, the facets that will appear on your Dataverse collection’s landing page will be from the host Dataverse collection that this new Dataverse collection was created in, but you can add or remove facets from this default.
4. **Click the “Create Dataverse” button** and you’re done!

1.3.2 Edit Dataverse Collection

To edit your Dataverse collection, navigate to your Dataverse collection’s landing page and select the “Edit Dataverse” button, where you will be presented with the following editing options:

- *General Information*: edit name, affiliation, identifier, category, contact email, description, metadata fields, and browse/search facets for your Dataverse collection
- *Theme*: upload a logo for your Dataverse collection, add a link to your department or personal website, add a custom footer image, and select colors for your Dataverse collection in order to brand it
- *Widgets*: get code to add to your website to have your Dataverse collection display on it
- *Permissions*: give other users permissions to your Dataverse collection, i.e.-can edit datasets, and see which users already have which permissions for your Dataverse collection
- *Dataset Templates*: these are useful when you want to provide custom instructions on how to fill out fields or have several datasets that have the same information in multiple metadata fields that you would prefer not to have to keep manually typing in
- *Dataset Guestbooks*: allows you to collect data about who is downloading the files from your datasets
- *Featured Dataverse collections*: if you have one or more Dataverse collection, you can use this option to show them at the top of your Dataverse collection page to help others easily find interesting or important Dataverse collections
- **Delete Dataverse**: you are able to delete your Dataverse collection as long as it is not published and does not have any draft datasets

General Information

The General Information page is how you edit the information you filled in while creating your Dataverse collection. If you need to change or add a contact email address, this is the place to do it. Additionally, you can update the metadata elements used for datasets within the Dataverse collection, change which metadata fields are hidden, required, or optional, and update the facets you would like displayed for browsing the Dataverse collection. If you plan on using templates, you need to select the metadata fields on the General Information page.

Tip: The metadata fields you select as required will appear on the Create Dataset form when someone goes to add a dataset to the Dataverse collection.

Theme

The Theme features provides you with a way to customize the look of your Dataverse collection. You can:

- Inherit the theme from the parent Dataverse collection. This option is helpful if you'd like consistency across several Dataverse collections that all share the same parent.
- Add or update a logo image, which will appear at the top of your Dataverse collection.
- Add or update a footer image, which will appear at the bottom of your Dataverse collection.
- Change the colors of the background, links, and text within the header of your Dataverse collection.
- Add or update the tagline for your Dataverse collection, which can provide more information about your organization, journal, institution, etc.
- Add a URL for a website that will be accessed when visitors click the tagline text.

Supported image types for logo images and footer images are JPEG, TIFF, or PNG and should be no larger than 500 KB. The maximum display size for an image file in a Dataverse collection's theme is 940 pixels wide by 120 pixels high.

Widgets

The Widgets feature provides you with code for you to put on your personal website to have your Dataverse collection displayed there. There are two types of Widgets for a Dataverse collection, a Dataverse collection Search Box widget and a Dataverse collection Listing widget. Once a Dataverse collection has been published, from the Widgets tab on the Dataverse collection's Theme + Widgets page, it is possible to copy the code snippets for the widget(s) you would like to add to your website. If you need to adjust the height of the widget on your website, you may do so by editing the *heightPx=500* parameter in the code snippet.

Dataverse Collection Search Box Widget

The Dataverse Collection Search Box Widget will add a search box to your website that is linked to your Dataverse collection. Users are directed to your Dataverse collection in a new browser window, to display the results for search terms entered in the input field.

Dataverse Collection Listing Widget

The Dataverse Collection Listing Widget provides a listing of all your Dataverse collections and datasets for users to browse, sort, filter and search. When someone clicks on a Dataverse collection or dataset in the widget, it displays the content in the widget on your website. They can download data files directly from the datasets within the widget. If a file is restricted, they will be directed to your Dataverse installation to log in, instead of logging in through the widget on your website.

Adding Widgets to an OpenScholar Website

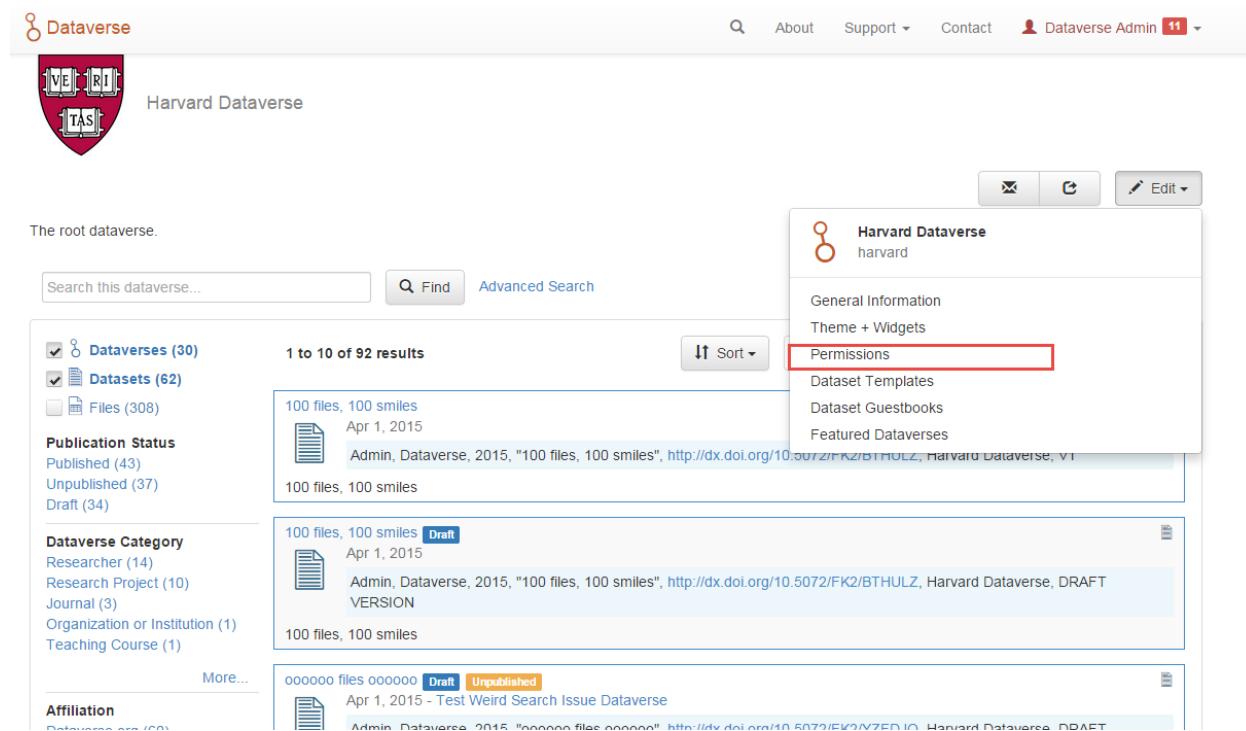
1. Log in to your OpenScholar website
2. Either build a new page or navigate to the page you would like to use to show the Dataverse collection widgets.
3. Click on the Settings Cog and select Layout
4. At the top right, select Add New Widget and under Misc. you will see the Dataverse Collection Search Box and the Dataverse Collection Listing Widgets. Click on the widget you would like to add, fill out the form, and then drag it to where you would like it to display in the page.

Roles & Permissions

Dataverse installation user accounts can be granted roles that define which actions they are allowed to take on specific Dataverse collections, datasets, and/or files. Each role comes with a set of permissions, which define the specific actions that users may take.

Roles and permissions may also be granted to groups. Groups can be defined as a collection of Dataverse installation user accounts, a collection of IP addresses (e.g. all users of a library's computers), or a collection of all users who log in using a particular institutional login (e.g. everyone who logs in with a particular university's account credentials).

Admins of a Dataverse collection can assign roles and permissions to the users of that Dataverse collection. If you are an admin on a Dataverse collection, then you will find the link to the Permissions page under the Edit dropdown on the Dataverse collection page.



The screenshot shows the Harvard Dataverse collection management interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for About, Support, Contact, and a Dataverse Admin account. Below the navigation bar, the Harvard logo and the text "Harvard Dataverse" are displayed. A sidebar on the left contains filters for Dataverses (30), Datasets (62), and Files (308), along with sections for Publication Status (Published 43, Unpublished 37, Draft 34), Dataverse Category (Researcher 14, Research Project 10, Journal 3), Organization or Institution (1), Teaching Course (1), and More... Affiliation (Dataverses are CC-BY). The main content area displays a search bar and a results table. The results table shows 100 files, 100 smiles, created on Apr 1, 2015, by Admin, Dataverse, 2015, with a DOI link. The table includes columns for file name, status (Draft), date, creator, and DOI. On the right side of the interface, a sidebar menu is open, showing options: General Information, Theme + Widgets, Permissions (which is highlighted with a red box), Dataset Templates, Dataset Guestbooks, and Featured Dataverses. The "Edit" button is visible at the top right of the sidebar.

Clicking on Permissions will bring you to this page:

The screenshot shows the Harvard Dataverse Permissions page. At the top, there's a banner stating "Upgrade in progress..." and the Harvard logo. Below the banner, the page title is "Permissions". The main content is divided into three sections:

- Permissions ▲**: A section for managing access configurations. It includes a note about current access, a question about who can add datasets, and a question about default roles for dataset additions.
- Users/Groups ▲**: A section for assigning roles to users or groups. It lists one user ("Dataverse Admin (Dataverse.org) @admin Admin") and provides a "Remove Assigned Role" button.
- Roles ▼**: A section for viewing a list of available roles.

When you access a Dataverse collection's permissions page, you will see three sections:

Permissions: Here you can decide the requirements that determine which types of users can add datasets and sub-Dataverse collections to your Dataverse collection, and what permissions they'll be granted when they do so.

Users/Groups: Here you can assign roles to specific users or groups, determining which actions they are permitted to take on your Dataverse collection. You can also reference a list of all users who have roles assigned to them for your Dataverse collection and remove their roles if you please.

Roles: Here you can reference a full list of roles that can be assigned to users of your Dataverse collection. Each role lists the permissions that it offers.

Please note that even on a newly created Dataverse collection, you may see user and groups have already been granted role(s) if your installation has :InheritParentRoleAssignments set. For more on this setting, see the [Configuration](#) section of the Installation Guide.

Setting Access Configurations

Under the Permissions tab, you can click the “Edit Access” button to open a box where you can add to your Dataverse collection and what permissions are granted to those who add to your Dataverse collection.

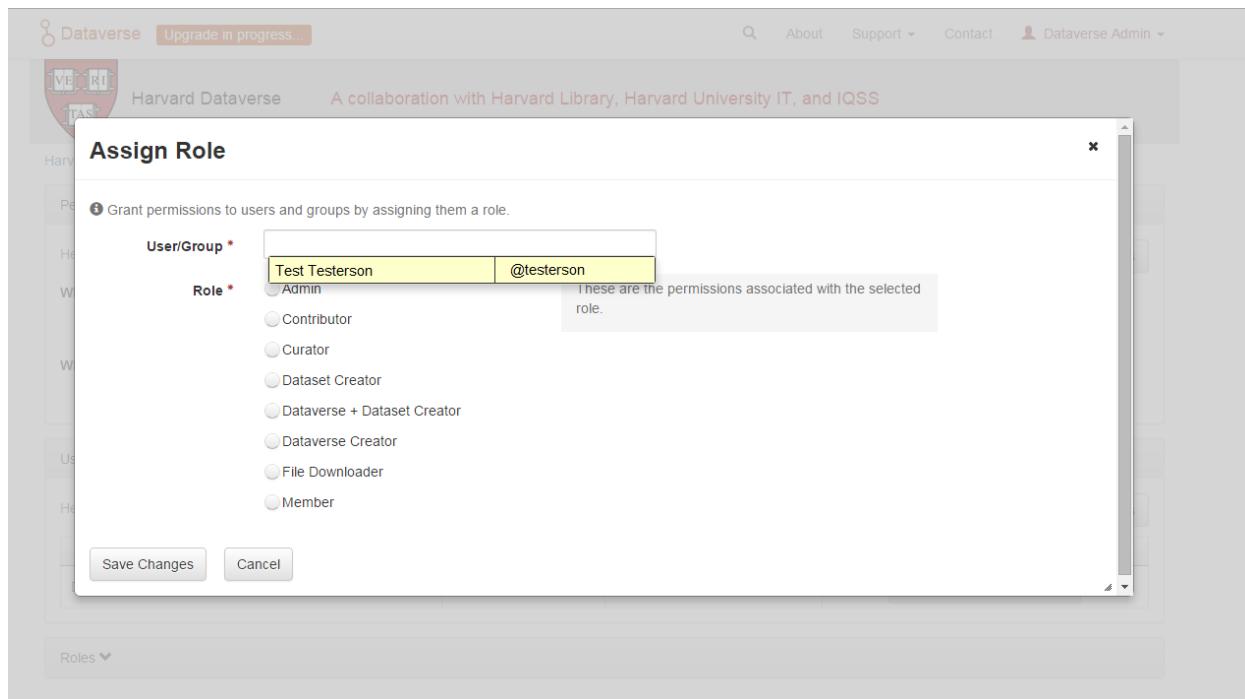
The first question on this page allows you to determine how open your Dataverse collection is to new additions - you can set whether or not the entire userbase (all logged in users) has the ability to add datasets or sub Dataverse collections to your Dataverse collection.

The second question on this page allows you to choose the role (and thus the permissions) granted to users who add a dataset to your Dataverse collection. The role you select will be automatically granted to any user who creates a dataset on your Dataverse collection, on that dataset, at the moment that they create it. The role the user is given determines their permissions for the dataset they've created. The key difference between the two roles is that curators can publish their own datasets, while contributors must submit the dataset to be reviewed before publication. Additionally, curators can manage dataset permissions. Note that this setting does not retroactively apply roles to users who have previously added datasets to your Dataverse collection; it only applies to users adding new datasets going forward.

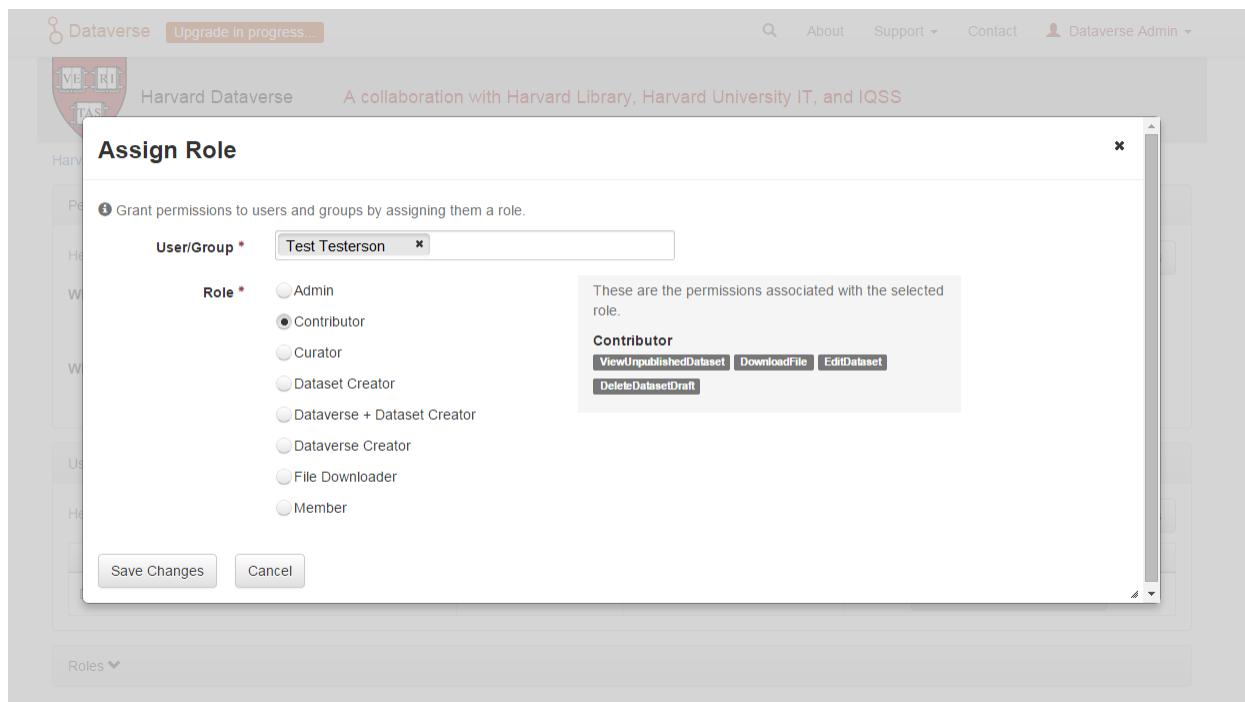
Both of these settings can be changed at any time.

Assigning Roles to Users and Groups

Under the Users/Groups tab, you can add, edit, or remove the roles granted to users and groups on your Dataverse collection. A role is a set of permissions granted to a user or group when they're using your Dataverse collection. For example, giving your research assistant the “Contributor” role would give them the following self-explanatory permissions on your Dataverse collection and all datasets within your Dataverse collection: “ViewUnpublishedDataset”, “DownloadFile”, “EditDataset”, and “DeleteDatasetDraft”. They would, however, lack the “PublishDataset” permission, and thus would be unable to publish datasets on your Dataverse collection. If you wanted to give them that permission, you would give them a role with that permission, like the Curator role. Users and groups can hold multiple roles at the same time if needed. Roles can be removed at any time. All roles and their associated permissions are listed under the “Roles” tab of the same page.



Note that the Dataset Creator role and Contributor role are sometimes confused. The Dataset Creator role is assigned at the Dataverse collection level and allows a user to create new datasets in that Dataverse collection. The Contributor role can be assigned at the dataset level, granting a user the ability to edit *that specific* dataset. Alternatively, the Contributor role can be assigned at the Dataverse collection level, granting the user the ability to edit *all* datasets in that Dataverse collection.



Note: If you need to assign a role to ALL user accounts in a Dataverse installation, you can assign the role to the “:authenticated-users” group.

Dataset Templates

Templates are useful when you want to provide custom instructions on how to fill out a field, have several datasets that have the same information in multiple metadata fields that you would prefer not to have to keep manually typing in, or if you want to use a custom set of Terms of Use and Access for multiple datasets in a Dataverse collection. In Dataverse Software 4.0+, templates are created at the Dataverse collection level, can be deleted (so it does not show for future datasets), set to default (not required), or can be copied so you do not have to start over when creating a new template with similar metadata from another template. When a template is deleted, it does not impact the datasets that have used the template already.

How do you create a template?

1. Navigate to your Dataverse collection, click on the Edit Dataverse button and select Dataset Templates.
2. Once you have clicked on Dataset Templates, you will be brought to the Dataset Templates page. On this page, you can 1) decide to use the dataset templates from your parent Dataverse collection 2) create a new dataset template or 3) do both.
3. Click on the Create Dataset Template to get started. You will see that the template is the same as the create dataset page with an additional field at the top of the page to add a name for the template.
4. To add custom instructions, click on “(None - click to add)” and enter the instructions you wish users to see. If you wish to edit existing instructions, click on them to make the text editable.
5. After adding information into the metadata fields you have information for and clicking Save and Add Terms, you will be brought to the page where you can add custom Terms of Use and Access. If you do not need custom Terms of Use and Access, click the Save Dataset Template, and only the metadata fields will be saved.
6. After clicking Save Dataset Template, you will be brought back to the Manage Dataset Templates page and should see your template listed there now with the make default, edit, view, or delete options.
7. A Dataverse collection does not have to have a default template and users can select which template they would like to use while on the Create Dataset page.
8. You can also click on the View button on the Manage Dataset Templates page to see what metadata fields have information filled in.

* Please note that the ability to choose which metadata fields are hidden, required, or optional is done on the General Information page for the Dataverse collection.

Dataset Guestbooks

Guestbooks allow you to collect data about who is downloading the files from your datasets. You can decide to collect account information (username, given name & last name, affiliation, etc.) as well as create custom questions (e.g., What do you plan to use this data for?). You are also able to download the data collected from the enabled guestbooks as CSV files to store and use outside of the Dataverse installation.

How do you create a guestbook?

1. After creating a Dataverse collection, click on the “Edit Dataverse” button and select “Dataset Guestbooks”.
2. To create a new guestbook, click the “Create Dataset Guestbook” button on the right side of the page.
3. Name the guestbook, determine the account information that you would like to be required (all account information fields show when someone downloads a file), and then add custom questions (can be required or not required), if desired.
4. Click the “Create Dataset Guestbook” button once you have finished.

What can you do with a guestbook? After creating a guestbook, you will notice there are several options for a guestbook that appear in the list of guestbooks.

- From the dataset page, you can select a guestbook by clicking “Terms” and then “Edit Terms Requirements”, unless the guestbook is disabled.
- From the “Manage Dataset Guestbooks” page, there are options to view, copy, edit, disable, or delete a guestbook. There are also options to download or view responses. By default, guestbooks inherited from the parent Dataverse collection will appear. If you do not want to use or see those guestbooks, uncheck the checkbox that says “Include Guestbooks from [Parent]”.
- Note that it is also possible to download guestbook responses via API. See [Retrieve Guestbook Responses for a Dataverse Collection](#) for details.

Featured Dataverse Collection

Featured Dataverse collections is a way to display sub Dataverse collections in your Dataverse collection that you want to feature for people to easily see when they visit your Dataverse collection.

Click on Featured Dataverse Collections and a pop up will appear. Select which Dataverse subcollections you would like to have appear.

Note: Featured Dataverse collections can only be used with published Dataverse collections.

1.3.3 Dataset Linking

Dataset linking allows a Dataverse collection owner to “link” their Dataverse collection to a dataset that exists outside of that Dataverse collection, so it appears in the Dataverse collection’s list of contents without actually *being* in that Dataverse collection. You can link other users’ datasets to your Dataverse collection, but that does not transfer editing or other special permissions to you. The linked dataset will still be under the original user’s control.

For example, researchers working on a collaborative study across institutions can each link their own individual institutional Dataverse collections to the one collaborative dataset, making it easier for interested parties from each institution to find the study.

In order to link a dataset, you will need your account to have the “Add Dataset” permission on the Dataverse collection that is doing the linking. If you created the Dataverse collection then you should have this permission already, but if not then you will need to ask the admin of that Dataverse collection to assign that permission to your account. You do not need any special permissions on the dataset being linked.

To link a dataset to your Dataverse collection, you must navigate to that dataset and click the white “Link” button in the upper-right corner of the dataset page. This will open up a window where you can type in the name of the Dataverse collection that you would like to link the dataset to. Select your Dataverse collection and click the save button. This will establish the link, and the dataset will now appear under your Dataverse collection.

There is currently no way to remove established links in the UI. If you need to remove a link between a Dataverse collection and a dataset, please contact the support team for the Dataverse installation you are using.

1.3.4 Dataverse Collection Linking

Similarly to dataset linking, Dataverse collection linking allows a Dataverse collection owner to “link” their Dataverse collection to another Dataverse collection, so the Dataverse collection being linked will appear in the linking Dataverse collection’s list of contents without actually *being* in that Dataverse collection. Currently, the ability to link a Dataverse collection to another Dataverse collection is a superuser only feature.

If you need to have a Dataverse collection linked to your Dataverse collection, please contact the support team for the Dataverse installation you are using.

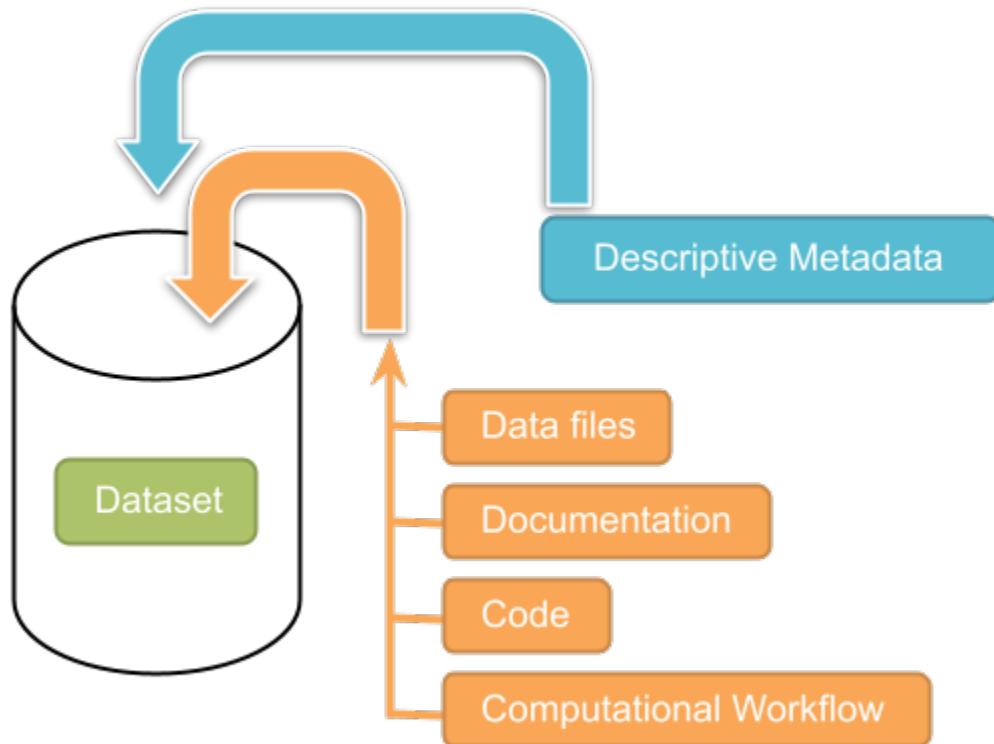
1.3.5 Publish Your Dataverse Collection

Once your Dataverse collection is ready to go public, go to your Dataverse collection page, click on the “Publish” button on the right hand side of the page. A pop-up will appear to confirm that you are ready to actually Publish, since once a Dataverse collection is made public, it can no longer be unpublished.

1.4 Dataset + File Management

A dataset in a Dataverse installation is a container for your data, documentation, code, and the metadata describing this Dataset.

Schematic Diagram of a **Dataset** in Dataverse 4.0



Container for your data, documentation, code, and computational workflow.

Contents:

- *Supported Metadata*
 - *Supported Metadata Export Formats*
- *Adding a New Dataset*
 - *Supported HTML Fields*
- *File Upload*

- [HTTP Upload](#)
- [Dropbox Upload](#)
- [Folder Upload](#)
- [rsync + SSH Upload](#)
 - * [File Upload Script](#)
- [Command-line DVUploader](#)
 - * [Usage](#)
- [Duplicate Files](#)
- [BagIt Support](#)
- [File Handling](#)
 - [File Previews](#)
 - [Tabular Data Files](#)
 - [Research Code](#)
 - [Computational Workflow](#)
 - * [Computational Workflow Definition](#)
 - * [FAIR Computational Workflow](#)
 - * [How to Create a Computational Workflow](#)
 - * [How to Upload Your Computational Workflow](#)
 - * [How to Describe Your Computational Workflow](#)
 - * [How to Search for Computational Workflows](#)
 - [Astronomy \(FITS\)](#)
 - [Compressed Files](#)
 - [Other File Types](#)
- [Restricted Files](#)
- [Edit Files](#)
 - [Edit File Metadata](#)
 - [Edit File Variable Metadata](#)
 - [File Path](#)
 - [File Tags](#)
- [Replace Files](#)
- [Terms](#)
 - [Choosing a License](#)
 - * [License Selection and Professional Norms](#)
 - [Custom Terms of Use for Datasets](#)
 - [Restricted Files + Terms of Access](#)

- *Creating and Depositing Differentially Private Metadata (Experimental)*
- *Guestbook*
- *Roles & Permissions*
 - *Dataset-Level*
 - *File-Level*
- *Data Provenance*
- *Thumbnails + Widgets*
 - *Thumbnails*
 - *Widgets*
 - * *Dataset Widget*
 - * *Dataset Citation Widget*
 - * *Adding Widgets to an OpenScholar Website*
- *Publish Dataset*
- *Submit for Review*
- *Private URL to Review Unpublished Dataset*
- *Embargoes*
- *Dataset Versions*
 - *Version Details*
- *Dataset Metrics and Make Data Count*
- *Cloud Storage + Computing*
 - *Cloud Computing*
 - *Cloud Storage Access*
- *Dataset Deaccession*

1.4.1 Supported Metadata

A dataset contains three levels of metadata:

1. **Citation Metadata:** any metadata that would be needed for generating a data citation and other general metadata that could be applied to any dataset;
2. **Domain Specific Metadata:** with specific support currently for Social Science, Life Science, Geospatial, and Astronomy datasets; and
3. **File-level Metadata:** varies depending on the type of data file - for more details see *File Handling* section below).

For more details about what Citation and Domain Specific Metadata is supported please see our [Appendix](#).

Supported Metadata Export Formats

Once a dataset has been published, its metadata can be exported in a variety of other metadata standards and formats, which help make datasets more discoverable and usable in other systems, such as other data repositories. On each dataset page's metadata tab, the following exports are available:

- Dublin Core
- DDI (Data Documentation Initiative Codebook 2.5)
- DDI HTML Codebook (A more human-readable, HTML version of the DDI Codebook 2.5 metadata export)
- DataCite 4
- JSON (native Dataverse Software format)
- OAI_ORE
- OpenAIRE
- Schema.org JSON-LD

Each of these metadata exports contains the metadata of the most recently published version of the dataset.

1.4.2 Adding a New Dataset

1. Navigate to the Dataverse collection in which you want to add a dataset.
2. Click on the “Add Data” button and select “New Dataset” in the dropdown menu. **Note:** If you are on the root Dataverse collection, your My Data page or click the “Add Data” link in the navbar, the dataset you create will be hosted in the root Dataverse collection. You can change this by selecting another Dataverse collection you have proper permissions to create datasets in, from the Host Dataverse collection dropdown in the create dataset form. This option to choose will not be available after you create the dataset.
3. To quickly get started, enter at minimum all the required fields with an asterisk (e.g., the Dataset Title, Author Name, Description Text, Point of Contact Email, and Subject) to get a Data Citation with a DOI.
4. Scroll down to the “Files” section and click on “Select Files to Add” to add all the relevant files to your Dataset. You can also upload your files directly from your Dropbox. **Tip:** You can drag and drop or select multiple files at a time from your desktop directly into the upload widget. Your files will appear below the “Select Files to Add” button where you can add a description and tags (via the “Edit Tag” button) for each file. Additionally, an MD5 checksum will be added for each file. If you upload a tabular file a *Universal Numerical Fingerprint (UNF)* will be added to this file.
5. Click the “Save Dataset” button when you are done. Your unpublished dataset is now created.

Note: You can add additional metadata once you have completed the initial dataset creation by going to clicking the Edit button and selecting Metadata from the dropdown menu.

Supported HTML Fields

We currently only support the following HTML tags for any of our textbox metadata fields (i.e., Description) : <a>, , <blockquote>,
, <code>, , <dd>, <dl>, <dt>, , <hr>, <h1>-<h3>, <i>, , <kbd>, , , <p>, <pre>, <s>, <sup>, <sub>, , <strike>, <u>, .

1.4.3 File Upload

The Dataverse Software offers multiple methods of uploading files to a dataset. These upload methods are configurable by the administrator of a Dataverse installation, so you might not see some of these options on the Dataverse installation you're using.

If there are multiple upload options available, then you must choose which one to use for your dataset. A dataset may only use one upload method. Once you upload a file using one of the available upload methods, that method is locked in for that dataset. If you need to switch upload methods for a dataset that already contains files, then please contact Support by clicking on the Support link at the top of the application.

You can upload files to a dataset while first creating that dataset. You can also upload files after creating a dataset by clicking the “Edit” button at the top of the dataset page and from the dropdown list selecting “Files (Upload)” or clicking the “Upload Files” button above the files table in the Files tab. From either option you will be brought to the Upload Files page for that dataset.

Certain file types in a Dataverse installation are supported by additional functionality, which can include downloading in different formats, previews, file-level metadata preservation, file-level data citation with UNFs, and exploration through data visualization and analysis. See the [File Handling](#) section of this page for more information.

HTTP Upload

HTTP Upload is a common browser-based file upload tool you may be familiar with from other web applications. You can upload files via HTTP by selecting them from your browser or dragging and dropping them into the upload widget.

Once you have uploaded files, you will be able to edit file metadata, restrict access to files¹, and/or add tags. Click “Save Changes” to complete the upload. If you uploaded a file by mistake, you can delete it before saving by clicking the checkbox to select the file, and then clicking the “Delete” button above the Files Table.

File upload limit size varies based on Dataverse installation. The file upload size limit can be found in the text above the HTTP upload widget. If you need to upload a very large file or a very large *number* of files, consider using rsync + SSH upload if your Dataverse installation offers it.

Dropbox Upload

Some Dataverse installations support the ability to upload files directly from Dropbox. To do so, click the “Upload from Dropbox” button, log in to Dropbox in the pop-up window, and select the files you’d like to transfer over.

Folder Upload

Some Dataverse installations support the ability to upload files from a local folder and subfolders. To do this, click the “Upload from Folder” button, select the folder you wish to upload, select/unselect specific files, and click “Start Uploads”. More detailed instructions are available in the [DVWebloader wiki](#).

¹ Some Dataverse installations do not allow this feature.

rsync + SSH Upload

rsync is typically used for synchronizing files and directories between two different systems, using SSH to connect rather than HTTP. Some Dataverse installations allow uploads using rsync, to facilitate large file transfers in a reliable and secure manner.

File Upload Script

An rsync-enabled Dataverse installation has a file upload process that differs from the traditional browser-based upload process you may be used to. In order to transfer your data to the Dataverse installation's storage, you will need to complete the following steps:

1. Create your dataset. In rsync-enabled Dataverse installations, you cannot upload files until the dataset creation process is complete. After you hit “Save Dataset” on the Dataset Creation page, you will be taken to the page for your dataset.
2. On the dataset page, click the “+ Upload Files” button. This will open a box with instructions and a link to the file upload script.
3. Make sure your files are ready for upload. You will need to have one directory that you can point the upload script to. All files in this directory and in any subdirectories will be uploaded. The directory structure will be preserved, and will be reproduced when your dataset is downloaded from the Dataverse installation. Note that your data will be uploaded in the form of a data package, and each dataset can only host one such package. Be sure that all files you want to include are present before you upload.
4. Download the rsync file upload script by clicking the “Download Script” button in the Upload Files instruction box. There are no requirements for where you save the script; put it somewhere you can find it. Downloading the upload script will put a temporary lock on your dataset to prepare it for upload. While your dataset is locked, you will not be able to delete or publish your dataset, or edit its metadata. Once you upload your files and Dataverse installation processes them, your dataset will be automatically unlocked and these disabled functions will be enabled again. If you have downloaded the script and locked your dataset, but you have then changed your mind and decided *not* to upload files, please contact Support about unlocking your dataset.
5. To begin the upload process, you will need to run the script you downloaded. For this, you will have to go outside your browser and open a terminal (AKA command line) window on your computer. Use the terminal to navigate to the directory where you saved the upload script, and run the command that the Upload Files instruction box provides. This will begin the upload script. Please note that this upload script will expire 7 days after you downloaded it. If it expires and you still need to use it, simply download the script from the Dataverse installation again.

Note: Unlike other operating systems, Windows does not come with rsync supported by default. We have not optimized this feature for Windows users, but you may be able to get it working if you install the right Unix utilities. (If you have found a way to get this feature working for you on Windows, you can contribute it to our project. Please reference our [Contributing to the Dataverse Project](#) document in the root of the source tree.)

6. Follow the instructions provided by the upload script running in your terminal. It will direct you to enter the full path of the directory where your dataset files are located, and then it will start the upload process. Once you've initiated the upload, if you need to cancel it then you can do so by canceling the script running in your terminal window. If your upload gets interrupted, you can resume it from the same point later.
7. Once the upload script completes its job, the Dataverse installation will begin processing your data upload and running a checksum validation. This may take some time depending on the file size of your upload. During processing, you will see a blue bar at the bottom of the dataset page that reads “Upload in progress...”
8. Once processing is complete, you will be notified. At this point you can publish your dataset and your data will be available for download on the dataset page.

Note: A dataset can only hold one data package. If you need to replace the data package in your dataset, contact Support.

Command-line DVUploader

The open-source DVUploader tool is a stand-alone command-line Java application that uses the Dataverse installation’s API to upload files to a specified Dataset. Since it can be installed by users, and requires no server-side configuration, it can be used with any Dataverse installation. It is intended as an alternative to uploading files through the Dataverse installation’s web interface in situations where the web interface is inconvenient due to the number of files or file locations (spread across multiple directories, mixed with files that have already been uploaded or file types that should be excluded) or the need to automate uploads. Since it uses the Dataverse installation’s API, transfers are limited in the same ways as HTTP uploads through the Dataverse installation’s web interface in terms of size and performance. The DVUploader logs its activity and can be killed and restarted as desired. If stopped and resumed, it will continue processing from where it left off.

Usage

The DVUploader is open source and is available as source, as a Java jar, and with documentation at <https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-uploader>. The DVUploader requires Java 1.8+. Users will need to install Java if they don’t already have it and then download the latest release of the DVUploader - jar file. Users will need to know the URL of the Dataverse installation, the DOI of their existing dataset, and have generated an API Key for the Dataverse installation (an option in the user’s profile menu).

Basic usage is to run the command:

```
java -jar DVUploader*.jar -server=<Dataverse Installation URL> -did=<Dataset DOI> -key=<User's API Key> <file or directory list>
```

Additional command line arguments are available to make the DVUploader list what it would do without uploading, limit the number of files it uploads, recurse through sub-directories, verify fixity, exclude files with specific extensions or name patterns, and/or wait longer than 60 seconds for any Dataverse installation ingest lock to clear (e.g. while the previously uploaded file is processed, as discussed in the [File Handling](#) section below).

DVUploader is a community-developed tool, and its creation was primarily supported by the Texas Digital Library. Further information and support for DVUploader can be sought at the project’s [GitHub repository](#).

Duplicate Files

Beginning with Dataverse Software 5.0, the way a Dataverse installation handles duplicate files (filename and checksums) is changing to be more flexible. Specifically:

- Files with the same checksum can be included in a dataset, even if the files are in the same directory.
- Files with the same filename can be included in a dataset as long as the files are in different directories.
- If a user uploads a file to a directory where a file already exists with that directory/filename combination, the Dataverse installation will adjust the file path and names by adding “-1” or “-2” as applicable. This change will be visible in the list of files being uploaded.
- If the directory or name of an existing or newly uploaded file is edited in such a way that would create a directory/filename combination that already exists, the Dataverse installation will display an error.
- If a user attempts to replace a file with another file that has the same checksum, an error message will be displayed and the file will not be able to be replaced.

- If a user attempts to replace a file with a file that has the same checksum as a different file in the dataset, a warning will be displayed.

BagIt Support

BagIt is a set of hierarchical file system conventions designed to support disk-based storage and network transfer of arbitrary digital content. It offers several benefits such as integration with digital libraries, easy implementation, and transfer validation. See the [Wikipedia article](#) for more information.

If the Dataverse installation you are using has enabled BagIt file handling, when uploading BagIt files the repository will validate the checksum values listed in each BagIt's manifest file against the uploaded files and generate errors about any mismatches. The repository will identify a certain number of errors, such as the first five errors in each BagIt file, before reporting the errors.

The screenshot shows the Dataverse upload interface. At the top, there is a button labeled "Upload with HTTP via your browser". Below it is a text input field with placeholder text: "Select files or drag and drop into the upload widget. Maximum of 1,000 files per upload." To the right of this is a button labeled "+ Select Files to Add". Below these is a large rectangular area with a placeholder text "Drag and drop files here." A red callout box at the bottom contains the following text:

BagIt package, "computational_workflow_bagit_1.zip", detected but errors found. These are the errors found until processing stopped:

- The manifest declared a file, "basic/data/invalid-file-09.rb", that is not found in the BagIt package
- The manifest declared a file, "basic/data/invalid-file-10.rb", that is not found in the BagIt package
- The manifest declared a file, "basic/data/invalid-file-08.rb", that is not found in the BagIt package
- The manifest declared a file, "basic/data/invalid-file-01.rb", that is not found in the BagIt package
- The manifest declared a file, "basic/data/invalid-file-06.rb", that is not found in the BagIt package

You can fix the errors and reupload the BagIt files.

More information on how your admin can enable and configure the BagIt file handler can be found in the [Installation Guide](#).

1.4.4 File Handling

Certain file types in the Dataverse installation are supported by additional functionality, which can include downloading in different formats, previews, file-level metadata preservation, file-level data citation; and exploration through data visualization and analysis. See the sections below for information about special functionality for specific file types.

File Previews

Dataverse installations can add previewers for common file types uploaded by their research communities. The previews appear on the file page. If a preview tool for a specific file type is available, the preview will be created and will display automatically, after terms have been agreed to or a guestbook entry has been made, if necessary. File previews are not available for restricted files unless they are being accessed using a Private URL. See also [Private URL to Review Unpublished Dataset](#).

Tabular Data Files

Files in certain formats - Stata, SPSS, R, Excel (xlsx), CSV and TSV - may be ingested as tabular data (see [Tabular Data File Ingest](#) section of the User Guide for details). Tabular data files can be further explored and manipulated with [External Tools](#) if they have been enabled in the Dataverse installation you are using.

Additional download options available for tabular data (found in the same drop-down menu under the “Download” button):

- As tab-delimited data (with the variable names in the first row);
- The original file uploaded by the user;
- Saved as R data (if the original file was not in R format);
- Variable Metadata (as a [DDI Codebook XML](#) file);
- Data File Citation (currently in either RIS, EndNote XML, or BibTeX format).

Differentially Private (DP) Metadata can also be accessed for restricted tabular files if the data depositor has created a DP Metadata Release. See [Creating and Depositing Differentially Private Metadata \(Experimental\)](#) for more information.

Research Code

Code files - such as Stata, R, MATLAB, or Python files or scripts - have become a frequent addition to the research data deposited in Dataverse repositories. Research code is typically developed by few researchers with the primary goal of obtaining results, while its reproducibility and reuse aspects are sometimes overlooked. Because several independent studies reported issues trying to rerun research code, please consider the following guidelines if your dataset contains code.

The following are general guidelines applicable to all programming languages.

- Create a README text file in the top-level directory to introduce your project. It should answer questions that reviewers or reusers would likely have, such as how to install and use your code. If in doubt, consider using existing templates such as [a README template for social science replication packages](#).
- Depending on the number of files in your dataset, consider having data and code in distinct directories, each of which should have some documentation like a README.
- Consider adding a license to your source code. You can do that by creating a LICENSE file in the dataset or by specifying the license(s) in the README or directly in the code. Find out more about code licenses at [the Open Source Initiative webpage](#).
- If possible, use free and open-source file formats and software to make your research outputs more reusable and accessible.
- Consider testing your code in a clean environment before sharing it, as it could help you identify missing files or other errors. For example, your code should use relative file paths instead of absolute (or full) file paths, as they can cause an execution error.
- Consider providing notes (in the README) on the expected code outputs or adding tests in the code, which would ensure that its functionality is intact.

Capturing code dependencies will help other researchers recreate the necessary runtime environment. Without it, your code will not be able to run correctly (or at all). One option is to use platforms such as [Whole Tale](#), [Jupyter Binder](#) or [Renku](#), which facilitate research reproducibility. Have a look at [Dataverse Integrations](#) for more information. Another option is to use an automatic code dependency capture, which is often supported through the programming language. Here are a few examples:

- If you are using the conda package manager, you can export your environment with the command `conda env export > environment.yml`. For more information, see the [official documentation](#).

- Python has multiple conventions for capturing its dependencies, but probably the best-known one is with the `requirements.txt` file, which is created using the command `pip freeze > requirements.txt`. Managing environments with pip is explained in the [official documentation](#).
- If you are using the R programming language, create a file called `install.R`, and list all library dependencies that your code requires. This file should be executable in R to set up the environment. See also other strategies for capturing the environment proposed by RStudio in the [official documentation](#).
- In case you are using multiple programming languages or different versions of the same language, consider using a containerization technology such as Docker. You can create a Dockerfile that builds your environment and deposit it within your dataset (see the [official documentation](#)). It is worth noting that creating a reliable Dockerfile may be tricky. If you choose this route, make sure to specify dependency versions and check out Docker's best practices.

Finally, automating your code can be immensely helpful to the code and research reviewers. Here are a few options on how to automate your code.

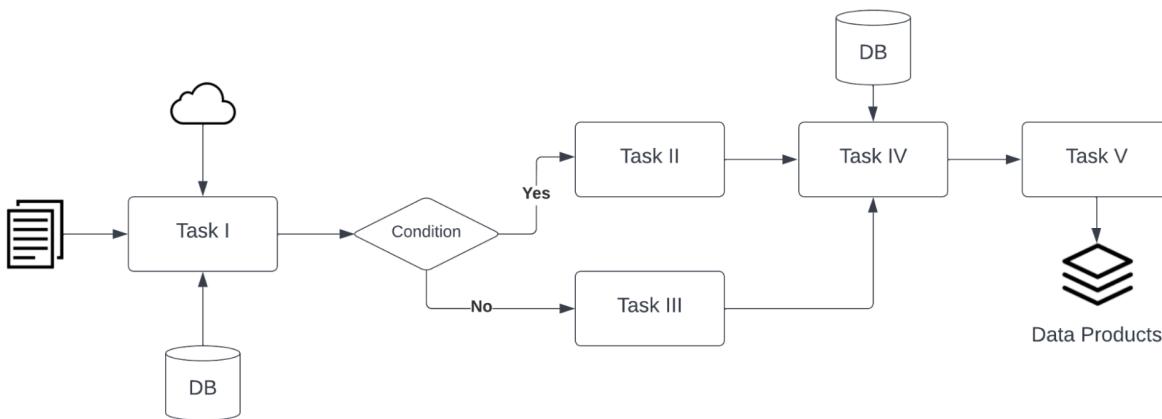
- A simple way to automate your code is using a bash script or Make. The Turing Way Community has [a detailed guide](#) on how to use the Make build automation tool.
- Consider using research workflow tools to automate your analysis. A popular workflow tool is called Common Workflow Language, and you can find more information about it [from the Common Workflow Language User Guide](#).

Note: Capturing code dependencies and automating your code will create new files in your directory. Make sure to include them when depositing your dataset.

Computational Workflow

Computational Workflow Definition

Computational workflows precisely describe a multi-step process to coordinate multiple computational tasks and their data dependencies that lead to data products in a scientific application. The computational tasks take different forms, such as running code (e.g. Python, C++, MATLAB, R, Julia), invoking a service, calling a command-line tool, accessing a database (e.g. SQL, NoSQL), submitting a job to a compute cloud (e.g. on-premises cloud, AWS, GCP, Azure), and execution of data processing scripts or workflow. The following diagram shows an example of a computational workflow with multiple computational tasks.



FAIR Computational Workflow

The FAIR Principles (Findable, Accessible, Interoperable, Reusable) apply to computational workflows (https://doi.org/10.1162/dint_a_00033) in two areas: as FAIR data and as FAIR criteria for workflows as digital objects. In the FAIR data area, “properly designed workflows contribute to FAIR data principles since they provide the metadata and provenance necessary to describe their data products, and they describe the involved data in a formalized, completely traceable way” (https://doi.org/10.1162/dint_a_00033). Regarding the FAIR criteria for workflows as digital objects, “workflows are research products in their own right, encapsulating methodological know-how that is to be found and published, accessed and cited, exchanged and combined with others, and reused as well as adapted” (https://doi.org/10.1162/dint_a_00033).

How to Create a Computational Workflow

There are multiple approaches to creating computational workflows. You may consider standard frameworks and tools such as Common Workflow Language (CWL), Snakemake, Galaxy, Nextflow, Ruffus or *ad hoc* methods using different programming languages (e.g. Python, C++, MATLAB, Julia, R), notebooks (e.g. Jupyter Notebook, R Notebook, and MATLAB Live Script) and command-line interpreters (e.g. Bash). Each computational task is defined differently, but all meet the definition of a computational workflow and all result in data products. You can find a few examples of computational workflows in the following GitHub repositories, where each follows several aspects of FAIR principles:

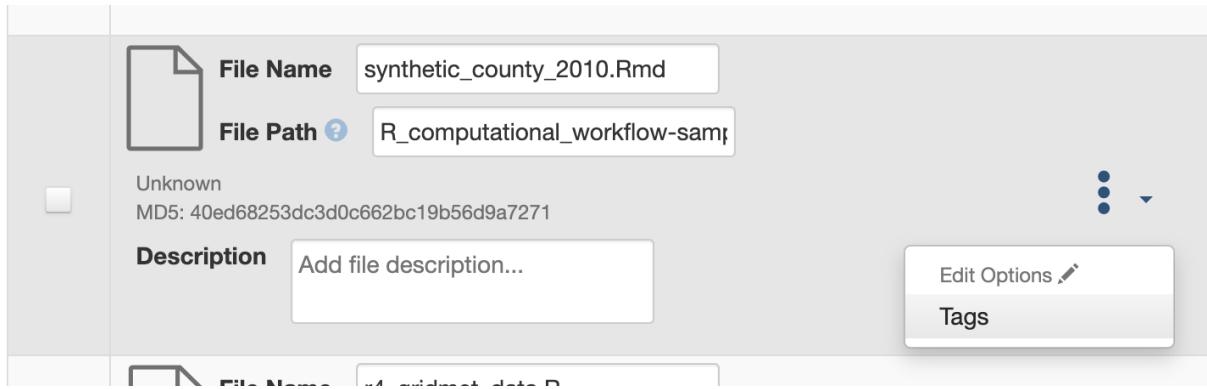
- Common Workflow Language ([GitHub Repository URL](#))
- R Notebook ([GitHub Repository URL](#))
- Jupyter Notebook ([GitHub Repository URL](#))
- MATLAB Script ([GitHub Repository URL](#))

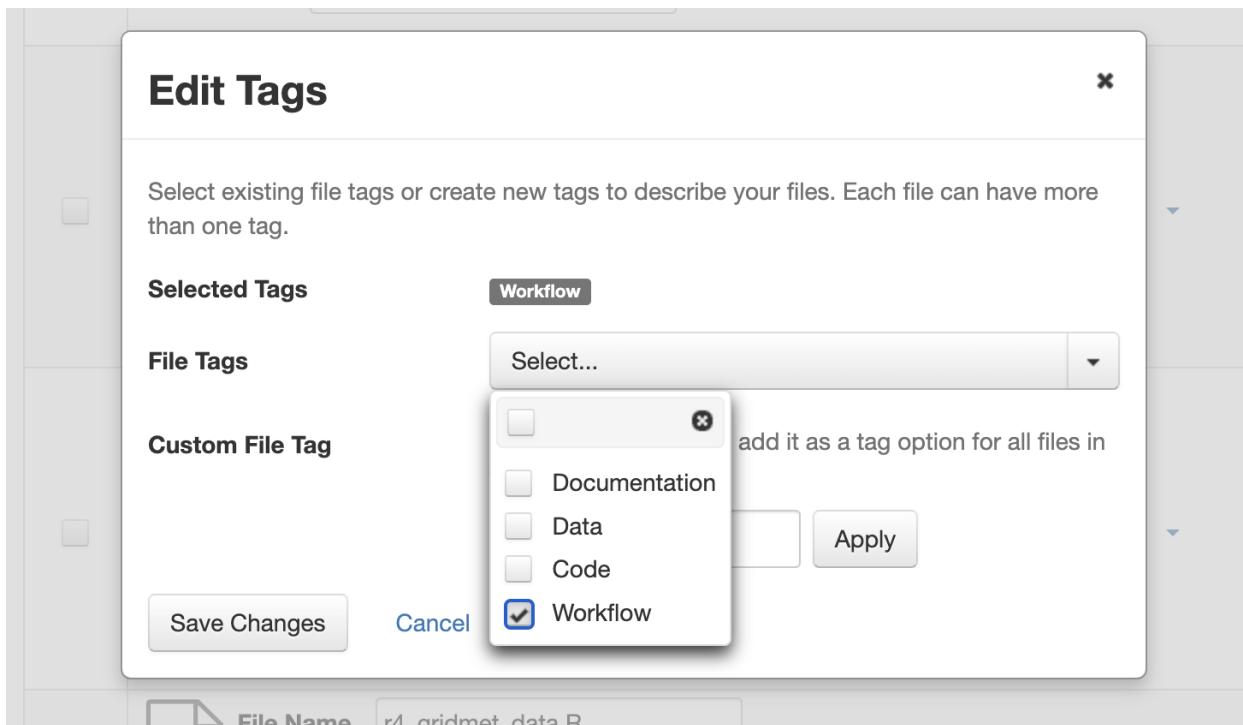
You are encouraged to review these examples when creating a computational workflow and publishing in a Dataverse repository.

At <https://workflows.community>, the Workflows Community Initiative offers resources for computational workflows, such as a list of workflow systems (<https://workflows.community/systems>) and other workflow registries (<https://workflows.community/registries>). The initiative also helps organize working groups related to workflows research, development and application.

How to Upload Your Computational Workflow

After you *upload your files*, you can apply a “Workflow” tag to your workflow files, such as your Snakemake or R Notebooks files, so that you and others can find them more easily among your deposit’s other files.





How to Describe Your Computational Workflow

The Dataverse installation you are using may have enabled Computational Workflow metadata fields for your use. If so, when [editing your dataset metadata](#), you will see the fields described below.

The form has three sections: 'Workflow Type' with a dropdown menu, 'External Code Repository URL' with a text input field and a '+' button, and 'Documentation' with a text input field and a '+' button.

As described in the [Metadata References](#) section of the [Appendix](#), the three fields are adapted from Bioschemas Computational Workflow Profile, version 1.0 and Codemeta:

- **Workflow Type:** The kind of Computational Workflow, which is designed to compose and execute a series of computational or data manipulation steps in a scientific application
- **External Code Repository URL:** A link to another public repository where the un-compiled, human-readable code and related code is also located (e.g., GitHub, GitLab, SVN)

- **Documentation:** A link (URL) to the documentation or text describing the Computational Workflow and its use

How to Search for Computational Workflows

If the search page of the Dataverse repository you are using includes a “Dataset Feature” facet with a Computational Workflows link, you can follow that link to find only datasets that contain computational workflows.

You can also search on the “Workflow Type” facet, if the Dataverse installation has the field enabled, to find datasets that contain certain types of computational workflows, such as workflows written in Common Workflow Language files or Jupyter Notebooks.

The screenshot shows a search results page for a Dataverse repository. At the top, there are navigation links: Add Data, Search, User Guide, Support, Sign Up, and Log In. Below the header, the text "Research repository" is displayed. The main area contains a search bar with placeholder text "Search this dataverse..." and a magnifying glass icon, along with an "Advanced Search" button. To the right of the search bar are "Contact" and "Share" buttons, and a "Add Data" button. The search results are listed in a grid format. On the left side of the results, there are two facets highlighted with red boxes:

- Dataset Feature**: Computational Workflow (5)
- Workflow Type**: Other R-based workflow (3), R Notebook (2), Other Python-based workflow (1), Ruffus (1)

You can also search for files within datasets that have been tagged as “Workflow” files by clicking the Files checkbox to show only files and using the File Tag facet to show only files tagged as “Workflow”.

The screenshot shows the Dataverse interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for 'Add Data', 'Search', 'User Guide', 'Support', 'Sign Up', and 'Log In'. Below the navigation is a header with 'Metrics' (0 Downloads), a search bar ('Search this dataverse...'), an 'Advanced Search' button, and buttons for 'Contact' and 'Share'. A large central area displays a list of 139 results, with the first item being 'Files (139)'. To the left of this list is a sidebar titled 'File Tag' containing categories like 'Code', 'Workflow', 'Classification_code_python', 'Data', and 'Data_class_project_x'. A red box highlights the 'Workflow (2)' tag. The main list area shows blurred preview cards for each of the 139 files.

Astronomy (FITS)

Metadata found in the header section of [Flexible Image Transport System \(FITS\)](#) files are automatically extracted by the Dataverse Software, aggregated and displayed in the Astronomy Domain-Specific Metadata of the Dataset that the file belongs to. This FITS file metadata, is therefore searchable and browsable (facets) at the Dataset-level.

Compressed Files

Compressed files in .zip format are unpacked automatically. If a .zip file fails to unpack for whatever reason, it will upload as is. If the number of files inside are more than a set limit (1,000 by default, configurable by the Administrator), you will get an error message and the .zip file will upload as is.

If the uploaded .zip file contains a folder structure, the Dataverse installation will keep track of this structure. A file's location within this folder structure is displayed in the file metadata as the File Path. When you download the contents of the dataset, this folder structure will be preserved and files will appear in their original locations.

These folder names are subject to strict validation rules. Only the following characters are allowed: the alphanumerics, ‘_’, ‘-’, ‘.’ and ‘ ’ (white space). When a zip archive is uploaded, the folder names are automatically sanitized, with any invalid characters replaced by the ‘.’ character. Any sequences of dots are further replaced with a single dot.

For example, the folder name `data&info/code=@137` will be converted to `data.info/code.137`. When uploading through the Web UI, the user can change the values further on the edit form presented, before clicking the ‘Save’ button.

Note: If you upload multiple .zip files to one dataset, any subdirectories that are identical across multiple .zips will be merged together when the user downloads the full dataset.

Other File Types

There are several advanced options available for certain file types.

- Image files: .jpg, .png, and .tif files are able to be selected as the default thumbnail for a dataset. The selected thumbnail will appear on the search result card for that dataset.
- SPSS files: SPSS files can be tagged with the language they were originally coded in. This is found by clicking on Advanced Options and selecting the language from the list provided.

1.4.5 Restricted Files

When you restrict a file it cannot be downloaded unless permission has been granted.

Differentially Private (DP) Metadata can be accessed for restricted tabular files if the data depositor has created a DP Metadata Release. See [Creating and Depositing Differentially Private Metadata \(Experimental\)](#) for more information.

See also [Restricted Files + Terms of Access](#) and [Roles & Permissions](#).

1.4.6 Edit Files

Edit File Metadata

Go to the dataset you would like to edit, where you will see the listing of files. Select the files you would like to edit by using either the Select All checkbox or individually selecting files. Next, click the “Edit Files” button above the file table and from the dropdown menu select if you would like to:

- Delete the selected files
- Edit the file metadata (file name, description) for the selected files
- Restrict the selected files
- Unrestrict the selected files (only if the selected files are restricted)
- Add tags to the selected files

You will not have to leave the dataset page to complete these action, except for editing file metadata, which will bring you to the Edit Files page. There you will have to click the “Save Changes” button to apply your edits and return to the dataset page.

If you restrict files, you will also prompted with a popup asking you to fill out the Terms of Access for the files. If Terms of Access already exist, you will be asked to confirm them. Note that some Dataverse installations do not allow for file restrictions.

Edit File Variable Metadata

Variable Metadata can be edited directly through an API call ([API Guide: Editing Variable Level Metadata](#)) or by using the Dataverse Data Curation Tool.

File Path

The File Path metadata field is a Dataverse installation's way of representing a file's location in a folder structure. When a user uploads a .zip file containing a folder structure, the Dataverse installation automatically fills in the File Path information for each file contained in the .zip. If a user downloads the full dataset or a selection of files from it, they will receive a folder structure with each file positioned according to its File Path. Only one file with a given path and name may exist in a dataset. Editing a file to give it the same path and name as another file already existing in the dataset will cause an error.

A file's File Path can be manually added or edited on the Edit Files page. Changing a file's File Path will change its location in the folder structure that is created when a user downloads the full dataset or a selection of files from it.

If there is more than one file in the dataset, and once at least one of them has a non-empty directory path, the Dataset Page will present an option for switching between the traditional table view, and the tree-like view of the files showing the folder structure, as in the example below:

Change View

Table **Tree**

- ▼ **codebooks**
 - [codebook.pdf \(50.5 KB\)](#)
 - [format.txt \(1.9 KB\)](#)
- ▼ **data**
 - ▼ **aggregate**
 - [aggregates.tab \(40 B\)](#)
 - ▼ **raw**
 - [output_data.tab \(126.7 KB\)](#)
 - [quality_data.tab \(121.7 KB\)](#)
- [README.txt \(109 B\)](#)

File Tags

File tags are comprised of custom, category (i.e. Documentation, Data, Code) and tabular data tags (i.e. Event, Genomics, Geospatial, Network, Panel, Survey, Time Series). Use the dropdown select menus as well as the custom file tag input to apply these tags to the selected files. There is also a Delete Tags feature that, if checked, will allow you to delete unused file tags within that dataset.

1.4.7 Replace Files

In cases where you would like to revise an existing file rather than add a new one, you can do so using our Replace File feature. This will allow you to track the history of this file across versions of your dataset, both before and after replacing it. This could be useful for updating your data or fixing mistakes in your data. Because replacing a file creates an explicit link between the previous dataset version and the current version, the file replace feature is not available for unpublished dataset drafts. Also note that replacing a file will not automatically carry over that file's metadata, but once the file is replaced then its original metadata can still be found by referencing the previous version of the file under the "Versions" tab of the file page.

To replace a file, go to the file page for that file, click on the "Edit" button, and from the dropdown list select "Replace". This will bring you to the Replace File page, where you can see the metadata for the most recently published version of the file and you can upload your replacement file. Once you have uploaded the replacement file, you can edit its name, description, and tags. When you're finished, click the "Save Changes" button.

After successfully replacing a file, a new dataset draft version will be created. A summary of your actions will be recorded in the "Versions" tab on both the dataset page and file page. The Versions tab allows you to access all previous versions of the file across all previous versions of your dataset, including the old version of the file before you replaced it.

1.4.8 Terms

Dataset terms can be viewed and edited from the Terms tab of the dataset page, or under the Edit dropdown button of a Dataset. There, you can set up how users can use your data once they have downloaded it (via a standard license or, if allowed, custom terms), how they can access your data if you have files that are restricted (terms of access), and enable a Guestbook for your dataset so that you can track who is using your data and for what purposes. These are explained in further detail below:

Choosing a License

Each Dataverse installation provides a set of license(s) data can be released under, and whether users can specify custom terms instead (see below). One of the available licenses (often the [Creative Commons CC0 Public Domain Dedication](#)) serves as the default if you do not make an explicit choice. If you want to apply one of the other available licenses to your dataset, you can change it on the Terms tab of your Dataset page.

License Selection and Professional Norms

When selecting a license, data depositors should recognize that their data will be available internationally and, over the long term, may be used in new forms of research (for example, in machine learning where millions of datasets might be used in training). It is therefore useful to consider licenses that have been developed with awareness of international law and that place minimal restrictions on reuse.

For example, the [Creative Commons](#) organization defines a number of [licenses](#) that allow copyright holders to release their intellectual property more openly, with fewer legal restrictions than standard copyright enforces. (These licenses may or may not be available in the Dataverse instance you are using, but we expect them to be common in the community.) Each Creative Commons license typically specifies simple terms for how the IP must be used, reused, shared, and attributed and includes language intended to address variations in the laws of different countries.

In addition to these licenses, Creative Commons also provides the [CC0 1.0 Universal \(CC0 1.0\) Public Domain Dedication](#) which allows you to unambiguously waive all copyright control over your data in all jurisdictions worldwide. Data released with CC0 can be freely copied, modified, and distributed (even for commercial purposes) without violating copyright. In most parts of the world, factual data is exempt from copyright anyway, but applying CC0 removes all ambiguity and makes the legal copyright status of the data as clear as possible.

When available, CC0 can be a good choice for datasets because it facilitates reuse, extensibility, and long-term preservation of research data by assuring that the data can be safely handled by anyone without fear of potential copyright pitfalls.

Data depositors and data users should also understand that while licenses define legal use, they do not exempt a Dataverse installation's users from following ethical and professional norms in scholarly communications. For example, though CC0 waives a dataset owner's legal copyright controls over the data, users, as scholarly researchers, are still expected to cite the data they use, giving credit to the data's authors following ethical and professional norms in scholarly communications. This is true of other licenses as well - users should cite data as appropriate even if the specified license does not require it. The [Dataverse Community Norms](#)* detail additional areas where data users should follow societal norms and scientific best practices.

* **Legal Disclaimer:** these [Community Norms](#) are not a substitute for the CC0 waiver or custom terms and licenses applicable to each dataset. The Community Norms are not a binding contractual agreement, and downloading datasets from a Dataverse installation does not create a legal obligation to follow these policies.

Custom Terms of Use for Datasets

If the Dataverse you are using allows it, you may specify your own Custom Dataset Terms. To do so, select Custom Dataset Terms for your license, and a panel will appear allowing you to enter custom Terms of Use. You can also enter information in additional fields including Special Permissions, Restrictions, and Citation Requirements to further clarify how your Dataset may be accessed and used.

Here is an [example of a Data Usage Agreement](#) for datasets that have de-identified human subject data.

Restricted Files + Terms of Access

If you restrict any files in your dataset, you will be prompted by a pop-up to enter Terms of Access for the data. This can also be edited in the Terms tab or selecting Terms in the “Edit” dropdown button in the dataset. You may also allow users to request access for your restricted files by enabling “Request Access”. To add more information about the Terms of Access, we have provided fields like Data Access Place, Availability Status, Contact for Access, etc. If you restrict a file, it will not have a preview shown on the file page.

Note: Some Dataverse installations do not allow for file restriction.

See also [Restricted Files](#).

Creating and Depositing Differentially Private Metadata (Experimental)

Through an integration with tools from the OpenDP Project (opendp.org), the Dataverse Software offers an experimental workflow that allows a data depositor to create and deposit Differentially Private (DP) Metadata files, which can then be used for exploratory data analysis. This workflow allows researchers to view the DP metadata for a tabular file, determine whether or not the file contains useful information, and then make an informed decision about whether or not to request access to the original file.

If this integration has been enabled in your Dataverse installation, you can follow these steps to create a DP Metadata Release and make it available to researchers, while still keeping the files themselves restricted and able to be accessed after a successful access request.

- Deposit a tabular file and let the ingest process complete
- Restrict the File
- In the kebab next to the file on the dataset page, or from the “Edit Files” dropdown on the file page, click “OpenDP Tool”
- Go through the process to create a DP Metadata Release in the OpenDP tool, and at the end of the process deposit the DP Metadata Release back to the Dataverse installation
- Publish the Dataset

Once the dataset is published, users will be able to request access using the normal process, but will also have the option to download DP Statistics in order to get more information about the file.

Guestbook

This is where you will enable a particular Guestbook for your dataset, which is setup at the Dataverse collection level. For specific instructions please visit the [Dataset Guestbooks](#) section of the Dataverse Collection Management page.

1.4.9 Roles & Permissions

Dataverse installation user accounts can be granted roles that define which actions they are allowed to take on specific Dataverse collections, datasets, and/or files. Each role comes with a set of permissions, which define the specific actions that users may take.

Roles and permissions may also be granted to groups. Groups can be defined as a set of Dataverse user accounts, a collection of IP addresses (e.g. all users of a library’s computers), or a collection of all users who log in using a particular institutional login (e.g. everyone who logs in with a particular university’s account credentials).

Dataset-Level

Admins or curators of a dataset can assign roles and permissions to the users of that dataset. If you are an admin or curator of a dataset, then you can get to the dataset permissions page by clicking the “Edit” button, highlighting “Permissions” from the dropdown list, and clicking “Dataset”.

When you access a dataset’s permissions page, you will see two sections:

Users/Groups: Here you can assign roles to specific users or groups, determining which actions they are permitted to take on your dataset. You can also reference a list of all users who have roles assigned to them for your dataset and remove their roles if you please. Some of the users listed may have roles assigned at the Dataverse collection level, in which case those roles can only be removed from the Dataverse collection permissions page.

Roles: Here you can reference a full list of roles that can be assigned to users of your dataset. Each role lists the permissions that it offers.

File-Level

If specific files in your dataset are restricted access, then you can grant specific users or groups access to those files while still keeping them restricted to the general public. If you are an admin or curator of a dataset, then you can get to the file-level permissions page by clicking the “Edit” button, highlighting “Permissions” from the dropdown list, and clicking “File”.

When you access a dataset’s file-level permissions page, you will see two sections:

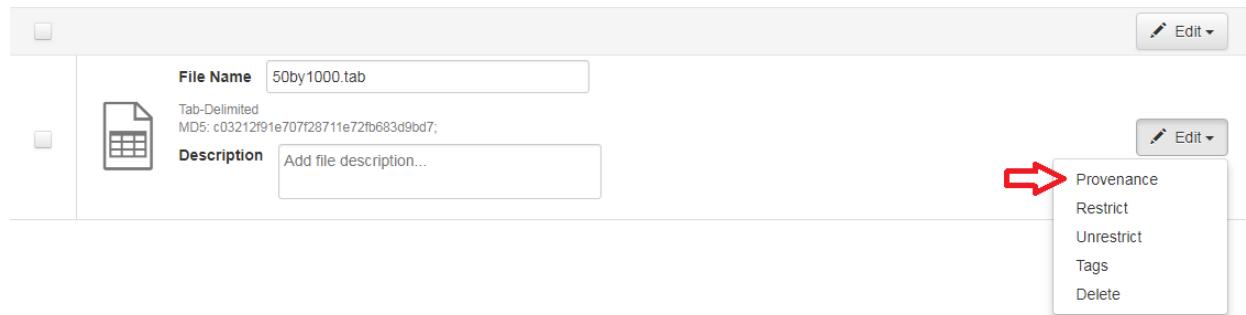
Users/Groups: Here you can see which users or groups have been granted access to which files. You can click the “Grant Access to Users/Groups” button to see a box where you can grant access to specific files within your dataset to specific users or groups. If any users have requested access to a file in your dataset, you can grant or reject their access request here.

Restricted Files: In this section, you can see the same information, but broken down by each individual file in your dataset. For each file, you can click the “Assign Access” button to see a box where you can grant access to that file to specific users or groups.

1.4.10 Data Provenance

Data Provenance is a record of where your data came from and how it reached its current form. It describes the origin of a data file, any transformations that have been made to that file, and any persons or organizations associated with that file. A data file’s provenance can aid in reproducibility and compliance with legal regulations. The Dataverse Software can help you keep track of your data’s provenance. Currently, the Dataverse Software only makes provenance information available to those who have edit permissions on your dataset, but in the future we plan to expand this feature to make provenance information available to the public.

A Dataverse installation accepts provenance information in two forms: a *Provenance File* or a free-text *Provenance Description*. You can attach this provenance information to your data files in a Dataverse installation as part of the file upload process, by clicking Edit -> Provenance:



This will open a window where you can add your Provenance File and/or Provenance Description:

Provenance is a record of the origin of your data file and any transformations it has been through. Upload a JSON file from a provenance capture tool to generate a graph of your data's provenance. For more information, please refer to our [User Guide](#).

Provenance File File must be JSON format and follow W3C standards.

+ Select File

Provenance Description Add provenance description...

Save Changes Cancel

A **Provenance File** is the preferred way of submitting provenance information to a Dataverse installation because it provides a detailed and trustworthy record. Provenance files are typically generated during the process of data analysis, using provenance capture tools like provR, RDataTracker, NoWorkflow, recordr, or CamFlow.

Once you upload a provenance file, the Dataverse installation will need some additional information in order to accurately connect it to your data file. Once provenance file upload finishes, an input box labeled “Connect entity” will appear under the file. Provenance files contain a list of “entities”, which include your data file as well as any objects associated with it (e.g. a chart, a spellchecker, etc.). You will need to tell the Dataverse installation which entity within the provenance file represents your data file. You may type the name of the entity into the box, or click the arrow next to the box and select the entity from a list of all entities in the provenance file.

For more information on entities and the contents of provenance files, see [the W3C PROV Model Primer](#).

Once you've uploaded your Provenance File and connected the proper entity, you can hit the Preview button to view the raw JSON of the Provenance File. This can help you confirm that you've uploaded the right file. Be sure to double-check it, because the Provenance File will made *permanent* once it's finalized. At that point you will not be able to *replace*, *remove*, or otherwise *edit* the Provenance File. This ensures that the Provenance File maintains a stable, immutable record of the data file's history. This finalization of the Provenance File happens at different points depending on the status of your data file. If this is a brand new data file that has never been published before, then its associated Provenance File will be made permanent once you publish the dataset. If this data file *has* been published in a previous version of your dataset, then its associated Provenance File will be made permanent as soon as you upload the Provenance File and click “Save Changes” on the warning popup.

A **Provenance Description** allows you to add more provenance information in addition to or in place of a provenance file. This is a free-text field that allows you to enter any information you feel might be relevant to those interested

in learning about the provenance of your data. This might be a good place to describe provenance factors like what operating system you used when working with the data file, what functions or libraries you used, how data was merged into the file, what version of the file you used, etc. The Provenance Description is not as useful or trustworthy as a provenance file, but it can still provide value. Unlike the Provenance File, the Provenance Description is never made permanent: you can always edit, remove, or replace it at any time.

You can return to attach provenance to your data file later on by clicking the “Add + Edit Metadata” button on the file page, and then clicking the “Edit -> Provenance” button.

1.4.11 Thumbnails + Widgets

Thumbnails

Thumbnail images can be assigned to a dataset manually or automatically. The thumbnail for a dataset appears on the search result card for that dataset and on the dataset page itself. If a dataset contains one or more data files that a Dataverse installation recognizes as an image, then one of those images is automatically selected as the dataset thumbnail.

If you would like to manually select your dataset’s thumbnail, you can do so by clicking the “Edit” button on your dataset, and selecting “Thumbnails + Widgets” from the dropdown menu.

On this page, under the Thumbnail tab you will see three possible actions.

Select Available File: Click the “Select Thumbnail” button to choose an image from your dataset to use as the dataset thumbnail.

Upload New File: Upload an image file from your computer to use as the dataset thumbnail. While by default your thumbnail image is drawn from a file in your dataset, this will allow you to upload a separate image file to use as your dataset thumbnail. This uploaded image file will only be used as the dataset thumbnail; it will not be stored as a data file in your dataset.

Remove Thumbnail: If you click the “Remove” button under the thumbnail image, you will remove the dataset’s current thumbnail. The Dataset will then revert to displaying a basic default icon as the dataset thumbnail.

When you’re finished on this page, be sure to click “Save Changes” to save what you’ve done.

Note: If you prefer, it is also possible to set an image file in your dataset as your thumbnail by selecting the file, going to Edit Files -> Metadata, and using the “Set Thumbnail” button.

Widgets

The Widgets feature provides you with code for your personal website so your dataset can be displayed. There are two types of Widgets for a dataset: the Dataset Widget and the Dataset Citation Widget. Widgets are found by going to your dataset page, clicking the “Edit” button (the one with the pencil icon) and selecting “Thumbnails + Widgets” from the dropdown menu.

In the Widgets tab, you can copy and paste the code snippets for the widget you would like to add to your website. If you need to adjust the height of the widget on your website, you may do so by editing the *heightPx=500* parameter in the code snippet.

Dataset Widget

The Dataset Widget allows the citation, metadata, files and terms of your dataset to be displayed on your website. When someone downloads a data file in the widget, it will download directly from the datasets on your website. If a file is restricted, they will be directed to your Dataverse installation to log in, instead of logging in through the widget on your site.

To edit your dataset, you will need to return to the Dataverse installation where the dataset is stored. You can easily do this by clicking on the link that says “Data Stored in (Name) Dataverse Collection” found in the bottom of the widget.

Dataset Citation Widget

The Dataset Citation Widget will provide a citation for your dataset on your personal or project website. Users can download the citation in various formats by using the Cite Data button. The persistent URL in the citation will direct users to the dataset in your Dataverse installation.

Adding Widgets to an OpenScholar Website

1. Log in to your OpenScholar website
2. Either build a new page or navigate to the page you would like to use to show the Dataverse collection and dataset widgets.
3. Click on the Settings Cog and select Layout
4. At the top right, select Add New Widget and under Misc. you will see the Dataverse Collection and the Dataverse Dataset Citation Widgets. Click on the widget you would like to add, fill out the form, and then drag it to where you would like it to display in the page.

1.4.12 Publish Dataset

When you publish a dataset (available to an Admin, Curator, or any custom role which has this level of permission assigned), you make it available to the public so that other users can browse or search for it. Once your dataset is ready to go public, go to your dataset page and click on the “Publish” button on the right hand side of the page. A pop-up will appear to confirm that you are ready to actually Publish since once a dataset is made public it can no longer be unpublished.

Before the Dataverse installation finalizes the publication of the dataset, it will attempt to validate all the physical files in it, to make sure they are present and intact. In an unlikely event that any files fail the validation, you will see an error message informing you that the problem must be fixed by the local Dataverse Installation Admin before the dataset can be published.

Whenever you edit your dataset, you are able to publish a new version of the dataset. The publish dataset button will reappear whenever you edit the metadata of the dataset or add a file.

Note: Prior to publishing your dataset the Data Citation will indicate that this is a draft but the “DRAFT VERSION” text will be removed as soon as you Publish.

1.4.13 Submit for Review

If you have a Contributor role (can edit metadata, upload files, and edit files, edit Terms, Guestbook, and submit datasets for review) in a Dataverse collection you can submit your dataset for review when you have finished uploading your files and filling in all of the relevant metadata fields. To submit your dataset for review, go to your dataset and click the “Submit for Review” button, which is located next to the “Edit” button on the upper-right. In the confirmation popup, you can review your selection of license (or custom terms, if available). Once you have confirmed the submission, the Admin or Curator for this Dataverse collection will be notified to review this dataset before they decide to either publish the dataset or click “Return to Author”. If the dataset is published, the contributor will be notified that it is now published. If the dataset is returned to the author, the contributor of this dataset will be notified that they need to make modifications before it can be submitted for review again.

1.4.14 Private URL to Review Unpublished Dataset

Creating a Private URL for your dataset allows you to share your dataset (for viewing and downloading of files) before it is published to a wide group of individuals who may not have a user account on the Dataverse installation. Anyone you send the Private URL to will not have to log into the Dataverse installation to view the dataset.

Note: To create a Private URL, you must have the *ManageDatasetPermissions* permission for your dataset, usually given by the *roles Curator* or *Administrator*.

1. Go to your unpublished dataset
2. Select the “Edit” button
3. Select “Private URL” in the dropdown menu
4. In the pop-up select “Create Private URL” or “Create URL for Anonymized Access”. The latter supports anonymous review by removing author names and other potentially identifying information from citations, version history tables, and some metadata fields (as configured by the administrator).
5. Copy the Private URL which has been created for this dataset and it can now be shared with anyone you wish to have access to view or download files in your unpublished dataset.

To disable a Private URL and to revoke access, follow the same steps as above until step #3 when you return to the popup, click the “Disable Private URL” button. Note that only one PrivateURL (normal or with anonymized access) can be configured per dataset at a time.

1.4.15 Embargoes

A Dataverse instance may be configured to support file-level embargoes. Embargoes make file content inaccessible after a dataset version is published - until the embargo end date. This means that file previews and the ability to download files will be blocked. The effect is similar to when a file is restricted except that the embargo will end at the specified date without further action and during the embargo, requests for file access cannot be made. Embargoes of files in a version 1.0 dataset may also affect the date shown in the dataset and file citations. The recommended practice is for the citation to reflect the date on which all embargoes on files in version 1.0 end. (Since Dataverse creates one persistent identifier per dataset and doesn't create new ones for each version, the publication of later versions, with or without embargoed files, does not affect the citation date.)

Embargoes are intended to support use cases where, for example, a journal or project team allows a period after publication of a dataset and/or the associated paper, during which the authors still have sole access to the data. Setting an embargo on relevant files and publishing the dataset in Dataverse publicizes the persistent identifier (e.g. DOI or Handle) for the dataset (and files if the instance is configured to create persistent identifiers for them) and makes the metadata, and any the content of un-embargoed files immediately available, but automatically denies access to any embargoed files until the specified embargoes expire. Once a dataset with embargoed files has been published, no further action is needed to cause the embargoed files to become accessible as of the specified embargo end date. (Note

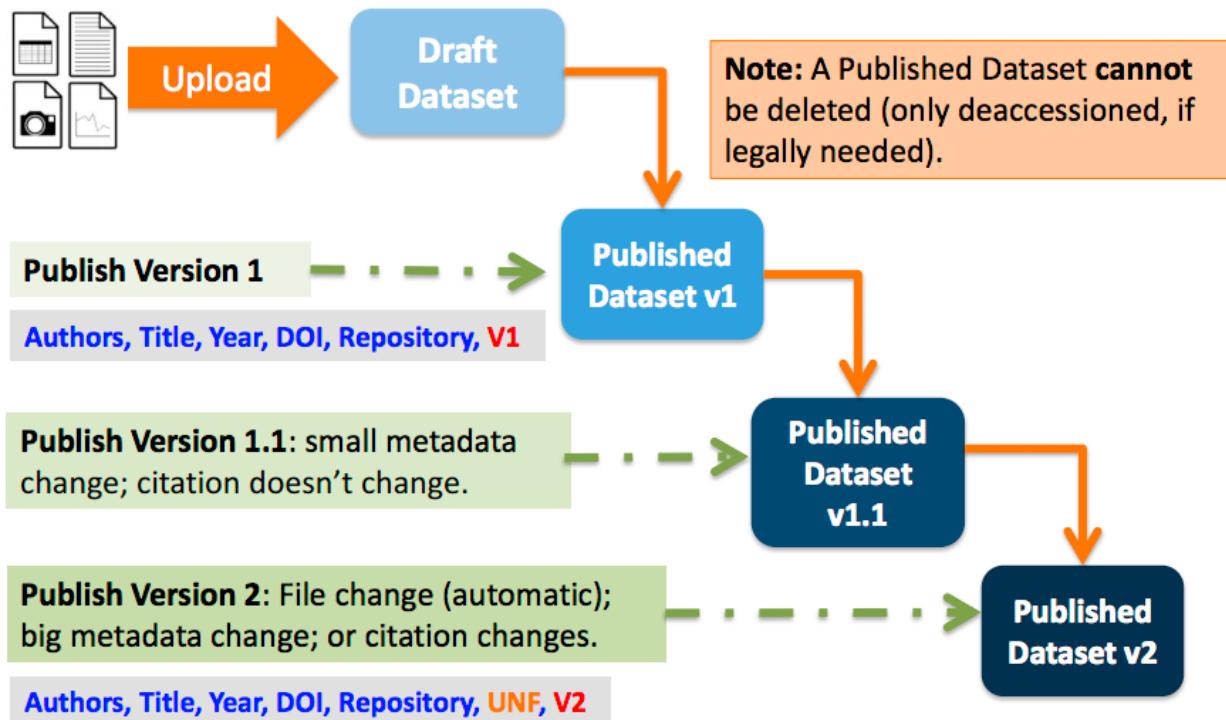
that embargoes can be set along with using the ‘restrict’ functionality on files. The restricted status will affect their availability as normal (and described elsewhere) once the embargo expires.)

- Setting the same embargo on all files in the dataset can be seen as providing a dataset-level embargo - making the dataset persistent identifier and metadata available but restricting access to all files.
- “Rolling” embargoes on time-series data can be supported by publishing multiple dataset versions and adding new embargoes on the files added in that version. For example, every year, files containing the prior year’s results can be added to a dataset and given an embargo ending one year later than the embargoes set in the last dataset version, and the new dataset version can then be published. The datafiles published in the different versions will become available when their individual embargoes expire at yearly intervals.

As the primary use case of embargoes is to make the existence of data known now, with a promise (to a journal, project team, etc.) that the data itself will become available at a given future date, users cannot change an embargo once a dataset version is published. Dataverse instance administrators do have the ability to correct mistakes and make changes if/when circumstances warrant.

1.4.16 Dataset Versions

Versioning is important for long-term research data management where metadata and/or files are updated over time. It is used to track any metadata or file changes (e.g., by uploading a new file, changing file metadata, adding or editing metadata) once you have published your dataset.



Once you edit your published dataset a new draft version of this dataset will be created. To publish this new version of your dataset, select the “Publish Dataset” button on the top right side of the page. If you were at version 1 of your dataset, depending on the types of changes you had made, you would be asked to publish your draft as either version 1.1 or version 2.0.

Important Note: If you add a file, your dataset will automatically be bumped up to a major version (e.g., if you were at 1.0 you will go to 2.0).

On the Versions tab of a dataset page, there is a versions table that displays the version history of the dataset. You can use the version number links in this table to navigate between the different versions of the dataset, including the unpublished draft version, if you have permission to access it.

There is also a Versions tab on the file page. The versions table for a file displays the same information as the dataset, but the summaries are filtered down to only show the actions related to that file. If a new dataset version were created without any changes to an individual file, that file's version summary for that dataset version would read “No changes associated with this version”.

Version Details

To view exactly what has changed, starting from the originally published version to any subsequent published versions: click the Versions tab on the dataset page to see all versions and changes made for that particular dataset.

Once you have more than one version (this can simply be version 1 and a draft), you can click the “View Details” link next to each summary to learn more about the metadata fields and files that were either added or edited. You can also click the checkboxes to select any two dataset versions, then click the “View Differences” button to open the Version Differences Details popup and compare the differences between them.

1.4.17 Dataset Metrics and Make Data Count

All Dataverse installations count file downloads. These file download counts are aggregated and reported at the Dataset level as well as at the file level.

Some Dataverse installations also have support for expanded metrics at the dataset level for views, file downloads, and citations using Make Data Count standards. [Make Data Count](#) is a project to collect and standardize metrics on data use, especially views, downloads, and citations. Citations for datasets are retrieved from [Crossref](#) via DataCite using Make Data Count standards.

For the specific API calls for Make Data Count, see [Dataset Metrics](#) in the [Native API](#) section of the API Guide.

1.4.18 Cloud Storage + Computing

Dataverse installations can be configured to facilitate cloud-based storage and/or computing (this feature is considered experimental at this time, and some of the kinks are still being worked out). While the default configuration for the Dataverse Software uses a local file system for storing data, a cloud-enabled Dataverse installation can use a Swift object storage database for its data. This allows users to perform computations on data using an integrated cloud computing environment.

Cloud Computing

The “Compute” button on dataset and file pages will allow you to compute on a single dataset, multiple datasets, or a single file. You can use it to build a compute batch and go directly to the cloud computing environment that is integrated with a Dataverse installation.

Cloud Storage Access

If you need to access a dataset in a more flexible way than the Compute button provides, then you can use the Cloud Storage Access box on the dataset page to copy the dataset's container name. This unique identifier can then be used to allow direct access to the dataset.

1.4.19 Dataset Deaccession

Warning: It is not recommended that you deaccession a dataset or a version of a dataset. This is a very serious action that should only occur if there is a legal or valid reason for the dataset to no longer be accessible to the public. If you absolutely must deaccession, you can deaccession a version of a dataset or an entire dataset.

To deaccession, go to your published dataset (or add a new one and publish it), click the “Edit” button, and from the dropdown menu select “Deaccession Dataset”. If you have multiple versions of a dataset, you can select here which versions you want to deaccession or choose to deaccession the entire dataset.

You must also include a reason as to why this dataset was deaccessioned. Select the most appropriate reason from the dropdown list of options. If you select “Other”, you must also provide additional information.

Add more information as to why this was deaccessioned in the free-text box. If the dataset has moved to a different repository or site you are encouraged to include a URL (preferably persistent) for users to continue to be able to access this dataset in the future.

If you deaccession the most recently published version of the dataset but not all versions of the dataset, you may then revisit an earlier version and create a new non-deaccessioned draft for the dataset. For example, imagine you have a version 1 and version 2 of a dataset, both published, and you deaccession version 2. You may then edit version 1 of the dataset and a new draft version will be created.

Important Note: A tombstone landing page with the basic citation metadata will always be accessible to the public if they use the persistent URL (Handle or DOI) provided in the citation for that dataset. Users will not be able to see any of the files or additional metadata that were previously available prior to deaccession.

1.5 Tabular Data File Ingest

Contents:

1.5.1 Supported File Formats

Tabular Data ingest supports the following file formats:

File format	Versions supported
SPSS (POR and SAV formats)	7 to 22
STATA	4 to 15
R	up to 3
Excel	XLSX only (XLS is NOT supported)
CSV (comma-separated values)	(limited support)

See the subsections in the left sidebar for more information on each of these supported formats.

1.5.2 Tabular Data, Representation, Storage and Ingest

This section explains the basics of how tabular data is handled in the application and what happens during the ingest process, as the files uploaded by the user are processed and converted into the archival format in the Dataverse application.

Contents:

- *What Happens During this “Ingest”?*
- *Tabular Data and Metadata*
 - *Data vs. Metadata*
 - *Tabular Metadata in the Dataverse Software*

What Happens During this “Ingest”?

The goal of our ingest process is to extract the data content from the user’s files and archive it in an application-neutral, easily-readable format. What does this mean? - Commercial applications such as SPSS and Stata use their own, proprietary formats to encode their files. Some companies publish the specifications of their formats (Thank you Stata - much appreciated!), some don’t (SPSS - yes, we are still frowning at you here at the Dataverse Project). Either way, reading these specially-formatted files requires some extra knowledge or special software. For these reasons they are not considered ideal for the purposes of archival preservation. The Dataverse installation stores the raw data content extracted from such files in plain text, TAB-delimited files. The metadata information that describes this content is stored separately, in a relational database, so that it can be accessed efficiently by the application. For the purposes of archival preservation it can be exported, in plain text XML files, using a standardized, open [DDI Codebook](#) format. (more info below)

Tabular Data and Metadata

Data vs. Metadata

A simple example is a numeric data column in a user’s Stata file that contains 0s and 1s. These numeric values will be extracted and stored in a TAB-delimited file. By themselves, if you don’t know what these values represent, these 1s and 0s are not meaningful data. So the Stata file has some additional information that describes this data vector: it represents the observation values of a *variable* with the *name* “party”; with a descriptive *label* “Party Affiliation”; and the 2 numeric values have *categorical labels* of “Democrat” for 0 and “Republican” for 1. This extra information that adds value to the data is *metadata*.

Tabular Metadata in the Dataverse Software

The structure of the metadata defining tabular data variables used in the Dataverse Software was originally based on the [DDI Codebook](#) format.

You can see an example of DDI output under the [Data Variable Metadata Access](#) section of the [Data Access API](#) section of the API Guide.

1.5.3 SPSS

SPSS data files (POR and SAV formats).

Contents:

- [Supported Versions](#)
- [Limitations](#)
- [SPSS Control Cards - not supported](#)
- [Support for Language Encodings in SPSS](#)

Supported Versions

The Dataverse Software supports reading of all SPSS versions 7 to 22. But please see the “Limitations” section.

Limitations

SPSS does not openly publish the specifications of their proprietary file formats. Our ability to read and parse their files is based on some documentation online from unofficial sources, and some reverse engineering. Because of that we cannot, unfortunately, guarantee to be able to process *any* SPSS file uploaded.

However, we've been improving this process for a few years by now, and it should be quite robust in the current version of the Dataverse Software. Thus your chances of success - uploading an SPSS files and having it turned into a fully functional tabular data table in the Dataverse installation - should be reasonably good.

If you are having a problem with a particular SPSS file, please contact our support and we'll see if it's something we could further improve in our SPSS ingest driver.

SPSS Control Cards - not supported

In the past, there have been attempts to support SPSS “control cards”, in addition to the .SAV and .POR files; both in the early VDC software, and in some versions of DVN. A “control card” is a plain text file with a set of SPSS commands that describe the raw data, provided in a separate, fixed-width-columns or comma-separated-values file. For various reasons, it has never been very successful.

Please contact us if you have any questions and/or strong feelings on this issue, or if you have serious amounts of data exclusively available in this format that you would like to ingest under the Dataverse Software.

Support for Language Encodings in SPSS

Historically, there was no support for specifying a particular language/code page encoding for the data stored in an SPSS file. Meaning, text values in non-ASCII encodings, or non-Latin characters could be entered and stored, but there was no setting to unambiguously specify what language, or what character set it was. By default, the Dataverse Software will try to interpret binary characters as UTF8. If that's not working - for example, if the descriptive labels and/or categorical values ingest as garbage - and if you happen to know what encoding was used in the original file, you can now specify it in the Ingest Options.

For example, if you know that the text in your SAV file is in Mandarin, and is encoded using the GB2312, specify it as follows:

Upload your file, in the “Edit Files” tab of the Dataset page. Once the file is recognized as SPSS/save, and *before* you click Save, go into the “Advanced Ingest Options”, and select “Simplified Chinese, GB2312” in the nested menu under “Language Encoding” -> “East Asian”.

1.5.4 Stata

Of all the third party statistical software providers, Stata does the best job at documenting the internal format of their files, by far. And at making that documentation freely and easily available to developers (yes, we are looking at you, SPSS). Because of that, Stata is the best supported format for tabular data ingest.

1.5.5 R Data Format

Support for R (.RData) files has been introduced in DVN 3.5.

Contents:

- *Overview*
- *Data Formatting Requirements*
- *Data Types, compared to other supported formats (Stat, SPSS)*
 - *Integers, Doubles, Character strings*
 - *R Factors*
 - *Boolean values*
 - *Limitations of R, as compared to SPSS and STATA*
- *Time values in R*

Overview

R has been increasingly popular in the research/academic community, owing to the fact that it is free and open-source (unlike SPSS and STATA). Consequently, there is an increasing amount of data available exclusively in R format.

Data Formatting Requirements

The data must be formatted as an R dataframe (`data.frame()`). If an .RData file contains multiple dataframes, only the first one will be ingested (this may change in the future).

Data Types, compared to other supported formats (Stat, SPSS)

Integers, Doubles, Character strings

The handling of these types is intuitive and straightforward. The resulting tab file columns, summary statistics and UNF signatures should be identical to those produced by ingesting the same vectors from SPSS and Stata.

Things that are unique to R:

R explicitly supports Missing Values for all of the types above; Missing Values encoded in R vectors will be recognized and preserved in TAB files, counted in the generated summary statistics and data analysis. Please note however that the Dataverse Software notation for a missing value, as stored in a TAB file, is an empty string, an not “NA” as in R.

In addition to Missing Values, R recognizes “Not a Value” (NaN) and positive and negative infinity for floating point variables. These are now properly supported by the Dataverse Software.

Also note, that unlike Stata, that does recognize “float” and “double” as distinct data types, all floating point values in R are in fact doubles.

R Factors

These are ingested as “Categorical Values” in the Dataverse installation.

One thing to keep in mind: in both Stata and SPSS, the actual value of a categorical variable can be both character and numeric. In R, all factor values are strings, even if they are string representations of numbers. So the values of the resulting categoricals in the Dataverse installation will always be of string type too.

Another thing to note is that R factors have no builtin support for SPSS or STATA-like descriptive labels. This is in fact potentially confusing, as they also use the word “label”, in R parlance. However, in the context of a factor in R, it still refers to the “payload”, or the data content of its value. For example, if you create a factor with the “labels” of *democrat*, *republican* and *undecided*, these strings become the actual values of the resulting vector. Once ingested in the Dataverse installation, these values will be stored in the tab-delimited file. The Dataverse Software DataVariable object representing the vector will be of type “Character” and have 3 VariableCategory objects with the *democrat*, etc. for **both** the CategoryValue and CategoryLabel. (In one of the future releases, we are planning to make it possible for the user to edit the CategoryLabel, using it for its intended purpose - as a descriptive, human-readable text text note).

To properly handle R vectors that are *ordered factors* the Dataverse Software (starting with DVN 3.6) supports the concept of an “Ordered Categorical” - a categorical value where an explicit order is assigned to the list of value labels.

Boolean values

R Boolean (logical) values are supported.

Limitations of R, as compared to SPSS and STATA

Most noticeably, R lacks a standard mechanism for defining descriptive labels for the data frame variables. In the Dataverse Software, similarly to both Stata and SPSS, variables have distinct names and labels; with the latter reserved for longer, descriptive text. With variables ingested from R data frames the variable name will be used for both the “name” and the “label”.

Optional R packages exist for providing descriptive variable labels; in one of the future versions support may be added for such a mechanism. It would of course work only for R files that were created with such optional packages.

Similarly, R categorical values (factors) lack descriptive labels too. **Note:** This is potentially confusing, since R factors do actually have “labels”. This is a matter of terminology - an R factor’s label is in fact the same thing as the “value” of a categorical variable in SPSS or Stata and the Dataverse Software; it contains the actual meaningful data for the given observation. It is NOT a field reserved for explanatory, human-readable text, such as the case with the SPSS/Stata “label”.

Ingesting an R factor with the level labels “MALE” and “FEMALE” will produce a categorical variable with “MALE” and “FEMALE” in the values and labels both.

Time values in R

This warrants a dedicated section of its own, because of some unique ways in which time values are handled in R.

R makes an effort to treat a time value as a real time instance. This is in contrast with either SPSS or Stata, where time value representations such as “Sep-23-2013 14:57:21” are allowed; note that in the absence of an explicitly defined time zone, this value cannot be mapped to an exact point in real time. R handles times in the “Unix-style” way: the value is converted to the “seconds-since-the-Epoch” Greenwich time (GMT or UTC) and the resulting numeric value is stored in the data file; time zone adjustments are made in real time as needed.

Things still get ambiguous and confusing when R **displays** this time value: unless the time zone was explicitly defined, R will adjust the value to the current time zone. The resulting behavior is often counter-intuitive: if you create a time value, for example:

```
timevalue<-as.POSIXct("03/19/2013 12:57:00", format = "%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%OS");
```

on a computer configured for the San Francisco time zone, the value will be differently displayed on computers in different time zones; for example, as “12:57 PST” while still on the West Coast, but as “15:57 EST” in Boston.

If it is important that the values are always displayed the same way, regardless of the current time zones, it is recommended that the time zone is explicitly defined. For example:

```
attr(timevalue, "tzone")<-"PST"
```

or

```
timevalue<-as.POSIXct("03/19/2013 12:57:00", format = "%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%OS", tz="PST");
```

Now the value will always be displayed as “15:57 PST”, regardless of the time zone that is current for the OS ... **BUT ONLY** if the OS where R is installed actually understands the time zone “PST”, which is not by any means guaranteed! Otherwise, it will **quietly adjust** the stored GMT value to **the current time zone**, yet it will still display it with the “PST” tag attached!** One way to rephrase this is that R does a fairly decent job **storing** time values in a non-ambiguous, platform-independent manner - but gives you no guarantee that the values will be displayed in any way that is predictable or intuitive.

In practical terms, it is recommended to use the long/descriptive forms of time zones, as they are more likely to be properly recognized on most computers. For example, “Japan” instead of “JST”. Another possible solution is to explicitly use GMT or UTC (since it is very likely to be properly recognized on any system), or the “UTC+<OFFSET>” notation. Still, none of the above **guarantees** proper, non-ambiguous handling of time values in R data sets. The fact that R **quietly** modifies time values when it doesn’t recognize the supplied timezone attribute, yet still appends it to the **changed** time value does make it quite difficult. (These issues are discussed in depth on R-related forums, and no attempt is made to summarize it all in any depth here; this is just to made you aware of this being a potentially complex issue!)

An important thing to keep in mind, in connection with the Dataverse Software ingest of R files, is that it will **reject** an R data file with any time values that have time zones that we can’t recognize. This is done in order to avoid (some) of the potential issues outlined above.

It is also recommended that any vectors containing time values ingested into the Dataverse installation are reviewed, and the resulting entries in the TAB files are compared against the original values in the R data frame, to make sure they have been ingested as expected.

Another **potential issue** here is the **UNF**. The way the UNF algorithm works, the same date/time values with and without the timezone (e.g. “12:45” vs. “12:45 EST”) **produce different UNFs**. Considering that time values in Stata/SPSS do not have time zones, but ALL time values in R do (yes, they all do - if the timezone wasn’t defined explicitly, it implicitly becomes a time value in the “UTC” zone!), this means that it is **impossible** to have 2 time value vectors, in Stata/SPSS and R, that produce the same UNF.

A pro tip: if it is important to produce SPSS/Stata and R versions of the same data set that result in the same UNF when ingested, you may define the time variables as **strings** in the R data frame, and use the “YYYY-MM-DD HH:mm:ss”

formatting notation. This is the formatting used by the UNF algorithm to normalize time values, so doing the above will result in the same UNF as the vector of the same time values in Stata.

Note: date values (dates only, without time) should be handled the exact same way as those in SPSS and Stata, and should produce the same UNFs.

1.5.6 Excel

Microsoft Excel files (XLSX format).

Contents:

- [Supported Formats](#)
- [Limitations](#)
- [Ingest Errors](#)
- [Example Data](#)

Supported Formats

Only the newer XLSX Excel files are supported. We are not planning to add support for the old-style, binary XLS files.

Limitations

If an Excel file has multiple sheets, only the first sheet of the file will be ingested. The other sheets will be available when a user downloads the original Excel file. To have all sheets of an Excel file ingested and searchable at the variable level, upload each sheet as an individual file in your dataset.

Ingest Errors

You may encounter ingest errors after uploading an Excel file if the file is formatted in a way that can't be ingested by the Dataverse software. Ingest errors can be caused by a variety of formatting inconsistencies, including:

- line breaks in a cell
- blank cells
- single cells that span multiple rows
- missing headers

Example Data

An example of an Excel file that successfully ingests is available in the Dataverse Sample Data GitHub repository.

1.5.7 CSV/TSV

Contents:

- *Ingest of Comma-Separated Values and Tab-Separated Values files as tabular data*
- *Main formatting requirements*
- *Limitations*
- *Recognized data types and formatting*

Ingest of Comma-Separated Values and Tab-Separated Values files as tabular data

The Dataverse installation will make an attempt to turn CSV and TSV files uploaded by the user into tabular data, using the [Apache CSV](#) parser.

Main formatting requirements

The first row in the document will be treated as the CSV's header, containing variable names for each column.

Each following row must contain the same number of comma-separated values ("cells") as that header.

As of the Dataverse Software 4.8 release, we allow ingest of CSV files with commas and line breaks within cells. A string with any number of commas and line breaks enclosed within double quotes is recognized as a single cell. Double quotes can be encoded as two double quotes in a row ("").

For example, the following lines:

```
a,b,"c,d  
efgh""ijk""l",m,n
```

are recognized as a **single** row with **5** comma-separated values (cells):

```
a  
b  
c,d\nefgh"ijk"l  
m  
n
```

(where \n is a new line character)

Limitations

Compared to other formats, relatively little information about the data ("variable-level metadata") can be extracted from a CSV file. Aside from the variable names supplied in the top line, the ingest will make an educated guess about the data type of each comma-separated column. One of the supported rich file formats (Stata, SPSS and R) should be used if you need to provide more descriptive variable-level metadata (variable labels, categorical values and labels, explicitly defined data types, etc.).

Recognized data types and formatting

The application will attempt to recognize numeric, string, and date/time values in the individual columns.

For dates, the yyyy-MM-dd format is recognized.

For date-time values, the following 2 formats are recognized:

yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss

yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss z (same format as the above, with the time zone specified)

For numeric variables, the following special values are recognized:

`inf`, `+inf` - as a special IEEE 754 “positive infinity” value;

`NaN` - as a special IEEE 754 “not a number” value;

An empty value (i.e., a comma followed immediately by another comma, or the line end), or `NA` - as a *missing value*.

`null` - as a numeric *zero*.

(any combinations of lower and upper cases are allowed in the notations above).

In character strings, an empty value (a comma followed by another comma, or the line end) is treated as an empty string (NOT as a *missing value*).

Any non-Latin characters are allowed in character string values, **as long as the encoding is UTF8**.

Note: When the ingest recognizes a CSV or TSV column as a numeric vector, or as a date/time value, this information is reflected and saved in the database as the *data variable metadata*. To inspect that metadata, select *Variable Metadata* listed as a download option for the tabular file. This will export the variable records in the DDI XML format. (Alternatively, this metadata fragment can be downloaded via the Data Access API; for example: <http://localhost:8080/api/access/datafile/<FILEID>/metadata/ddi>).

The most immediate implication is in the calculation of the UNF signatures for the data vectors, as different normalization rules are applied to numeric, character, and date/time values. (see the *Universal Numerical Fingerprint (UNF)* section for more information). If it is important to you that the UNF checksums of your data are accurately calculated, check that the numeric and date/time columns in your file were recognized as such (as `type=numeric` and `type=character`, `category=date(time)`, respectively). If, for example, a column that was supposed to be numeric is recognized as a vector of character values (strings), double-check that the formatting of the values is consistent. Remember, a single improperly-formatted value in the column will turn it into a vector of character strings, and result in a different UNF. Fix any formatting errors you find, delete the file from the dataset, and try to ingest it again.

1.6 Appendix

Additional documentation complementary to the User Guide.

Contents:

- *Metadata References*
 - *Supported Metadata*
 - *Experimental Metadata*
 - *See Also*

1.6.1 Metadata References

The Dataverse Project is committed to using standard-compliant metadata to ensure that a Dataverse installation's metadata can be mapped easily to standard metadata schemas and be exported into JSON format (XML for tabular file metadata) for preservation and interoperability.

Supported Metadata

Detailed below are what metadata schemas we support for Citation and Domain Specific Metadata in the Dataverse Project:

- **Citation Metadata** (see [.tsv version](#)): compliant with [DDI Lite](#), [DDI 2.5 Codebook](#), [DataCite 3.1](#), and Dublin Core's [DCMI Metadata Terms](#). Language field uses [ISO 639-1](#) controlled vocabulary.
- **Geospatial Metadata** (see [.tsv version](#)): compliant with DDI Lite, DDI 2.5 Codebook, DataCite, and Dublin Core. Country / Nation field uses [ISO 3166-1](#) controlled vocabulary.
- **Social Science & Humanities Metadata** (see [.tsv version](#)): compliant with DDI Lite, DDI 2.5 Codebook, and Dublin Core.
- **Astronomy and Astrophysics Metadata** (see [.tsv version](#)): These metadata elements can be mapped/exported to the International Virtual Observatory Alliance's (IVOA) [VOResource Schema format](#) and is based on [Virtual Observatory \(VO\) Discovery](#) and [Provenance Metadata](#) (see [.tsv version](#)).
- **Life Sciences Metadata** (see [.tsv version](#)): based on [ISA-Tab Specification](#), along with controlled vocabulary from subsets of the [OBI Ontology](#) and the [NCBI Taxonomy for Organisms](#).
- **Journal Metadata** (see [.tsv version](#)): based on the [Journal Archiving and Interchange Tag Set](#), version 1.2.

Experimental Metadata

Unlike supported metadata, experimental metadata is not enabled by default in a new Dataverse installation. Feedback via any [channel](#) is welcome!

- **CodeMeta Software Metadata**: based on the [CodeMeta Software Metadata Schema](#), version 2.0 (see [.tsv version](#))
- **Computational Workflow Metadata** (see [.tsv version](#)): adapted from [Bioschemas Computational Workflow Profile](#), version 1.0 and [Codemeta](#).

See Also

See also the [Dataverse Software 4.0 Metadata Crosswalk: DDI, DataCite, DC, DCTerms, VO, ISA-Tab document](#) and the [Metadata Customization](#) section of the Admin Guide.

ADMIN GUIDE

This guide documents the functionality only available to superusers (such as “dataverseAdmin”) through the *Dashboard* as well as command line utilities of interest to sysadmins.

Contents:

2.1 Dashboard

The Dataverse Software offers a dashboard of administrative tools for superusers only. If you are a logged-in superuser, you can access it by clicking your username in the navbar, and then clicking “Dashboard” from the dropdown. You can verify that you are a superuser by checking the color of your username in the navbar. If it’s red, you have the right permissions to use the Dashboard. Superusers can give other users the superuser status via *User Administration*.

Contents:

- *Harvesting*
 - *Harvesting Clients*
 - *Harvesting Servers*
- *Metadata Export*
- *Users*
- *Move Data*

2.1.1 Harvesting

Harvesting Clients

This dashboard tool allows you to set up which other repositories your Dataverse installation harvests metadata records from. You can see a list of harvesting clients and add, edit, or remove them. See the *Managing Harvesting Clients* section for more details.

Harvesting Servers

This dashboard tool allows you to define sets of local datasets to make available to remote harvesting clients. You can see a list of sets and add, edit, or remove them. See the [Managing Harvesting Server and Sets](#) section for more details.

2.1.2 Metadata Export

This part of the Dashboard is simply a reminder message that metadata export happens through the Dataverse Software API. See the [Metadata Export](#) section and the [Native API](#) section of the API Guide for more details.

2.1.3 Users

This dashboard tool allows you to search a list of all users of your Dataverse installation. You can remove roles from user accounts and assign or remove superuser status. See the [User Administration](#) section for more details.

2.1.4 Move Data

This tool allows you to move datasets. To move Dataverse collections, see the [Managing Datasets and Dataverse Collections](#) section.

2.2 External Tools

External tools can provide additional features that are not part of the Dataverse Software itself, such as data file previews, visualization, and curation.

Contents:

- [Inventory of External Tools](#)
- [Managing External Tools](#)
 - [Adding External Tools to a Dataverse Installation](#)
 - [Listing All External Tools in a Dataverse Installation](#)
 - [Showing an External Tool in a Dataverse Installation](#)
 - [Removing an External Tool From a Dataverse Installation](#)
- [Testing External Tools](#)
 - [File Level vs. Dataset Level](#)
 - [File Level Explore Tools](#)
 - [File Level Preview Tools](#)
 - [File Level Configure Tools](#)
 - [Dataset Level Explore Tools](#)
 - [Dataset Level Configure Tools](#)
- [Writing Your Own External Tool](#)

2.2.1 Inventory of External Tools

Tool	Type	Scope	Description
Data Explorer	explore	file	A GUI which lists the variables in a tabular data file allowing searching, charting and cross tabulation analysis. See the README.md file at https://github.com/scholarsportal/dataverse-data-explorer-v2 for the instructions on adding Data Explorer to your Dataverse.
Whole Tale	explore	dataset	A platform for the creation of reproducible research packages that allows users to launch containerized interactive analysis environments based on popular tools such as Jupyter and RStudio. Using this integration, Dataverse users can launch Jupyter and RStudio environments to analyze published datasets. For more information, see the Whole Tale User Guide .
File Previewers	explore	file	A set of tools that display the content of files - including audio, html, Hypothes.is annotations, images, PDF, text, video, tabular data, spreadsheets, GeoJSON, and ZipFiles - allowing them to be viewed without downloading the file. The previewers can be run directly from github.io, so the only required step is using the Dataverse API to register the ones you want to use. Documentation, including how to optionally brand the previewers, and an invitation to contribute through github are in the README.md file. Initial development was led by the Qualitative Data Repository and the spreadsheet previewer was added by the Social Sciences and Humanities Open Cloud (SSHOC) project. https://github.com/gdcc/dataverse-previewers
Data Curation Tool	configure	file	A GUI for curating data by adding labels, groups, weights and other details to assist with informed reuse. See the README.md file at https://github.com/scholarsportal/Dataverse-Data-Curation-Tool for the installation instructions.

2.2.2 Managing External Tools

Adding External Tools to a Dataverse Installation

To add an external tool to your Dataverse installation you must first download a JSON file for that tool, which we refer to as a “manifest”. It should look something like this:

```
{
  "displayName": "Fabulous File Tool",
  "description": "A non-existent tool that is fabulous fun for files!",
  "toolName": "fabulous",
  "scope": "file",
  "types": [
    "explore",
    "preview"
  ],
  "toolUrl": "https://fabulousfiletool.com",
  "contentType": "text/tab-separated-values",
  "httpMethod": "GET",
  "toolParameters": {
    "queryParameters": [
      {
        "fileid": "{fileId}"
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

},
{
  "datasetPid": "{datasetPid}"
},
{
  "locale":"{localeCode}"
}
],
"allowedApiCalls": [
{
  "name":"retrieveDataFile",
  "httpMethod":"GET",
  "urlTemplate":"/api/v1/access/datafile/{ fileId}",
  "timeOut":270
}
]
}
}

```

Go to [Inventory of External Tools](#) and download a JSON manifest for one of the tools by following links in the description to installation instructions.

Configure the tool with the curl command below, making sure to replace the `fabulousFileTool.json` placeholder for name of the JSON manifest file you downloaded.

```
curl -X POST -H 'Content-type: application/json' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/
→externalTools --upload-file fabulousFileTool.json
```

Listing All External Tools in a Dataverse Installation

To list all the external tools that are available in a Dataverse installation:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/externalTools
```

Showing an External Tool in a Dataverse Installation

To show one of the external tools that are available in a Dataverse installation, pass its database id:

```
export TOOL_ID=1
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/externalTools/$TOOL_ID
```

Removing an External Tool From a Dataverse Installation

Assuming the external tool database id is “1”, remove it with the following command:

```
export TOOL_ID=1
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/externalTools/$TOOL_ID
```

2.2.3 Testing External Tools

Once you have added an external tool to your Dataverse installation, you will probably want to test it to make sure it is functioning properly.

File Level vs. Dataset Level

File level tools are specific to the file type (content type or MIME type). For example, a tool may work with PDFs, which have a content type of “application/pdf”.

In contrast, dataset level tools are always available no matter what file types are within the dataset.

File Level Explore Tools

File level explore tools provide a variety of features from data visualization to statistical analysis.

For each supported file type, file level explore tools appear in the file listing of the dataset page as well as under the “Access” button on each file page.

File Level Preview Tools

File level preview tools allow the user to see a preview of the file contents without having to download it.

When a file has a preview available, a preview icon will appear next to that file in the file listing on the dataset page. On the file page itself, the preview will appear in a Preview tab either immediately or once a guestbook has been filled in or terms, if any, have been agreed to.

File Level Configure Tools

File level configure tools are only available when you log in and have write access to the file. The file type determines if a configure tool is available. For example, a configure tool may only be available for tabular files.

Dataset Level Explore Tools

Dataset level explore tools allow the user to explore all the files in a dataset.

Dataset Level Configure Tools

Configure tools at the dataset level are not currently supported.

2.2.4 Writing Your Own External Tool

If you plan to write a external tool, see the [Building External Tools](#) section of the API Guide.

If you have an idea for an external tool, please let the Dataverse Project community know by posting about it on the dataverse-community mailing list: <https://groups.google.com/forum/#!forum/dataverse-community>

2.3 Managing Harvesting Clients

Contents:

- [Your Dataverse Installation as a Metadata Harvester](#)
- [Managing Harvesting Clients](#)
 - [How to Stop a Harvesting Run in Progress](#)
 - [What if a Run Fails?](#)

2.3.1 Your Dataverse Installation as a Metadata Harvester

Harvesting is a process of exchanging metadata with other repositories. As a harvesting *client*, your Dataverse installation can gather metadata records from remote sources. These can be other Dataverse installations or other archives that support OAI-PMH, the standard harvesting protocol. Harvested metadata records will be indexed and made searchable by your users. Clicking on a harvested dataset in the search results takes the user to the original repository. Harvested datasets cannot be edited in your Dataverse installation.

Harvested records can be kept in sync with the original repository through scheduled incremental updates, daily or weekly. Alternatively, harvests can be run on demand, by the Admin.

2.3.2 Managing Harvesting Clients

To start harvesting metadata from a remote OAI repository, you first create and configure a *Harvesting Client*.

Clients are managed on the “Harvesting Clients” page accessible via the [Dashboard](#). Click on the *Add Client* button to get started.

The process of creating a new, or editing an existing client, is largely self-explanatory. It is split into logical steps, in a way that allows the user to go back and correct the entries made earlier. The process is interactive and guidance text is provided. For example, the user is required to enter the URL of the remote OAI server. When they click *Next*, the application will try to establish a connection to the server in order to verify that it is working, and to obtain the information about the sets of metadata records and the metadata formats it supports. The choices offered to the user on the next page will be based on this extra information. If the application fails to establish a connection to the remote archive at the address specified, or if an invalid response is received, the user is given an opportunity to check and correct the URL they entered.

How to Stop a Harvesting Run in Progress

Some harvesting jobs, especially the initial full harvest of a very large set - such as the default set of public datasets at IQSS - can take many hours. In case it is necessary to terminate such a long-running job, the following mechanism is provided (note that it is only available to a sysadmin with shell access to the application server): Create an empty file in the domain logs directory with the following name: `stopharvest_<name>.pid`, where `<name>` is the nickname of the harvesting client and `<pid>` is the process id of the Application Server (Payara). This flag file needs to be owned by the same user that's running Payara, so that the application can remove it after stopping the job in progress.

For example:

```
sudo touch /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/stopharvest_bigarchive.70916
sudo chown dataverse /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/stopharvest_
↪bigarchive.70916
```

Note: If the application server is stopped and restarted, any running harvesting jobs will be killed but may remain marked as in progress in the database. We thus recommend using the mechanism here to stop ongoing harvests prior to a server restart.

What if a Run Fails?

Each harvesting client run logs a separate file per run to the app server's default logging directory (`/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/` unless you've changed it). Look for filenames in the format `harvest_TARGET_YYYY_MM_DD_timestamp.log` to get a better idea of what's going wrong.

Note that you'll want to run a minimum of Dataverse Software 4.6, optimally 4.18 or beyond, for the best OAI-PMH interoperability.

2.4 Managing Harvesting Server and Sets

Contents:

- *Your Dataverse Installation as an OAI server*
- *How does it work?*
- *OAI Sets*
 - *Important: New Solr schema required!*
- *OAI Set updates*

2.4.1 Your Dataverse Installation as an OAI server

As a harvesting *server*, your Dataverse installation can make some of the local dataset metadata available to remote harvesting clients. These can be other Dataverse installations, or any other clients that support OAI-PMH harvesting protocol. Note that the terms “Harvesting Server” and “OAI Server” are being used interchangeably throughout this guide and in the inline help text.

If you want to learn more about OAI-PMH, you could take a look at [DataCite OAI-PMH guide](#) or the [OAI-PMH protocol definition](#).

You might consider adding your OAI-enabled Dataverse installation to [this shared list](#) of such instances.

The email portion of `:SystemEmail` will be visible via OAI-PMH (from the “Identify” verb).

2.4.2 How does it work?

Only the published datasets in your Dataverse installation can be made harvestable. Remote clients normally keep their records in sync through scheduled incremental updates, daily or weekly, thus minimizing the load on your server. Note that it is only the metadata that are harvested. Remote harvesters will generally not attempt to download the data files associated with the harvested datasets.

Harvesting server can be enabled or disabled on the “Harvesting Server” page accessible via the [Dashboard](#). Harvesting server is by default disabled on a brand new, “out of the box” Dataverse installation.

The OAI-PMH endpoint can be accessed at `http(s)://<Your Dataverse Installation FQDN>/oai`. If you want other services to harvest your repository, point them to this URL. *Example URL for ‘Identify’ verb:* [demo.dataverse.org OAI](http://demo.dataverse.org/oai)

2.4.3 OAI Sets

Once the service is enabled, you define collections of local datasets that will be available to remote harvesters as *OAI Sets*. Once again, the terms “OAI Set” and “Harvesting Set” are used interchangeably. Sets are defined by search queries. Any such query that finds any number of published, local (non-harvested) datasets can be used to create an OAI set. Sets can overlap local Dataverse collections, and can include as few or as many of your local datasets as you wish. A good way to master the Dataverse Software search query language is to experiment with the Advanced Search page. We also recommend that you consult the [Search API](#) section of the API Guide.

Once you have entered the search query and clicked *Next*, the number of search results found will be shown on the next screen. This way, if you are seeing a number that’s different from what you expected, you can go back and try to re-define the query.

Some useful examples of search queries to define OAI sets:

- A good way to create a set that would include all your local, published datasets is to do so by the Unique Identifier authority registered to your Dataverse installation, for example:

`dsPersistentId:"doi:1234/"`

Note that double quotes must be used, since the search field value contains the colon symbol!

Note also that the search terms limiting the results to published and local datasets **are added to the query automatically**, so you don’t need to worry about that.

- A query to create a set to include the datasets from a specific Dataverse collection:

`parentId:NNN`

where NNN is the database id of the Dataverse collection object (to verify the database ID, consult the Dataverse table of the SQL database used by the application or use the [View a Dataverse Collection](#) API endpoint).

Note that this query does **not** provide datasets that are linked into the specified Dataverse collection.

- A query to create a set to include the datasets from a specific Dataverse collection including datasets that have been deposited into other Dataverse collections but linked into the specified Dataverse collection:

`subtreePaths:"/NNN"`

where NNN is the database ID of the Dataverse collection (to verify the database ID, consult the Dataverse table of the SQL database used by the application or use the [View a Dataverse Collection](#) API endpoint). If the Dataverse collection has one or more parent collections, the subtreePaths query has to include the database IDs of each of the collection’s parent collections, up to but excluding the “Root” collection. For example:

```
subtreePaths:"/AAA/BBB/NNN"
```

where NNN is the database ID of the Dataverse collection containing the desired dataset and AAA and BBB are the database IDs of the parent collections.

- A query to find all the dataset by a certain author:

```
authorName:YYY
```

where YYY is the name.

- Complex queries can be created with multiple logical AND and OR operators. For example,

```
(authorName:YYY OR authorName:ZZZ) AND dsPublicationDate:NNNN
```

- Some further query examples:

For specific datasets using a persistentID:

```
(dsPersistentId:10.5000/ZZYYXX/ OR dsPersistentId:10.5000/XXYYZZ)
```

For all datasets within a specific ID authority:

```
dsPersistentId:10.5000/XXYYZZ
```

For all Dataverse collections with subjects of Astronomy and Astrophysics or Earth and Environmental Sciences:

```
(dvSubject:"Astronomy and Astrophysics" OR dvSubject:"Earth and Environmental Sciences")
```

For all datasets containing the keyword “censorship”:

```
keywordValue:censorship
```

Important: New Solr schema required!

In order to be able to define OAI sets, your Solr server must be upgraded with the search schema that came with release 4.5 (or later), and all your local datasets must be re-indexed, once the new schema is installed.

2.4.4 OAI Set updates

Every time a new harvesting set is created, or changes are made to an existing set, the contents of the set are automatically updated - the Dataverse installation will find the datasets defined by the query, and attempt to run the metadata export on the ones that haven't been exported yet. Only the datasets for which the export has completed successfully, and the results cached on the filesystem are included in the OAI sets advertised to the harvesting clients!

This is in contrast to how the sets used to be managed in DVN v.3, where sets had to be exported manually before any such changes had effect.

Important: Note however that changes made to the actual dataset metadata do not automatically trigger any corresponding OAI sets to be updated immediately! For example: let's say you have created an OAI set defined by the search query `authorName:king`, that resulted in 43 dataset records. If a new dataset by the same author is added and published, this **does not** immediately add the extra record to the set! It would simply be too expensive, to refresh all the sets every time any changes to the metadata are made.

The OAI set will however be updated automatically by a scheduled metadata export job that runs every night (at 2AM, by default). This export timer is created and activated automatically every time the application is deployed or restarted. See the [Metadata Export](#) section of the Admin Guide, for more information on the automated metadata exports.

It is still possible however to make changes like this be immediately reflected in the OAI server, by going to the *Harvesting Server* page and clicking the “Run Export” icon next to the desired OAI set.

2.5 Metadata Customization

The Dataverse Software has a flexible data-driven metadata system powered by “metadata blocks” that are listed in the [Appendix](#) section of the User Guide. In this section we explain the customization options.

Contents:

- *Introduction*
- *About the metadata block TSV*
 - *#metadataBlock properties*
 - *#datasetField (field) properties*
 - *#controlledVocabulary (enumerated) properties*
 - *FieldType definitions*
 - *displayFormat variables*
- *Metadata Block Setup*
 - *Exploring Metadata Blocks*
 - *Setting Up a Dev Environment for Testing*
 - *Editing TSV files*
 - *Loading TSV files into a Dataverse Installation*
 - *#metadataBlock properties*
 - *#datasetField (field) properties*
 - *#controlledVocabulary (enumerated) properties*
 - *Enabling a Metadata Block*
 - *Updating the Solr Schema*
- *Reloading a Metadata Block*
- *Using External Vocabulary Services*
- *Tips from the Dataverse Community*
- *Footnotes*

2.5.1 Introduction

Before you embark on customizing metadata in your Dataverse installation you should make sure you are aware of the modest amount of customization that is available with your Dataverse installation’s web interface. It’s possible to hide fields and make fields required or conditionally required by clicking “Edit” at the Dataverse collection level, clicking “General Information” and making adjustments under “Metadata Fields” as described in the [Create a New Dataverse Collection](#) section of the Dataverse Collection Management page in the User Guide.

Much more customization of metadata is possible, but this is an advanced topic so feedback on what is written below is very welcome. The possibilities for customization include:

- Editing and adding metadata fields
- Editing and adding instructional text (field label tooltips and text box watermarks)

- Editing and adding controlled vocabularies
- Changing which fields depositors must use in order to save datasets (see also *Dataset Templates* section of the User Guide.)
- Changing how saved metadata values are displayed in the UI

Generally speaking it is safer to create your own custom metadata block rather than editing metadata blocks that ship with the Dataverse Software, because changes to these blocks may be made in future releases. If you'd like to make improvements to any of the metadata blocks shipped with the Dataverse Software, please open an issue at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues> so it can be discussed before a pull request is made. Please note that the metadata blocks shipped with the Dataverse Software are based on standards (e.g. DDI for social science) and you can learn more about these standards in the *Appendix* section of the User Guide. If you have developed your own custom metadata block that you think may be of interest to the Dataverse community, please create an issue and consider making a pull request as described in the *Version Control* section of the Developer Guide.

In current versions of the Dataverse Software, custom metadata are no longer defined as individual fields, as they were in Dataverse Network (DVN) 3.x, but in metadata blocks. The Dataverse Software now ships with a citation metadata block, which includes mandatory fields needed for assigning persistent IDs to datasets, and domain specific metadata blocks. For a complete list, see the *Appendix* section of the User Guide.

Definitions of these blocks are loaded into a Dataverse installation in tab-separated value (TSV).^{1,2} While it is technically possible to define more than one metadata block in a TSV file, it is good organizational practice to define only one in each file.

The metadata block TSVs shipped with the Dataverse Software are in `/tree/develop/scripts/api/data/metadatablocks` and the corresponding ResourceBundle property files `/tree/develop/src/main/java` of the Dataverse Software GitHub repo. Human-readable copies are available in [this Google Sheets document](#) but they tend to get out of sync with the TSV files, which should be considered authoritative. The Dataverse Software installation process operates on the TSVs, not the Google spreadsheet.

2.5.2 About the metadata block TSV

Here we list and describe the purposes of each section and property of the metadata block TSV.

1. `metadataBlock`
 - Purpose: Represents the metadata block being defined.
 - Cardinality:
 - 0 or more per Dataverse installation
 - 1 per Metadata Block definition
2. `datasetField`
 - Purpose: Each entry represents a metadata field to be defined within a metadata block.
 - Cardinality: 1 or more per `metadataBlock`
3. `controlledVocabulary`
 - Purpose: Each entry enumerates an allowed value for a given `datasetField`.
 - Cardinality: zero or more per `datasetField`

Each of the three main sections own sets of properties:

¹ <https://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types/text/tab-separated-values>

² Although the structure of the data, as you'll see below, violates the "Each record must have the same number of fields" tenet of TSV

#metadataBlock properties

Property	Purpose	Allowed values and restrictions
name	A user-definable string used to identify a #metadataBlock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No spaces or punctuation, except underscore. • By convention, should start with a letter, and use lower camel case³ • Must not collide with a field of the same name in the same or any other #datasetField definition, including metadata blocks defined elsewhere.⁴
data-verse Alias	If specified, this metadata block will be available only to the Dataverse collection designated here by its alias and to children of that Dataverse collection.	Free text. For an example, see custom_hbgdki.tsv.
display-Name	Acts as a brief label for display related to this #metadataBlock.	Should be relatively brief. The limit is 256 character, but very long names might cause display problems.
block-URI	Associates the properties in a block with an external URI. Properties will be assigned the global identifier block-URI<name> in the OAI_ORE metadata and archival Bags	The citation #metadataBlock has the blockURI https://dataverse.org/schema/citation/ which assigns a default global URI to terms such as https://dataverse.org/schema/citation/subtitle

³ <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CamelCase>⁴ These field names are added to the Solr schema.xml and cannot be duplicated. See “Editing TSV files” for how to check for duplication.

#datasetField (field) properties

Property	Purpose	Allowed values and restrictions	
name	A user-definable string used to identify a #datasetField. Maps directly to field name used by Solr.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (from DatasetFieldType.java) The internal DDI-like name, no spaces, etc. (from Solr) Field names should consist of alphanumeric or underscore characters only and not start with a digit. This is not currently strictly enforced, but other field names will not have first class support from all components and back compatibility is not guaranteed. Names with both leading and trailing underscores (e.g. _version_) are reserved. Must not collide with a field of the same name in another #metadataBlock definition or any name already included as a field in the Solr index. 	
title	Acts as a brief label for display related to this #datasetField.	Should be relatively brief.	
description	Used to provide a description of the field.	Free text	
watertextmark	A string to initially display in a field as a prompt for what the user should enter.	Free text	
fieldType	Defines the type of content that the field, if not empty, is meant to contain.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> none date email text textbox url int float See below for field-type definitions
displayOrder	Controls the sequence in which the fields are displayed, both for input and presentation.	Non-negative integer.	
displayFormat	Controls how the content is displayed for presentation (not entry). The value of this field may contain one or more special variables (enumerated below). HTML tags, likely in conjunction with one or more of these values, may be used to control the display of content in the web UI.	See below for displayFormat variables	
advancedSearchField	Specify whether this field is available in advanced search.	TRUE (available) or FALSE (not available)	
controlledVocabulary	Specify whether the possible values of this field are determined by values in the #controlledVocabulary section.	TRUE (controlled) or FALSE (not controlled)	75

#controlledVocabulary (enumerated) properties

Property	Purpose	Allowed values and restrictions
DatasetField	Specifies the #datasetField to which #datasetField to which this entry applies.	Must reference an existing #datasetField. As a best practice, the value should reference a #datasetField in the current metadata block definition. (It is technically possible to reference an existing #datasetField from another metadata block.)
Value	A short display string, representing an enumerated value for this field. If the identifier property is empty, this value is used as the identifier.	Free text
identifier	A string used to encode the selected enumerated value of a field. If this property is empty, the value of the “Value” field is used as the identifier.	Free text
displayOrder	Control the order in which the enumerated values are displayed for selection.	Non-negative integer.

FieldType definitions

Field type	Definition
none	Used for compound fields, in which case the parent field would have no value and display no data entry control.
date	A date, expressed in one of three resolutions of the form YYYY-MM-DD, YYYY-MM, or YYYY.
email	A valid email address. Not indexed for privacy reasons.
text	Any text other than newlines may be entered into this field.
textbox	Any text may be entered. For input, the Dataverse Software presents a multi-line area that accepts newlines. While any HTML is permitted, only a subset of HTML tags will be rendered in the UI. See the Supported HTML Fields section of the Dataset + File Management page in the User Guide.
url	If not empty, field must contain a valid URL.
int	An integer value destined for a numeric field.
float	A floating point number destined for a numeric field.

displayFormat variables

These are common ways to use the displayFormat to control how values are displayed in the UI. This list is not exhaustive.

⁵ “displayoncreate” was “showabovefold” in Dataverse Software <=4.3.1 (see #3073) but parsing is done based on column order rather than name so this only matters to the person reading the TSV file.

Variable	Description
(blank)	The displayFormat is left blank for primitive fields (e.g. subtitle) and fields that do not take values (e.g. author), since displayFormats do not work for these fields.
#VALUE	The value of the field (instance level).
#NAME	The name of the field (class level).
#EMAIL	For displaying emails.
#VALUE	For displaying the value as a link (if the value entered is a link).
#VALUE	For displaying the value as a link, with the value included in the URL (e.g. if URL is http://emsearch.rutgers.edu/atlas/#VALUE_summary.html , and the value entered is 1001, the field is displayed as 1001 (hyperlinked to http://emsearch.rutgers.edu/atlas/1001_summary.html)).
 	For displaying the image of an entered image URL (used to display images in the producer and distributor logos metadata fields).
#VALUE: - #VALUE: (#VALUE)	Appends and/or prepends characters to the value of the field. e.g. if the displayFormat for the distributorAffiliation is (#VALUE) (wrapped with parens) and the value entered is University of North Carolina, the field is displayed in the UI as (University of North Carolina).
; : ,	Displays the character (e.g. semicolon, comma) between the values of fields within compound fields. For example, if the displayFormat for the compound field “series” is a colon, and if the value entered for seriesName is IMPs and for seriesInformation is A collection of NMR data, the compound field is displayed in the UI as IMPs: A collection of NMR data.

2.5.3 Metadata Block Setup

Now that you understand the TSV format used for metadata blocks, the next step is to attempt to make improvements to existing metadata blocks or create entirely new metadata blocks. For either task, you should have a Dataverse Software development environment set up for testing where you can drop the database frequently while you make edits to TSV files. Once you have tested your TSV files, you should consider making a pull request to contribute your improvement back to the community.

Exploring Metadata Blocks

In addition to studying the TSV files themselves you will probably find the [Metadata Blocks](#) API helpful in getting a structured dump of metadata blocks in JSON format.

There are also a few older, highly experimental, and subject-to-change API endpoints under the “admin” API documented below but the public API above is preferred.

You can get a dump of metadata fields like this:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/datasetfield
```

To see details about an individual field such as “title” in the example below:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/datasetfield/title
```

Setting Up a Dev Environment for Testing

You have several options for setting up a dev environment for testing metadata block changes:

- Vagrant: See the [Tools](#) section of the Developer Guide.
- docker-aio: See <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/tree/develop/conf/docker-aio>
- AWS deployment: See the [Deployment](#) section of the Developer Guide.
- Full dev environment: See the [Development Environment](#) section of the Developer Guide.

To get a clean environment in Vagrant, you'll be running `vagrant destroy`. In Docker, you'll use `docker rm`. For a full dev environment or AWS installation, you might find `rebuild` and related scripts at `scripts/deploy/phoenix.dataverse.org` useful.

Editing TSV files

Early in Dataverse Software 4.0 development, metadata blocks were edited in the Google spreadsheet mentioned above and then exported in TSV format. This worked fine when there was only one person editing the Google spreadsheet but now that contributions are coming in from all over, the TSV files are edited directly. We are somewhat painfully aware that another format such as XML might make more sense these days. Please see <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/4451> for a discussion of non-TSV formats.

Please note that metadata fields share a common namespace so they must be unique. The following curl command will print the list of metadata fields already available in the system:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/solr/schema
```

We'll use this command again below to update the Solr schema to accomodate metadata fields we've added.

Loading TSV files into a Dataverse Installation

A number of TSV files are loaded into a newly-installed Dataverse installation, becoming the metadata blocks you see in the UI. For the list of metadata blocks that are included with the Dataverse Software out of the box, see the [Appendix](#) section of the User Guide.

Along with TSV file, there are corresponding ResourceBundle property files with key=value pair [here](#). To add other language files, see the [Configuration](#) for `dataverse.lang.directory` JVM Options section, and add a file, for example: “`citation_lang.properties`” to the path you specified for the `dataverse.lang.directory` JVM option, and then restart the app server.

If you are improving an existing metadata block, the Dataverse Software installation process will load the TSV for you, assuming you edited the TSV file in place. The TSV file for the Citation metadata block, for example, can be found at `scripts/api/data/metadatablocks/citation.tsv`. If any of the below mentioned property values are changed, corresponding ResourceBundle property file has to be edited and stored under `dataverse.lang.directory` location

- name, displayName property under `#metadataBlock`
- name, title, description, watermark properties under `#datasetfield`
- DatasetField, Value property under `#controlledVocabulary`

If you are creating a new custom metadata block (hopefully with the idea of contributing it back to the community if you feel like it would provide value to others), the Dataverse Software installation process won't know about your new TSV file so you must load it manually. The script that loads the TSV files into the system is `scripts/api/setup-datasetfields.sh` and contains a series of curl commands. Here's an example of the necessary curl command with the new custom metadata block in the “`/tmp`” directory.

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/datasetfield/load -H "Content-type: text/tab-separated-values" -X POST --upload-file /tmp/new-metadata-block.tsv
```

To create a new ResourceBundle, here are the steps to generate key=value pair for the three main sections:

#metadataBlock properties

metadatablock.name=(the value of **name** property from #metadatablock)

metadatablock.displayName=(the value of **displayName** property from #metadatablock)

example:

metadatablock.name=citation

metadatablock.displayName=Citation Metadata

#datasetField (field) properties

datasetfieldtype.(the value of **name** property from #datasetField).title=(the value of **title** property from #datasetField)

datasetfieldtype.(the value of **name** property from #datasetField).description=(the value of **description** property from #datasetField)

datasetfieldtype.(the value of **name** property from #datasetField).watermark=(the value of **watermark** property from #datasetField)

example:

datasetfieldtype.title.title=Title

datasetfieldtype.title.description=Full title by which the Dataset is known.

datasetfieldtype.title.watermark=Enter title...

#controlledVocabulary (enumerated) properties

controlledvocabulary.(the value of **DatasetField** property from #controlledVocabulary).(the value of **Value** property from #controlledVocabulary)=(the value of **Value** property from #controlledVocabulary)

Since the **Value** property from #controlledVocabulary is free text, while creating the key, it has to be converted to lowercase, replace space with underscore, and strip accents.

example:

controlledvocabulary.subject.agricultural_sciences=Agricultural Sciences

controlledvocabulary.language.marathi_(marathi)=Marathi (Maru0101u1E6Dhu012B)

Enabling a Metadata Block

Running a curl command like “load” example above should make the new custom metadata block available within the system but in order to start using the fields you must either enable it from the UI (see *General Information* section of Dataverse Collection Management in the User Guide) or by running a curl command like the one below using a superuser API token. In the example below we are enabling the “journal” and “geospatial” metadata blocks for the root Dataverse collection:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST -H "Content-type:application/json" -d "[\"journal\",\"geospatial\"]" http://localhost:8080/api/dataverses/:root/metadatablocks
```

Updating the Solr Schema

Once you have enabled a new metadata block you should be able to see the new fields in the GUI but before you can save the dataset, you must add additional fields to your Solr schema.

An API endpoint of your Dataverse installation provides you with a generated set of all fields that need to be added to the Solr schema configuration, including any enabled metadata schemas:

```
curl "http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/solr/schema"
```

You can use `update-fields.sh` under `/conf/solr/8.11.1/update-fields.sh` to easily add these to the Solr schema you installed for your Dataverse installation.

The script needs a target XML file containing your Solr schema. (See the *Prerequisites* section of the Installation Guide for a suggested location on disk for the Solr schema file.)

You can either pipe the downloaded schema to the script or provide the file as an argument. (We recommended you to take a look at usage output of `update-fields.sh -h`)

Listing 1: Example usage of `update-fields.sh`

```
curl "http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/solr/schema" | update-fields.sh /usr/local/  
solr/server/solr/collection1/conf/schema.xml
```

You will need to reload your Solr schema via an HTTP-API call, targeting your Solr instance:

```
curl "http://localhost:8983/solr/admin/cores?action=RELOAD&core=collection1"
```

You can easily roll your own little script to automate the process (which might involve fetching the schema bits from some place else than your Dataverse installation).

Please note that reconfigurations of your Solr index might require a re-index. Usually release notes indicate a necessary re-index, but for your custom metadata you will need to keep track on your own.

Please note also that if you are going to make a pull request updating `conf/solr/8.11.1/schema.xml` with fields you have added, you should first load all the custom metadata blocks in `scripts/api/data/metadatablocks` (including ones you don’t care about) to create a complete list of fields. (This might change in the future.)

2.5.4 Reloading a Metadata Block

As mentioned above, changes to metadata blocks that ship with the Dataverse Software will be made over time to improve them and release notes will sometimes instruct you to reload an existing metadata block. The syntax for reloading is the same as loading. Here's an example with the "citation" metadata block:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/datasetfield/load -H "Content-type: text/tab-separated-values" -X POST --upload-file citation.tsv
```

Great care must be taken when reloading a metadata block. Matching is done on field names (or identifiers and then names in the case of controlled vocabulary values) so it's easy to accidentally create duplicate fields.

The ability to reload metadata blocks means that SQL update scripts don't need to be written for these changes. See also the [SQL Upgrade Scripts](#) section of the Developer Guide.

2.5.5 Using External Vocabulary Services

The Dataverse software has a mechanism to associate specific fields defined in metadata blocks with a vocabulary(ies) managed by external services. The mechanism relies on trusted third-party Javascripts. The mapping from field type to external vocabulary(ies) is managed via the `:CvocConf` setting.

This functionality is considered 'experimental'. It may require significant effort to configure and is likely to evolve in subsequent Dataverse software releases.

The effect of configuring this mechanism is similar to that of defining a field in a metadata block with 'allowControlled-Vocabulary=true':

- Users are able to select from a controlled list of values.
- Values can be shown in any language the term has been defined in.

In general, the external vocabulary support mechanism may be a better choice for large vocabularies, hierarchical/structured vocabularies, and/or vocabularies managed by third-parties. In addition, the external vocabulary mechanism differs from the internal controlled vocabulary mechanism in several ways that may make it a preferred option:

- the machine-readable URI form of a vocabulary is stored in the Dataverse database and can be included in exported metadata files.
- vocabulary mappings can be changed without changing the metadata block, making it possible for different Dataverse installations to use different vocabularies in the same field.
- mappings can associate a field with more than one vocabulary.
- mappings can be configured to also allow custom/free-text entries as well as vocabulary values.
- mappings can be configured for compound fields and a user's selection of a given vocabulary value can be used to fill in related child fields (e.g. selection of a keyword could fill in a vocabulary name field as well).
- removing a mapping does not affect stored values (the field would revert to allowing free text).

The specifics of the user interface for entering/selecting a vocabulary term and how that term is then displayed are managed by third-party Javascripts. The initial Javascripts that have been created provide auto-completion, displaying a list of choices that match what the user has typed so far, but other interfaces, such as displaying a tree of options for a hierarchical vocabulary, are possible. Similarly, existing scripts do relatively simple things for displaying a term - showing the term's name in the appropriate language and providing a link to an external URL with more information, but more sophisticated displays are possible.

Scripts supporting use of vocabularies from services supporting the SKOSMOS protocol (see <https://skosmos.org>) and retrieving ORCIDs (from <https://orcid.org>) are available <https://github.com/gdcc/dataverse-external-vocab-support>. (Custom scripts can also be used and community members are encouraged to share new scripts through the dataverse-external-vocab-support repository.)

Configuration involves specifying which fields are to be mapped, whether free-text entries are allowed, which vocabulary(ies) should be used, what languages those vocabulary(ies) are available in, and several service protocol and service instance specific parameters. These are all defined in the `:CVocConf` setting as a JSON array. Details about the required elements as well as example JSON arrays are available at <https://github.com/gdcc/dataverse-external-vocab-support>, along with an example metadata block that can be used for testing. The scripts required can be hosted locally or retrieved dynamically from <https://gdcc.github.io/> (similar to how dataverse-previewers work).

Please note that in addition to the `:CVocConf` described above, an alternative is the `:ControlledVocabularyCustom-JavaScript` setting.

2.5.6 Tips from the Dataverse Community

When creating new metadata blocks, please review the `Text` section of the Style Guide, which includes guidance about naming metadata fields and writing text for metadata tooltips and watermarks.

If there are tips that you feel are omitted from this document, please open an issue at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues> and consider making a pull request to make improvements. You can find this document at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/blob/develop/doc/sphinx-guides/source/admin/metadatacustomization.rst>

Alternatively, you are welcome to request “edit” access to this “Tips for Dataverse Software metadata blocks from the community” Google doc: <https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Xpb1Rw0v0SvV-Bq6njlN96WyHJ7tqG0WWejqBdl7hE0/edit?usp=sharing>

The thinking is that the tips can become issues and the issues can eventually be worked on as features to improve the Dataverse Software metadata system.

2.5.7 Footnotes

2.6 Metadata Export

Contents:

- [Automatic Exports](#)
- [Batch Exports Through the API](#)
- [Export Failures](#)
- [Downloading Metadata via GUI](#)
- [Downloading Metadata via API](#)

2.6.1 Automatic Exports

Publishing a dataset automatically starts a metadata export job, that will run in the background, asynchronously. Once completed, it will make the dataset metadata exported and cached in all the supported formats listed under [Supported Metadata Export Formats](#) in the [Dataset + File Management](#) section of the User Guide.

A scheduled timer job that runs nightly will attempt to export any published datasets that for whatever reason haven’t been exported yet. This timer is activated automatically on the deployment, or restart, of the application. So, again, no need to start or configure it manually. (See the [Dataverse Installation Application Timers](#) section of this Admin Guide for more information.)

2.6.2 Batch Exports Through the API

In addition to the automated exports, a Dataverse installation admin can start a batch job through the API. The following four API calls are provided:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/metadata/exportAll
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/metadata/reExportAll
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/metadata/clearExportTimestamps
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/metadata/:persistentId/reExportDataset?
persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000
```

The first will attempt to export all the published, local (non-harvested) datasets that haven't been exported yet. The second will *force* a re-export of every published, local dataset, regardless of whether it has already been exported or not.

The first two calls return a status message informing the administrator that the process has been launched (`{"status": "WORKFLOW_IN_PROGRESS"}`). The administrator can check the progress of the process via log files: [Payara directory]/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/export_[time stamp].log.

Instead of running “reExportAll” the same can be accomplished using “clearExportTimestamps” followed by “exportAll”. The difference is that when exporting prematurely fails due to some problem, the datasets that did not get exported yet still have the timestamps cleared. A next call to exportAll will skip the datasets already exported and try to export the ones that still need it. Calling clearExportTimestamps should return `{"status": "OK", "data": {"message": "cleared: X"}}` where “X” is the total number of datasets cleared.

The reExportDataset call gives you the opportunity to *force* a re-export of only a specific dataset and (with some script automation) could allow you the export specific batches of datasets. This might be useful when handling exporting problems or when reExportAll takes too much time and is overkill. Note that [Export Metadata of a Dataset in Various Formats](#) is a related API.

reExportDataset can be called with either `persistentId` (as shown above, with a DOI) or with the database id of a dataset (as shown below, with “42” as the database id).

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/metadata/42/reExportDataset
```

Note, that creating, modifying, or re-exporting an OAI set will also attempt to export all the unexported datasets found in the set.

2.6.3 Export Failures

An export batch job, whether started via the API, or by the application timer, will leave a detailed log in your configured logs directory. This is the same location where your main app server logs are found. The name of the log file is `export_[timestamp].log` - for example, `export_2016-08-23T03-35-23.log`. The log will contain the numbers of datasets processed successfully and those for which metadata export failed, with some information on the failures detected. Please attach this log file if you need to contact Dataverse Project support about metadata export problems.

2.6.4 Downloading Metadata via GUI

The [Dataset + File Management](#) section of the User Guide explains how end users can download the metadata formats above from your Dataverse installation's GUI.

2.6.5 Downloading Metadata via API

The [Native API](#) section of the API Guide explains how end users can download the metadata formats above via API.

2.7 Dataverse Installation Application Timers

Your Dataverse installation uses timers to automatically run scheduled Harvest and Metadata export jobs.

Contents:

- [Dedicated timer server in a Dataverse Installation server cluster](#)
- [Harvesting Timers](#)
- [Metadata Export Timer](#)
- [Saved Searches Links Timer](#)
- [Known Issues](#)

2.7.1 Dedicated timer server in a Dataverse Installation server cluster

When running a Dataverse installation cluster - i.e. multiple Dataverse installation application servers talking to the same database - **only one** of them must act as the *dedicated timer server*. This is to avoid starting conflicting batch jobs on multiple nodes at the same time.

This does not affect a single-server installation. So you can safely skip this section unless you are running a multi-server cluster.

The following JVM option instructs the application to act as the dedicated timer server:

`-Ddataverse.timerServer=true`

IMPORTANT: Note that this option is automatically set by the Dataverse Software installer script. That means that when **configuring a multi-server cluster**, it will be the responsibility of the installer to remove the option from the domain.xml of every node except the one intended to be the timer server.

2.7.2 Harvesting Timers

These timers are created when scheduled harvesting is enabled by a local admin user (via the “Manage Harvesting Clients” page).

In a multi-node cluster, all these timers will be created on the dedicated timer node (and not necessarily on the node where the harvesting clients were created and/or saved).

A timer will be automatically removed when a harvesting client with an active schedule is deleted, or if the schedule is turned off for an existing client.

2.7.3 Metadata Export Timer

This timer is created automatically whenever the application is deployed or restarted. There is no admin user-accessible configuration for this timer.

This timer runs a daily job that tries to export all the local, published datasets that haven't been exported yet, in all supported metadata formats, and cache the results on the filesystem. (Note that normally an export will happen automatically whenever a dataset is published. This scheduled job is there to catch any datasets for which that export did not succeed, for one reason or another). Also, since this functionality has been added in Dataverse Software 4.5: if you are upgrading from a previous version, none of your datasets are exported yet. So the first time this job runs, it will attempt to export them all.

This daily job will also update all the harvestable OAI sets configured on your server, adding new and/or newly published datasets or marking deaccessioned datasets as "deleted" in the corresponding sets as needed.

This job is automatically scheduled to run at 2AM local time every night.

2.7.4 Saved Searches Links Timer

This timer is created automatically from an @Schedule annotation on the makeLinksForAllSavedSearchesTimer method of the SavedSearchServiceBean when the bean is deployed.

This timer runs a weekly job to create links for any saved searches that haven't been linked yet.

This job is automatically scheduled to run once a week at 12:30AM local time on Sunday. If really necessary, it is possible to change that time by deploying the application war file with an ejb-jar.xml file in the WEB-INF directory of the war file. A sample file at /_static/admin/ejb-jar.xml would run the job every Tuesday at 2:30PM. The schedule can be modified to your choice by editing the fields in the session section. If other EJBs require some form of configuration using an ejb-jar file, there should be one ejb-jar file for the entire application, which can have different sections for each EJB. Below are instructions for the simple case of adding the ejb-jar.xml for the first time and making a custom schedule for the saved search timer.

Create or edit `dataverse/src/main/webapp/WEB-INF/ejb-jar.xml`, following the sample file provided at `/_static/admin/ejb-jar.xml`.

Edit the parameters in the `<schedule>` section of the ejb-jar file in the WEB-INF directory to suit your preferred schedule.

The provided parameters in the sample file are `<minute>`, `<hour>`, and `<dayOfWeek>`; additional parameters are available.

For a complete reference for calendar expressions that can be used to schedule Timer services see: <https://docs.oracle.com/javaee/7/tutorial/ejb-basicexamples004.htm>

Build and deploy the application.

Alternatively, you can insert an ejb-jar.xml file into a provided Dataverse Software war file without building the application.

Check if there is already an ejb-jar.xml file in the war file:

```
jar tvf $DATaverse-WAR-FILENAME | grep ejb-jar.xml
```

If the response includes `WEB-INF/ejb-jar.xml`, you will need to extract the ejb-jar.xml file for editing:

```
jar xvf $DATaverse-WAR-FILENAME WEB-INF/ejb-jar.xml
```

Edit the extracted `WEB-INF/ejb-jar.xml`, following the sample file provided at `/_static/admin/ejb-jar.xml`.

If the response is empty, create a `WEB-INF` directory and create an ejb-jar.xml file in it, following the sample file provided at `/_static/admin/ejb-jar.xml`.

Edit the parameters in the <schedule> section of the WEB-INF/ejb-jar.xml to suit your preferred schedule.

Insert the edited WEB-INF/ejb-jar.xml into the dataverse war file:

```
jar uvf $DATaverse-WAR-FILENAME WEB-INF/ejb-jar.xml
```

Deploy the war file

See also [Saved Search](#) in the API Guide.

2.7.5 Known Issues

We've received several reports of an intermittent issue where the application fails to deploy with the error message "EJB Timer Service is not available." Please see the [Troubleshooting](#) section of this guide for a workaround.

2.8 Make Data Count

Make Data Count is a project to collect and standardize metrics on data use, especially views, downloads, and citations. The Dataverse Software can integrate Make Data Count to collect and display usage metrics including counts of dataset views, file downloads, and dataset citations.

Contents:

- [*Introduction*](#)
- [*Architecture*](#)
- [*Limitations for Dataverse Installations Using Handles Rather Than DOIs*](#)
- [*Configuring Your Dataverse Installation for Make Data Count Views and Downloads*](#)
 - [*Enable Logging for Make Data Count*](#)
 - [*Enable or Disable Display of Make Data Count Metrics*](#)
 - [*Configure Counter Processor*](#)
 - [*Populate Views and Downloads for the First Time*](#)
 - [*Populate Views and Downloads Nightly*](#)
 - [*Sending Usage Metrics to the DataCite Hub*](#)
- [*Configuring Your Dataverse Installation for Make Data Count Citations*](#)
- [*Retrieving Make Data Count Metrics from the DataCite Hub*](#)
- [*Retrieving Make Data Count Metrics from a Dataverse Installation*](#)

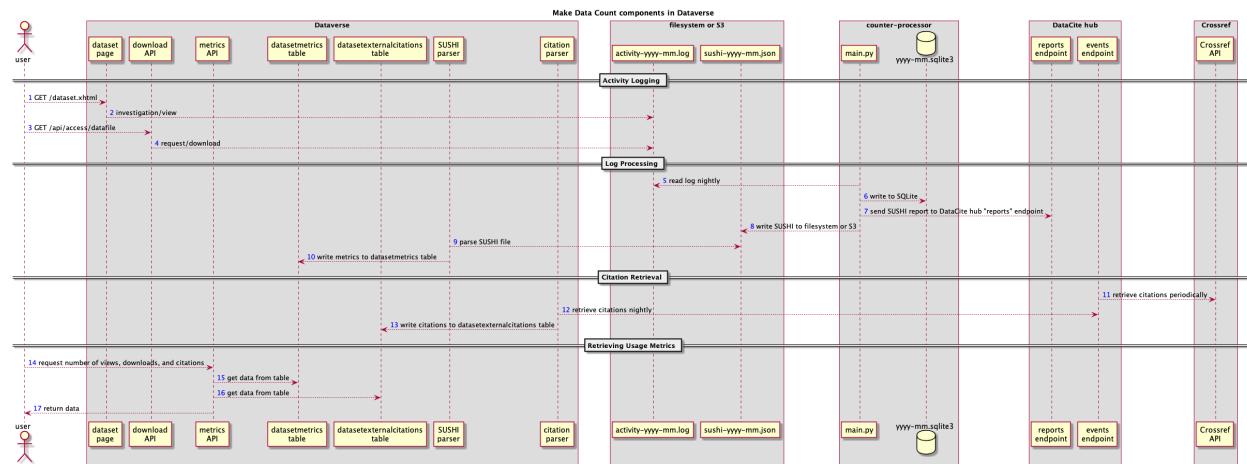
2.8.1 Introduction

Make Data Count is part of a broader Research Data Alliance (RDA) Data Usage Metrics Working Group which helped to produce a specification called the COUNTER Code of Practice for Research Data (PDF, HTML) that the Dataverse Software makes every effort to comply with. The Code of Practice (CoP) is built on top of existing standards such as COUNTER and SUSHI that come out of the article publishing world. The Make Data Count project has emphasized that they would like feedback on the code of practice. You can keep up to date on the Make Data Count project by subscribing to their [newsletter](#).

2.8.2 Architecture

Dataverse installations who would like support for Make Data Count must install [Counter Processor](#), a Python project created by California Digital Library (CDL) which is part of the Make Data Count project and which runs the software in production as part of their [DASH](#) data sharing platform.

The diagram below shows how Counter Processor interacts with your Dataverse installation and the DataCite hub, once configured. Dataverse installations using Handles rather than DOIs should note the limitations in the next section of this page.



The most important takeaways from the diagram are:

- Once enabled, your Dataverse installation will log activity (views and downloads) to a specialized date-stamped file.
- You should run Counter Processor once a day to create reports in SUSHI (JSON) format that are saved to disk for your Dataverse installation to process and that are sent to the DataCite hub.
- You should set up a cron job to have your Dataverse installation process the daily SUSHI reports, updating the Dataverse installation database with the latest metrics.
- You should set up a cron job to have your Dataverse installation pull the latest list of citations for each dataset on a periodic basis, perhaps weekly or daily. These citations come from Crossref via the DataCite hub.
- APIs are available in the Dataverse Software to retrieve Make Data Count metrics: views, downloads, and citations.

2.8.3 Limitations for Dataverse Installations Using Handles Rather Than DOIs

Data repositories using Handles and other identifiers are not supported by Make Data Count but in the [notes](#) following a July 2018 webinar, you can see the Make Data Count project's response on this topic. In short, the DataCite hub does not want to receive reports for non-DOI datasets. Additionally, citations are only available from the DataCite hub for datasets that have DOIs. See also the table below.

	DOIs	Handles
Out of the box	Classic download counts	Classic download counts
Make Data Count	MDC views, MDC downloads, MDC citations	MDC views, MDC downloads

This being said, the Dataverse Software usage logging can still generate logs and process those logs with Counter Processor to create json that details usage on a dataset level. Dataverse installations can ingest this locally generated json.

When editing the `counter-processor-config.yaml` file mentioned below, make sure that the `upload_to_hub` boolean is set to `False`.

2.8.4 Configuring Your Dataverse Installation for Make Data Count Views and Downloads

If you haven't already, follow the steps for installing Counter Processor in the [Prerequisites](#) section of the Installation Guide.

Enable Logging for Make Data Count

To make your Dataverse installation log dataset usage (views and downloads) for Make Data Count, you must set the `:MDCLogPath` database setting. See [:MDCLogPath](#) for details.

If you wish to start logging in advance of setting up other components, or wish to log without displaying MDC metrics for any other reason, you can set the optional `:DisplayMDCMetrics` database setting to false. See [:DisplayMDCMetrics](#) for details.

After you have your first day of logs, you can process them the next day.

Enable or Disable Display of Make Data Count Metrics

By default, when MDC logging is enabled (when `:MDCLogPath` is set), your Dataverse installation will display MDC metrics instead of its internal (legacy) metrics. You can avoid this (e.g. to collect MDC metrics for some period of time before starting to display them) by setting `:DisplayMDCMetrics` to false.

The following discussion assumes `:MDCLogPath` has been set to `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/mdc`

Configure Counter Processor

- First, become the “counter” Unix user.
 - **`sudo su - counter`**
- Change to the directory where you installed Counter Processor.
 - **`cd /usr/local/counter-processor-0.1.04`**
- Copy the `counter-processor-config.yaml` located at `/_static/admin/counter-processor-config.yaml` to the `/usr/local/counter-processor-0.1.04` directory.
- Edit the config file and pay particular attention to the `FIXME` lines.
 - **`vim counter-processor-config.yaml`**

Populate Views and Downloads for the First Time

Soon we will be setting up a cron job to run nightly but we start with a single successful configuration and manual run of Counter Processor and calls to your Dataverse installation’s APIs. (The scripts discussed in the next section automate the steps described here, including creating empty log files if you’re starting mid-month.)

- Change to the directory where you installed Counter Processor.
 - **`cd /usr/local/counter-processor-0.1.04`**
- If you are running Counter Processor for the first time in the middle of a month, you will need create blank log files for the previous days. e.g.:
 - **`cd /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/mdc`**
 - **`touch counter_2019-02-01.log`**
 - **`...`**
 - **`touch counter_2019-02-20.log`**
- Run Counter Processor.
 - **`CONFIG_FILE=counter-processor-config.yaml python39 main.py`**
 - A JSON file in SUSHI format will be created in the directory you specified under “output_file” in the config file.
- Populate views and downloads for your datasets based on the SUSHI JSON file. The “/tmp” directory is used in the example below.
 - **`curl -X POST "http://localhost:8080/api/admin/makeDataCount/addUsageMetricsFromSushiReport?reportOnDisk=/tmp/make-data-count-report.json"`**
- Verify that views and downloads are available via API.
 - Now that views and downloads have been recorded in the Dataverse installation’s database, you should make sure you can retrieve them from a dataset or two. Use the *Dataset Metrics* endpoints in the *Native API* section of the API Guide.

Populate Views and Downloads Nightly

Running `main.py` to create the SUSHI JSON file and the subsequent calling of the Dataverse Software API to process it should be added as a cron job.

The Dataverse Software provides example scripts that run the steps to process new accesses and uploads and update your Dataverse installation's database using `counter_daily.sh` at `/_static/util/counter_daily.sh` and to retrieve citations for all Datasets from DataCite `counter_weekly.sh` at `/_static/util/counter_weekly.sh`. These scripts should be configured for your environment and can be run manually or as cron jobs.

Sending Usage Metrics to the DataCite Hub

Once you are satisfied with your testing, you should contact support@datacite.org for your JSON Web Token and change “upload_to_hub” to “True” in the config file. The next time you run `main.py` the following metrics will be sent to the DataCite hub for each published dataset:

- Views (“investigations” in COUNTER)
- Downloads (“requests” in COUNTER)

2.8.5 Configuring Your Dataverse Installation for Make Data Count Citations

Please note: as explained in the note above about limitations, this feature is not available to Dataverse installations that use Handles.

To configure your Dataverse installation to pull citations from the test vs. production DataCite server see [`doi.dataciterestapiurlstring`](#) in the Installation Guide.

Please note that in the curl example, Bash environment variables are used with the idea that you can set a few environment variables and copy and paste the examples as is. For example, “\$DOI” could become “doi:10.5072/FK2/BL2IBM” by issuing the following export command from Bash:

```
export DOI="doi:10.5072/FK2/BL2IBM"
```

To confirm that the environment variable was set properly, you can use echo like this:

```
echo $DOI
```

On some periodic basis (perhaps weekly) you should call the following curl command for each published dataset to update the list of citations that have been made for that dataset.

```
curl -X POST "http://localhost:8080/api/admin/makeDataCount/:persistentId/
updateCitationsForDataset?persistentId=$DOI"
```

Citations will be retrieved for each published dataset and recorded in the your Dataverse installation's database.

For how to get the citations out of your Dataverse installation, see “Retrieving Citations for a Dataset” under *Dataset Metrics* in the [Native API](#) section of the API Guide.

Please note that while the Dataverse Software has a metadata field for “Related Dataset” this information is not currently sent as a citation to Crossref.

2.8.6 Retrieving Make Data Count Metrics from the DataCite Hub

The following metrics can be downloaded directly from the DataCite hub (see <https://support.datacite.org/docs/eventdata-guide>) for datasets hosted by Dataverse installations that have been configured to send these metrics to the hub:

- Total Views for a Dataset
- Unique Views for a Dataset
- Total Downloads for a Dataset
- Downloads for a Dataset
- Citations for a Dataset (via Crossref)

2.8.7 Retrieving Make Data Count Metrics from a Dataverse Installation

The Dataverse Software API endpoints for retrieving Make Data Count metrics are described below under *Dataset Metrics* in the *Native API* section of the API Guide.

Please note that it is also possible to retrieve metrics from the DataCite hub itself via <https://api.datacite.org>

2.9 Integrations

Now that you've installed a Dataverse installation, you might want to set up some integrations with other systems. Many of these integrations are open source and are cross listed in the *Apps* section of the API Guide.

Contents:

- *Getting Data In*
 - GitHub
 - Dropbox
 - Open Science Framework (OSF)
 - RSpace
 - Open Journal Systems (OJS)
 - Renku
 - Amnesia
 - SampleDB
- *Embedding Data on Websites*
 - OpenScholar
- *Analysis and Computation*
 - Data Explorer
 - Compute Button
 - Whole Tale
 - Binder

- *Renku*
- *Avgidea Data Search*
- *Discoverability*
 - *OAI-PMH (Harvesting)*
 - *SHARE*
 - *Geodisys*
- *Research Data Preservation*
 - *Archivematica*
 - *RDA BagIt (BagPack) Archiving*
- *Future Integrations*

2.9.1 Getting Data In

A variety of integrations are oriented toward making it easier for your researchers to deposit data into your Dataverse installation.

GitHub

Dataverse integration with GitHub is implemented via a Dataverse Uploader GitHub Action. It is a reusable, composite workflow for uploading a git repository or subdirectory into a dataset on a target Dataverse installation. The action is customizable, allowing users to choose to replace a dataset, add to the dataset, publish it or leave it as a draft version on Dataverse. The action provides some metadata to the dataset, such as the origin GitHub repository, and it preserves the directory tree structure.

For instructions on using Dataverse Uploader GitHub Action, visit <https://github.com/marketplace/actions/dataverse-uploader-action>

Dropbox

If your researchers have data on Dropbox, you can make it easier for them to get it into your Dataverse installation by setting the *dataverse.dropbox.key* JVM option described in the *Configuration* section of the Installation Guide.

Open Science Framework (OSF)

The Center for Open Science's Open Science Framework (OSF) is an open source software project that facilitates open collaboration in science research across the lifespan of a scientific project.

For instructions on depositing data from OSF to your Dataverse installation, your researchers can visit <https://help.osf.io/hc/en-us/articles/360019737314-Connect-Dataverse-to-a-Project>

RSpace

RSpace is an affordable and secure enterprise grade electronic lab notebook (ELN) for researchers to capture and organize data.

For instructions on depositing data from RSpace to your Dataverse installation, your researchers can visit <https://www.researchspace.com/help-and-support-resources/dataverse-integration/>

Open Journal Systems (OJS)

Open Journal Systems (OJS) is a journal management and publishing system that has been developed by the Public Knowledge Project to expand and improve access to research.

The OJS Dataverse Project Plugin adds data sharing and preservation to the OJS publication process.

As of this writing only OJS 2.x is supported and instructions for getting started can be found at https://github.com/pkp/ojs/tree/ojs-stable-2_4_8/plugins/generic/dataverse

If you are interested in OJS 3.x supporting deposit to Dataverse installations, please leave a comment on <https://github.com/pkp/pkp-lib/issues/1822>

Renku

Renku is a platform that enables collaborative, reproducible and reusable (data)science. It allows researchers to automatically record the provenance of their research results and retain links to imported and exported data. Users can organize their data in “Datasets”, which can be exported to a Dataverse installation via the command-line interface (CLI).

Renku documentation: <https://renku-python.readthedocs.io>

Flagship deployment of the Renku platform: <https://renkulab.io>

Renku discourse: <https://renku.discourse.group/>

Amnesia

Amnesia is a flexible data anonymization tool that transforms relational and transactional databases to datasets where formal privacy guarantees hold. Amnesia transforms original data to provide k-anonymity and km-anonymity: the original data are transformed by generalizing (i.e., replacing one value with a more abstract one) or suppressing values to achieve the statistical properties required by the anonymization guarantees. Amnesia employs visualization tools and supportive mechanisms to allow non expert users to anonymize relational and object-relational data.

For instructions on depositing or loading data from Dataverse installations to Amnesia, visit <https://amnesia.openaire.eu/about-documentation.html>

SampleDB

SampleDB is a web-based electronic lab notebook (ELN) with a focus on flexible metadata. SampleDB can export this flexible, process-specific metadata to a new Dataset in a Dataverse installation using the EngMeta Process Metadata block.

For instructions on using the Dataverse export, you can visit https://scientific-it-systems.ifffgit.fz-juelich.de/SampleDB/administrator_guide/dataverse_export.html

2.9.2 Embedding Data on Websites

OpenScholar

OpenScholar is oriented toward hosting websites for academic institutions and offers Dataverse Project Widgets that can be added to web pages. See also:

- [Adding Widgets to an OpenScholar Website](#) (Dataverse collection level)
- [Adding Widgets to an OpenScholar Website](#) (dataset level)

2.9.3 Analysis and Computation

Data Explorer

Data Explorer is a GUI which lists the variables in a tabular data file allowing searching, charting and cross tabulation analysis.

For installation instructions, see the [External Tools](#) section.

Compute Button

The “Compute” button is still highly experimental and has special requirements such as use of a Swift object store, but it is documented under “Setting up Compute” in the [Configuration](#) section of the Installation Guide.

Whole Tale

Whole Tale enables researchers to analyze data using popular tools including Jupyter and RStudio with the ultimate goal of supporting publishing of reproducible research packages. Users can import data from a Dataverse installation via identifier (e.g., DOI, URI, etc) or through the External Tools integration. For installation instructions, see the [External Tools](#) section or the [Integration](#) section of the Whole Tale User Guide.

Binder

Researchers can launch Jupyter Notebooks, RStudio, and other computational environments by entering the DOI of a dataset in a Dataverse installation on <https://mybinder.org>

Institutions can self host BinderHub. The Dataverse Project is one of the supported [repository providers](#).

Renku

Researchers can import datasets from a Dataverse installation into their Renku projects via the command-line interface (CLI) by using the dataset’s DOI. See the [renku Dataset documentation](#) for details. Currently Dataverse Software >=4.8.x is required for the import to work. If you need support for an earlier version of the Dataverse Software, please get in touch with the Renku team at [Discourse](#) or [GitHub](#).

Avgidea Data Search

Researchers can use a Google Sheets add-on to search for Dataverse installation's CSV data and then import that data into a sheet. See [Avgidea Data Search](#) for details.

2.9.4 Discoverability

Integration with [DataCite](#) is built in to the Dataverse Software. When datasets are published, metadata is sent to DataCite. You can further increase the discoverability of your datasets by setting up additional integrations.

OAI-PMH (Harvesting)

The Dataverse Software supports a protocol called OAI-PMH that facilitates harvesting datasets from one system into another. For details on harvesting, see the [Managing Harvesting Server and Sets](#) section.

SHARE

[SHARE](#) is building a free, open, data set about research and scholarly activities across their life cycle. It's possible to add a Dataverse installation as one of the [sources](#) they include if you contact the SHARE team.

Geodisys

[Geodisys](#) will take your Dataverse installation's data, search for geospatial metadata and files, and copy them to a new system that allows for visual searching. Your original data and search methods are untouched; you have the benefit of both. For more information, please refer to [Geodisys's GitHub Repository](#).

2.9.5 Research Data Preservation

Archivematica

[Archivematica](#) is an integrated suite of open-source tools for processing digital objects for long-term preservation, developed and maintained by Artefactual Systems Inc. Its configurable workflow is designed to produce system-independent, standards-based Archival Information Packages (AIPs) suitable for long-term storage and management.

Sponsored by the [Ontario Council of University Libraries \(OCUL\)](#), this technical integration enables users of Archivematica to select datasets from connected Dataverse installations and process them for long-term access and digital preservation. For more information and list of known issues, please refer to Artefactual's [release notes](#), [integration documentation](#), and the [project wiki](#).

RDA BagIt (BagPack) Archiving

A Dataverse installation can be configured to submit a copy of published Datasets, packaged as Research Data Alliance conformant zipped [BagIt](#) bags to the [Chronopolis](#) via [DuraCloud](#), to a local file system, or to [Google Cloud Storage](#).

For details on how to configure this integration, see [BagIt Export](#) in the [Configuration](#) section of the Installation Guide.

2.9.6 Future Integrations

The [Dataverse Project Roadmap](#) is a good place to see integrations that the core Dataverse Project team is working on.

The [Community Dev](#) column of our project board is a good way to track integrations that are being worked on by the Dataverse Community but many are not listed and if you have an idea for an integration, please ask on the [dataverse-community](#) mailing list if someone is already working on it.

Many integrations take the form of “external tools”. See the [External Tools](#) section for details. External tool makers should check out the [Building External Tools](#) section of the API Guide.

Please help us keep this page up to date making a pull request! To get started, see the [Writing Documentation](#) section of the Developer Guide.

2.10 User Administration

This section focuses on user administration tools and tasks.

Contents:

- [*Manage Users*](#)
 - [*List Users via API*](#)
- [*Merge User Accounts*](#)
- [*Change User Identifier*](#)
- [*Delete a User*](#)
- [*Deactivate a User*](#)
- [*Confirm Email*](#)
- [*Deleting an API Token*](#)
- [*Letting Users Manage Notifications*](#)

2.10.1 Manage Users

The Manage Users table gives the network administrator a list of all user accounts in table form. You can access it by clicking the “Manage Users” button on the [Dashboard](#), which is linked from the header of all Dataverse installation pages (if you’re logged in as an administrator). It lists username, full name, email address, affiliation, the authentication method they use, the roles their account has been granted, and whether or not they have Superuser status.

Users are listed alphabetically by username. The search bar above the table allows you to search for a specific user. It performs a right-truncated wildcard search of the Username, Name, and Email columns. This means, if you search “baseba” then it will search those three columns for any string of text that begins with “baseba”, e.g. “baseball” or “baseballfan”.

If you would like to assign or remove a user’s Superuser status, then you can do so by checking or unchecking their checkbox under the “Superuser” column.

If you would like to remove all roles/permissions from a user’s account (in the event of their leaving your organization, for example) then you can do so by clicking the “Remove All” button under the Roles column. This will keep the user’s account active, but will revert it to put the account on the level of a default user with default permissions.

List Users via API

There are two ways to list users via API. If you have relatively few users, you can get them all as a dump with this command with a superuser API token:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticatedUsers
```

If you have many users and want to be able to search and paginate through the results, use the command below with a superuser API token:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/list-users
```

With the `list-users` form you can include the following optional query parameters:

- `searchTerm` A string that matches the beginning of a user identifier, first name, last name or email address.
- `itemsPerPage` The number of detailed results to return. The default is 25. This number has no limit. e.g. You could set it to 1000 to return 1,000 results
- `selectedPage` The page of results to return. The default is 1.

2.10.2 Merge User Accounts

See [Merge User Accounts](#)

2.10.3 Change User Identifier

See [Change User Identifier](#)

2.10.4 Delete a User

See [Delete a User](#)

2.10.5 Deactivate a User

See [Deactivate a User](#)

2.10.6 Confirm Email

A Dataverse installation encourages builtin/local users to verify their email address upon sign up or email change so that sysadmins can be assured that users can be contacted.

The app will send a standard welcome email with a URL the user can click, which, when activated, will store a `lastconfirmed` timestamp in the `authenticateduser` table of the database. Any time this is “null” for a user (immediately after sign up and/or changing of their Dataverse installation email address), their current email on file is considered to not be verified. The link that is sent expires after a time (the default is 24 hours), but this is configurable by a superuser via the `:MinutesUntilConfirmEmailExpires` config option.

Should users’ URL token expire, they will see a “Verify Email” button on the account information page to send another URL.

Sysadmins can determine which users have verified their email addresses by looking for the presence of the value `emailLastConfirmed` in the JSON output from listing users (see [Admin](#) section of Native API in the API Guide). As

mentioned in the *Account Creation + Management* section of the User Guide, the email addresses for Shibboleth users are re-confirmed on every login (so their welcome email does not contain a URL to click for this purpose).

2.10.7 Deleting an API Token

If an API token is compromised it should be deleted. Users can generate a new one for themselves as explained in the *Account Creation + Management* section of the User Guide, but you may want to preemptively delete tokens from the database.

Using the API token 7ae33670-be21-491d-a244-008149856437 as an example:

```
delete from apitoken where tokenstring = '7ae33670-be21-491d-a244-008149856437';
```

You should expect the output DELETE 1 after issuing the command above.

2.10.8 Letting Users Manage Notifications

See *Notifications* in the User Guide for how notifications are described to end users.

You can let users manage which notification types they wish to receive by setting `:ShowMuteOptions` to “true”:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'true' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ShowMuteOptions
```

This enables additional settings for each user in the notifications tab of their account page. The users can select which in-app notifications and/or e-mails they wish to receive out of the following list:

- APIGENERATED API token is generated
- ASSIGNROLE Role is assigned
- CHECKSUMFAIL Checksum validation failed
- CHECKSUMIMPORT Dataset had file checksums added via a batch job
- CONFIRMEMAIL Email Verification
- CREATEACC Account is created
- CREATEDS Your dataset is created
- CREATEDDV Dataverse collection is created
- DATASETCREATED Dataset was created by user
- FILESYSTEMIMPORT Dataset has been successfully uploaded and verified
- GRANTFILEACCESS Access to file is granted
- INGESTCOMPLETEDWITHERRORS Ingest completed with errors
- INGESTCOMPLETED Ingest is completed
- PUBLISHEDDS Dataset is published
- PUBLISHFAILED_PIDREG Publish has failed
- REJECTFILEACCESS Access to file is rejected
- REQUESTFILEACCESS Access to file is requested
- RETURNEDDS Returned from review
- REVOKEROLE Role is revoked
- STATUSUPDATED Status of dataset has been updated

- SUBMITTEDDS Submitted for review
- WORKFLOW_FAILURE External workflow run has failed
- WORKFLOW_SUCCESS External workflow run has succeeded

After enabling this feature, all notifications are enabled by default, until this is changed by the user.

You can shorten this list by configuring some notification types (e.g., ASSIGNROLE and REVOKEROLE) to be always muted for everyone and not manageable by users (not visible in the user interface) with the `:AlwaysMuted` setting:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'ASSIGNROLE,REVOKEROLE' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:AlwaysMuted
```

Finally, you can set some notifications (e.g., REQUESTFILEACCESS, GRANTFILEACCESS and REJECTFILEACCESS) as always enabled for everyone and not manageable by users (grayed out in the user interface) with the `:NeverMuted` setting:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'REQUESTFILEACCESS,GRANTFILEACCESS,REJECTFILEACCESS' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:NeverMuted
```

2.11 Managing Datasets and Dataverse Collections

Contents:

- *Dataverse Collections*
 - *Delete a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Move a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Link a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Unlink a Dataverse Collection*
 - *List Dataverse Collection Links*
 - *Add Dataverse Collection RoleAssignments to Dataverse Subcollections*
 - *Configure a Dataverse Collection to Store All New Files in a Specific File Store*
 - *Configure a Dataverse Collection to Allow Use of a Given Curation Label Set*
- *Datasets*
 - *Move a Dataset*
 - *Link a Dataset*
 - *Unlink a Dataset*
 - *Mint a PID for a File That Does Not Have One*
 - *Mint PIDs for Files That Do Not Have Them*
 - *Mint a New DOI for a Dataset with a Handle*
 - *Send Dataset metadata to PID provider*
 - *Check for Unreserved PIDs and Reserve Them*
 - *Make Metadata Updates Without Changing Dataset Version*
 - *Diagnose Constraint Violations Issues in Datasets*

- [Configure a Dataset to Store All New Files in a Specific File Store](#)
- [Configure a Dataset to Allow Use of a Curation Label Set](#)

2.11.1 Dataverse Collections

Delete a Dataverse Collection

Dataverse collections have to be empty to delete them. Navigate to the Dataverse collection and click “Edit” and then “Delete Dataverse” to delete it. To delete a Dataverse collection via API, see the [Native API](#) section of the API Guide.

Move a Dataverse Collection

Moves a Dataverse collection whose id is passed to an existing Dataverse collection whose id is passed. The Dataverse collection alias also may be used instead of the id. If the moved Dataverse collection has a guestbook, template, metadata block, link, or featured Dataverse collection that is not compatible with the destination Dataverse collection, you will be informed and given the option to force the move and remove the association. Only accessible to superusers.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST http://$SERVER/api/dataverses/$id/move/  
→$destination-id
```

Link a Dataverse Collection

Creates a link between a Dataverse collection and another Dataverse collection (see the [Dataverse Collection Linking](#) section of the User Guide for more information). Only accessible to superusers.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT http://$SERVER/api/dataverses/$linked-  
→dataverse-alias/link/$linking-dataverse-alias
```

Unlink a Dataverse Collection

Removes a link between a Dataverse collection and another Dataverse collection. Only accessible to superusers.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE http://$SERVER/api/dataverses/$linked-  
→dataverse-alias/deleteLink/$linking-dataverse-alias
```

List Dataverse Collection Links

Provides information about whether a certain Dataverse collection (\$dataverse-alias) is linked to or links to another collection. Only accessible to superusers.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" http://$SERVER/api/dataverses/$dataverse-alias/links
```

Add Dataverse Collection RoleAssignments to Dataverse Subcollections

Recursively assigns the users and groups having a role(s),that are in the set configured to be inheritable via the :InheritParentRoleAssignments setting, on a specified Dataverse collections to have the same role assignments on all of the Dataverse collections that have been created within it. The response indicates success or failure and lists the individuals/groups and Dataverse collections involved in the update. Only accessible to superusers.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/$dataverse-
↳alias/addRoleAssignmentsToChildren
```

Configure a Dataverse Collection to Store All New Files in a Specific File Store

To direct new files (uploaded when datasets are created or edited) for all datasets in a given Dataverse collection, the store can be specified via the API as shown below, or by editing the ‘General Information’ for a Dataverse collection on the Dataverse collection page. Only accessible to superusers.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT -d $storageDriverLabel http://$SERVER/api/
↳admin/dataverse/$dataverse-alias/storageDriver
```

The current driver can be seen using:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/$dataverse-
↳alias/storageDriver
```

and can be reset to the default store with:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/
↳$dataverse-alias/storageDriver
```

The available drivers can be listed with:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/storageDrivers
```

(Individual datasets can be configured to use specific file stores as well. See the “Datasets” section below.)

Configure a Dataverse Collection to Allow Use of a Given Curation Label Set

Datasets within a given Dataverse collection can be annotated with a Curation Label to indicate the status of the dataset with respect to a defined curation process. Labels are completely customizable (alphanumeric or spaces, up to 32 characters, e.g. “Author contacted”, “Privacy Review”, “Awaiting paper publication”).

The label is applied to a draft Dataset version via the user interface or API and the available label sets are defined by *:AllowedCurationLabels*. Internally, the labels have no effect, and at publication, any existing label will be removed. A reporting API call allows admins to get a list of datasets and their curation statuses.

The label set used for a collection can be specified via the API as shown below, or by editing the ‘General Information’ for a Dataverse collection on the Dataverse collection page. Only accessible to superusers.

The curationLabelSet to use within a given collection can be set by specifying its name using:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/
↳$dataverse-alias/curationLabelSet?name=$curationLabelSetName
```

The reserved word “DISABLED” can be used to disable this feature within a given Dataverse collection.

The name of the current curationLabelSet can be seen using:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/$dataverse-
↳alias/curationLabelSet
```

and can be reset to the default (inherited from the parent collection or DISABLED for the root collection) with:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/
↳$dataverse-alias/curationLabelSet
```

The available curation label sets can be listed with:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/
↳curationLabelSets
```

If the :AllowedCurationLabels setting has a value, one of the available choices will always be “DISABLED” which allows curation labels to be turned off for a given collection/dataset.

Individual datasets can be configured to use specific curationLabelSets as well. See the “Datasets” section below.

2.11.2 Datasets

Move a Dataset

Superusers can move datasets using the dashboard. See also [Dashboard](#).

Moves a dataset whose id is passed to a Dataverse collection whose alias is passed. If the moved dataset has a guestbook or a Dataverse collection link that is not compatible with the destination Dataverse collection, you will be informed and given the option to force the move (with `forceMove=true` as a query parameter) and remove the guestbook or link (or both). Only accessible to users with permission to publish the dataset in the original and destination Dataverse collection. Note: any roles granted to users on the dataset will continue to be in effect after the dataset has been moved.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST http://$SERVER/api/datasets/$id/move/$alias
```

Link a Dataset

Creates a link between a dataset and a Dataverse collection (see the [Dataset Linking](#) section of the User Guide for more information).

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT http://$SERVER/api/datasets/$linked-dataset-
↳id/link/$linking-dataverse-alias
```

Unlink a Dataset

Removes a link between a dataset and a Dataverse collection. Only accessible to superusers.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE http://$SERVER/api/datasets/$linked-
↳dataset-id/deleteLink/$linking-dataverse-alias
```

Mint a PID for a File That Does Not Have One

In the following example, the database id of the file is 42:

```
export FILE_ID=42
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/$FILE_ID/registerDataFile
```

Mint PIDs for Files That Do Not Have Them

If you have a large number of files, you might want to consider minting PIDs for files individually using the registerDataFile endpoint above in a for loop, sleeping between each registration:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/registerDataFileAll
```

Mint a New DOI for a Dataset with a Handle

Mints a new identifier for a dataset previously registered with a handle. Only accessible to superusers.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST http://$SERVER/api/admin/$dataset-id/
  ↵reregisterHDLToPID
```

Send Dataset metadata to PID provider

Forces update to metadata provided to the PID provider of a published dataset. Only accessible to superusers.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST http://$SERVER/api/datasets/$dataset-id/
  ↵modifyRegistrationMetadata
```

Check for Unreserved PIDs and Reserve Them

See [Managing Harvesting Server and Sets](#) in the API Guide for details.

Make Metadata Updates Without Changing Dataset Version

As a superuser, click “Update Current Version” when publishing. (This option is only available when a ‘Minor’ update would be allowed.)

Diagnose Constraint Violations Issues in Datasets

To identify invalid data values in specific datasets (if, for example, an attempt to edit a dataset results in a ConstraintViolationException in the server log), or to check all the datasets in the Dataverse installation for constraint violations, see [Dataset Validation](#) in the [Native API](#) section of the User Guide.

Configure a Dataset to Store All New Files in a Specific File Store

Configure a dataset to use a specific file store (this API can only be used by a superuser)

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT -d $storageDriverLabel http://$SERVER/api/datasets/$dataset-id/storageDriver
```

The current driver can be seen using:

```
curl http://$SERVER/api/datasets/$dataset-id/storageDriver
```

It can be reset to the default store as follows (only a superuser can do this)

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE http://$SERVER/api/datasets/$dataset-id/storageDriver
```

The available drivers can be listed with:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/storageDrivers
```

Configure a Dataset to Allow Use of a Curation Label Set

A dataset can be annotated with a Curation Label to indicate the status of the dataset with respect to a defined curation process. Labels are completely customizable (alphanumeric or spaces, up to 32 characters, e.g. “Author contacted”, “Privacy Review”, “Awaiting paper publication”).

The label is applied to a draft Dataset version via the user interface or API and the available label sets are defined by *:AllowedCurationLabels*. Internally, the labels have no effect, and at publication, any existing label will be removed. A reporting API call allows admins to get a list of datasets and their curation statuses.

The label set used for a dataset can be specified via the API as shown below. Only accessible to superusers.

The curationLabelSet to use within a given dataset can be set by specifying its name using:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT http://$SERVER/api/datasets/$dataset-id/curationLabelSet?name=$curationLabelSetName
```

The reserved word “DISABLED” can be used to disable this feature within a given Dataverse collection.

The name of the current curationLabelSet can be seen using:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://$SERVER/api/datasets/$dataset-id/curationLabelSet
```

and can be reset to the default (inherited from the parent collection) with (only a superuser can do this)

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE http://$SERVER/api/datasets/$dataset-id/curationLabelSet
```

The available curationLabelSets can be listed with:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/curationLabelSets
```

If the *:AllowedCurationLabels* setting has a value, one of the available choices will always be “DISABLED” which allows curation labels to be turned off for a given collection/dataset.

Collections can be configured to use specific curationLabelSets as well. See the “Dataverse Collections” section above.

2.12 Solr Search Index

A Dataverse installation requires Solr to be operational at all times. If you stop Solr, you should see an error about this on the root Dataverse installation page, which is powered by the search index Solr provides. You can set up Solr by following the steps in our Installation Guide’s *Prerequisites* and *Configuration* sections explaining how to configure it. This section you’re reading now is about the care and feeding of the search index. PostgreSQL is the “source of truth” and the Dataverse installation will copy data from PostgreSQL into Solr. For this reason, the search index can be rebuilt at any time. Depending on the amount of data you have, this can be a slow process. You are encouraged to experiment with production data to get a sense of how long a full reindexing will take.

Contents:

- *Full Reindex*
 - *Clear and Reindex*
 - * *Index and Database Consistency*
 - * *Clearing Data from Solr*
 - * *Start Async Reindex*
 - *Reindex in Place*
 - * *Clear Index Timestamps*
 - * *Start or Continue Async Reindex*
- *Manual Reindexing*
 - *Reindexing Dataverse Collections*
 - *Reindexing Datasets*
- *Manually Querying Solr*

2.12.1 Full Reindex

There are two ways to perform a full reindex of the Dataverse installation search index. Starting with a “clear” ensures a completely clean index but involves downtime. Reindexing in place doesn’t involve downtime but does not ensure a completely clean index (e.g. stale entries from destroyed datasets can remain in the index).

Clear and Reindex

Index and Database Consistency

Get a list of all database objects that are missing in Solr, and Solr documents that are missing in the database:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/status
```

Remove all Solr documents that are orphaned (i.e. not associated with objects in the database):

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/clear-orphans
```

Clearing Data from Solr

Please note that the moment you issue this command, it will appear to end users looking at the root Dataverse installation page that all data is gone! This is because the root Dataverse installation page is powered by the search index.

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/clear
```

Start Async Reindex

Please note that this operation may take hours depending on the amount of data in your system and whether or not your installation is using full-text indexing. More information on this, as well as some reference times, can be found at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/50>.

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index
```

Reindex in Place

An alternative to completely clearing the search index is to reindex in place.

Clear Index Timestamps

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/timestamps
```

Start or Continue Async Reindex

If indexing stops, this command should pick up where it left off based on which index timestamps have been set, which is why we start by clearing these timestamps above. These timestamps are stored in the dvobject database table.

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/continue
```

2.12.2 Manual Reindexing

If you have made manual changes to a dataset in the database or wish to reindex a dataset that Solr didn't want to index properly, it is possible to manually reindex Dataverse collections and datasets.

Reindexing Dataverse Collections

Dataverse collections must be referenced by database object ID. If you have direct database access an SQL query such as

```
select id from dataverse where alias='dataversealias';
```

should work, or you may click the Dataverse Software's "Edit" menu and look for *dataverseId=* in the URLs produced by the drop-down. Then, to re-index:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/dataverses/135
```

which should return: `{"status": "OK", "data": {"message": "starting reindex of dataverse 135"}}`

Reindexing Datasets

Datasets may be referenced by persistent ID or by database object ID. To re-index by persistent ID:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/dataset?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000
```

To re-index a dataset by its database ID:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/index/datasets/7504557
```

2.12.3 Manually Querying Solr

If you suspect something isn't indexed properly in Solr, you may bypass the Dataverse installation's web interface and query the command line directly to verify what Solr returns:

```
curl "http://localhost:8983/solr/collection1/select?q=dsPersistentId:doi:10.15139/S3/HFV0AO"
```

to see the JSON you were hopefully expecting to see passed along to the Dataverse installation.

2.13 IP Groups

IP Groups can be used to permit download of restricted files by IP addresses rather than people. For example, you may want to allow restricted files to be downloaded by researchers who physically enter a library and make use of the library's network.

Contents:

- [*Listing IP Groups*](#)
- [*Creating an IP Group*](#)
- [*Listing an IP Group*](#)
- [*Deleting an IP Group*](#)

2.13.1 Listing IP Groups

IP Groups can be listed with the following curl command:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/ip
```

2.13.2 Creating an IP Group

IP Groups must be expressed as ranges in IPv4 or IPv6 format. For illustrative purposes, the `/_static/admin/ipGroupAll.json` script is a example of the entire IPv4 and IPv6 range you can edit to have a narrower range to meet your needs. If you need your IP Group to only encompass a single IP address, you must enter that IP address for the “start” and “end” of the range. If you don’t use IPv6 addresses, you can delete that section of the JSON. Please note that the “alias” must be unique if you define multiple IP Groups. You should give it a meaningful “name” since both “alias” and “name” will appear and be searchable in the GUI when your users are assigning roles.

```
{  
  "alias": "ipGroupAll",  
  "name": "IP group to match all IPv4 and IPv6 addresses",  
  "ranges": [  
    [  
      ["0.0.0.0",  
       "255.255.255.255"],  
      [  
        "::",  
         "ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff"  
      ]  
    ]  
  ]  
}
```

Let's say you download the example above and edit it to give it a range used by your library, giving it a filename of ipGroup1.json and putting it in the /tmp directory. Next, load it into your Dataverse installation using the following curl command:

```
curl -X POST -H 'Content-type: application/json' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/  
ip --upload-file /tmp/ipGroup1.json
```

Note that you can update a group the same way, as long as you use the same alias.

2.13.3 Listing an IP Group

Let's say you used "ipGroup1" as the alias of the IP Group you created above. To list just that IP Group, you can include the alias in the curl command like this:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/ip/ipGroup1
```

2.13.4 Deleting an IP Group

It is not recommended to delete an IP Group that has been assigned roles. If you want to delete an IP Group, you should first remove its permissions.

To delete an IP Group with an alias of "ipGroup1", use the curl command below:

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/ip/ipGroup1
```

2.14 Mail Domain Groups

Groups can be defined based on the domain part of users (verified) email addresses. Email addresses that match one or more groups configuration will add the user to them.

Within the scientific community, in many cases users will use a institutional email address for their account in a Dataverse installation. This might offer a simple solution for building groups of people, as the domain part can be seen as a selector for group membership.

Some use cases: installations that like to avoid Shibboleth, enable self sign up, offer multi-tenancy or can't use [IP Groups](#) plus many more.

Hint: Please be aware that non-verified mail addresses will exclude the user even if matching. This is to avoid privilege escalation.

Contents:

- *Listing Mail Domain Groups*
- *Listing a specific Mail Domain Group*
- *Creating a Mail Domain Group*
 - *Matching with Domains or Regular Expressions*
- *Updating a Mail Domain Group*
- *Deleting a Mail Domain Group*

2.14.1 Listing Mail Domain Groups

Mail Domain Groups can be listed with the following curl command:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/domain
```

2.14.2 Listing a specific Mail Domain Group

Let's say you used "domainGroup1" as the alias of the Mail Domain Group you created below. To list just that Mail Domain Group, you can include the alias in the curl command like this:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/domain/domainGroup1
```

2.14.3 Creating a Mail Domain Group

Mail Domain Groups can be created with a simple JSON file such as domainGroup1.json:

```
{
  "name": "Users from @example.org",
  "alias": "exampleorg",
  "description": "Any verified user from Example Org will be included in this group.",
  "domains": ["example.org"]
}
```

Giving a `description` is optional. The `name` will be visible in the permission UI, so be sure to pick a sensible value.

The `domains` field is mandatory to be an array. This enables creation of multi-domain groups, too.

Obviously you can create as many of these groups you might like, as long as the `alias` is unique.

To load it into your Dataverse installation, either use a POST or PUT request (see below):

```
curl -X POST -H 'Content-type: application/json' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/
domain --upload-file domainGroup1.json
```

Matching with Domains or Regular Expressions

Adding simple domain names requires exact matches of user email domains and the configured domains of a group. Although you could add multiple domains to a group, those still require exact matches.

You can also use one or more regular expressions instead of simple domains for a group. Those should not be mixed, although it would work. Regular expressions still require exact matches, but are much more flexible and are designed to support installation-specific use cases for group management.

Some hints:

- Due to their excessive CPU usage, regular expressions should be used rarely.
- Remember to properly escape “” in your regular expression. Both Java and JSON are a bit picky about this. E.g. a character class “d” would have to be escaped as “\d”. Plenty of tutorials on the web explain this in more detail.
- There is no way the Dataverse Software can detect a wrong regular expression for you. Be sure to do extensive testing, as a misconfigured group could result in privilege escalation or an unexpected influx of support contacts.
- Remember to enable the regular expression support for a group by adding "regex": true!

A short example for a group using regular expressions:

```
{  
  "name": "Users from @example.org",  
  "alias": "exampleorg-regex",  
  "description": "Any verified user from x@example.org or x@sub.example.org will be included.",  
  "regex": true,  
  "domains": ["example\\.org", "[a-z]+\\.example\\.org"]  
}
```

2.14.4 Updating a Mail Domain Group

Editing a group is done by replacing it. Grab your group definition like the domainGroup1.json example above, change it as you like and PUT it into your installation:

```
curl -X PUT -H 'Content-type: application/json' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/domain/domainGroup1 --upload-file domainGroup1.json
```

Please make sure that the alias of the group you want to change is included in the path. You also need to ensure that this alias matches with the one given in your JSON file.

Hint: This is an idempotent call, so it will create the group given if not present.

2.14.5 Deleting a Mail Domain Group

To delete a Mail Domain Group with an alias of “domainGroup1”, use the curl command below:

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/domain/domainGroup1
```

Please note: it is not recommended to delete a Mail Domain Group that has been assigned roles. If you want to delete a Mail Domain Group, you should first remove its permissions.

2.15 Monitoring

Once you're in production, you'll want to set up some monitoring. This page may serve as a starting point for you but you are encouraged to share your ideas with the Dataverse community!

Contents:

- *Operating System Monitoring*
 - *Munin*
- *HTTP Traffic*
 - *Monitoring HTTP Traffic from the Client Side*
 - *Monitoring HTTP Traffic from the Server Side*
 - *AWStats*
- *Database Connection Pool Used by App Server*
- *actionlogrecord*
 - *An Important Note about ActionLogRecord Table:*
- *Edit Draft Versions Logging*
- *Solr Indexing Failures Logging*
- *EJB Timers*
- *AWS RDS*

2.15.1 Operating System Monitoring

In production you'll want to monitor the usual suspects such as CPU, memory, free disk space, etc. There are a variety of tools in this space but we'll highlight Munin below because it's relatively easy to set up.

Munin

<http://munin-monitoring.org> says, "A default installation provides a lot of graphs with almost no work." From RHEL or CentOS 7, you can try the following steps.

Enable the EPEL yum repo (if you haven't already):

```
yum install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

Install Munin:

```
yum install munin
```

Start Munin:

```
systemctl start munin-node.service
```

Configure Munin to start at boot:

```
systemctl enable munin-node.service
```

Create a username/password (i.e. "admin" for both):

```
htpasswd /etc/munin/munin-htpasswd admin
```

Assuming you are fronting your app server with Apache, prevent Apache from proxying “/munin” traffic to the app server by adding the following line to your Apache config:

```
ProxyPassMatch ^/munin !
```

Then reload Apache to pick up the config change:

```
systemctl reload httpd.service
```

Test auth for the web interface:

```
curl http://localhost/munin/ -u admin:admin
```

At this point, graphs should start being generated for disk, network, processes, system, etc.

2.15.2 HTTP Traffic

HTTP traffic can be monitored from the client side, the server side, or both.

Monitoring HTTP Traffic from the Client Side

HTTP traffic for web clients that have cookies enabled (most browsers) can be tracked by Google Analytics (<https://www.google.com/analytics/>) and Matomo (formerly “Piwik”; <https://matomo.org/>) as explained in the *Web Analytics Code* section of the Installation Guide.

To track analytics beyond pageviews, style classes have been added for end user action buttons, which include:

```
btn-compute, btn-contact, btn-download, btn-explore, btn-export, btn-preview, btn-request, btn-share
```

Monitoring HTTP Traffic from the Server Side

There are a wide variety of solutions available for monitoring HTTP traffic from the server side. The following are merely suggestions and a pull request against what is written here to add additional ideas is certainly welcome! Are you excited about the ELK stack (Elasticsearch, Logstash, and Kibana)? The TICK stack (Telegraph InfluxDB Chronograph and Kapacitor)? GoAccess? Prometheus? Graphite? Splunk? Please consider sharing your work with the Dataverse community!

AWStats

AWStats is a venerable tool for monitoring web traffic based on Apache access logs. On RHEL/CentOS 7, you can try the following steps.

Enable the EPEL yum repo:

```
yum install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

Install AWStats:

```
yum install awstats
```

Assuming you are using HTTPS rather than HTTP (and you should!), edit `/etc/awstats/awstats.standalone.conf` and change `LogFile="/var/log/httpd/access_log"` to `LogFile="/var/log/httpd/ssl_access_log"`. In the same file, change `LogFormat=1` to `LogFormat=4`. Make both of these changes (`LogFile` and `LogFormat` in `/etc/awstats/awstats.localhost.localdomain.conf` as well).

Process the logs:

```
/usr/share/awstats/tools/awstats_updateall.pl now
```

Please note that load balancers (such as Amazon's ELB) might interfere with the LogFormat mentioned above. To start troubleshooting errors such as AWStats did not find any valid log lines that match your LogFormat parameter, you might need to bump up the value of NbOfLinesForCorruptedLog in the config files above and re-try while you iterate on your Apache and AWStats config.

Please note that the Dataverse Project team has attempted to parse Glassfish/Payara logs using AWStats but it didn't seem to just work and posts have been made at <https://stackoverflow.com/questions/49134154/what-logformat-definition-does-awstats-require-to-parse-glassfish-http-access-logs> and <https://sourceforge.net/p/awstats/discussion/43428/thread/9b1befda/> that can be followed up on some day.

2.15.3 Database Connection Pool Used by App Server

<https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/2595> contains some information on enabling monitoring of app servers, which is disabled by default. It's a TODO to document what to do here if there is sufficient interest.

2.15.4 actionlogrecord

There is a database table called `actionlogrecord` that captures events that may be of interest. See <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/2729> for more discussion around this table.

An Important Note about ActionLogRecord Table:

Please note that in a busy production installation this table will be growing constantly. See the note on [How to Keep ActionLogRecord in Trim](#) in the Troubleshooting section of the guide.

2.15.5 Edit Draft Versions Logging

Changes made to draft versions of datasets are logged in a folder called `logs/edit-drafts`. See <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/5145> for more information on this logging.

2.15.6 Solr Indexing Failures Logging

Failures occurring during the indexing of Dataverse collections and datasets are logged in a folder called `logs/process-failures`. This logging will include instructions for manually re-running the failed processes. It may be advantageous to set up a automatic job to monitor new entries into this log folder so that indexes could be re-run.

2.15.7 EJB Timers

Should you be interested in monitoring the EJB timers, this script may be used as an example:

```
#!/usr/bin/env bash

# example monitoring script for EJB timers.
# currently assumes that there are two timers
# real monitoring commands should replace the echo statements for production use
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
r0=`curl -s http://localhost:8080/ejb-timer-service-app/timer`  
  
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then  
    echo "alert - no timer service" # put real alert command here  
fi  
  
r1=`echo $r0 | grep -c "There are 2 active persistent timers on this container"``  
  
if [ "1" -ne "$r1" ]; then  
    echo "alert - no active timers" # put real alert command here  
fi
```

2.15.8 AWS RDS

Some installations of Dataverse use AWS's "database as a service" offering called RDS (Relational Database Service) so it's worth mentioning some monitoring tips here.

There are two documents that are especially worth reviewing:

- [Monitoring an Amazon RDS DB instance](#): The official documentation.
- [Performance Monitoring Workshop for RDS PostgreSQL and Aurora PostgreSQL](#): A workshop that steps through practical examples and even includes labs featuring tools to generate load.

Tips:

- Enable **Performance Insights**. The [product page](#) includes a [video from 2017](#) that is still compelling today. For example, the [Top SQL](#) tab shows the SQL queries that are contributing the most to database load. There's also a [video from 2018](#) mentioned in the [overview](#) that's worth watching.
 - Note that Performance Insights is only available for [PostgreSQL 10 and higher](#) (also mentioned in docs). Version 11 has digest statistics enabled automatically but there's an [extra step](#) for version 10.
 - [Performance Insights policies](#) describes how to give access to Performance Insights to someone who doesn't have full access to RDS ([AmazonRDSFullAccess](#)).
- Enable the **slow query log** and consider using pgbadger to analyze the log files. Set `log_min_duration_statement` to "5000", for example, to log all queries that take 5 seconds or more. See [enable query logging](#) in the user guide or [slides](#) from the workshop for details. Using pgbadger is also mentioned as a [common DBA task](#).
- Use **CloudWatch**. CloudWatch gathers metrics about CPU utilization from the hypervisor for a DB instance. It's a separate service to log into so access can be granted more freely than to RDS. See [CloudWatch docs](#).
- Use **Enhanced Monitoring**. Enhanced Monitoring gathers its metrics from an agent on the instance. See [Enhanced Monitoring docs](#).
- It's possible to view and act on **RDS Events** such as snapshots, parameter changes, etc. See [Working with Amazon RDS events](#) for details.
- RDS monitoring is available via API and the `aws` command line tool. For example, see [Retrieving metrics with the Performance Insights API](#).
- To play with monitoring RDS using a server configured by `dataverse-ansible` set `use_rds` to true to skip some steps that aren't necessary when using RDS. See also the [Deployment](#) section of the Developer Guide.

2.16 Reporting Tools and Common Queries

Reporting tools and queries created by members of the Dataverse community.

- Matrix (<<https://github.com/rindataverse/matrix>>): Collaboration Matrix is a visualization showing the connectedness and collaboration between authors and their affiliations. Visit <https://rin.lipi.go.id/matrix/> to play with a production installation.
- Dataverse Installation Web Report (<<https://github.com/scholarsportal/Dataverse-Web-Report>>): Creates interactive charts showing data extracted from the Dataverse installation Excel Report
- Dataverse Installation Reports for Texas Digital Library (<<https://github.com/TexasDigitalLibrary/dataverse-reports>>): A python3-based tool to generate and email statistical reports from Dataverse (<https://dataverse.org/>) using the native API and database queries.
- dataverse-metrics (<<https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-metrics>>): Aggregates and visualizes metrics for Dataverse installations around the world or a single Dataverse installation.
- Automated Dataverse Metrics Reports (<<https://github.com/QualitativeDataRepository/dataverse-metrics>>): Create beautiful, customizable reports about your Dataverse installation at the click of a button, using R-Markdown and GitHub Actions.
- Useful queries from the Dataverse Community (<https://docs.google.com/document/d/1-Y_iUduSxdDNeK1yiGUxe7t-Md7Fy965jp4o4m1XEoE/edit#heading=h.avuoo5kf0mdt>): A community-generated and maintained document of postgresql queries for getting information about users and dataverse collections, datasets, and files in your Dataverse installation. If you are trying to find out some information from your Dataverse installation, chances are that someone else has had the same questions and it's now listed in this document. If it's not listed, please feel free to add it to the document.

2.17 Maintenance

When you have scheduled down time for your production servers, we provide a sample maintenance page at `/_static/installation/files/etc/maintenance/maintenance.xhtml` for you to use. To download, right-click and select “Save Link As”.

The maintenance page is intended to be a static page served by Apache to provide users with a nicer, more informative experience when the site is unavailable.

2.18 Backups

Running tape, or similar backups to ensure the long term preservation of all the data stored in the Dataverse Repository is an implied responsibility that should be taken most seriously.

In addition to running these disk-level backups, we have provided an experimental script that can be run on schedule (via a cron job or something similar) to create extra archival copies of all the Datafiles stored in the Dataverse Repository on a remote storage server, accessible via an ssh connection. The script and some documentation can be found in `scripts/backup/run_backup` in the Dataverse Software source tree at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse>. Some degree of knowledge of system administration and Python is required.

Once again, the script is experimental and NOT a replacement of regular and reliable disk backups!

2.19 Troubleshooting

Sometimes a Dataverse installation's users get into trouble. Sometimes a Dataverse installation itself gets into trouble. If something has gone wrong, this section is for you.

Contents:

- *Using Dataverse Installation APIs to Troubleshoot and Fix Problems*
 - *A Dataset Is Locked And Cannot Be Edited or Published*
 - *Someone Created Spam Datasets and I Need to Delete Them*
 - *A User Needs Their Account to Be Converted From Institutional (Shibboleth), ORCID, Google, or GitHub to Something Else*
- *Ingest*
 - *Long-Running Ingest Jobs Have Exhausted System Resources*
- *Payara*
 - *Finding the Payara Log File*
 - *Increasing Payara Logging*
- *Deployment fails, “EJB Timer Service not available”*
- *Timer Not Working*
- *Constraint Violations Issues*
- *Many Files with a File Type of “Unknown”, “Application”, or “Binary”*
- *What’s with this Table “ActionLogRecord” in Our Database, It Seems to be Growing Uncontrollably?*
- *Getting Help*

2.19.1 Using Dataverse Installation APIs to Troubleshoot and Fix Problems

See the [Introduction](#) section of the API Guide for a high level overview of Dataverse Software APIs. Below are listed problems that support teams might encounter that can be handled via API (sometimes only via API).

A Dataset Is Locked And Cannot Be Edited or Published

There are several types of dataset locks. Locks can be managed using the locks API, or by accessing them directly in the database. Internally locks are maintained in the `datasetlock` database table, with the field `dataset_id` linking them to specific datasets, and the column `reason` specifying the type of lock.

It's normal for the ingest process described in the [Tabular Data, Representation, Storage and Ingest](#) section of the User Guide to take some time but if hours or days have passed and the dataset is still locked, you might want to inspect the locks and consider deleting some or all of them. It is recommended to restart the application server if you are deleting an ingest lock, to make sure the ingest job is no longer running in the background. Ingest locks are identified by the label `Ingest` in the `reason` column of the `DatasetLock` table in the database.

A dataset is locked with a lock of type `finalizePublication` while the persistent identifiers for the datafiles in the dataset are registered or updated, and/or while the physical files are being validated by recalculating the checksums and verifying them against the values stored in the database, before the publication process can be completed (Note that

either of the two tasks can be disabled via database options - see [Configuration](#)). If a dataset has been in this state for a long period of time, for hours or longer, it is somewhat safe to assume that it is stuck (for example, the process may have been interrupted by an application server restart, or a system crash), so you may want to remove the lock (to be safe, do restart the application server, to ensure that the job is no longer running in the background) and advise the user to try publishing again. See [Managing Datasets and Dataverse Collections](#) for more information on publishing.

If any files in the dataset fail the validation above the dataset will be left locked with a **DatasetLock**. Reason=FileValidationFailed. The user will be notified that they need to contact their Dataverse installation's support in order to address the issue before another attempt to publish can be made. The admin will have to address and fix the underlying problems (by either restoring the missing or corrupted files, or by purging the affected files from the dataset) before deleting the lock and advising the user to try to publish again. The goal of the validation framework is to catch these types of conditions while the dataset is still in DRAFT.

During an attempt to publish a dataset, the validation will stop after encountering the first file that fails it. It is strongly recommended for the admin to review and verify *all* the files in the dataset, so that all the compromised files can be fixed before the lock is removed. We recommend using the /api/validate/dataset/files/{id} API. It will go through all the files for the dataset specified, and will report which ones have failed validation. see [Physical Files Validation in a Dataset](#) in the [Native API](#) section of the User Guide.

The following are two real life examples of problems that have resulted in corrupted datafiles during normal operation of a Dataverse installation:

1. Botched file deletes - while a datafile is in DRAFT, attempting to delete it from the dataset involves deleting both the DataFile database table entry, and the physical file. (Deleting a datafile from a *published* version merely removes it from the future versions - but keeps the file in the dataset). The problem we've observed in the early versions of the Dataverse Software was a *partially successful* delete, where the database transaction would fail (for whatever reason), but only after the physical file had already been deleted from the filesystem. Thus resulting in a datafile entry remaining in the dataset, but with the corresponding physical file missing. We believe we have addressed the issue that was making this condition possible, so it shouldn't happen again - but there may be a datafile in this state in your database. Assuming the user's intent was in fact to delete the file, the easiest solution is simply to confirm it and purge the datafile entity from the database. Otherwise the file needs to be restored from backups, or obtained from the user and copied back into storage.
2. Another issue we've observed: a failed tabular data ingest that leaves the datafile un-ingested, BUT with the physical file already replaced by the generated tab-delimited version of the data. This datafile will fail the validation because the checksum in the database matches the file in the original format (Stata, SPSS, etc.) as uploaded by the user. To fix: luckily, this is easily reversible, since the uploaded original should be saved in your storage, with the .orig extension. Simply swapping the .orig copy with the main file associated with the datafile will fix it. Similarly, we believe this condition should not happen again in Dataverse Software 4.20+, but you may have some legacy cases on your server.

Someone Created Spam Datasets and I Need to Delete Them

Depending on how open your Dataverse installation is to the general public creating datasets, you may sometimes need to deal with spam datasets.

Look for “destroy” in the *Native API* section of the API Guide.

A User Needs Their Account to Be Converted From Institutional (Shibboleth), ORCID, Google, or GitHub to Something Else

See *Converting Shibboleth Users to Local* and *Converting OAuth Users to Local*.

2.19.2 Ingest

Long-Running Ingest Jobs Have Exhausted System Resources

Ingest is both CPU- and memory-intensive, and depending on your system resources and the size and format of tabular data files uploaded, may render your Dataverse installation unresponsive or nearly inoperable. It is possible to cancel these jobs by purging the ingest queue.

`/usr/local/payara5/mq/bin/imqcmd -u admin query dst -t q -n DataverseIngest` will query the DataverseIngest destination. The password, unless you have changed it, matches the username.

`/usr/local/payara5/mq/bin/imqcmd -u admin purge dst -t q -n DataverseIngest` will purge the DataverseIngest queue, and prompt for your confirmation.

Finally, list destinations to verify that the purge was successful:

`/usr/local/payara5/mq/bin/imqcmd -u admin list dst`

If you are still running Glassfish, substitute glassfish4 for payara5 above. If you have installed your Dataverse installation in some other location, adjust the above paths accordingly.

2.19.3 Payara

Finding the Payara Log File

`/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/server.log` is the main place to look when you encounter problems (assuming you installed Payara in the default directory). Hopefully an error message has been logged. If there’s a stack trace, it may be of interest to developers, especially they can trace line numbers back to a tagged version or commit. Send more of the stack trace (the entire file if possible) to developers who can help (see “Getting Help”, below) and be sure to say which version of the Dataverse Software you have installed.

Increasing Payara Logging

For debugging purposes, you may find it helpful to temporarily increase logging levels. Here’s an example of increasing logging for the Java class behind the “datasets” API endpoints:

`./asadmin set-log-levels edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.api.Datasets=FINE`

For more on setting log levels, see the *Debugging* section of the Developer Guide.

Our guides focus on using the command line to manage Payara but you might be interested in an admin GUI at <http://localhost:4848>

2.19.4 Deployment fails, “EJB Timer Service not available”

Sometimes your Dataverse installation fails to deploy, or Payara fails to restart once the application is deployed, with the following error message: “remote failure: Error occurred during deployment: Exception while loading the app : EJB Timer Service is not available. Please see server.log for more details.”

We don’t know what’s causing this issue, but here’s a known workaround:

- Stop Payara;
- Remove the generated and osgi-cache directories from the domain1 directory;
- Start Payara

The shell script below performs the steps above. Note that it may or may not work on your system, so it is provided as an example only, located at `/_static/util/clear_timer.sh`. The configuration values might need to be changed to reflect your environment (the Payara directory). See the comments in the script for more information.

```
#!/bin/sh

# EJB timers sometimes cause problems; utility to clear generated directories

# assumes this script is being run as root

# will restart Payara if it's stopped; comment out the `start-domain` command at the end
# if you'd like to avoid that.

# directory where Payara is installed
PAYARA_DIR=/usr/local/payara5

# directory within Payara (defaults)
DV_DIR=${PAYARA_DIR}/glassfish/domains/domain1

# stop the domain (generates a warning if app server is stopped)
${PAYARA_DIR}/bin/asadmin stop-domain

rm -rf ${PAYARA_DIR}/${DV_DIR}/generated/
rm -rf ${PAYARA_DIR}/${DV_DIR}/osgi-cache/

# restart the domain (also generates a warning if app server is stopped)
${PAYARA_DIR}/bin/asadmin start-domain
```

2.19.5 Timer Not Working

Your Dataverse installation relies on EJB timers to perform scheduled tasks: harvesting from remote servers, updating the local OAI sets and running metadata exports. (See [Dataverse Installation Application Timers](#) for details.) If these scheduled jobs are not running on your server, you might experience the following symptoms:

If you are seeing the following in your server.log...

Handling timeout on ...

followed by an Exception stack trace with these lines in it:

Internal Exception: java.io.StreamCorruptedException: invalid stream header ...

Exception Description: Could not deserialize object from byte array ...

... you should reach out by opening an issue. In the good ol' days of running Dataverse Software 4.x running on Glassfish 4, this was a hint for an unsupported JDBC driver. In Dataverse Software 5.x this would be a new regression and its cause would need to be investigated.

2.19.6 Constraint Violations Issues

In real life production use, it may be possible to end up in a situation where some values associated with the datasets in your database are no longer valid under the constraints enforced by the later versions of the Dataverse Software. This is not very likely to happen, but if it does, the symptoms will be as follows: Some datasets can no longer be edited, long exception stack traces logged in the app server log, caused by:

```
javax.validation.ConstraintViolationException:  
Bean Validation constraint(s) violated while executing Automatic Bean Validation on  
→callback event: 'preUpdate'.  
Please refer to embedded ConstraintViolations for details.
```

(contrary to what the message suggests, there are no specific “details” anywhere in the stack trace that would explain what values violate which constraints)

To identify the specific invalid values in the affected datasets, or to check all the datasets in the Dataverse installation for constraint violations, see [Dataset Validation](#) in the [Native API](#) section of the User Guide.

2.19.7 Many Files with a File Type of “Unknown”, “Application”, or “Binary”

From the home page of a Dataverse installation you can get a count of files by file type by clicking “Files” and then scrolling down to “File Type”. If you see a lot of files that are “Unknown”, “Application”, or “Binary” you can have the Dataverse installation attempt to redetect the file type by using the [Redetect File Type](#) API endpoint.

2.19.8 What's with this Table “ActionLogRecord” in Our Database, It Seems to be Growing Uncontrollably?

An entry is created in ActionLogRecord table every time an application command is executed (to be precise, certain non-command actions, such as logins are recorded there as well). This is very useful for investigating problems or usage patterns. However, please note that there is no builtin mechanism in the Application for trimming this table, so it will continue growing as your Dataverse installation is kept in operation. For example, multiple entries in this table are created every time a guest user views the page of a published dataset. Many more are created when an author is actively working on a dataset, making edits, adding new files, etc. On a busy installation this table is likely to grow at a faster rate than the actual data holdings. For example, after five years of production use at Harvard IQSS, the raw size of ActionLogRecord appeared to exceed the combined size of the rest of the database (!). It's worth pointing out that the sheer size of this one table does not by itself result in performance issues in any linear way. But it may still be undesirable to keep that much extra data around; especially since for most installations these records are unlikely to have much value past a certain number of months or years. Some installations may be purchasing their database services from cloud computing providers (RDS, etc.) where extra data may result in higher costs. Here at Harvard we chose to periodically trim the table manually, deleting all the entries older than 2 years. We recommend that you check on the size of this table in your database, and choose whether, and how often you want to trim it. You will also need to decide whether you want to archive these older records outside the database before deleting them. If you see no reason to keep them around, older records can be erased with a simple query. For example, to delete everything before the year 2021:

```
DELETE FROM ACTIONLOGRECORD WHERE starttime < '2021-01-01 00:00:00';
```

If you want to preserve these old entries before deleting them, you can save them with, for example, psql:

```
psql <CREDENTIALS> -d <DATABASE_NAME> -t -c "SELECT * FROM actionlogrecord WHERE starttime < '2021-01-01 00:00:00' ORDER BY starttime;"
```

A full backup of the table can be made with pg_dump, for example:

```
pg_dump <CREDENTIALS> --table=actionlogrecord --data-only <DATABASE_NAME> > /tmp/  
actionlogrecord_backup.sql
```

(In the example above, the output will be saved in raw SQL format. It is portable and human-readable, but uses a lot of space. It does, however, compress very well. Add the -Fc option to save the output in a proprietary, binary format that's already compressed).

2.19.9 Getting Help

If the troubleshooting advice above didn't help, contact any of the support channels mentioned in the [*Getting Help*](#) section of the Installation Guide.

API GUIDE

Contents:

3.1 Introduction

The Dataverse Software APIs allow users to accomplish many tasks such as...

- creating datasets
- uploading files
- publishing datasets
- and much, much more

... all without using the Dataverse installation's web interface.

APIs open the door for integrations between the Dataverse Software and other software. For a list, see the *Integrations* section of the Admin Guide.

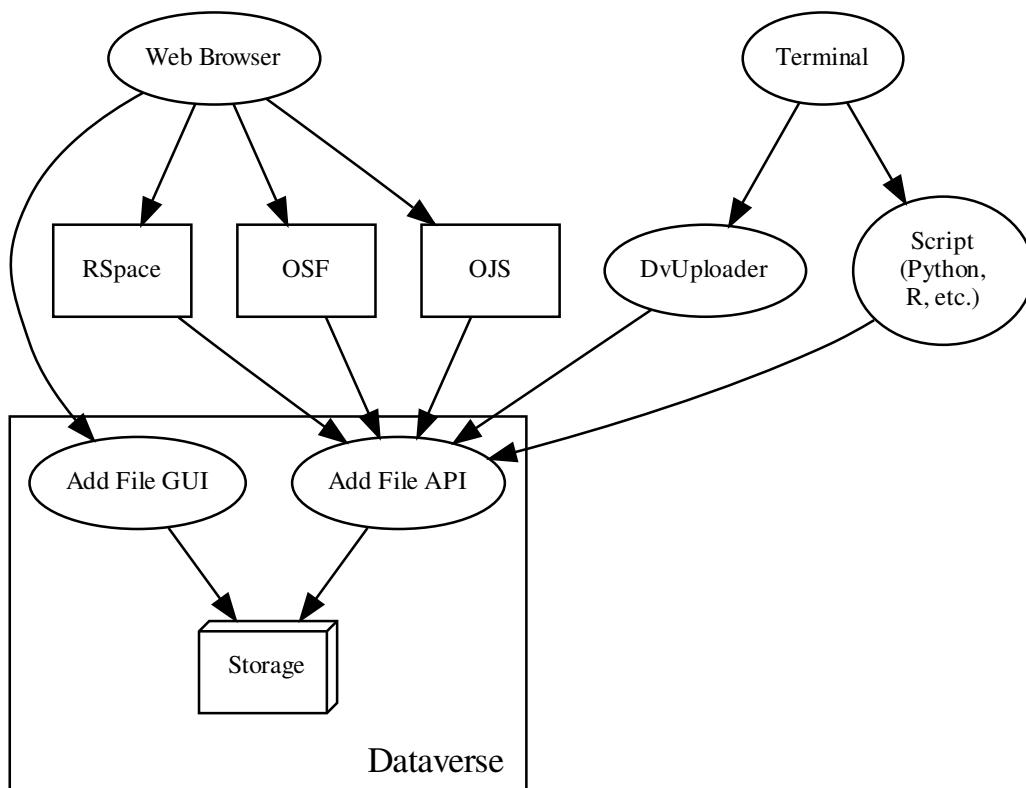
Contents:

- *What is an API?*
- *Types of Dataverse Software API Users*
 - *API Users Within a Single Dataverse Installation*
 - * *Users of Integrations and Apps*
 - * *Power Users*
 - * *Support Teams and Superusers*
 - * *Sysadmins*
 - * *In House Developers*
 - *API Users Across the Dataverse Project*
 - * *Developers of Integrations, External Tools, and Apps*
 - * *Developers of Dataverse Software API Client Libraries*
 - * *Developers of The Dataverse Software Itself*
- *How This Guide is Organized*
 - *Getting Started*

- [API Tokens and Authentication](#)
- [Lists of Dataverse APIs](#)
- [Client Libraries](#)
- [Examples](#)
- [Frequently Asked Questions](#)
- [Getting Help](#)

3.1.1 What is an API?

API stands for “Application Programming Interface” and an example is the Dataverse Software’s “file upload” API. In the diagram below, we can see that while users can click a button within Dataverse installation’s web interface to upload a file, there are many other ways to get files into a Dataverse installation, all using an API that allows for uploading of files.



The components above that use the “file” upload API are:

- DvUploader is terminal-based application for uploading files that is described in the [Dataset + File Management](#) section of the User Guide.

- OJS, OSF, and RSpace are all web applications that can integrate with a Dataverse installation and are described in “Getting Data In” in the *Integrations* section of the Admin Guide.
- The script in the diagram can be as simple as a single line of code that is run in a terminal. You can copy and paste “one-liners” like this from the guide. See the *Getting Started with APIs* section for examples using a tool called “curl”.

The diagram above shows only a few examples of software using a specific API but many more APIs are available.

3.1.2 Types of Dataverse Software API Users

This guide is intended to serve multiple audiences but pointers various sections of the guide are provided below based on the type of API user you are.

API Users Within a Single Dataverse Installation

Each Dataverse installation will have its own groups of people interested in APIs.

Users of Integrations and Apps

Integrations and apps can take many forms but two examples are:

- Using Open Science Framework (OSF), a web application, to deposit and publish data into a Dataverse installation.
- Using DVUploader, a terminal-based desktop application, to upload files into a Dataverse installation.

In both examples, users need to obtain an API Token to authenticate with a Dataverse installation.

A good starting point is “API Tokens” in the *Account Creation + Management* section of the User Guide. DVUploader is documented in the *Dataset + File Management* section of the User Guide. The integrations that are enabled depend on your Dataverse installation. You can find a list in the *Integrations* section of the Admin Guide.

Power Users

Power users may be researchers or curators who are comfortable with automating parts of their workflow by writing Python code or similar.

The recommended starting point for power users is the *Getting Started with APIs* section.

Support Teams and Superusers

Support teams that answer questions about their Dataverse installation should familiarize themselves with the *Getting Started with APIs* section to get a sense of common tasks that researchers and curators might be trying to accomplish by using Dataverse Software APIs.

Superusers of a Dataverse installation have access a superuser dashboard described in the *Dashboard* section of the Admin Guide but some operations can only be done via API.

A good starting point for both groups is the *Getting Started with APIs* section of this guide followed by the *Troubleshooting* section of the Admin Guide.

Sysadmins

Sysadmins often write scripts to automate tasks and Dataverse Software APIs make this possible. Sysadmins have control over the server that the Dataverse installation is running on and may be called upon to execute API commands that are limited to “localhost” (the server itself) for security reasons.

A good starting point for sysadmins is “Blocking API Endpoints” in the [Configuration](#) section of the Installation Guide, followed by the [Getting Started with APIs](#) section of this guide, followed by the [Troubleshooting](#) section of the Admin Guide.

In House Developers

Some organizations that run a Dataverse installation employ developers who are tasked with using the Dataverse installation’s APIs to accomplish specific tasks such as building custom integrations with in house systems or creating reports specific to the organization’s needs.

A good starting point for in house developers is the [Getting Started with APIs](#) section.

API Users Across the Dataverse Project

The Dataverse Project loves contributors! Depending on your interests and skills, you might fall into one or more of the groups below.

Developers of Integrations, External Tools, and Apps

One of the primary purposes for Dataverse Software APIs in the first place is to enable integrations with third party software. Integrations are listed in the following places:

- The [Integrations](#) section of the Admin Guide.
- The [Building External Tools](#) section this guide.
- The [Apps](#) section of this guide.

Good starting points are the three sections above to get a sense of third-party software that already integrates with the Dataverse Software, followed by the [Getting Started with APIs](#) section.

Developers of Dataverse Software API Client Libraries

A client library helps developers using a specific programming language such as Python, Javascript, R, or Java interact with Dataverse Software APIs in a manner that is idiomatic for their language. For example, a Python programmer may want to

A good starting point is the [Client Libraries](#) section, followed by the [Getting Started with APIs](#) section.

Developers of The Dataverse Software Itself

Developers working on the Dataverse Software itself use the APIs when adding features, fixing bugs, and testing those features and bug fixes.

A good starting point is the [Testing](#) section of the Developer Guide.

3.1.3 How This Guide is Organized

Getting Started

See [Getting Started with APIs](#)

API Tokens and Authentication

See [API Tokens and Authentication](#).

Lists of Dataverse APIs

- [Search API](#): For searching dataverse collections, datasets, and files.
- [Data Access API](#): For downloading and subsetting data.
- [Native API](#): For performing most tasks that are possible in the GUI. See [Getting Started with APIs](#) for the most common commands which operate on endpoints with names like:
 - Dataverses
 - Datasets
 - Files
 - etc.
- [Metrics API](#): For query statistics about usage of a Dataverse installation.
- [SWORD API](#): For depositing data using a standards-based approach rather than the [Native API](#).

Please note that some APIs are only documented in other guides that are more suited to their audience:

- Admin Guide
 - [External Tools](#)
 - [Metadata Customization](#)
 - [Metadata Export](#)
 - [Make Data Count](#)
 - [Solr Search Index](#)
- Installation Guide
 - [Configuration](#)
- Developer Guide
 - [Auxiliary File Support](#)
 - [Big Data Support](#)

- [Dataset Migration API](#)
- [Dataset Semantic Metadata API](#)
- [Direct DataFile Upload/Replace API](#)
- [Workflows](#)

Client Libraries

See [Client Libraries](#) for how to use Dataverse Software APIs from Python, R, Java, and Javascript.

Examples

[Apps](#) links to example open source code you can study. [Getting Started with APIs](#) also has many examples.

Frequently Asked Questions

See [Frequently Asked Questions](#).

3.1.4 Getting Help

Dataverse Software API questions are on topic in all the usual places:

- The dataverse-community Google Group: <https://groups.google.com/forum/#!forum/dataverse-community>
- The Dataverse Project community calls: <https://dataverse.org/community-calls>
- The Dataverse Project chat room: <http://chat.dataverse.org>
- The Dataverse Project ticketing system: support@dataverse.org

After your question has been answered, you are welcome to help improve the [Frequently Asked Questions](#) section of this guide.

3.2 Getting Started with APIs

If you are a researcher or curator who wants to automate parts of your workflow, this section should help you get started. The [Introduction](#) section lists resources for other groups who may be interested in Dataverse Software APIs such as developers of integrations and support teams.

Contents:

- [Servers You Can Test With](#)
- [Getting an API Token](#)
- [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#)
- [Depositing Data](#)
 - [Creating a Dataverse Collection](#)
 - [Creating a Dataset](#)

- [Uploading Files](#)
- [Publishing a Dataverse Collection](#)
- [Publishing a Dataset](#)
- [Finding and Downloading Data](#)
 - [Finding Datasets](#)
 - [Finding Recently Published Dataverse Collections, Datasets, and Files](#)
 - [Downloading Files](#)
 - [Downloading Metadata](#)
 - [Listing the Contents of a Dataverse Collection](#)
- [Managing Permissions](#)
 - [Granting Permission](#)
 - [Revoking Permission](#)
 - [Listing Permissions \(Role Assignments\)](#)
- [Beyond “Getting Started” Tasks](#)
- [Getting Help](#)

3.2.1 Servers You Can Test With

Rather than using a production Dataverse installation, API users are welcome to use <http://demo.dataverse.org> for testing. You can email support@dataverse.org if you have any trouble with this server.

If you would rather have full control over your own test server, deployments to AWS, Docker, Vagrant, and more are covered in the [Developer Guide](#) and the [Installation Guide](#).

3.2.2 Getting an API Token

Many Dataverse Software APIs require an API token.

Once you have identified a server to test with, create an account, click on your name, and get your API token. For more details, see the [API Tokens and Authentication](#) section.

3.2.3 curl Examples and Environment Variables

The examples in this guide use `curl` for the following reasons:

- `curl` commands are succinct.
- `curl` commands can be copied and pasted into a terminal.
- This guide is programming language agnostic. It doesn’t prefer any particular programming language.

You’ll find `curl` examples that look like this:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export QUERY=data
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
curl $SERVER_URL/api/search?q=$QUERY
```

What's going on above is the declaration of "environment variables" that are substituted into a curl command. You should run the "export" commands but change the value for the server URL or the query (or whatever options the command supports). Then you should be able to copy and paste the curl command and it should "just work", substituting the variables like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=data
```

If you ever want to check an environment variable, you can "echo" it like this:

```
echo $SERVER_URL
```

If you don't like curl, don't have curl, or want to use a different programming language, you are encouraged to check out the Python, Javascript, R, and Java options in the [Client Libraries](#) section.

3.2.4 Depositing Data

Creating a Dataverse Collection

See [Create a Dataverse Collection](#).

Creating a Dataset

See [Create a Dataset in a Dataverse Collection](#).

Uploading Files

See [Add a File to a Dataset](#).

Publishing a Dataverse Collection

See [Publish a Dataverse Collection](#).

Publishing a Dataset

See [Publish a Dataset](#).

3.2.5 Finding and Downloading Data

Finding Datasets

A quick example search for the word "data" is <https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=data>

See the [Search API](#) section for details.

Finding Recently Published Dataverse Collections, Datasets, and Files

See [Date Range Search Example](#).

It's also possible to find recently published datasets via OAI-PMH.

Downloading Files

The [Data Access API](#) section explains how to download files.

To download all the files in a dataset, see [Downloading All Files in a Dataset](#).

In order to download individual files, you must know their database IDs which you can get from the `dataverse_json` metadata at the dataset level. See [Export Metadata of a Dataset in Various Formats](#).

Downloading Metadata

Dataset metadata is available in a variety of formats listed at [Supported Metadata Export Formats](#).

See [Export Metadata of a Dataset in Various Formats](#).

Listing the Contents of a Dataverse Collection

See [Show Contents of a Dataverse Collection](#).

3.2.6 Managing Permissions

Granting Permission

See [Assign a New Role on a Dataverse Collection](#).

Revoking Permission

See [Delete Role Assignment from a Dataverse Collection](#).

Listing Permissions (Role Assignments)

See [List Role Assignments in a Dataverse Collection](#).

3.2.7 Beyond “Getting Started” Tasks

In addition to the tasks listed above, your Dataverse installation supports many other operations via API.

See [Lists of Dataverse APIs](#) and [Types of Dataverse Software API Users](#) to get oriented.

If you're looking for some inspiration for how you can use the Dataverse Software APIs, there are open source projects that integrate with the Dataverse Software listed in the [Apps](#) section.

3.2.8 Getting Help

See [Getting Help](#).

3.3 API Tokens and Authentication

An API token is similar to a password and allows you to authenticate to Dataverse Software APIs to perform actions as you. Many Dataverse Software APIs require the use of an API token.

Contents:

- [How to Get an API Token](#)
- [How Your API Token Is Like a Password](#)
- [Passing Your API Token as an HTTP Header \(Preferred\) or a Query Parameter](#)
- [Resetting Your API Token](#)

3.3.1 How to Get an API Token

Your API token is unique to the server you are using. You cannot take your API token from one server and use it on another server.

Instructions for getting a token are described in the [Account Creation + Management](#) section of the User Guide.

3.3.2 How Your API Token Is Like a Password

Anyone who has your API Token can add and delete data as you so you should treat it with the same care as a password.

3.3.3 Passing Your API Token as an HTTP Header (Preferred) or a Query Parameter

Note: The SWORD API uses a different way of passing the API token. Please see [Authentication for SWORD](#) for details.

See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

There are two ways to pass your API token to Dataverse Software APIs. The preferred method is to send the token in the X-Dataverse-key HTTP header, as in the following curl example.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ALIAS=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ALIAS/contents
```

Here's how it looks without the environment variables:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
  ↪api/dataverses/root/contents
```

The second way to pass your API token is via a query parameter called `key` in the URL like below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ALIAS=root

curl $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ALIAS/contents?key=$API_TOKEN
```

Here's how it looks without the environment variables:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/contents?key=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-
˓→xxxxxxxxxxxx
```

Use of the X-Dataverse-key HTTP header form is preferred to passing key in the URL because query parameters like key appear in URLs and might accidentally get shared, exposing your API token. (Again it's like a password.) Additionally, URLs are often logged on servers while it's less common to log HTTP headers.

3.3.4 Resetting Your API Token

You can reset your API Token from your account page in your Dataverse installation as described in the *Account Creation + Management* section of the User Guide.

3.4 Search API

Contents:

- *Parameters*
- *Basic Search Example*
- *Advanced Search Examples*
 - *Narrowed to Collection, Show Relevance and Facets*
 - *Retrieve Released Versions Only*
 - *Include Metadata Blocks and/or Metadata Fields*
 - *Include Specific Fields Only*
- *Date Range Search Example*
- *Iteration*

The Search API supports the same searching, sorting, and faceting operations as the Dataverse Software's web interface.

To search unpublished content, you must pass in an API token as described in the *API Tokens and Authentication* section.

The parameters and JSON response are partly inspired by the [GitHub Search API](#).

Note: The search API can be used from scripts running in web browsers, as it allows cross-origin resource sharing (CORS).

Please note that in Dataverse Software 4.3 and older the “citation” field wrapped the persistent ID URL in an <a> tag but this has been changed to plaintext. If you want the old value with HTML in it, a new field called “citationHtml” can be used.

3.4.1 Parameters

Name	Type	Description
q	string	The search term or terms. Using “title:data” will search only the “title” field. “*” can be used as a wildcard either alone or adjacent to a term (i.e. “bird*”). For example, https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=title:data . For a list of fields to search, please see https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/2558 (for now).
type	string	Can be either “Dataverse”, “dataset”, or “file”. Multiple “type” parameters can be used to include multiple types (i.e. type=dataset&type=file). If omitted, all types will be returned. For example, https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=*&type=dataset
sub-tree	string	The identifier of the Dataverse collection to which the search should be narrowed. The subtree of this Dataverse collection and all its children will be searched. Multiple “subtree” parameters can be used to include multiple Dataverse collections. For example, https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=data&subtree=birds&subtree=cats .
sort	string	The sort field. Supported values include “name” and “date”. See example under “order”.
order	string	The order in which to sort. Can either be “asc” or “desc”. For example, https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=data&sort=name&order=asc
per_page	int	The number of results to return per request. The default is 10. The max is 1000. See iteration example .
start	int	A cursor for paging through search results. See iteration example .
show_relevance	boolean	Whether or not to show details of which fields were matched by the query. False by default. See advanced search example .
show_facets	boolean	Whether or not to show facets that can be operated on by the “fq” parameter. False by default. See advanced search example .
fq	string	A filter query on the search term. Multiple “fq” parameters can be used. See advanced search example .
show_database_ids	boolean	Whether or not to show the database IDs of the search results (for developer use).
geo_point	string	Latitude and longitude in the form geo_point=42.3,-71.1. You must supply geo_radius as well. See also Geospatial Search .
geo_radius	string	Radial distance in kilometers from geo_point (which must be supplied as well) such as geo_radius=1.5.
meta-data-fields	string	Includes the requested fields for each dataset in the response. Multiple “metadata_fields” parameters can be used to include several fields. The value must be in the form “{metadata_block_name}:{field_name}” to include a specific field from a metadata block (see example) or “{metadata_field_set_name}:*” to include all the fields for a metadata block (see example). “{field_name}” cannot be a subfield of a compound field. If “{field_name}” is a compound field, all subfields are included.

3.4.2 Basic Search Example

<https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=trees>

```
{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": {
    "q": "trees",
    "total_count": 5,
    "start": 0,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

"spelling_alternatives": {
    "trees": "[tree]"
},
"items": [
{
    "name": "Trees",
    "type": "dataverse",
    "url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/dataverse/trees",
    "image_url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/access/dvCardImage/7",
    "identifier": "trees",
    "description": "A tree dataverse with some birds",
    "published_at": "2016-05-10T12:53:38Z"
},
{
    "name": "Chestnut Trees",
    "type": "dataverse",
    "url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/dataverse/chestnuttrees",
    "image_url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/access/dvCardImage/9",
    "identifier": "chestnuttrees",
    "description": "A dataverse with chestnut trees and an oriole",
    "published_at": "2016-05-10T12:52:38Z"
},
{
    "name": "trees.png",
    "type": "file",
    "url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/access/datafile/12",
    "image_url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/access/fileCardImage/12",
    "file_id": "12",
    "description": "",
    "published_at": "2016-05-10T12:53:39Z",
    "file_type": "PNG Image",
    "file_content_type": "image/png",
    "size_in_bytes": 8361,
    "md5": "0386269a5acb2c57b4eade587ff4db64",
    "file_persistent_id": "doi:10.5072/FK2/XTT5BV/PCCHV7",
    "dataset_name": "Dataset One",
    "dataset_id": "32",
    "dataset_persistent_id": "doi:10.5072/FK2/XTT5BV",
    "dataset_citation": "Spruce, Sabrina, 2016, \"Spruce Goose\", http://dx.doi.org/10.5072/FK2/XTT5BV, Root Dataverse, V1"
},
{
    "name": "Birds",
    "type": "dataverse",
    "url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/dataverse/birds",
    "image_url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/access/dvCardImage/2",
    "identifier": "birds",
    "description": "A bird Dataverse collection with some trees",
    "published_at": "2016-05-10T12:57:27Z"
},
{
    "name": "Darwin's Finches",
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    "type": "dataset",
    "url": "https://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/MB5VGR",
    "global_id": "doi:10.70122/FK2/MB5VGR",
    "description": "Darwin's finches (also known as the Gal\u00e1pagos finches) are a group of about fifteen species of passerine birds.",
    "published_at": "2019-12-11T15:26:10Z",
    "publisher": "dvbe69f5e1",
    "citationHtml": "Finch, Fiona; Spruce, Sabrina; Poe, Edgar Allen; Mulligan, Hercules, 2019, \"Darwin's Finches\", <a href=\"https://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/MB5VGR\" target=\"_blank\">https://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/MB5VGR</a>, Root, V3",
    "identifier_of_dataverse": "dvbe69f5e1",
    "name_of_dataverse": "dvbe69f5e1",
    "citation": "Finch, Fiona; Spruce, Sabrina; Poe, Edgar Allen; Mulligan, Hercules, 2019, \"Darwin's Finches\", https://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/MB5VGR, Root, V3",
    "storageIdentifier": "file://10.70122/FK2/MB5VGR",
    "subjects": [
        "Astronomy and Astrophysics",
        "Other"
    ],
    "fileCount": 3,
    "versionId": 1260,
    "versionState": "RELEASED",
    "majorVersion": 3,
    "minorVersion": 0,
    "createdAt": "2019-09-20T18:08:29Z",
    "updatedAt": "2019-12-11T15:26:10Z",
    "contacts": [
        {
            "name": "Finch, Fiona",
            "affiliation": ""
        }
    ],
    "producers": [
        "Allen, Irwin",
        "Spielberg, Stephen"
    ],
    "authors": [
        "Finch, Fiona",
        "Spruce, Sabrina",
        "Poe, Edgar Allen",
        "Mulligan, Hercules"
    ]
},
],
"count_in_response": 5
}
}

```

3.4.3 Advanced Search Examples

Narrowed to Collection, Show Relevance and Facets

https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=finch&show_relevance=true&show_facets=true&fq=publicationDate:2016&subtree=birds

In this example, `show_relevance=true` matches per field are shown. Available facets are shown with `show_facets=true` and one of the facets is being used with `fq=publicationDate:2016`. The search is being narrowed to the Dataverse collection with the identifier “birds” with the parameter `subtree=birds`.

```
{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": {
    "q": "finch",
    "total_count": 2,
    "start": 0,
    "spelling_alternatives": {
    },
    "items": [
      {
        "name": "Finches",
        "type": "dataverse",
        "url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/dataverse/finches",
        "image_url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/access/dvCardImage/3",
        "identifier": "finches",
        "description": "A Dataverse collection with finches",
        "published_at": "2016-05-10T12:57:38Z",
        "matches": [
          {
            "description": {
              "snippets": [
                "A Dataverse collection with <span class=\"search-term-match\\\">finches</span>"
              ]
            }
          },
          {
            "name": {
              "snippets": [
                "<span class=\"search-term-match\\\">Finches</span>"
              ]
            }
          }
        ],
        "score": 3.8500118255615234
      },
      {
        "name": "Darwin's Finches",
        "type": "dataset",
        "url": "http://dx.doi.org/10.5072/FK2/G2VPE7",
        "image_url": "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/access/dsCardImage/2",
        "global_id": "doi:10.5072/FK2/G2VPE7",
        "description": "Darwin's finches (also known as the Galápagos finches)"
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

→are a group of about fifteen species of passerine birds.",
    "published_at": "2016-05-10T12:57:45Z",
    "citationHtml": "Finch, Fiona, 2016, \"Darwin's Finches\", <a href=\"
→\"http://dx.doi.org/10.5072/FK2/G2VPE7\" target=\"_blank\">http://dx.doi.org/10.5072/
→FK2/G2VPE7</a>, Root Dataverse, V1",
    "citation": "Finch, Fiona, 2016, \"Darwin's Finches\", http://dx.doi.org/
→10.5072/FK2/G2VPE7, Root Dataverse, V1",
    "matches": [
        {
            "authorName": {
                "snippets": [
                    "<span class=\"search-term-match\">Finch</span>, Fiona"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "dsDescriptionValue": {
                "snippets": [
                    "Darwin's <span class=\"search-term-match\">finches</
→span> (also known as the Galápagos <span class=\"search-term-match\">finches</span>)",
                    "are a group of about fifteen species"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "title": {
                "snippets": [
                    "Darwin's <span class=\"search-term-match\">Finches</
→span>"
                ]
            }
        }
    ],
    "score": 1.5033848285675049,
    "authors": [
        "Finch, Fiona"
    ]
],
"facets": [
    {
        "subject_ss": {
            "friendly": "Subject",
            "labels": [
                {
                    "Medicine, Health and Life Sciences": 2
                }
            ]
        },
        "authorName_ss": {
            "friendly": "Author Name",
            "labels": [

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        {
            "Finch, Fiona":1
        }
    ],
    "publicationDate": {
        "friendly": "Publication Date",
        "labels": [
            {
                "2016":2
            }
        ]
    },
    "count_in_response":2
}
}

```

Retrieve Released Versions Only

<https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=finch&fq=publicationStatus:Published&type=dataset>

The above example `fq=publicationStatus:Published` retrieves only “RELEASED” versions of datasets. The same could be done to retrieve “DRAFT” versions, `fq=publicationStatus:Draft`

```

{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": {
    "q": "finch",
    "total_count": 2,
    "start": 0,
    "spelling_alternatives": {},
    "items": [
      {
        "name": "Darwin's Finches",
        "type": "dataset",
        "url": "https://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/GUAS41",
        "global_id": "doi:10.70122/FK2/GUAS41",
        "description": "Darwin's finches (also known as the Gal\u00e1pagos finches) are a group of about fifteen species of passerine birds.",
        "published_at": "2019-12-24T08:05:02Z",
        "publisher": "mdmizanur rahman Dataverse collection",
        "citationHtml": "Finch, Fiona, 2019, \"Darwin's Finches\", <a href=\"https://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/GUAS41\" target=\"_blank\">https://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/GUAS41</a>, Demo Dataverse, V1",
        "identifier_of_dataverse": "rahman",
        "name_of_dataverse": "mdmizanur rahman Dataverse collection",
        "citation": "Finch, Fiona, 2019, \"Darwin's Finches\", https://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/GUAS41, Demo Dataverse, V1",
        "storageIdentifier": "file://10.70122/FK2/GUAS41",
      }
    ]
  }
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

"subjects": [
    "Medicine, Health and Life Sciences"
],
"fileCount": 6,
"versionId": 53001,
"versionState": "RELEASED",
"majorVersion": 1,
"minorVersion": 0,
"createdAt": "2019-12-05T09:18:30Z",
"updatedAt": "2019-12-24T08:38:00Z",
"contacts": [
    {
        "name": "Finch, Fiona",
        "affiliation": ""
    }
],
"authors": [
    "Finch, Fiona"
]
},
{
    "name": "Darwin's Finches",
    "type": "dataset",
    "url": "https://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/7ZXYRH",
    "global_id": "doi:10.70122/FK2/7ZXYRH",
    "description": "Darwin's finches (also known as the Galápagos finches). ↵\nare a group of about fifteen species of passerine birds.", "published_at": "2020-01-22T21:47:34Z",
    "publisher": "Demo Dataverse",
    "citationHtml": "Finch, Fiona, 2020, \"Darwin's Finches\", <a href=\"\nhttps://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/7ZXYRH\" target=\"_blank\">https://doi.org/10.70122/FK2/\n7ZXYRH</a>, Demo Dataverse, V1",
    "identifier_of_dataverse": "demo",
    "name_of_dataverse": "Demo Dataverse",
    "citation": "Finch, Fiona, 2020, \"Darwin's Finches\", https://doi.org/\n10.70122/FK2/7ZXYRH, Demo Dataverse, V1",
    "storageIdentifier": "file://10.70122/FK2/7ZXYRH",
    "subjects": [
        "Medicine, Health and Life Sciences"
    ],
    "fileCount": 9,
    "versionId": 53444,
    "versionState": "RELEASED",
    "majorVersion": 1,
    "minorVersion": 0,
    "createdAt": "2020-01-22T21:23:43Z",
    "updatedAt": "2020-01-22T21:47:34Z",
    "contacts": [
        {
            "name": "Finch, Fiona",
            "affiliation": ""
        }
    ]
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        ],
        "authors": [
            "Finch, Fiona"
        ]
    ],
    "count_in_response": 2
}
}

```

Include Metadata Blocks and/or Metadata Fields

https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=*&type=dataset&metadata_fields=citation:*

The above example `metadata_fields=citation:*` returns under “metadataBlocks” all fields from the “citation” metadata block.

```

{
    "status": "OK",
    "data": {
        "q": "*",
        "total_count": 4,
        "start": 0,
        "spelling_alternatives": {},
        "items": [
            {
                "name": "JDD avec GeoJson 2021-07-13T10:23:46.409Z",
                "type": "dataset",
                "url": "https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB",
                "global_id": "doi:10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB",
                "description": "Démo sprint 5. Cette couche représente l'emprise des cimetières sur le territoire des Métropole. Ces périmètres d'emprise des cimetières sont issus du recensement des informations des PLU/POS de chaque commune de la métropole, des données du cadastre DGFiP et d'un inventaire terrain du Service Planification et Études Urbaines de Métropole",
                "publisher": "Sample Data",
                "citationHtml": "Rennes Métropole, 2021, \"JDD avec GeoJson 2021-07-13T10:23:46.409Z\", <a href=\"https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB\" target=\"_blank\">https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB</a>, Root, DRAFT VERSION",
                "identifier_of_dataverse": "Sample_data",
                "name_of_dataverse": "Sample Data",
                "citation": "Métropole, 2021, \"JDD avec GeoJson 2021-07-13T10:23:46.409Z\", https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB, Root, DRAFT VERSION",
                "storageIdentifier": "file://10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB",
                "subjects": [
                    "Other"
                ],
                "fileCount": 0,
                "versionId": 9976,
                "versionState": "DRAFT",
                "createdAt": "2021-07-13T10:28:45Z",
                "modifiedAt": "2021-07-13T10:28:45Z"
            }
        ]
    }
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

"updatedAt": "2021-07-13T10:28:45Z",
"contacts": [
    {
        "name": "string",
        "affiliation": "string"
    }
],
"metadataBlocks": {
    "citation": {
        "displayName": "Citation Metadata",
        "fields": [
            {
                "typeName": "dsDescription",
                "multiple": true,
                "typeClass": "compound",
                "value": [
                    {
                        "dsDescriptionValue": {
                            "typeName": "dsDescriptionValue",
                            "multiple": false,
                            "typeClass": "primitive",
                            "value": "Démo sprint 5. Cette couche ↵ représente l'emprise des cimetières sur le territoire des Métropole. Ces périmètres d ↵ 'emprise des cimetières sont issus du recensement des informations des PLU/POS de ↵ chaque commune de la métropole, des données du cadastre DGFIP et d'un inventaire ↵ terrain du Service Planification et Études Urbaines de Métropole"
                        },
                        "dsDescriptionDate": {
                            "typeName": "dsDescriptionDate",
                            "multiple": false,
                            "typeClass": "primitive",
                            "value": "2021-07-13"
                        }
                    }
                ]
            },
            {
                "typeName": "author",
                "multiple": true,
                "typeClass": "compound",
                "value": [
                    {
                        "authorName": {
                            "typeName": "authorName",
                            "multiple": false,
                            "typeClass": "primitive",
                            "value": "Métropole"
                        },
                        "authorAffiliation": {
                            "typeName": "authorAffiliation",
                            "multiple": false,
                            "typeClass": "primitive",
                            "value": ""
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        ]
    }
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        "value": "string"
    }
}
],
},
{
  "typeName": "datasetContact",
  "multiple": true,
  "typeClass": "compound",
  "value": [
    {
      "datasetContactName": {
        "typeName": "datasetContactName",
        "multiple": false,
        "typeClass": "primitive",
        "value": "string"
      },
      "datasetContactAffiliation": {
        "typeName": "datasetContactAffiliation",
        "multiple": false,
        "typeClass": "primitive",
        "value": "string"
      },
      "datasetContactEmail": {
        "typeName": "datasetContactEmail",
        "multiple": false,
        "typeClass": "primitive",
        "value": "contact@Sample.fr"
      }
    }
  ],
  {
    "typeName": "subject",
    "multiple": true,
    "typeClass": "controlledVocabulary",
    "value": [
      "Other"
    ],
    {
      "typeName": "title",
      "multiple": false,
      "typeClass": "primitive",
      "value": "JDD avec GeoJson 2021-07-13T10:23:46.409Z"
    }
  ]
},
"authors": [
  "Métropole"
]

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    },
    {
        "name": "Raja Ampat Islands",
        "type": "dataset",
        "url": "https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/ITNXGR",
        "global_id": "doi:10.5072/FK2/ITNXGR",
        "description": "Raja Ampat is located off the northwest tip of Bird's Head Peninsula on the island of New Guinea, in Indonesia's West Papua province, Raja Ampat, or the Four Kings, is an archipelago comprising over 1,500 small islands, cays, and shoals surrounding the four main islands of Misool, Salawati, Batanta, and Waigeo, and the smaller island of Kofiau. The Raja Ampat archipelago straddles the Equator and forms part of Coral Triangle which contains the richest marine biodiversity on earth. Administratively, the archipelago is part of the province of West Papua (formerly known as Irian Jaya). Most of the islands constitute the Raja Ampat Regency, which was separated out from Sorong Regency in 2004. The regency encompasses around 70,000 square kilometres (27,000 sq mi) of land and sea, and has a population of about 50,000 (as of 2017). (Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Raja_Ampat_Islands)",
        "published_at": "2020-07-30T09:23:34Z",
        "publisher": "Root",
        "citationHtml": "Admin, Dataverse, 2020, \"Raja Ampat Islands\", <a href=\"https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/ITNXGR\" target=\"_blank\">https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/ITNXGR</a>, Root, V1",
        "identifier_of_dataverse": "root",
        "name_of_dataverse": "Root",
        "citation": "Admin, Dataverse, 2020, \"Raja Ampat Islands\", https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/ITNXGR, Root, V1",
        "authors": [
            "Admin, Dataverse"
        ],
        {
            "name": "Sample Test",
            "type": "dataverse",
            "url": "https://68b2d8bb37c6/dataverse/Sample_test",
            "identifier": "Sample_test",
            "description": "Dataverse utilisé pour les tests unitaires de Sample",
            "published_at": "2021-03-16T08:11:54Z"
        },
        {
            "name": "Sample Media Test",
            "type": "dataverse",
            "url": "https://68b2d8bb37c6/dataverse/Sample_media_test",
            "identifier": "Sample_media_test",
            "description": "Dataverse de test contenant les médias de Sample, comme les images des fournisseurs et des producteurs",
            "published_at": "2021-04-08T15:04:14Z"
        }
    ],
    "count_in_response": 4
}
}

```

Include Specific Fields Only

https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=*&type=dataset&metadata_fields=citation:dsDescription&metadata_fields=citation:author

The above example `metadata_fields=citation:dsDescription&metadata_fields=citation:author` returns under “`metadataBlocks`” only the compound fields “`dsDescription`” and “`author`” metadata fields from the “`citation`” metadata block.

```
{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": {
    "q": "*",
    "total_count": 4,
    "start": 0,
    "spelling_alternatives": {},
    "items": [
      {
        "name": "JDD avec GeoJson 2021-07-13T10:23:46.409Z",
        "type": "dataset",
        "url": "https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB",
        "global_id": "doi:10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB",
        "description": "Démo sprint 5. Cette couche représente l'emprise des cimetières sur le territoire des Métropole. Ces périmètres d'emprise des cimetières sont issus du recensement des informations des PLU/POS de chaque commune de la métropole, des données du cadastre DGFIP et d'un inventaire terrain du Service Planification et Études Urbaines de Métropole",
        "publisher": "Sample Data",
        "citationHtml": "Rennes Métropole, 2021, \"JDD avec GeoJson 2021-07-13T10:23:46.409Z\", <a href=\"https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB\" target=\"_blank\">https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB</a>, Root, DRAFT VERSION",
        "identifier_of_dataverse": "Sample_data",
        "name_of_dataverse": "Sample Data",
        "citation": "Métropole, 2021, \"JDD avec GeoJson 2021-07-13T10:23:46.409Z\", https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB, Root, DRAFT VERSION",
        "storageIdentifier": "file://10.5072/FK2/GIWCKB",
        "subjects": [
          "Other"
        ],
        "fileCount": 0,
        "versionId": 9976,
        "versionState": "DRAFT",
        "createdAt": "2021-07-13T10:28:45Z",
        "updatedAt": "2021-07-13T10:28:45Z",
        "contacts": [
          {
            "name": "string",
            "affiliation": "string"
          }
        ],
        "metadataBlocks": {
          "citation": {
            "displayName": "Citation Metadata",
            "fields": [
              ...
            ]
          }
        }
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
{
    "typeName": "dsDescription",
    "multiple": true,
    "typeClass": "compound",
    "value": [
        {
            "dsDescriptionValue": {
                "typeName": "dsDescriptionValue",
                "multiple": false,
                "typeClass": "primitive",
                "value": "Démo sprint 5. Cette couche  

→ représente l'emprise des cimetières sur le territoire des Métropole. Ces périmètres d  

→ 'emprise des cimetières sont issus du recensement des informations des PLU/POS de  

→ chaque commune de la métropole, des données du cadastre DGFiP et d'un inventaire  

→ terrain du Service Planification et Études Urbaines de Métropole"
            },
            "dsDescriptionDate": {
                "typeName": "dsDescriptionDate",
                "multiple": false,
                "typeClass": "primitive",
                "value": "2021-07-13"
            }
        }
    ],
    {
        "typeName": "author",
        "multiple": true,
        "typeClass": "compound",
        "value": [
            {
                "authorName": {
                    "typeName": "authorName",
                    "multiple": false,
                    "typeClass": "primitive",
                    "value": "Métropole"
                },
                "authorAffiliation": {
                    "typeName": "authorAffiliation",
                    "multiple": false,
                    "typeClass": "primitive",
                    "value": "string"
                }
            }
        ]
    }
},
"authors": [
    "Métropole"
]
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

},
{
  "name": "Raja Ampat Islands",
  "type": "dataset",
  "url": "https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/ITNXGR",
  "global_id": "doi:10.5072/FK2/ITNXGR",
  "description": "Raja Ampat is located off the northwest tip of Bird's Head Peninsula on the island of New Guinea, in Indonesia's West Papua province, Raja Ampat, or the Four Kings, is an archipelago comprising over 1,500 small islands, cays, and shoals surrounding the four main islands of Misool, Salawati, Batanta, and Waigeo, and the smaller island of Kofiau. The Raja Ampat archipelago straddles the Equator and forms part of Coral Triangle which contains the richest marine biodiversity on earth. Administratively, the archipelago is part of the province of West Papua (formerly known as Irian Jaya). Most of the islands constitute the Raja Ampat Regency, which was separated out from Sorong Regency in 2004. The regency encompasses around 70,000 square kilometres (27,000 sq mi) of land and sea, and has a population of about 50,000 (as of 2017). (Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Raja_Ampat_Islands)",
  "published_at": "2020-07-30T09:23:34Z",
  "publisher": "Root",
  "citationHtml": "Admin, Dataverse, 2020, \"Raja Ampat Islands\", <a href=\"https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/ITNXGR\" target=\"_blank\">https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/ITNXGR</a>, Root, V1",
  "identifier_of_dataverse": "root",
  "name_of_dataverse": "Root",
  "citation": "Admin, Dataverse, 2020, \"Raja Ampat Islands\", https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/ITNXGR, Root, V1",
  "authors": [
    "Admin, Dataverse"
  ],
  {
    "name": "Sample Media Test",
    "type": "dataverse",
    "url": "https://68b2d8bb37c6/dataverse/Sample_media_test",
    "identifier": "Sample_media_test",
    "description": "Dataverse de test contenant les médias de Sample, comme les images des fournisseurs et des producteurs",
    "published_at": "2021-04-08T15:04:14Z"
  },
  {
    "name": "Sample Test",
    "type": "dataverse",
    "url": "https://68b2d8bb37c6/dataverse/Sample_test",
    "identifier": "Sample_test",
    "description": "Dataverse utilisé pour les tests unitaires de Sample",
    "published_at": "2021-03-16T08:11:54Z"
  }
],
"count_in_response": 4
}
}

```

3.4.4 Date Range Search Example

Below is an example of searching across a date range of Dataverse collections, datasets, and files that were published in 2018.

```
https://demo.dataverse.org/api/search?q=*&per_page=1000&sort=date&order=asc&q=*&fq=dateSort:[2018-01-01T00:00:00Z+TO+2019-01-01T00:00:00Z]
```

3.4.5 Iteration

Be default, up to 10 results are returned with every request (though this can be increased with the `per_page` parameter). To iterate through many results, increase the `start` parameter on each iteration until you reach the `total_count` in the response. An example in Python is below.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
import urllib2
import json
base = 'https://demo.dataverse.org'
rows = 10
start = 0
page = 1
condition = True # emulate do-while
while (condition):
    url = base + '/api/search?q=' + "&start=" + str(start)
    data = json.load(urllib2.urlopen(url))
    total = data['data']['total_count']
    print "==== Page", page, "===="
    print "start:", start, " total:", total
    for i in data['data']['items']:
        print "- ", i['name'], "(" + i['type'] + ")"
    start = start + rows
    page += 1
    condition = start < total
```

Output from iteration example

```
==== Page 1 ====
start: 0  total: 12
- Spruce Goose (dataset)
- trees.png (file)
- Spruce (dataverse)
- Trees (dataverse)
- Darwin's Finches (dataset)
- Finches (dataverse)
- Birds (dataverse)
- Rings of Conifers (dataset)
- Chestnut Trees (dataverse)
- Sparrows (dataverse)
==== Page 2 ====
start: 10  total: 12
- Chestnut Sparrows (dataverse)
- Wrens (dataverse)
```

3.5 Data Access API

The Data Access API provides programmatic download access to the files stored in a Dataverse installation. More advanced features of the Access API include format-specific transformations (thumbnail generation/resizing for images; converting tabular data into alternative file formats) and access to the data-level metadata that describes the contents of the tabular files.

Contents:

- *Downloading All Files in a Dataset*
 - *Basic Download By Dataset*
 - *Download By Dataset By Version*
- *Basic File Access*
 - *Parameters:*
 - *Headers:*
 - *Examples*
- *Multiple File (“bundle”) download*
 - *Parameters:*
- *“All Formats” bundled download for Tabular Files.*
 - *Parameters:*
- *Data Variable Metadata Access*
 - *Parameters:*
- *Preprocessed Data*
- *Authentication and Authorization*
- *Access Requests and Processing*
 - *Allow Access Requests:*
 - *Request Access:*
 - *Grant File Access:*
 - *Reject File Access:*
 - *Revoke File Access:*
 - *List File Access Requests:*

3.5.1 Downloading All Files in a Dataset

The “download by dataset” API downloads as many files as possible from a dataset as a zipped bundle.

By default, tabular files are downloaded in their “archival” form (tab-separated values). To download the original files (Stata, for example), add `format=original` as a query parameter.

There are a number of reasons why not all of the files can be downloaded:

- Some of the files are restricted and your API token doesn’t have access (you will still get the unrestricted files).
- The Dataverse installation has limited how large the zip bundle can be.

In the curl example below, the flags `-O` and `-J` are used. When there are no errors, this has the effect of saving the file as “`dataverse_files.zip`” (just like the web interface). The flags force errors to be downloaded as a file.

Please note that in addition to the files from dataset, an additional file call “`MANIFEST.TXT`” will be included in the zipped bundle. It has additional information about the files.

There are two forms of the “download by dataset” API, a basic form and one that supports dataset versions.

Basic Download By Dataset

The basic form downloads files from the latest accessible version of the dataset. If you are not using an API token, this means the most recently published version. If you are using an API token with full access to the dataset, this means the draft version or the most recently published version if no draft exists.

A curl example using a DOI (no version):

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.70122/FK2/N2XGBJ

curl -L -O -J -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/access/dataset/
  ↪:persistentId/?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -L -O -J -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.
  ↪dataverse.org/api/access/dataset/:persistentId/?persistentId=doi:10.70122/FK2/N2XGBJ
```

Download By Dataset By Version

The second form of the “download by dataset” API allows you to specify which version you’d like to download files from. As with the datasets API endpoints described in the [Native API](#) section, the following identifiers can be used.

- `:draft` the draft version, if any
- `:latest` either a draft (if exists) or the latest published version.
- `:latest-published` the latest published version
- `x.y` a specific version, where `x` is the major version number and `y` is the minor version number.
- `x.0` same as `x.0`

A curl example using a DOI (with version):

```

export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.70122/FK2/N2XGBJ
export VERSION=2.0

curl -O -J -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/access/dataset/:persistentId/
˓→versions/$VERSION?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID

```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```

curl -O -J -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/access/dataset/:persistentId/versions/2.0?persistentId=doi:10.70122/
˓→FK2/N2XGBJ

```

3.5.2 Basic File Access

Basic access URI:

/api/access/datafile/\$id

Note: Files can be accessed using persistent identifiers. This is done by passing the constant :persistentId where the numeric id of the file is expected, and then passing the actual persistent id as a query parameter with the name persistentId.

Example: Getting the file whose DOI is 10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/access/datafile/:persistentId?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB
```

Parameters:

format

the following parameter values are supported (for tabular data files only):

Value	Description
orig-i-nal	“Saved Original”, the proprietary (SPSS, Stata, R, etc.) file from which the tabular data was ingested;
RData	Tabular data as an R Data frame (generated; unless the “original” file was in R);
prep	“Pre-processed data”, in JSON.
sub-set	Column-wise subsetting. You must also supply a comma separated list of variables in the “variables” query parameter. In this example, 123 and 127 are the database ids of data variables that belong to the data file with the id 6: curl 'http://localhost:8080/api/access/datafile/6?format=subset&variables=123,127'.

noVarHeader

(supported for tabular data files only; ignored for all other file types)

Value	Description
true 1	Tab-delimited data file, without the variable name header (added to tab. files by default)

imageThumb

the following parameter values are supported (for image and pdf files only):

Value	Description
true	Generates a thumbnail image by rescaling to the default thumbnail size (64 pixels wide).
N	Rescales the image to N pixels wide. <code>imageThumb=true</code> and <code>imageThumb=64</code> are equivalent.

Headers:

Header	Description
Range	Download a specified byte range. Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>bytes=0-9</code> gets the first 10 bytes.• <code>bytes=10-19</code> gets 10 bytes from the middle.• <code>bytes=-10</code> gets the last 10 bytes.• <code>bytes=9-</code> gets all bytes except the first 10. Only a single range is supported. The “If-Range” header is not supported. For more on the “Range” header, see https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/HTTP/Range_requests

Examples

A curl example of using the Range header to download the first 10 bytes of a file using its file id (database id):

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export FILE_ID=42
export RANGE=0-9

curl -H "Range:bytes=$RANGE" $SERVER_URL/api/access/datafile/$FILE_ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "Range:bytes=0-9" https://demo.dataverse.org/api/access/datafile/42
```

3.5.3 Multiple File (“bundle”) download

`/api/access/datafiles/$id1,$id2,...$idN`

Alternate Form: POST to `/api/access/datafiles` with a `fileIds` input field containing the same comma separated list of file ids. This is most useful when your list of files surpasses the allowed URL length (varies but can be ~2000 characters).

Returns the files listed, zipped.

Note: If the request can only be completed partially - if only *some* of the requested files can be served (because of the permissions and/or size restrictions), the file MANIFEST.TXT included in the zipped bundle will have entries specifying the reasons the missing files could not be downloaded. IN THE FUTURE the API will return a 207 status code to indicate that the result was a partial success. (As of writing this - v.4.11 - this hasn't been implemented yet)

Note: If any of the datafiles have the DirectoryLabel attributes in the corresponding FileMetadata entries, these will be added as folders to the Zip archive, and the files will be placed in them accordingly.

Parameters:

format the following parameter values are supported (for tabular data files only):

Value	Description
original	“Saved Original”, the proprietary (SPSS, Stata, R, etc.) file from which the tabular data was ingested;

3.5.4 “All Formats” bundled download for Tabular Files.

/api/access/datafile/bundle/\$id

This is a convenience packaging method available for tabular data files. It returns a zipped bundle that contains the data in the following formats:

- Tab-delimited;
- “Saved Original”, the proprietary (SPSS, Stata, R, etc.) file from which the tabular data was ingested;
- Generated R Data frame (unless the “original” above was in R);
- Data (Variable) metadata record, in DDI XML;
- File citation, in Endnote and RIS formats.

Parameters:

fileMetadataId

Value	Description
ID	Exports file with specific file metadata ID.

3.5.5 Data Variable Metadata Access

These methods are only available for tabular data files. (i.e., data files with associated data table and variable objects).

/api/access/datafile/\$id/metadata/ddi

In its basic form the verb above returns a DDI fragment that describes the file and the data variables in it.

The DDI returned will only have two top-level sections:

- a single fileDscr, with the basic file information plus the numbers of variables and observations and the UNF of the file.
- a single dataDscr section, with one var section for each variable.

Example:

<http://localhost:8080/api/access/datafile/6/metadata/ddi>

```
<codeBook version="2.0">
  <fileDscr ID="f6">
    <fileTxt>
      <fileName>_73084.tab</fileName>
      <dimensns>
        <caseQnty>3</caseQnty>
        <varQnty>2</varQnty>
      </dimensns>
      <fileType>text/tab-separated-values</fileType>
    </fileTxt>
    <notes level="file" type="VDC:UNF" subject="Universal Numeric Fingerprint">
      ↳UNF:6:zChnyI3fjwNP+6qW0VryVQ==</notes>
  </fileDscr>
  <dataDscr>
    <var ID="v1" name="id" intrvl="discrete">
      <location fileid="f6"/>
      <lbl level="variable">Personen-ID</lbl>
      <sumStat type="mean">2.0</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="mode">.</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="medn">2.0</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="stdev">1.0</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="min">1.0</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="vald">3.0</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="invd">0.0</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="max">3.0</sumStat>
      <varFormat type="numeric"/>
      <notes subject="Universal Numeric Fingerprint" level="variable" type="VDC:UNF">
        ↳UNF:6:AvELPR5QTaBbnq6S22Msow==</notes>
    </var>
    <var ID="v3" name="sex" intrvl="discrete">
      <location fileid="f6"/>
      <lbl level="variable">Geschlecht</lbl>
      <sumStat type="mean">1.3333333333333333</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="max">2.0</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="vald">3.0</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="mode">.</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="stdev">0.5773502691896257</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="invd">0.0</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="medn">1.0</sumStat>
      <sumStat type="min">1.0</sumStat>
      <catgry>
        <catValu>1</catValu>
        <lbl level="category">Mann</lbl>
      </catgry>
      <catgry>
        <catValu>2</catValu>
      </catgry>
    </var>
  </dataDscr>
</codeBook>
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

<labl level="category">Frau</labl>
</catgry>
<varFormat type="numeric"/>
<notes subject="Universal Numeric Fingerprint" level="variable" type="VDC:UNF">
  UNF:6:XqQaMwOA63taX1YyBzTZYQ==</notes>
</var>
</dataDscr>
</codeBook>

```

Parameters:

fileMetadataId

Value	Description
ID	Exports file with specific file metadata ID. For example for data file with id 6 and file metadata id 2: curl 'http://localhost:8080/api/access/datafile/6/metadata/ddi?fileMetadataId=2'

More information on DDI is available in the *Tabular Data, Representation, Storage and Ingest* section of the User Guide.

Advanced options/Parameters:

It is possible to request only specific subsets of, rather than the full file-level DDI record. This can be a useful optimization, in cases such as when an application needs to look up a single variable; especially with data files with large numbers of variables. See `variables=123,127` in the example above.

3.5.6 Preprocessed Data

`/api/access/datafile/$id?format=prep`

This method provides the “preprocessed data” - a summary record that describes the values of the data vectors in the tabular file, in JSON. These metadata values are used by earlier versions of Data Explorer, an external tool that integrates with a Dataverse installation (see [External Tools](#)). Please note that this format might change in the future.

3.5.7 Authentication and Authorization

Data Access API supports both session- and API key-based authentication.

If a session is available, and it is already associated with an authenticated user, it will be used for access authorization. If not, or if the user in question is not authorized to access the requested object, an attempt will be made to authorize based on an API key, if supplied. All of the API verbs above support the key parameter `key=...` as well as the newer `X-Dataverse-key` header. For more details, see “Authentication” in the [Introduction](#) section.

3.5.8 Access Requests and Processing

All of the following endpoints take the persistent identifier as a parameter in place of ‘id’.

Allow Access Requests:

Allow or disallow users from requesting access to restricted files in a dataset where id is the database id of the dataset or pid is the persistent id (DOI or Handle) of the dataset to update.

A curl example using an id:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X PUT -d true http://$SERVER/api/access/{id}/  
↳allowAccessRequest
```

A curl example using a pid:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X PUT -d true http://$SERVER/api/access/  
↳:persistentId/allowAccessRequest?persistentId={pid}
```

Request Access:

/api/access/datafile/\$id/requestAccess

This method requests access to the datafile whose id is passed on the behalf of an authenticated user whose key is passed. Note that not all datasets allow access requests to restricted files.

A curl example using an id:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X PUT http://$SERVER/api/access/datafile/{id}/  
↳requestAccess
```

Grant File Access:

/api/access/datafile/{id}/grantAccess/{identifier}

This method grants access to the datafile whose id is passed on the behalf of an authenticated user whose user identifier is passed with an @ prefix. The key of a user who can manage permissions of the datafile is required to use this method.

A curl example using an id:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X PUT http://$SERVER/api/access/datafile/{id}/  
↳grantAccess/{@userIdentifier}
```

Reject File Access:

/api/access/datafile/{id}/rejectAccess/{identifier}

This method rejects the access request to the datafile whose id is passed on the behalf of an authenticated user whose user identifier is passed with an @ prefix. The key of a user who can manage permissions of the datafile is required to use this method.

A curl example using an id:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X PUT http://$SERVER/api/access/datafile/{id}/
  ↵rejectAccess/{@userIdentifier}
```

Revoke File Access:

/api/access/datafile/{id}/revokeAccess/{identifier}

This method revokes previously granted access to the datafile whose id is passed on the behalf of an authenticated user whose user identifier is passed with an @ prefix. The key of a user who can manage permissions of the datafile is required to use this method.

A curl example using an id:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X DELETE http://$SERVER/api/access/datafile/{id}/
  ↵revokeAccess/{@userIdentifier}
```

List File Access Requests:

/api/access/datafile/{id}/listRequests

This method returns a list of Authenticated Users who have requested access to the datafile whose id is passed. The key of a user who can manage permissions of the datafile is required to use this method.

A curl example using an id:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X GET http://$SERVER/api/access/datafile/{id}/
  ↵listRequests
```

3.6 Native API

The Dataverse Software exposes most of its GUI functionality via a REST-based API. This section describes that functionality. Most API endpoints require an API token that can be passed as the `X-Dataverse-key` HTTP header or in the URL as the `key` query parameter.

Note: Some API endpoint allow **CORS** (cross-origin resource sharing), which makes them usable from scripts running in web browsers. These endpoints are marked with a *CORS* badge.

Note: Bash environment variables shown below. The idea is that you can “export” these environment variables before copying and pasting the commands that use them. For example, you can set `$SERVER_URL` by running `export SERVER_URL="https://demo.dataverse.org"` in your Bash shell. To check if the environment variable was set properly, you can “echo” it (e.g. `echo $SERVER_URL`). See also [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#).

Warning: The Dataverse Software’s API is versioned at the URI - all API calls may include the version number like so: `http://server-address/api/v1/....`. Omitting the v1 part would default to the latest API version (currently 1). When writing scripts/applications that will be used for a long time, make sure to specify the API version, so they don’t break when the API is upgraded.

Contents:

- *Dataverse Collections*
 - *Create a Dataverse Collection*
 - *View a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Delete a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Show Contents of a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Report the data (file) size of a Dataverse Collection*
 - *List Roles Defined in a Dataverse Collection*
 - *List Facets Configured for a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Set Facets for a Dataverse Collection*
 - *List Metadata Block Facets Configured for a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Set Metadata Block Facets for a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Configure a Dataverse Collection to Inherit Its Metadata Block Facets from Its Parent*
 - *Create a New Role in a Dataverse Collection*
 - *List Role Assignments in a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Assign Default Role to User Creating a Dataset in a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Assign a New Role on a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Delete Role Assignment from a Dataverse Collection*
 - *List Metadata Blocks Defined on a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Define Metadata Blocks for a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Determine if a Dataverse Collection Inherits Its Metadata Blocks from Its Parent*
 - *Configure a Dataverse Collection to Inherit Its Metadata Blocks from Its Parent*
 - *Create a Dataset in a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Import a Dataset into a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Import a Dataset into a Dataverse Installation with a DDI file*
 - *Publish a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Retrieve Guestbook Responses for a Dataverse Collection*
- *Datasets*
 - *Get JSON Representation of a Dataset*
 - *List Versions of a Dataset*
 - *Get Version of a Dataset*
 - *Export Metadata of a Dataset in Various Formats*
 - * *Schema.org JSON-LD*
 - *List Files in a Dataset*
 - *View Dataset Files and Folders as a Directory Index*

- [*List All Metadata Blocks for a Dataset*](#)
- [*List Single Metadata Block for a Dataset*](#)
- [*Update Metadata For a Dataset*](#)
- [*Edit Dataset Metadata*](#)
- [*Delete Dataset Metadata*](#)
- [*Publish a Dataset*](#)
- [*Delete Dataset Draft*](#)
- [*Set Citation Date Field Type for a Dataset*](#)
- [*Revert Citation Date Field Type to Default for Dataset*](#)
- [*List Role Assignments in a Dataset*](#)
- [*Assign a New Role on a Dataset*](#)
- [*Delete Role Assignment from a Dataset*](#)
- [*Create a Private URL for a Dataset*](#)
- [*Get the Private URL for a Dataset*](#)
- [*Delete the Private URL from a Dataset*](#)
- [*Add a File to a Dataset*](#)
- [*Add a Remote File to a Dataset*](#)
- [*Adding Files To a Dataset via Other Tools*](#)
- [*Report the data \(file\) size of a Dataset*](#)
- [*Get the size of Downloading all the files of a Dataset Version*](#)
- [*Submit a Dataset for Review*](#)
- [*Return a Dataset to Author*](#)
- [*Link a Dataset*](#)
- [*Dataset Locks*](#)
 - * [*Manage Locks on a Specific Dataset*](#)
 - * [*List Locks Across All Datasets*](#)
- [*Dataset Metrics*](#)
 - * [*Retrieving Total Views for a Dataset*](#)
 - * [*Retrieving Unique Views for a Dataset*](#)
 - * [*Retrieving Total Downloads for a Dataset*](#)
 - * [*Retrieving Unique Downloads for a Dataset*](#)
 - * [*Retrieving Citations for a Dataset*](#)
- [*Delete Unpublished Dataset*](#)
- [*Delete Published Dataset*](#)
- [*Configure a Dataset to Use a Specific File Store*](#)

- [*View the Timestamps on a Dataset*](#)
- [*Set an Embargo on Files in a Dataset*](#)
- [*Remove an Embargo on Files in a Dataset*](#)
- [*Get the Archival Status of a Dataset By Version*](#)
- [*Set the Archival Status of a Dataset By Version*](#)
- [*Delete the Archival Status of a Dataset By Version*](#)
- [*Get External Tool Parameters*](#)
- *Files*
 - [*Adding Files*](#)
 - [*Accessing \(downloading\) files*](#)
 - [*Restrict Files*](#)
 - [*Uningest a File*](#)
 - [*Reingest a File*](#)
 - [*Redetect File Type*](#)
 - [*Replacing Files*](#)
 - [*Getting File Metadata*](#)
 - [*Adding File Metadata*](#)
 - [*Updating File Metadata*](#)
 - [*Editing Variable Level Metadata*](#)
 - [*Provenance*](#)
 - * [*Get Provenance JSON for an uploaded file*](#)
 - * [*Get Provenance Description for an uploaded file*](#)
 - * [*Create/Update Provenance JSON and provide related entity name for an uploaded file*](#)
 - * [*Create/Update Provenance Description for an uploaded file*](#)
 - * [*Delete Provenance JSON for an uploaded file*](#)
 - [*Datafile Integrity*](#)
 - [*Get External Tool Parameters*](#)
- *Users Token Management*
 - [*Find a Token's Expiration Date*](#)
 - [*Recreate a Token*](#)
 - [*Delete a Token*](#)
- *Builtin Users*
 - [*Create a Builtin User*](#)
- *Roles*
 - [*Create a New Role in a Dataverse Collection*](#)

- *Show Role*
- *Delete Role*
- *Explicit Groups*
 - *Create New Explicit Group*
 - *List Explicit Groups in a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Show Single Group in a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Update Group in a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Delete Group from a Dataverse Collection*
 - *Add Multiple Role Assignees to an Explicit Group*
 - *Add a Role Assignee to an Explicit Group*
 - *Remove a Role Assignee from an Explicit Group*
- *Shibboleth Groups*
- *Info*
 - *Show Dataverse Software Version and Build Number*
 - *Show Dataverse Installation Server Name*
 - *Show Custom Popup Text for Publishing Datasets*
 - *Get API Terms of Use URL*
- *Metadata Blocks*
 - *Show Info About All Metadata Blocks*
 - *Show Info About Single Metadata Block*
- *Notifications*
 - *Get All Notifications by User*
 - *Delete Notification by User*
 - *Get All Muted In-app Notifications by User*
 - *Mute In-app Notification by User*
 - *Unmute In-app Notification by User*
 - *Get All Muted Email Notifications by User*
 - *Mute Email Notification by User*
 - *Unmute Email Notification by User*
- *User Information*
 - *Get User Information in JSON Format*
- *Managing Harvesting Server and Sets*
 - *List All Harvesting Sets*
 - *List A Specific Harvesting Set*
 - *Create a Harvesting Set*

- [*Modify an Existing Harvesting Set*](#)
- [*Delete an Existing Harvesting Set*](#)
- [*Managing Harvesting Clients*](#)
 - [*List All Configured Harvesting Clients*](#)
 - [*Show a Specific Harvesting Client*](#)
 - [*Create a Harvesting Client*](#)
 - [*Modify a Harvesting Client*](#)
 - [*Delete a Harvesting Client*](#)
- [*PIDs*](#)
 - [*Get Info on a PID*](#)
 - [*List Unreserved PIDs*](#)
 - [*Reserve a PID*](#)
 - [*Delete a PID*](#)
- [*Admin*](#)
 - [*List All Database Settings*](#)
 - [*Configure Database Setting*](#)
 - [*Get Single Database Setting*](#)
 - [*Delete Database Setting*](#)
 - [*Manage Banner Messages*](#)
 - [*List Authentication Provider Factories*](#)
 - [*List Authentication Providers*](#)
 - [*Add Authentication Provider*](#)
 - [*Show Authentication Provider*](#)
 - [*Enable or Disable an Authentication Provider*](#)
 - [*Check If an Authentication Provider is Enabled*](#)
 - [*Delete an Authentication Provider*](#)
 - [*List Global Roles*](#)
 - [*Create Global Role*](#)
 - [*Delete Global Role*](#)
 - [*List Users*](#)
 - [*List Single User*](#)
 - [*Create an Authenticated User*](#)
 - [*Merge User Accounts*](#)
 - [*Change User Identifier*](#)
 - [*Make User a SuperUser*](#)

- [*Delete a User*](#)
- [*Deactivate a User*](#)
- [*Show User Traces*](#)
- [*Remove All Roles from a User*](#)
- [*List Role Assignments of a Role Assignee*](#)
- [*List Permissions a User Has on a Dataverse Collection or Dataset*](#)
- [*Show Role Assignee*](#)
- [*Saved Search*](#)
- [*Dataset Integrity*](#)
- [*Datafile Integrity*](#)
- [*Physical Files Validation in a Dataset*](#)
- [*Dataset Validation*](#)
- [*Workflows*](#)
- [*Metrics*](#)
- [*Inherit Dataverse Collection Role Assignments*](#)
- [*Manage Available Standard License Terms*](#)
- [*List Dataset Templates*](#)
- [*Delete Dataset Template*](#)
- [*Request Signed URL*](#)

3.6.1 Dataverse Collections

Create a Dataverse Collection

A Dataverse collection is a container for datasets and other Dataverse collections as explained in the [*Dataverse Collection Management*](#) section of the User Guide.

The steps for creating a Dataverse collection are:

- Prepare a JSON file containing the name, description, etc, of the Dataverse collection you'd like to create.
- Figure out the alias or database id of the “parent” Dataverse collection into which you will be creating your new Dataverse collection.
- Execute a curl command or equivalent.

Use the `dataverse-complete.json` file located at `/_static/api/dataverse-complete.json` and modify it to suit your needs. The fields `name`, `alias`, and `dataverseContacts` are required. The controlled vocabulary for `dataverseType` is the following:

- DEPARTMENT
- JOURNALS
- LABORATORY
- ORGANIZATIONS_INSTITUTIONS

- RESEARCHERS
- RESEARCH_GROUP
- RESEARCH_PROJECTS
- TEACHING_COURSES
- UNCATEGORIZED

```
{  
  "name": "Scientific Research",  
  "alias": "science",  
  "dataverseContacts": [  
    {  
      "contactEmail": "pi@example.edu"  
    },  
    {  
      "contactEmail": "student@example.edu"  
    }  
  ],  
  "affiliation": "Scientific Research University",  
  "description": "We do all the science.",  
  "dataverseType": "LABORATORY"  
}
```

The curl command below assumes you have kept the name “dataverse-complete.json” and that this file is in your current working directory.

Next you need to figure out the alias or database id of the “parent” Dataverse collection into which you will be creating your new Dataverse collection. Out of the box the top level Dataverse collection has an alias of “root” and a database id of “1” but your installation may vary. The easiest way to determine the alias of your root Dataverse collection is to click “Advanced Search” and look at the URL. You may also choose a parent under the root.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export PARENT=root  
  
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$PARENT --upload-  
-file dataverse-complete.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST https://demo.  
-dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root --upload-file dataverse-complete.json
```

You should expect an HTTP 200 response and JSON beginning with “status”:”OK” followed by a representation of the newly-created Dataverse collection.

View a Dataverse Collection

View a JSON representation of the Dataverse collection identified by `$id`. `$id` can be the database ID of the Dataverse collection, its alias, or the special value `:root` for the root Dataverse collection.

To view a published Dataverse collection:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root
```

To view an unpublished Dataverse collection:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
˓→api/dataverses/root
```

Delete a Dataverse Collection

Before you may delete a Dataverse collection you must first delete or move all of its contents elsewhere.

Deletes the Dataverse collection whose database ID or alias is given:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X DELETE https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root
```

Show Contents of a Dataverse Collection

Lists all the Dataverse collections and datasets directly under a Dataverse collection (direct children only, not recursive) specified by database id or alias. If you pass your API token and have access, unpublished Dataverse collections and datasets will be included in the response. The list will be ordered by database id within type of object. That is, all Dataverse collections will be listed first and ordered by database id, then all datasets will be listed ordered by database id.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/contents
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
˓→api/dataverses/root/contents
```

Report the data (file) size of a Dataverse Collection

Shows the combined size in bytes of all the files uploaded into the Dataverse collection id:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/storagesize
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
˓→api/dataverses/root/storagesize
```

The size of published and unpublished files will be summed both in the Dataverse collection specified and beneath all its sub-collections, recursively. By default, only the archival files are counted - i.e., the files uploaded by users (plus the tab-delimited versions generated for tabular data files on ingest). If the optional argument `includeCached=true` is specified, the API will also add the sizes of all the extra files generated and cached by the Dataverse installation - the resized thumbnail versions for image files, the metadata exports for published datasets, etc.

List Roles Defined in a Dataverse Collection

All the roles defined directly in the Dataverse collection identified by id:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/roles
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
˓→api/dataverses/root/roles
```

List Facets Configured for a Dataverse Collection

List all the facets for a given Dataverse collection id:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/facets
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
˓→api/dataverses/root/facets
```

Set Facets for a Dataverse Collection

Assign search facets for a given Dataverse collection identified by id:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/facets --
˓→upload-file dataverse-facets.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/facets --upload-file dataverse-facets.json
```

Where facets.json contains a JSON encoded list of metadata keys (e.g. ["authorName", "authorAffiliation"]).

List Metadata Block Facets Configured for a Dataverse Collection

List the metadata block facet configuration with all the metadata block configured for a given Dataverse collection id:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=root  
  
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/metadatablockfacets
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/  
->api/dataverses/root/metadatablockfacets
```

Set Metadata Block Facets for a Dataverse Collection

Sets the metadata blocks that will appear in the **Dataset Features** facet category for a given Dataverse collection identified by id.

In order to set or clear the metadata blocks for a collection, you must first *set the metadata block facet root to true*.

To clear the metadata blocks set by a parent collection, submit an empty array (e.g. []):

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=root  
  
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST -H "Content-type:application/json" $SERVER_  
->URL/api/dataverses/$ID/metadatablockfacets --upload-file metadata-block-facets.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST -H "Content-  
->type:application/json" https://demo.dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/  
->metadatablockfacets --upload-file metadata-block-facets.json
```

The `metadata-block-facets.json` located at `/_static/api/metadata-block-facets.json` contains a JSON encoded list of metadata block names (e.g. `["socialscience", "geospatial"]`). This endpoint supports an empty list (e.g. [])

Configure a Dataverse Collection to Inherit Its Metadata Block Facets from Its Parent

Set whether the Dataverse collection is a metadata block facet root, or does it uses its parent metadata block facets. Possible values are `true` and `false` (both are valid JSON expressions).

When updating the root to `false`, it will clear any metadata block facets from the collection. When updating to `true`, it will copy the metadata block facets from the parent collection:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=root
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST -H "Content-type:application/json" $SERVER_
↪URL/api/dataverses/$ID/metadatablockfacets/isRoot -d 'true'
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST -H "Content-
↪type:application/json" https://demo.dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/
↪metadatablockfacets/isRoot -d 'true'
```

Create a New Role in a Dataverse Collection

Creates a new role under Dataverse collection id. Needs a json file with the role description:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/roles --upload-
↪file roles.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST -H "Content-
↪type:application/json" https://demo.dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/roles --upload-
↪file roles.json
```

Where roles.json looks like this:

```
{
  "alias": "sys1",
  "name": "Restricted System Role",
  "description": "A person who may only add datasets.",
  "permissions": [
    "AddDataset"
  ]
}
```

Note: Only a Dataverse installation account with superuser permissions is allowed to create roles in a Dataverse Collection.

List Role Assignments in a Dataverse Collection

List all the role assignments at the given Dataverse collection:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/assignments
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
˓→api/dataverses/root/assignments
```

Assign Default Role to User Creating a Dataset in a Dataverse Collection

Assign a default role to a user creating a dataset in a Dataverse collection id where `roleAlias` is the database alias of the role to be assigned:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root
export ROLE_ALIAS=curator

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X PUT $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/
˓→defaultContributorRole/$ROLE_ALIAS
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X PUT https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/defaultContributorRole/curator
```

Note: You may use “none” as the `ROLE_ALIAS`. This will prevent a user who creates a dataset from having any role on that dataset. It is not recommended for Dataverse collections with human contributors.

Assign a New Role on a Dataverse Collection

Assigns a new role, based on the POSTed JSON:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" $SERVER_
˓→URL/api/dataverses/$ID/assignments --upload-file role.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST -H "Content-Type:u
˓→application/json" https://demo.dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/assignments --upload-
˓→file role.json
```

POSTed JSON example (the content of `role.json` file):

```
{
  "assignee": "@uma",
  "role": "curator"
}
```

Delete Role Assignment from a Dataverse Collection

Delete the assignment whose id is \$id:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root
export ASSIGNMENT_ID=6

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/assignments/
→$ASSIGNMENT_ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X DELETE https://demo.
→dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/assignments/6
```

List Metadata Blocks Defined on a Dataverse Collection

Get the metadata blocks defined on a Dataverse collection which determine which field are available to authors when they create and edit datasets within that Dataverse collection. This feature is described in [General Information](#) section of Dataverse Collection Management of the User Guide.

Please note that an API token is only required if the Dataverse collection has not been published.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/metadatablocks
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
→api/dataverses/root/metadatablocks
```

Define Metadata Blocks for a Dataverse Collection

You can define the metadata blocks available to authors within a Dataverse collection.

The metadata blocks that are available with a default Dataverse installation are in `define-metadatablocks.json` located at `/_static/api/define-metadatablocks.json` (also shown below) and you should download this file and edit it to meet your needs. Please note that the “citation” metadata block is required. You must have “EditDataverse” permission on the Dataverse collection.

```
[  
  "citation",  
  "geospatial",  
  "socialscience",  
  ...]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
"astrophysics",
"biomedical",
"journal"
]
```

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/metadatablocks
  -H \"Content-type:application/json\" --upload-file define-metadatablocks.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST -H "Content-
  type:application/json" --upload-file define-metadatablocks.json https://demo.dataverse.
  org/api/dataverses/root/metadatablocks
```

Determine if a Dataverse Collection Inherits Its Metadata Blocks from Its Parent

Get whether the Dataverse collection is a metadata block root, or does it uses its parent blocks:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/metadatablocks/isRoot
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
  api/dataverses/root/metadatablocks/isRoot
```

Configure a Dataverse Collection to Inherit Its Metadata Blocks from Its Parent

Set whether the Dataverse collection is a metadata block root, or does it uses its parent blocks. Possible values are `true` and `false` (both are valid JSON expressions):

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X PUT $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/metadatablocks/
  -isRoot
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X PUT https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/metadatablocks/isRoot
```

Note: Previous endpoints `$SERVER/api/dataverses/$id/metadatablocks/:isRoot` and `POST http://$SERVER/api/dataverses/$id/metadatablocks/:isRoot?key=$apiKey` are deprecated, but supported.

Create a Dataset in a Dataverse Collection

A dataset is a container for files as explained in the [Dataset + File Management](#) section of the User Guide.

To create a dataset, you must supply a JSON file that contains at least the following required metadata fields:

- Title
- Author Name
- Point of Contact Email
- Description Text
- Subject

As a starting point, you can use `dataset-finch1.json` located at `/scripts/search/tests/data/dataset-finch1.json` and modify it to meet your needs. (`dataset-create-new-all-default-fields.json` located at `/scripts/api/data/dataset-finch1_fr.json` is a variant of this file that includes setting the metadata language (see [:MetadataLanguages](#)) to French (fr). In addition to this minimal example, you can use `dataset-create-new-all-default-fields.json` located at `/scripts/api/data/dataset-create-new-all-default-fields.json` which populates all of the metadata fields that ship with a Dataverse installation.)

The curl command below assumes you have kept the name “`dataset-finch1.json`” and that this file is in your current working directory.

Next you need to figure out the alias or database id of the “parent” Dataverse collection into which you will be creating your new dataset. Out of the box the top level Dataverse collection has an alias of “root” and a database id of “1” but your installation may vary. The easiest way to determine the alias of your root Dataverse collection is to click “Advanced Search” and look at the URL. You may also choose a parent Dataverse collection under the root Dataverse collection.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export PARENT=root
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$PARENT/datasets" \
˓→--upload-file dataset-finch1.json -H 'Content-type:application/json'
```

The fully expanded example above (without the environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/datasets" --upload-file "dataset-finch1.json" -H
˓→'Content-type:application/json'
```

You should expect an HTTP 200 (“OK”) response and JSON indicating the database ID and Persistent ID (PID such as DOI or Handle) that has been assigned to your newly created dataset.

Note: Only a Dataverse installation account with superuser permissions is allowed to include files when creating a dataset via this API. Adding files this way only adds their file metadata to the database, you will need to manually add the physical files to the file system.

Import a Dataset into a Dataverse Collection

Note: This action requires a Dataverse installation account with super-user permissions.

To import a dataset with an existing persistent identifier (PID), the dataset’s metadata should be prepared in Dataverse installation’s native JSON format. The PID is provided as a parameter at the URL. The following line imports a dataset with the PID PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER to the Dataverse installation, and then releases it:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export DATAVERSE_ID=root
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:ZZ7/MOSEISLEYDB94

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$DATAVERSE_ID/
  ↵datasets/:import?pid=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER&release=yes --upload-file dataset.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST https://demo.
  ↵dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/datasets/:import?pid=doi:ZZ7/MOSEISLEYDB94&
  ↵release=yes --upload-file dataset.json
```

The pid parameter holds a persistent identifier (such as a DOI or Handle). The import will fail if no PID is provided, or if the provided PID fails validation.

The optional release parameter tells the Dataverse installation to immediately publish the dataset. If the parameter is changed to no, the imported dataset will remain in DRAFT status.

The JSON format is the same as that supported by the native API’s *create dataset command*, although it also allows packages. For example:

```
{
  "datasetVersion": {
    "license": {
      "name": "CC0 1.0",
      "uri": "http://creativecommons.org/publicdomain/zero/1.0"
    },
    "protocol": "doi",
    "authority": "10.502",
    "identifier": "ZZ7/MOSEISLEYDB94",
    "metadataBlocks": {
      "citation": {
        "fields": [
          {
            "label": "Title", "value": "The Title of the Dataset"
          }
        ]
      }
    }
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    "typeName": "title",
    "multiple": false,
    "value": "Imported dataset with package files No. 3",
    "typeClass": "primitive"
},
{
    "typeName": "productionDate",
    "multiple": false,
    "value": "2011-02-23",
    "typeClass": "primitive"
},
{
    "typeName": "dsDescription",
    "multiple": true,
    "value": [
        {
            "dsDescriptionValue": {
                "typeName": "dsDescriptionValue",
                "multiple": false,
                "value": "Native Dataset",
                "typeClass": "primitive"
            }
        }
    ],
    "typeClass": "compound"
},
{
    "typeName": "subject",
    "multiple": true,
    "value": [
        "Medicine, Health and Life Sciences"
    ],
    "typeClass": "controlledVocabulary"
},
{
    "typeName": "author",
    "multiple": true,
    "value": [
        {
            "authorAffiliation": {
                "typeName": "authorAffiliation",
                "multiple": false,
                "value": "LibraScholar Medical School",
                "typeClass": "primitive"
            },
            "authorName": {
                "typeName": "authorName",
                "multiple": false,
                "value": "Doc, Bob",
                "typeClass": "primitive"
            }
        }
    ],
    "typeClass": "compound"
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
{
    "authorAffiliation": {
        "typeName": "authorAffiliation",
        "multiple": false,
        "value": "LibraScholar Medical School",
        "typeClass": "primitive"
    },
    "authorName": {
        "typeName": "authorName",
        "multiple": false,
        "value": "Prof, Arthur",
        "typeClass": "primitive"
    }
},
],
"typeClass": "compound"
},
{
    "typeName": "depositor",
    "multiple": false,
    "value": "Prof, Arthur",
    "typeClass": "primitive"
},
{
    "typeName": "datasetContact",
    "multiple": true,
    "value": [
        {
            "datasetContactEmail": {
                "typeName": "datasetContactEmail",
                "multiple": false,
                "value": "aprof@mailinator.com",
                "typeClass": "primitive"
            }
        }
    ],
    "typeClass": "compound"
}
],
"displayName": "Citation Metadata"
},
{
    "files": [
        {
            "description": "",
            "label": "pub",
            "restricted": false,
            "version": 1,
            "datasetVersionId": 1,
            "dataFile": {
                "id": 4,
                "filename": "pub",
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        "contentType": "application/vnd.dataverse.file-package",
        "filesize": 1698795873,
        "description": "",
        "storageIdentifier": "162017e5ad5-ee2a2b17fee9",
        "originalFormatLabel": "UNKNOWN",
        "rootDataFileId": -1,
        "checksum": {
            "type": "SHA-1",
            "value": "54bc7ddb096a490474bd8cc90cbcd1c96730f350"
        }
    }
}
]
```

Before calling the API, make sure the data files referenced by the POSTed JSON are placed in the dataset directory with filenames matching their specified storage identifiers. In installations using POSIX storage, these files must be made readable by the app server user.

Tip: If possible, it's best to avoid spaces and special characters in the storage identifier in order to avoid potential portability problems. The storage identifier corresponds with the filesystem name (or bucket identifier) of the data file, so these characters may cause unpredictability with filesystem tools.

Warning:

- This API does not cover staging files (with correct contents, checksums, sizes, etc.) in the corresponding places in the Dataverse installation's filestore.
 - This API endpoint does not support importing *files*' persistent identifiers.
 - A Dataverse installation can import datasets with a valid PID that uses a different protocol or authority than said server is configured for. However, the server will not update the PID metadata on subsequent update and publish actions.

Import a Dataset into a Dataverse Installation with a DDI file

Note: This action requires a Dataverse installation account with super-user permissions.

To import a dataset with an existing persistent identifier (PID), you have to provide the PID as a parameter at the URL. The following line imports a dataset with the PID PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER to the Dataverse installation, and then releases it:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export DATAVERSE_ID=root  
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:ZZ7/MOSEISLEYDB94
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$DATVERSE_ID/
  ↵datasets/:importddi?pid=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER&release=yes --upload-file ddi_dataset.
  ↵xml
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST https://demo.
  ↵dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/datasets/:importddi?pid=doi:ZZ7/MOSEISLEYDB94&
  ↵release=yes --upload-file ddi_dataset.xml
```

The optional pid parameter holds a persistent identifier (such as a DOI or Handle). The import will fail if the provided PID fails validation.

The optional release parameter tells the Dataverse installation to immediately publish the dataset. If the parameter is changed to no, the imported dataset will remain in DRAFT status.

The file is a DDI XML file. A sample DDI XML file `ddi_dataset.xml` is located at `/_static/api/ddi_dataset.xml`

Note that DDI XML does not have a field that corresponds to the “Subject” field in Dataverse. Therefore the “Import DDI” API endpoint populates the “Subject” field with N/A. To update the “Subject” field one will need to call the [Edit Dataset Metadata](#) API with a JSON file that contains an update to “Subject” such as `subject-update-metadata.json` located at `/_static/api/subject-update-metadata.json`. Alternatively, the web interface can be used to add a subject.

Warning:

- This API does not handle files related to the DDI file.
- A Dataverse installation can import datasets with a valid PID that uses a different protocol or authority than said server is configured for. However, the server will not update the PID metadata on subsequent update and publish actions.

Publish a Dataverse Collection

In order to publish a Dataverse collection, you must know either its “alias” (which the GUI calls an “identifier”) or its database ID.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/actions/
  ↵:publish
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST https://demo.
  ↵dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/actions/:publish
```

You should expect a 200 (“OK”) response and JSON output.

Retrieve Guestbook Responses for a Dataverse Collection

For more about guestbooks, see [Dataset Guestbooks](#) in the User Guide.

In order to retrieve the Guestbook Responses for a Dataverse collection, you must know either its “alias” (which the GUI calls an “identifier”) or its database ID. If the Dataverse collection has more than one guestbook you may provide the id of a single guestbook as an optional parameter. If no guestbook id is provided the results returned will be the same as pressing the “Download All Responses” button on the Manage Dataset Guestbook page. If the guestbook id is provided then only those responses from that guestbook will be included. The FILENAME parameter is optional, and if it is not included, the responses will be displayed in the console.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=root
export GUESTBOOK_ID=1
export FILENAME=myResponses.csv

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$ID/guestbookResponses?
  ↪guestbookId=$GUESTBOOK_ID -o $FILENAME
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
  ↪api/dataverses/root/guestbookResponses?guestbookId=1 -o myResponses.csv
```

3.6.2 Datasets

Note Creation of new datasets is done with a POST onto a Dataverse collection. See the Dataverse Collections section above.

Note In all commands below, dataset versions can be referred to as:

- `:draft` the draft version, if any
- `:latest` either a draft (if exists) or the latest published version.
- `:latest-published` the latest published version
- `x.y` a specific version, where x is the major version number and y is the minor version number.
- `x` same as `x.0`

Get JSON Representation of a Dataset

Note: Datasets can be accessed using persistent identifiers. This is done by passing the constant :persistentId where the numeric id of the dataset is expected, and then passing the actual persistent id as a query parameter with the name persistentId.

Example: Getting the dataset whose DOI is 10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
  ↪persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/
  ↪:persistentId/?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB
```

Getting its draft version:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" http://$SERVER/api/datasets/:persistentId/versions/
  ↪:draft?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/
  ↪:persistentId/versions/:draft?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB
```

Show the dataset whose id is passed:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=408730

curl $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/408730
```

The dataset id can be extracted from the response retrieved from the API which uses the persistent identifier (/api/datasets/:persistentId/?persistentId=\$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER).

List Versions of a Dataset

List versions of the dataset:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/versions
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/versions
```

It returns a list of versions with their metadata, and file list:

```
{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": [
    {
      "id": 7,
      "datasetId": 24,
      "datasetPersistentId": "doi:10.5072/FK2/U6AEZM",
      "storageIdentifier": "file://10.5072/FK2/U6AEZM",
      "versionNumber": 2,
      "versionMinorNumber": 0,
      "versionState": "RELEASED",
      "lastUpdateTime": "2015-04-20T09:58:35Z",
      "releaseTime": "2015-04-20T09:58:35Z",
      "createTime": "2015-04-20T09:57:32Z",
      "license": {
        "name": "CC0 1.0",
        "uri": "http://creativecommons.org/publicdomain/zero/1.0"
      },
      "termsOfAccess": "You need to request for access.",
      "fileAccessRequest": true,
      "metadataBlocks": {...},
      "files": [...]
    },
    {
      "id": 6,
      "datasetId": 24,
      "datasetPersistentId": "doi:10.5072/FK2/U6AEZM",
      "storageIdentifier": "file://10.5072/FK2/U6AEZM",
      "versionNumber": 1,
      "versionMinorNumber": 0,
      "versionState": "RELEASED",
      "UNF": "UNF:6:y4dtFxWhBaPM9K/jlPPuqg==",
      "lastUpdateTime": "2015-04-20T09:56:34Z",
      "releaseTime": "2015-04-20T09:56:34Z",
      "createTime": "2015-04-20T09:43:45Z",
      "license": {
        "name": "CC0 1.0",
        "uri": "http://creativecommons.org/publicdomain/zero/1.0"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    "termsOfAccess": "You need to request for access.",
    "fileAccessRequest": true,
    "metadataBlocks": {...},
    "files": [...]
}
]
}

```

Get Version of a Dataset

Show a version of the dataset. The output includes any metadata blocks the dataset might have:

```

export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24
export VERSION=1.0

curl $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/versions/$VERSION

```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/versions/1.0
```

Export Metadata of a Dataset in Various Formats

Export the metadata of the current published version of a dataset in various formats.

See also [Batch Exports Through the API](#) and the note below:

```

export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FR2/J8SJZB
export METADATA_FORMAT=ddi

curl $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/export?exporter=$METADATA_FORMAT&persistentId=PERSISTENT_
↪ IDENTIFIER

```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/export?exporter=ddi&persistentId=doi:10.
↪ 5072/FR2/J8SJZB
```

Note: Supported exporters (export formats) are ddi, oai_ddi, dcterms, oai_dc, schema.org , OAI_ORE , Datacite, oai_datacite and dataverse_json. Descriptive names can be found under [Supported Metadata Export Formats](#) in the User Guide.

Schema.org JSON-LD

Please note that the `schema.org` format has changed in backwards-incompatible ways after Dataverse Software version 4.9.4:

- “description” was a single string and now it is an array of strings.
- “citation” was an array of strings and now it is an array of objects.

Both forms are valid according to Google’s Structured Data Testing Tool at <https://search.google.com/structured-data/testing-tool>. (This tool will report “The property affiliation is not recognized by Google for an object of type Thing” and this known issue is being tracked at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/5029>.) Schema.org JSON-LD is an evolving standard that permits a great deal of flexibility. For example, https://schema.org/docs/gs.html#schemaorg_expected indicates that even when objects are expected, it’s ok to just use text. As with all metadata export formats, we will try to keep the Schema.org JSON-LD format your Dataverse installation emits backward-compatible to make integrations more stable, despite the flexibility that’s afforded by the standard.

List Files in a Dataset

Lists all the file metadata, for the given dataset and version:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24
export VERSION=1.0

curl $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/versions/$VERSION/files
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/versions/1.0/files
```

View Dataset Files and Folders as a Directory Index

Provides a *crawlable* view of files and folders within the given dataset and version:

```
curl $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/${ID}/dirindex/
# or
curl ${SERVER_URL}/api/datasets/:persistentId/dirindex?persistentId=doi:${PERSISTENT_ID}
```

Optional parameters:

- `folder` - A subfolder within the dataset (default: top-level view of the dataset)
- `version` - Specifies the version (default: latest published version)
- `original=true` - Download original versions of ingested tabular files.

This API outputs a simple html listing, based on the standard Apache directory index, with Access API download links for individual files, and recursive calls to the API above for sub-folders.

Using this API, `wget --recursive` (or a similar crawling client) can be used to download all the files in a dataset, preserving the file names and folder structure; without having to use the download-as-zip API. In addition to being faster (zipping is a relatively resource-intensive operation on the server side), this process can be restarted if interrupted (with `wget --continue` or equivalent) - unlike zipped multi-file downloads that always have to start from the beginning.

On a system that uses S3 with download redirects, the individual file downloads will be handled by S3 directly, without having to be proxied through the Dataverse application.

For example, if you have a dataset version with 2 files, one with the folder named “subfolder”:

The screenshot shows a file list interface with the following details:

- 1 to 2 of 2 Files**
- 50by1000.tab**: Tabular Data - 102.5 KB - Jan 11, 2021 - 3 Downloads. SHA-1: 44be2930968c0159f17ef895807150236fdc 9d72.
- testfile.txt**: Plain Text - 19 B - Jan 13, 2021 - 0 Downloads. SHA-1: 44be2930968c0159f17ef895807150236fdc 9d72.

or, as viewed as a tree on the dataset page:

The screenshot shows a dataset page with the following structure:

- Change**
- View**
- Table** (selected)
- Tree**
- subfolder** (expanded)
 - 50by1000.tab (102.5 KB)**
 - testfile.txt (19 B)**

The output of the API for the top-level folder (`/api/datasets/{dataset}/dirindex/`) will be as follows:

Index of folder / in dataset doi:XXX/YY/ZZZZ (v. MM)

Name	Last Modified	Size	Description
subfolder/	-	-	
testfile.txt	13-January-2021 22:35	19 B	

with the underlying html source:

```
<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 3.2 Final//EN">
<html><head><title>Index of folder / in dataset doi:XXX/YY/ZZZZ (v. MM)</title></head>
<body><h1>Index of folder / in dataset doi:XXX/YY/ZZZZ (v. MM)</h1>
<table>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Last Modified</th><th>Size</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="4"><hr></th></tr>
<tr><td><a href="/api/datasets/NNNN/dirindex/?folder=subfolder">subfolder</a></td><td align="right"> - </td><td align="right"> - </td><td align="right">&nbsp;</td></tr>
<tr><td><a href="/api/access/datafile/KKKK">testfile.txt</a></td><td align="right">13- January-2021 22:35</td><td align="right">19 B</td><td align="right">&nbsp;</td></tr>
</table></body></html>
```

The /dirindex/?folder=subfolder link above will produce the following view:

Index of folder /subfolder in dataset doi:XXX/YY/ZZZZ (v. MM)

Name	Last Modified	Size	Description
50by1000.tab	11-January-2021 09:31	102.5 KB	

with the html source as follows:

```
<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 3.2 Final//EN">
<html><head><title>Index of folder /subfolder</title></head>
<body><h1>Index of folder /subfolder in dataset doi:XXX/YY/ZZZZ (v. MM)</h1>
<table>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>Last Modified</th><th>Size</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="4"><hr></th></tr>
<tr><td><a href="/api/access/datafile/subfolder/LLLL">50by1000.tab</a></td><td align="right">11-January-2021 09:31</td><td align="right">102.5 KB</td><td align="right">&nbsp;</td></tr>
</table></body></html>
```

An example of a wget command line for crawling (“recursive downloading”) of the files and folders in a dataset:

```
wget -r -e robots=off -nH --cut-dirs=3 --content-disposition https://demo.dataverse.org/
˓→api/datasets/${ID}/dirindex/
# or
wget -r -e robots=off -nH --cut-dirs=3 --content-disposition https://demo.dataverse.org/
˓→api/datasets/:persistentId/dirindex?persistentId=doi:${PERSISTENT_ID}
```

Note: In addition to the files and folders in the dataset, the command line above will also save the directory index of each folder, in a separate folder “dirindex”.

List All Metadata Blocks for a Dataset

Lists all the metadata blocks and their content, for the given dataset and version:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24
export VERSION=1.0

curl $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/versions/$VERSION/metadata
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/versions/1.0/metadata
```

List Single Metadata Block for a Dataset

Lists the metadata block named *METADATA_BLOCK*, for the given dataset and version:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24
export VERSION=1.0
export METADATA_BLOCK=citation

curl $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/versions/$VERSION/metadata/$METADATA_BLOCK
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/versions/1.0/metadata/citation
```

Update Metadata For a Dataset

Updates the metadata for a dataset. If a draft of the dataset already exists, the metadata of that draft is overwritten; otherwise, a new draft is created with this metadata.

You must download a JSON representation of the dataset, edit the JSON you download, and then send the updated JSON to the Dataverse installation.

For example, after making your edits, your JSON file might look like `dataset-update-metadata.json` located at `/_static/api/dataset-update-metadata.json` which you would send to the Dataverse installation like this:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/BCCP9Z

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
  ↵versions/:draft?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER --upload-file dataset-update-
  ↵metadata.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X PUT https://demo.
  ↵dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/versions/:draft?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/
  ↵BCCP9Z --upload-file dataset-update-metadata.json
```

Note that in the example JSON file above, there is a single JSON object with `metadataBlocks` as a key. When you download a representation of your dataset in JSON format, the `metadataBlocks` object you need is nested inside another object called `datasetVersion`. To extract just the `metadataBlocks` key when downloading a JSON representation, you can use a tool such as `jq` like this:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/BCCP9Z

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/versions/
  ↵:latest?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER | jq '.data | {metadataBlocks: .
  ↵metadataBlocks}' > dataset-update-metadata.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/versions/:latest?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/BCCP9Z | jq '.data | {metadataBlocks: .metadataBlocks}' > dataset-update-metadata.json
```

Now that the resulting JSON file only contains the `metadataBlocks` key, you can edit the JSON such as with `vi` in the example below:

```
vi dataset-update-metadata.json
```

Now that you've made edits to the metadata in your JSON file, you can send it to a Dataverse installation as described above.

Edit Dataset Metadata

Alternatively to replacing an entire dataset version with its JSON representation you may add data to dataset fields that are blank or accept multiple values with the following:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/BCCP9Z

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
  ↵editMetadata/?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER --upload-file dataset-add-metadata.
  ↵json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X PUT https://demo.
  ↵dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/editMetadata/?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/
  ↵BCCP9Z --upload-file dataset-add-metadata.json
```

You may also replace existing metadata in dataset fields with the following (adding the parameter `replace=true`):

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/BCCP9Z

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
  ↵editMetadata?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER&replace=true --upload-file dataset-
  ↵update-metadata.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X PUT https://demo.
  ↵dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/editMetadata/?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/
  ↵BCCP9Z&replace=true --upload-file dataset-update-metadata.json
```

For these edits your JSON file need only include those dataset fields which you would like to edit. A sample JSON file `dataset-edit-metadata-sample.json` can be found at `/static/api/dataset-edit-metadata-sample.json`

Delete Dataset Metadata

You may delete some of the metadata of a dataset version by supplying a file with a JSON representation of dataset fields that you would like to delete with the following:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/BCCP9Z

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
  ↵deleteMetadata/?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER --upload-file dataset-delete-
  ↵author-metadata.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X PUT https://demo.
  ↵dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/deleteMetadata/?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/
  ↵BCCP9Z --upload-file dataset-delete-author-metadata.json
```

For these deletes your JSON file must include an exact match of those dataset fields which you would like to delete. A sample JSON file `dataset-delete-author-metadata.json` can be found at `/_static/api/dataset-delete-author-metadata.json`

Publish a Dataset

When publishing a dataset it's good to be aware of the Dataverse Software's versioning system, which is described in the [Dataset + File Management](#) section of the User Guide.

If this is the first version of the dataset, its version number will be set to `1.0`. Otherwise, the new dataset version number is determined by the most recent version number and the `type` parameter. Passing `type=minor` increases the minor version number (2.3 is updated to 2.4). Passing `type=major` increases the major version number (2.3 is updated to 3.0). (Superusers can pass `type=updatecurrent` to update metadata without changing the version number.)

This call also supports an optional boolean query parameter: `assureIsIndexed`. If true, the call will fail with a 409 ("CONFLICT") response if the dataset is awaiting re-indexing. If indexing occurs during publishing it could cause the publish request to fail, after a 202 response has been received. Using this parameter allows the caller to wait for indexing to occur and avoid this possibility. It is most useful in situations where edits are made immediately before publication.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB
export MAJOR_OR_MINOR=major

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
  ↵actions/:publish?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID&type=$MAJOR_OR_MINOR"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/actions/:publish?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/
˓→J8SJZB&type=major"
```

The quotes around the URL are required because there is more than one query parameter separated by an ampersand (&), which has special meaning to Unix shells such as Bash. Putting the & in quotes ensures that “type” is interpreted as one of the query parameters.

You should expect JSON output and a 200 (“OK”) response in most cases. If you receive a 202 (“ACCEPTED”) response, this is normal for installations that have workflows configured. Workflows are described in the [Workflows](#) section of the Developer Guide. A 409 (“CONFLICT”) response is also possible if you set `assureIsIndexed=true`. (In this case, one could then repeat the call until a 200/202 response is sent.)

Note: POST should be used to publish a dataset. GET is supported for backward compatibility but is deprecated and may be removed: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/2431>

Delete Dataset Draft

Deletes the draft version of dataset \$ID. Only the draft version can be deleted:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/versions/
˓→:draft
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/versions/:draft
```

Set Citation Date Field Type for a Dataset

Sets the dataset citation date field type for a given dataset. `:publicationDate` is the default. Note that the dataset citation date field type must be a date field.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB
export DATASET_FIELD_TYPE_NAME=dateOfDeposit

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
˓→citationdate?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER --data "$DATASET_FIELD_TYPE_NAME"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X PUT https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/citationdate?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/
˓→J8SJZB --data "dateOfDeposit"
```

Revert Citation Date Field Type to Default for Dataset

Restores the default citation date field type, :publicationDate, for a given dataset.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
  ↵citationdate?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.
  ↵dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/citationdate?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/
  ↵J8SJZB
```

List Role Assignments in a Dataset

Lists all role assignments on a given dataset:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=2347

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/assignments
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
  ↵api/datasets/2347/assignments
```

Assign a New Role on a Dataset

Assigns a new role, based on the POSTed JSON:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=2347

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" $SERVER_
  ↵URL/api/datasets/$ID/assignments --upload-file role.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST -H "Content-Type:_
  ↵application/json" https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/2347/assignments --upload-
  ↵file role.json
```

POSTed JSON example (the content of `role.json` file):

```
{
  "assignee": "@uma",
  "role": "curator"
}
```

Delete Role Assignment from a Dataset

Delete the assignment whose id is \$id:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=2347
export ASSIGNMENT_ID=6

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/assignments/
→$ASSIGNMENT_ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X DELETE https://demo.
→dataverse.org/api/datasets/2347/assignments/6
```

Create a Private URL for a Dataset

Create a Private URL (must be able to manage dataset permissions):

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/privateUrl
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST https://demo.
→dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/privateUrl
```

If Anonymized Access has been enabled on a Dataverse installation (see the `:AnonymizedFieldTypeNames` setting), an optional ‘anonymizedAccess’ query parameter is allowed. Setting `anonymizedAccess=true` in your call will create a PrivateURL that only allows an anonymized view of the Dataset (see [Private URL to Review Unpublished Dataset](#)).

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST https://demo.
→dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/privateUrl?anonymizedAccess=true
```

Get the Private URL for a Dataset

Get a Private URL from a dataset (if available):

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/privateUrl
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" https://demo.dataverse.  
org/api/datasets/24/privateUrl
```

Delete the Private URL from a Dataset

Delete a Private URL from a dataset (if it exists):

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/privateUrl
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.  
dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/privateUrl
```

Add a File to a Dataset

When adding a file to a dataset, you can optionally specify the following:

- A description of the file.
- The “File Path” of the file, indicating which folder the file should be uploaded to within the dataset.
- Whether or not the file is restricted.
- Whether or not the file skips *tabular ingest*. If the `tabIngest` parameter is not specified, it defaults to `true`.

Note that when a Dataverse installation is configured to use S3 storage with direct upload enabled, there is API support to send a file directly to S3. This is more complex and is described in the [Direct DataFile Upload/Replace API](#) guide.

In the curl example below, all of the above are specified but they are optional.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export FILENAME='data.tsv'  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST -F "file=@$FILENAME" -F 'jsonData={
  "description": "My description.",
  "directoryLabel": "data/subdir1",
  "categories": ["Data"],
  "restrict": "false",
  "tabIngest": "false"}' "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/add?
  persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST -F file=@data.tsv -
  -F 'jsonData={"description": "My description.",
  "directoryLabel": "data/subdir1",
  "categories": ["Data"],
  "restrict": "false",
  "tabIngest": "false"}' "https://demo.
  dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/add?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB"
```

You should expect a 201 (“CREATED”) response and JSON indicating the database id that has been assigned to your newly uploaded file.

Please note that it’s possible to “trick” a Dataverse installation into giving a file a content type (MIME type) of your choosing. For example, you can make a text file be treated like a video file with `-F 'file=@README.txt; type=video/mpeg4'`, for example. If the Dataverse installation does not properly detect a file type, specifying the content type via API like this a potential workaround.

The curl syntax above to upload a file is tricky and a Python version is provided below. (Please note that it depends on libraries such as “requests” that you may need to install but this task is out of scope for this guide.) Here are some parameters you can set in the script:

- `dataverse_server` - e.g. <https://demo.dataverse.org>
- `api_key` - See the top of this document for a description
- `persistentId` - Example: `doi:10.5072/FK2/6XACVA`
- `dataset_id` - Database id of the dataset

In practice, you only need one the `dataset_id` or the `persistentId`. The example below shows both uses.

```
from datetime import datetime
import json
import requests # http://docs.python-requests.org/en/master/

# -----
# Update the 4 params below to run this code
# -----
dataverse_server = 'https://your dataverse installation' # no trailing slash
api_key = 'api key'
dataset_id = 1 # database id of the dataset
persistentId = 'doi:10.5072/FK2/6XACVA' # doi or hdl of the dataset

# -----
# Prepare "file"
# -----
file_content = 'content: %s' % datetime.now()
files = {'file': ('sample_file.txt', file_content)}

# -----
# Using a "jsonData" parameter, add optional description + file tags
# -----
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
params = dict(description='Blue skies!',  
              categories=['Lily', 'Rosemary', 'Jack of Hearts'])  
  
params_as_json_string = json.dumps(params)  
  
payload = dict(jsonData=params_as_json_string)  
  
# -----  
# Add file using the Dataset's id  
# -----  
url_dataset_id = '%s/api/datasets/%s/add?key=%s' % (dataverse_server, dataset_id, api_  
key)  
  
# -----  
# Make the request  
# -----  
print '-' * 40  
print 'making request: %s' % url_dataset_id  
r = requests.post(url_dataset_id, data=payload, files=files)  
  
# -----  
# Print the response  
# -----  
print '-' * 40  
print r.json()  
print r.status_code  
  
# -----  
# Add file using the Dataset's persistentId (e.g. doi, hdl, etc)  
# -----  
url_persistent_id = '%s/api/datasets/:persistentId/add?persistentId=%s&key=%s' %  
(dataverse_server, persistentId, api_key)  
  
# -----  
# Update the file content to avoid a duplicate file error  
# -----  
file_content = 'content2: %s' % datetime.now()  
files = {'file': ('sample_file2.txt', file_content)}  
  
# -----  
# Make the request  
# -----  
print '-' * 40  
print 'making request: %s' % url_persistent_id  
r = requests.post(url_persistent_id, data=payload, files=files)  
  
# -----  
# Print the response  
# -----  
print '-' * 40  
print r.json()
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
print r.status_code
```

Add a Remote File to a Dataset

If your Dataverse installation has been configured to support *Trusted Remote Storage* you can add files from remote URLs to datasets. These remote files appear in your Dataverse installation as if they were ordinary files but are stored remotely.

The location of the remote file is specified in the `storageIdentifier` field in JSON you supply. The base URL of the file is contained in the “store” (e.g. “trsa” in the example below) and is followed by the path to the file (e.g. “themes/custom...”).

In the JSON example below, all fields are required except for `description`. Other optional fields are shown under *Add a File to a Dataset*.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB
export JSON_DATA='{"description":"A remote image.", "storageIdentifier":"trsa://themes/
↳custom/qdr/images/CoreTrustSeal-logo-transparent.png", "checksumType":"MD5", "md5Hash":
↳"509ef88afa907eaf2c17c1c8d8fde77e", "label":"testlogo.png", "fileName":"testlogo.png",
↳"mimeType":"image/png"}'

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
↳add?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID" -F "jsonData=$JSON_DATA"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST https://demo.
↳dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/add?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB -F
↳"jsonData={"description":"A remote image.", "storageIdentifier":"trsa://themes/custom/
↳qdr/images/CoreTrustSeal-logo-transparent.png", "checksumType":"MD5", "md5Hash":
↳"509ef88afa907eaf2c17c1c8d8fde77e", "label":"testlogo.png", "fileName":"testlogo.png",
↳"mimeType":"image/png"}'
```

Adding Files To a Dataset via Other Tools

In some circumstances, it may be useful to move or copy files into Dataverse's storage manually or via external tools and then add them to a dataset (i.e. without involving Dataverse in the file transfer itself). Two API calls are available for this use case to add files to a dataset or to replace files that were already in the dataset. These calls were developed as part of Dataverse's direct upload mechanism and are detailed in *Direct DataFile Upload/Replace API*.

Report the data (file) size of a Dataset

Shows the combined size in bytes of all the files uploaded into the dataset id.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
  
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/storagesize
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/  
  ↪api/datasets/24/storagesize
```

The size of published and unpublished files will be summed in the dataset specified. By default, only the archival files are counted - i.e., the files uploaded by users (plus the tab-delimited versions generated for tabular data files on ingest). If the optional argument `includeCached=true` is specified, the API will also add the sizes of all the extra files generated and cached by the Dataverse installation - the resized thumbnail versions for image files, the metadata exports for published datasets, etc. Because this deals with unpublished files the token supplied must have permission to view unpublished drafts.

Get the size of Downloading all the files of a Dataset Version

Shows the combined size in bytes of all the files available for download from version `versionId` of dataset id.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
export VERSIONID=1.0  
  
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/versions/$VERSIONID/  
  ↪downloadsize
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/  
  ↪api/datasets/24/versions/1.0/downloadsize
```

The size of all files available for download will be returned. If `:draft` is passed as `versionId` the token supplied must have permission to view unpublished drafts. A token is not required for published datasets. Also restricted files will be included in this total regardless of whether the user has access to download the restricted file(s).

Submit a Dataset for Review

When dataset authors do not have permission to publish directly, they can click the “Submit for Review” button in the web interface (see [Dataset + File Management](#)), or perform the equivalent operation via API:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
↪submitForReview?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.
↪dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/submitForReview?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/
↪J8SJZB"
```

The people who need to review the dataset (often curators or journal editors) can check their notifications periodically via API to see if any new datasets have been submitted for review and need their attention. See the [Notifications](#) section for details. Alternatively, these curators can simply check their email or notifications to know when datasets have been submitted (or resubmitted) for review.

Return a Dataset to Author

After the curators or journal editors have reviewed a dataset that has been submitted for review (see “Submit for Review”, above) they can either choose to publish the dataset (see the :publish “action” above) or return the dataset to its authors. In the web interface there is a “Return to Author” button (see [Dataset + File Management](#)), but the interface does not provide a way to explain **why** the dataset is being returned. There is a way to do this outside of this interface, however. Instead of clicking the “Return to Author” button in the UI, a curator can write a “reason for return” into the database via API.

Here’s how curators can send a “reason for return” to the dataset authors. First, the curator creates a JSON file that contains the reason for return:

```
{
  "reasonForReturn": "You forgot to upload any files."
}
```

In the example below, the curator has saved the JSON file `reason-for-return.json` located at `/_static/api/reason-for-return.json` in their current working directory. Then, the curator sends this JSON file to the `returnToAuthor` API endpoint like this:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
↪returnToAuthor?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID" -H "Content-type: application/json" -d
↪@reason-for-return.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.  
dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/returnToAuthor?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/  
J8SJZB" -H "Content-type: application/json" -d @reason-for-return.json
```

The review process can sometimes resemble a tennis match, with the authors submitting and resubmitting the dataset over and over until the curators are satisfied. Each time the curators send a “reason for return” via API, that reason is persisted into the database, stored at the dataset version level.

Link a Dataset

Creates a link between a dataset and a Dataverse collection (see [Dataset Linking](#) section of Dataverse Collection Management in the User Guide for more information):

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export DATASET_ID=24  
export DATAVERSE_ID=test  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$DATASET_ID/link/  
$DATAVERSE_ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X PUT https://demo.  
dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/link/test
```

Dataset Locks

Manage Locks on a Specific Dataset

To check if a dataset is locked:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
  
curl $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/locks
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/locks
```

Optionally, you can check if there's a lock of a specific type on the dataset:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
export LOCK_TYPE=Ingest  
  
curl "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/locks?type=$LOCK_TYPE"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/locks?type=Ingest"
```

Currently implemented lock types are Ingest, Workflow, InReview, DcmUpload, finalizePublication, EditInProgress and FileValidationFailed.

The API will output the list of locks, for example:

```
{"status":"OK","data":  
[  
  {  
    "lockType":"Ingest",  
    "date":"Fri Aug 17 15:05:51 EDT 2018",  
    "user":"dataverseAdmin",  
    "dataset":"doi:12.34567/FK2/ABCDEF"  
  },  
  {  
    "lockType":"Workflow",  
    "date":"Fri Aug 17 15:02:00 EDT 2018",  
    "user":"dataverseAdmin",  
    "dataset":"doi:12.34567/FK2/ABCDEF"  
  }  
]
```

If the dataset is not locked (or if there is no lock of the requested type), the API will return an empty list.

The following API end point will lock a Dataset with a lock of specified type. Note that this requires “superuser” credentials:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
export LOCK_TYPE=Ingest  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/lock/$LOCK_  
TYPE
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST https://demo.  
dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/lock/Ingest
```

Use the following API to unlock the dataset, by deleting all the locks currently on the dataset. Note that this requires “superuser” credentials:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/locks
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.  
dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/locks
```

Or, to delete a lock of the type specified only. Note that this requires “superuser” credentials:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
export LOCK_TYPE=finalizePublication  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/locks?type=$LOCK_TYPE
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.  
dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/locks?type=finalizePublication
```

If the dataset is not locked (or if there is no lock of the specified type), the API will exit with a warning message.

(Note that the API calls above all support both the database id and persistent identifier notation for referencing the dataset)

List Locks Across All Datasets

Note that this API requires “superuser” credentials. You must supply the X-Dataverse-key header with the api token of an admin user (as in the example below).

The output of this API is formatted identically to the API that lists the locks for a specific dataset, as in one of the examples above.

Use the following API to list ALL the locks on all the datasets in your installation:

/api/datasets/locks

The listing can be filtered by specific lock type **and/or** user, using the following *optional* query parameters:

- **userIdentifier** - To list the locks owned by a specific user
- **type** - To list the locks of the type specified. If the supplied value does not match a known lock type, the API will return an error and a list of valid lock types. As of writing this, the implemented lock types are `Ingest`, `Workflow`, `InReview`, `DcmUpload`, `finalizePublication`, `EditInProgress` and `FileValidationFailed`.

For example:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxx" "http://localhost:8080/api/datasets/locks?type=Ingest&  
userIdentifier=davis4ever"
```

Dataset Metrics

Please note that these dataset level metrics are only available if support for Make Data Count has been enabled in your Dataverse installation. See the [Dataset Metrics](#) in the [Dataset + File Management](#) section of the User Guide and the [Make Data Count](#) section of the Admin Guide for details.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
```

To confirm that the environment variable was set properly, you can use echo like this:

```
echo $SERVER_URL
```

Please note that for each of these endpoints except the “citations” endpoint, you can optionally pass the query parameter “country” with a two letter code (e.g. “country=us”) and you can specify a particular month by adding it in yyyy-mm format after the requested metric (e.g. “viewsTotal/2019-02”).

Retrieving Total Views for a Dataset

Please note that “viewsTotal” is a combination of “viewsTotalRegular” and “viewsTotalMachine” which can be requested separately.

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB
```

```
curl "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/viewsTotal?persistentId=
↪$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/viewsTotal?
↪persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB"
```

Retrieving Unique Views for a Dataset

Please note that “viewsUnique” is a combination of “viewsUniqueRegular” and “viewsUniqueMachine” which can be requested separately.

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB
```

```
curl "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/viewsUnique?persistentId=
↪$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/viewsUnique?
↪persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB"
```

Retrieving Total Downloads for a Dataset

Please note that “downloadsTotal” is a combination of “downloadsTotalRegular” and “downloadsTotalMachine” which can be requested separately.

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

curl "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/downloadsTotal?persistentId=
↪$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/downloadsTotal?
↪persistentId=10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB"
```

Retrieving Unique Downloads for a Dataset

Please note that “downloadsUnique” is a combination of “downloadsUniqueRegular” and “downloadsUniqueMachine” which can be requested separately.

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

curl "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/downloadsUnique?persistentId=
↪$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/
↪downloadsUnique?persistentId=10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB"
```

Retrieving Citations for a Dataset

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

curl "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/citations?persistentId=
↪$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/citations?
↪persistentId=10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB"
```

Delete Unpublished Dataset

Delete the dataset whose id is passed:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/datasets/24
```

Delete Published Dataset

Normally published datasets should not be deleted, but there exists a “destroy” API endpoint for superusers which will act on a dataset given a persistent ID or dataset database ID:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
˓→destroy/?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/destroy/?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000
```

Delete with dataset identifier:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$ID/destroy
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/datasets/24/destroy
```

Calling the destroy endpoint is permanent and irreversible. It will remove the dataset and its datafiles, then re-index the parent Dataverse collection in Solr. This endpoint requires the API token of a superuser.

Configure a Dataset to Use a Specific File Store

`/api/datasets/$dataset-id/storageDriver` can be used to check, configure or reset the designated file store (storage driver) for a dataset. Please see the [Managing Datasets and Dataverse Collections](#) section of the guide for more information on this API.

View the Timestamps on a Dataset

`/api/datasets/$dataset-id/timestamps` can be used to view timestamps associated with various events in the dataset's lifecycle. For published datasets, this API call provides the `createTime`, `publicationTime`, `lastMetadataExportTime` and `lastMajorVersionReleaseTime`, as well as two booleans - `hasStaleIndex` and `hasStalePermissionIndex` - which, if false, indicate the Dataverse displays for the dataset are up-to-date. The response is `application/json` with the timestamps included in the returned data object.

When called by a user who can view the draft version of the dataset, additional timestamps are reported: `lastUpdateTime`, `lastIndexTime`, `lastPermissionUpdateTime`, and `globalIdCreateTime`.

One use case where this API call could be useful is in allowing an external application to poll and wait for changes being made by the Dataverse software or other external tool to complete prior to continuing its own processing.

Set an Embargo on Files in a Dataset

`/api/datasets/$dataset-id/files/actions/:set-embargo` can be used to set an embargo on one or more files in a dataset. Embargoes can be set on files that are only in a draft dataset version (and are not in any previously published version) by anyone who can edit the dataset. The same API call can be used by a superuser to add an embargo to files that have already been released as part of a previously published dataset version.

The API call requires a Json body that includes the embargo's end date (`dateAvailable`), a short reason (optional), and a list of the `fileIds` that the embargo should be set on. The `dateAvailable` must be after the current date and the duration (`dateAvailable` - today's date) must be less than the value specified by the `:MaxEmbargoDurationInMonths` setting. All files listed must be in the specified dataset. For example:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV
export JSON='{"dateAvailable":"2021-10-20", "reason":"Standard project embargo", "fileIds"::[300,301,302]}

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -H "Content-Type:application/json" "$SERVER_URL/
/api/datasets/:persistentId/files/actions/:set-embargo?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_
IDENTIFIER" -d "$JSON"
```

Remove an Embargo on Files in a Dataset

`/api/datasets/$dataset-id/files/actions/:unset-embargo` can be used to remove an embargo on one or more files in a dataset. Embargoes can be removed from files that are only in a draft dataset version (and are not in any previously published version) by anyone who can edit the dataset. The same API call can be used by a superuser to remove embargos from files that have already been released as part of a previously published dataset version.

The API call requires a Json body that includes the list of the `fileIds` that the embargo should be removed from. All files listed must be in the specified dataset. For example:

```

export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV
export JSON='{"fileIds": [300,301]}'

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -H "Content-Type:application/json" "$SERVER_URL/
˓→api/datasets/:persistentId/files/actions/:unset-embargo?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_
˓→IDENTIFIER" -d "$JSON"

```

Get the Archival Status of a Dataset By Version

Archiving is an optional feature that may be configured for a Dataverse installation. When that is enabled, this API call can be used to retrieve the status. Note that this requires “superuser” credentials.

`GET /api/datasets/$dataset-id/$version/archivalStatus` returns the archival status of the specified dataset version.

The response is a JSON object that will contain a “status” which may be “success”, “pending”, or “failure” and a “message” which is archive system specific. For “success” the message should provide an identifier or link to the archival copy. For example:

```

export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV
export VERSION=1.0

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -H "Accept:application/json" "$SERVER_URL/api/
˓→datasets/:persistentId/$VERSION/archivalStatus?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER"

```

Set the Archival Status of a Dataset By Version

Archiving is an optional feature that may be configured for a Dataverse installation. When that is enabled, this API call can be used to set the status. Note that this is intended to be used by the archival system and requires “superuser” credentials.

`PUT /api/datasets/$dataset-id/$version/archivalStatus` sets the archival status of the specified dataset version.

The body is a JSON object that must contain a “status” which may be “success”, “pending”, or “failure” and a “message” which is archive system specific. For “success” the message should provide an identifier or link to the archival copy. For example:

```

export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV
export VERSION=1.0
export JSON='{"status":"failure","message":"Something went wrong"}'

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -H "Content-Type:application/json" -X PUT "$SERVER_
˓→URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/$VERSION/archivalStatus?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_
˓→IDENTIFIER" -d "$JSON"

```

Note that if the configured archiver only supports archiving a single version, the call may return 409 CONFLICT if/when another version already has a non-null status.

Delete the Archival Status of a Dataset By Version

Archiving is an optional feature that may be configured for a Dataverse installation. When that is enabled, this API call be used to delete the status. Note that this is intended to be used by the archival system and requires “superuser” credentials.

DELETE /api/datasets/\$dataset-id/\$version/archivalStatus deletes the archival status of the specified dataset version.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV
export VERSION=1.0

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X DELETE "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
↪$VERSION/archivalStatus?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER"
```

Get External Tool Parameters

This API call is intended as a callback that can be used by *External Tools* to retrieve signed Urls necessary for their interaction with Dataverse. It can be called directly as well.

The response is a JSON object described in the *Building External Tools* section of the API guide.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV
export VERSION=1.0
export TOOL_ID=1

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -H "Accept:application/json" "$SERVER_URL/api/
↪datasets/:persistentId/versions/$VERSION/toolparams/$TOOL_ID?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_
↪IDENTIFIER"
```

3.6.3 Files

Adding Files

Note: Files can be added via the native API but the operation is performed on the parent object, which is a dataset. Please see the *Datasets* endpoint above for more information.

Accessing (downloading) files

Note: Access API has its own section in the Guide: [Data Access API](#)

Note Data Access API calls can now be made using persistent identifiers (in addition to database ids). This is done by passing the constant :persistentId where the numeric id of the file is expected, and then passing the actual persistent id as a query parameter with the name persistentId.

Example: Getting the file whose DOI is 10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB

curl "$SERVER_URL/api/access/datafile/:persistentId?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/access/datafile/:persistentId?persistentId=doi:10.
˓→5072/FK2/J8SJZB"
```

Note: you can use the combination of cURL's -J (--remote-header-name) and -O (--remote-name) options to save the file in its original file name, such as

```
curl -J -O "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/access/datafile/:persistentId?/
˓→persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB"
```

Restrict Files

Restrict or unrestrict an existing file where id is the database id of the file or pid is the persistent id (DOI or Handle) of the file to restrict. Note that some Dataverse installations do not allow the ability to restrict files.

A curl example using an id

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X PUT -d true $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/restrict
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X PUT -d true https://
˓→demo.dataverse.org/api/files/24/restrict
```

A curl example using a pid

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X PUT -d true $SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/
˓→restrict?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X PUT -d true "https://  
demo.dataverse.org/api/files/:persistentId/restrict?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000  
"
```

Uningest a File

Reverse the tabular data ingest process performed on a file where ID is the database id or PERSISTENT_ID is the persistent id (DOI or Handle) of the file to process. Note that this requires “superuser” credentials.

A curl example using an ID:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/uningest
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST https://demo.  
dataverse.org/api/files/24/uningest
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/  
uningest?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.  
dataverse.org/api/files/:persistentId/uningest?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000"
```

Reingest a File

Attempt to ingest an existing datafile as tabular data. This API can be used on a file that was not ingested as tabular back when it was uploaded. For example, a Stata v.14 file that was uploaded before ingest support for Stata 14 was added (in Dataverse Software v.4.9). It can also be used on a file that failed to ingest due to a bug in the ingest plugin that has since been fixed (hence the name “reingest”).

Note that this requires “superuser” credentials.

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=24  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/reingest
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST https://demo.
↳dataverse.org/api/files/24/reingest
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/
↳reingest?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.
↳dataverse.org/api/files/:persistentId/reingest?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000"
```

Note: at present, the API cannot be used on a file that's already successfully ingested as tabular.

Redetect File Type

The Dataverse Software uses a variety of methods for determining file types (MIME types or content types) and these methods (listed below) are updated periodically. If you have files that have an unknown file type, you can have the Dataverse Software attempt to redetect the file type.

When using the curl command below, you can pass `dryRun=true` if you don't want any changes to be saved to the database. Change this to `dryRun=false` (or omit it) to save the change.

A curl example using an id

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/redetect?
↳dryRun=true"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.
↳dataverse.org/api/files/24/redetect?dryRun=true"
```

A curl example using a pid

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/
↳redetect?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID&dryRun=true"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/files/:persistentId/redetect?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000&dryRun=true"
```

Currently the following methods are used to detect file types:

- The file type detected by the browser (or sent via API).
- JHOVE: <http://jhoве.openpreservation.org>
- The file extension (e.g. “.ipybn”) is used, defined in a file called `MimeTypeDetectionByFileExtension.properties`.
- The file name (e.g. “Dockerfile”) is used, defined in a file called `MimeTypeDetectionByFileName.properties`.

Replacing Files

Replace an existing file where ID is the database id of the file to replace or PERSISTENT_ID is the persistent id (DOI or Handle) of the file. Requires the `file` to be passed as well as a `jsonString` expressing the new metadata. Note that metadata such as description, directoryLabel (File Path) and tags are not carried over from the file being replaced.

Note that when a Dataverse installation is configured to use S3 storage with direct upload enabled, there is API support to send a replacement file directly to S3. This is more complex and is described in the [Direct DataFile Upload/Replace API](#) guide.

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST -F 'file=@file.extension' -F 'jsonData=
˓→{json}' $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/replace
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST -F 'file=@data.tsv
˓→' \
  -F 'jsonData={"description":"My description.", "categories":["Data"], "forceReplace
˓→":false}' \
  https://demo.dataverse.org/api/files/24/replace
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST -F 'file=@file.extension' -F 'jsonData=
˓→{json}' \
  "$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/replace?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST -F 'file=@data.tsv'
  -F 'jsonData={"description":"My description.", "categories":["Data"], "forceReplace
  ':false}' \
  "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/files/:persistentId/replace?persistentId=doi:10.5072/
  FK2/AAA000"
```

Getting File Metadata

Provides a json representation of the file metadata for an existing file where ID is the database id of the file to get metadata from or PERSISTENT_ID is the persistent id (DOI or Handle) of the file.

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/metadata
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/files/24/metadata
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000

curl "$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/metadata?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl "https://demo.dataverse.org/api/files/:persistentId/metadata?persistentId=doi:10.
  ↵5072/FK2/AAA000"
```

The current draft can also be viewed if you have permissions and pass your API token

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/metadata/draft
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" https://demo.dataverse.
  ↵org/api/files/24/metadata/draft
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/metadata/draft?
↪persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" "https://demo.dataverse.
↪org/api/files/:persistentId/metadata/draft?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000"
```

Note: The id returned in the json response is the id of the file metadata version.

Adding File Metadata

This API call requires a `jsonString` expressing the metadata of multiple files. It adds file metadata to the database table where the file has already been copied to the storage.

The `jsonData` object includes values for:

- “description” - A description of the file
- “directoryLabel” - The “File Path” of the file, indicating which folder the file should be uploaded to within the dataset
- “storageIdentifier” - String
- “fileName” - String
- “mimeType” - String
- “fixity/checksum” either:
 - “md5Hash” - String with MD5 hash value, or
 - “checksum” - Json Object with “@type” field specifying the algorithm used and “@value” field with the value from that algorithm, both Strings

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of `export` below.

A curl example using an `PERSISTENT_ID`

- `SERVER_URL` - e.g. <https://demo.dataverse.org>
- `API_TOKEN` - API endpoints require an API token that can be passed as the `X-Dataverse-key` HTTP header. For more details, see the [API Tokens and Authentication](#) section.
- `PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER` - Example: `doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV`

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV
export JSON_DATA='[{"description": "My description.", "directoryLabel": "data/subdir1",
↪"categories": ["Data"], "restrict": "false", "storageIdentifier": "s3://demo-dataverse-
↪bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357c42", "fileName": "file1.txt", "mimeType": "text/plain",
↪"checksum": {"@type": "SHA-1", "@value": "123456"}}, \'
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        {'description':'My description.', 'directoryLabel':'data/subdir1',
        ↵ 'categories':[{'Data'], 'restrict': 'false', 'storageIdentifier': 's3://demo-dataverse-
        ↵ bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357d53', 'fileName': 'file2.txt', 'mimeType': 'text/plain',
        ↵ 'checksum': {'@type': 'SHA-1', '@value': '123789'}}]}"
```

`curl -X POST -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
 ↵ addFiles?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER" -F "jsonData=$JSON_DATA"`

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST https://demo.
    ↵ dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/addFiles?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV -
    ↵ F jsonData='[{"description": "My description.", "directoryLabel": "data/subdir1",
    ↵ "categories": ["Data"], "restrict": "false", "storageIdentifier": "s3://demo-dataverse-
    ↵ bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357c42", "fileName": "file1.txt", "mimeType": "text/plain",
    ↵ "checksum": {"@type": "SHA-1", "@value": "123456"}, {"description": "My description.",
    ↵ "directoryLabel": "data/subdir1", "categories": ["Data"], "restrict": "false",
    ↵ "storageIdentifier": "s3://demo-dataverse-bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357d53", "fileName":
    ↵ "file2.txt", "mimeType": "text/plain", "checksum": {"@type": "SHA-1", "@value": "123789
    ↵ "}}]'"
```

Updating File Metadata

Updates the file metadata for an existing file where ID is the database id of the file to update or PERSISTENT_ID is the persistent id (DOI or Handle) of the file. Requires a jsonString expressing the new metadata. No metadata from the previous version of this file will be persisted, so if you want to update a specific field first get the json with the above command and alter the fields you want.

A curl example using an ID

```

export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST \
    -F 'jsonData={"description": "My description bbb.", "provFreeform": "Test prov freeform",
    ↵ "categories": ["Data"], "restrict": false}' \
    $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/metadata
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST \
    -F 'jsonData={"description": "My description bbb.", "provFreeform": "Test prov freeform",
    ↵ "categories": ["Data"], "restrict": false}' \
    http://demo.dataverse.org/api/files/24/metadata
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID

```

export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST \
-F 'jsonData={"description":"My description bbb.","provFreeform":"Test prov freeform",
→"categories":["Data"], "restrict":false}' \
"$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/metadata?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST \
-F 'jsonData={"description":"My description bbb.","provFreeform":"Test prov freeform",
→"categories":["Data"], "restrict":false}' \
"https://demo.dataverse.org/api/files/:persistentId/metadata?persistentId=doi:10.5072/
→FK2/AAA000"
```

Also note that dataFileTags are not versioned and changes to these will update the published version of the file.

Editing Variable Level Metadata

Updates variable level metadata using ddi xml FILE, where ID is file id.

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24
export FILE=dct.xml

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X PUT $SERVER_URL/api/edit/$ID --upload-file $FILE
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X PUT https://demo.
→dataverse.org/api/edit/24 --upload-file dct.xml
```

You can use the `dct.xml` located at `/src/test/resources/xml/dct.xml` from the example above to see what the XML looks like.

Provenance

Get Provenance JSON for an uploaded file

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/prov-json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" https://demo.dataverse.
→org/api/files/24/prov-json
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/prov-json?
→persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" "https://demo.dataverse.
→org/api/files/:persistentId/prov-json?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000"
```

Get Provenance Description for an uploaded file

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/prov-freeform
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" https://demo.dataverse.
→org/api/files/24/prov-freeform
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/prov-freeform?
→persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" "https://demo.dataverse.
→org/api/files/:persistentId/prov-freeform?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000"
```

Create/Update Provenance JSON and provide related entity name for an uploaded file

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24
export ENTITY_NAME="..."
export FILE_PATH=provenance.json
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/prov-json?
↪entityName=$ENTITY_NAME -H "Content-type:application/json" --upload-file $FILE_PATH
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.
↪dataverse.org/api/files/24/prov-json?entityName=..." -H "Content-type:application/json
↪" --upload-file provenance.json
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000
export ENTITY_NAME="..."
export FILE_PATH=provenance.json

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/prov-
↪json?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID&entityName=$ENTITY_NAME" -H "Content-type:application/
↪json" --upload-file $FILE_PATH
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.
↪dataverse.org/api/files/:persistentId/prov-json?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000&
↪entityName=..." -H "Content-type:application/json" --upload-file provenance.json
```

Create/Update Provenance Description for an uploaded file

Requires a JSON file with the description connected to a key named “text”

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24
export FILE_PATH=provenance.json

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/prov-freeform -H
↪"Content-type:application/json" --upload-file $FILE_PATH
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST https://demo.
↪dataverse.org/api/files/24/prov-freeform -H "Content-type:application/json" --upload-
↪file provenance.json
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000
export FILE_PATH=provenance.json

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/prov-
↪freeform?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID" -H "Content-type:application/json" --upload-file
↪$FILE_PATH
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.
↪dataverse.org/api/files/:persistentId/prov-freeform?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000
↪" -H "Content-type:application/json" --upload-file provenance.json
```

See a sample `file-provenance.json` located at `/static/api/file-provenance.json` from <http://openprovenance.org> (c.f. Huynh, Trung Dong and Moreau, Luc (2014) ProvStore: a public provenance repository. At 5th International Provenance and Annotation Workshop (IPAW'14), Cologne, Germany, 09-13 Jun 2014. pp. 275-277).

Delete Provenance JSON for an uploaded file

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/files/$ID/prov-json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.
↪dataverse.org/api/files/24/prov-json
```

A curl example using a PERSISTENT_ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_ID=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X DELETE "$SERVER_URL/api/files/:persistentId/prov-
↪json?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE "https://demo.
↪dataverse.org/api/files/:persistentId/prov-json?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/AAA000"
```

Datafile Integrity

Starting with the release 4.10 the size of the saved original file (for an ingested tabular datafile) is stored in the database. The following API will retrieve and permanently store the sizes for any already existing saved originals:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://localhost  
  
curl $SERVER_URL/api/admin/datafiles/integrity/fixmissingoriginalsizes
```

with limit parameter:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://localhost  
export LIMIT=10  
  
curl "$SERVER_URL/api/admin/datafiles/integrity/fixmissingoriginalsizes?limit=$LIMIT"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://localhost/api/admin/datafiles/integrity/fixmissingoriginalsizes"
```

with limit parameter:

```
curl https://localhost/api/admin/datafiles/integrity/fixmissingoriginalsizes?limit=10"
```

Note the optional “limit” parameter. Without it, the API will attempt to populate the sizes for all the saved originals that don’t have them in the database yet. Otherwise it will do so for the first N such datafiles.

By default, the admin API calls are blocked and can only be called from localhost. See more details in [:BlockedApi-Endpoints](#) and [:BlockedApiPolicy](#) settings in [Configuration](#).

Get External Tool Parameters

This API call is intended as a callback that can be used by [External Tools](#) to retrieve signedUrls necessary for their interaction with Dataverse. It can be called directly as well. (Note that the required FILEMETADATA_ID is the “id” returned in the JSON response from the /api/files/\$FILE_ID/metadata call.)

The response is a JSON object described in the [Building External Tools](#) section of the API guide.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export FILE_ID=3  
export FILEMETADATA_ID=1  
export TOOL_ID=1  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -H "Accept:application/json" "$SERVER_URL/api/  
files/$FILE_ID/metadata/$FILEMETADATA_ID/toolparams/$TOOL_ID"
```

3.6.4 Users Token Management

The following endpoints will allow users to manage their API tokens.

Find a Token's Expiration Date

In order to obtain the expiration date of a token use:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X GET $SERVER_URL/api/users/token
```

Recreate a Token

In order to obtain a new token use:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/users/token/recreate
```

Delete a Token

In order to delete a token use:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/users/token
```

3.6.5 Builtin Users

Builtin users are known as “Username/Email and Password” users in the [Account Creation + Management](#) of the User Guide. The Dataverse installation stores a password (encrypted, of course) for these users, which differs from “remote” users such as Shibboleth or OAuth users where the password is stored elsewhere. See also [Auth Modes: Local vs. Remote vs. Both](#) section of Configuration in the Installation Guide. It’s a valid configuration of a Dataverse installation to not use builtin users at all.

Create a Builtin User

For security reasons, builtin users cannot be created via API unless the team who runs the Dataverse installation has populated a database setting called `BuiltinUsers.KEY`, which is described under [Securing Your Installation](#) and [Database Settings](#) sections of Configuration in the Installation Guide. You will need to know the value of `BuiltinUsers.KEY` before you can proceed.

To create a builtin user via API, you must first construct a JSON document. You can use the `user-add.json` located at `/_static/api/user-add.json` or copy the text below as a starting point and edit as necessary.

```
{
  "firstName": "Lisa",
  "lastName": "Simpson",
  "userName": "lsimpson",
  "affiliation": "Springfield",
  "position": "Student",
  "email": "lsimpson@mailinator.com"
}
```

Place this `user-add.json` file in your current directory and run the following curl command, substituting variables as necessary. Note that both the password of the new user and the value of `BuiltinUsers.KEY` are passed as query parameters:

```
curl -d @user-add.json -H "Content-type:application/json" "$SERVER_URL/api/builtin-users?  
→password=$NEWUSER_PASSWORD&key=$BUILTIN_USERS_KEY"
```

Optionally, you may use a third query parameter “`sendEmailNotification=false`” to explicitly disable sending an email notification to the new user.

3.6.6 Roles

Create a New Role in a Dataverse Collection

Creates a new role under Dataverse collection id. Needs a json file with the role description:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export ID=root  
  
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST -H "Content-type:application/json" $SERVER_  
→URL/api/dataverses/$ID/roles --upload-file roles.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST -H "Content-  
→type:application/json" https://demo.dataverse.org/api/dataverses/root/roles --upload-  
→file roles.json
```

Where `roles.json` looks like this:

```
{  
  "alias": "sys1",  
  "name": "Restricted System Role",  
  "description": "A person who may only add datasets.",  
  "permissions": [  
    "AddDataset"  
  ]  
}
```

Note: Only a Dataverse installation account with superuser permissions is allowed to create roles in a Dataverse Collection.

Show Role

Shows the role with id:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/roles/$id
```

Delete Role

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/roles/$ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/roles/24
```

A curl example using a Role alias ALIAS

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ALIAS=roleAlias

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X DELETE "$SERVER_URL/api/roles/:alias?alias=$ALIAS
˓→"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/roles/:alias?alias=roleAlias
```

3.6.7 Explicit Groups

Create New Explicit Group

Explicit groups list their members explicitly. These groups are defined in Dataverse collections, which is why their API endpoint is under `api/dataverses/$id/groups`, where `$id` is the id of the Dataverse collection.

Create a new explicit group under Dataverse collection `$id`:

```
POST http://$server/api/dataverses/$id/groups
```

Data being POSTed is json-formatted description of the group:

```
{
  "description": "Describe the group here",
  "displayName": "Close Collaborators",
  "aliasInOwner": "ccs"
}
```

List Explicit Groups in a Dataverse Collection

List explicit groups under Dataverse collection \$id:

```
GET http://$server/api/dataverses/$id/groups
```

Show Single Group in a Dataverse Collection

Show group \$groupAlias under dataverse \$dv:

```
GET http://$server/api/dataverses/$dv/groups/$groupAlias
```

Update Group in a Dataverse Collection

Update group \$groupAlias under Dataverse collection \$dv. The request body is the same as the create group one, except that the group alias cannot be changed. Thus, the field aliasInOwner is ignored.

```
PUT http://$server/api/dataverses/$dv/groups/$groupAlias
```

Delete Group from a Dataverse Collection

Delete group \$groupAlias under Dataverse collection \$dv:

```
DELETE http://$server/api/dataverses/$dv/groups/$groupAlias
```

Add Multiple Role Assignees to an Explicit Group

Bulk add role assignees to an explicit group. The request body is a JSON array of role assignee identifiers, such as @admin, &ip/localhosts or :authenticated-users:

```
POST http://$server/api/dataverses/$dv/groups/$groupAlias/roleAssignees
```

Add a Role Assignee to an Explicit Group

Add a single role assignee to a group. Request body is ignored:

```
PUT http://$server/api/dataverses/$dv/groups/$groupAlias/roleAssignees/  
  $roleAssigneeIdentifier
```

Remove a Role Assignee from an Explicit Group

Remove a single role assignee from an explicit group:

```
DELETE http://$server/api/dataverses/$dv/groups/$groupAlias/roleAssignees/  
  ↳$roleAssineeIdentifier
```

3.6.8 Shibboleth Groups

Management of Shibboleth groups via API is documented in the [Shibboleth](#) section of the Installation Guide.

3.6.9 Info

Show Dataverse Software Version and Build Number

Get the Dataverse installation version. The response contains the version and build numbers:

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
curl $SERVER_URL/api/info/version
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/version
```

Show Dataverse Installation Server Name

Get the server name. This is useful when a Dataverse installation is composed of multiple app servers behind a load balancer:

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
curl $SERVER_URL/api/info/server
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/server
```

Show Custom Popup Text for Publishing Datasets

For now, only the value for the `:DatasetPublishPopupCustomText` setting from the Configuration section of the Installation Guide is exposed:

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
curl $SERVER_URL/api/info/settings/:DatasetPublishPopupCustomText
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/settings/:DatasetPublishPopupCustomText
```

Get API Terms of Use URL

Get API Terms of Use. The response contains the text value inserted as API Terms of use which uses the database setting `:ApiTermsOfUse`:

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
curl $SERVER_URL/api/info/apiTermsOfUse
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/apiTermsOfUse
```

3.6.10 Metadata Blocks

See also [Exploring Metadata Blocks](#).

Show Info About All Metadata Blocks

Lists brief info about all metadata blocks registered in the system.

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
curl $SERVER_URL/api/metadatablocks
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/metadatablocks
```

Show Info About Single Metadata Block

Return data about the block whose `identifier` is passed, including allowed controlled vocabulary values. `identifier` can either be the block's database id, or its name (i.e. "citation").

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export IDENTIFIER=citation

curl $SERVER_URL/api/metadatablocks/$IDENTIFIER
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/metadatablocks/citation
```

3.6.11 Notifications

See [Notifications](#) in the User Guide for an overview. For a list of all the notification types mentioned below (e.g. ASSIGNROLE), see [Letting Users Manage Notifications](#) in the Admin Guide.

Get All Notifications by User

Each user can get a dump of their notifications by passing in their API token:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/notifications/all
```

Delete Notification by User

Each user can delete notifications by passing in their API token and specifying notification ID (e.g., 555):

```
export NOTIFICATION_ID=555

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X DELETE "$SERVER_URL/api/notifications/
↪$NOTIFICATION_ID"
```

Get All Muted In-app Notifications by User

Each user can get a list of their muted in-app notification types by passing in their API token:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X GET "$SERVER_URL/api/notifications/
↪mutedNotifications"
```

Mute In-app Notification by User

Each user can mute in-app notifications by passing in their API token and specifying notification type to be muted (e.g., ASSIGNROLE):

```
export NOTIFICATION_TYPE=ASSIGNROLE

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X PUT "$SERVER_URL/api/notifications/
˓→mutedNotifications/$NOTIFICATION_TYPE"
```

Unmute In-app Notification by User

Each user can unmute in-app notifications by passing in their API token and specifying notification type to be unmuted (e.g., ASSIGNROLE):

```
export NOTIFICATION_TYPE=ASSIGNROLE

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X DELETE "$SERVER_URL/api/notifications/
˓→mutedNotifications/$NOTIFICATION_TYPE"
```

Get All Muted Email Notifications by User

Each user can get a list of their muted email notification types by passing in their API token:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X GET "$SERVER_URL/api/notifications/mutedEmails"
```

Mute Email Notification by User

Each user can mute email notifications by passing in their API token and specifying notification type to be muted (e.g., ASSIGNROLE):

```
export NOTIFICATION_TYPE=ASSIGNROLE

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X PUT "$SERVER_URL/api/notifications/mutedEmails/
˓→$NOTIFICATION_TYPE"
```

Unmute Email Notification by User

Each user can unmute email notifications by passing in their API token and specifying notification type to be unmuted (e.g., ASSIGNROLE):

```
export NOTIFICATION_TYPE=ASSIGNROLE

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X DELETE "$SERVER_URL/api/notifications/mutedEmails/
˓→$NOTIFICATION_TYPE"
```

3.6.12 User Information

Get User Information in JSON Format

Each user can get a dump of their basic information in JSON format by passing in their API token:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/users/:me
```

3.6.13 Managing Harvesting Server and Sets

This API can be used to manage the Harvesting sets that your installation makes available over OAI-PMH. For more information, see the [Managing Harvesting Server and Sets](#) section of the Admin Guide.

List All Harvesting Sets

Shows all Harvesting Sets defined in the installation:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/harvest/server/oaisets/
```

List A Specific Harvesting Set

Shows a Harvesting Set with a defined specname:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/harvest/server/oaisets/$specname
```

Create a Harvesting Set

To create a harvesting set you must supply a JSON file that contains the following fields:

- Name: Alpha-numeric may also contain -, _, or %, but no spaces. Must also be unique in the installation.
- Definition: A search query to select the datasets to be harvested. For example, a query containing authorName:YYY would include all datasets where ‘YYY’ is the authorName.
- Description: Text that describes the harvesting set. The description appears in the Manage Harvesting Sets dashboard and in API responses. This field is optional.

An example JSON file would look like this:

```
{
  "name": "ffAuthor",
  "definition": "authorName:Finch, Fiona",
  "description": "Fiona Finch's Datasets"
}
```

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST "$SERVER_URL/api/harvest/server/oaisets/add" -
  --upload-file harvestset-fin.ch.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without the environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST "https://demo.
  dataverse.org/api/harvest/server/oaisets/add" --upload-file "harvestset-fin.ch.json"
```

Only users with superuser permissions may create harvesting sets.

Modify an Existing Harvesting Set

To modify a harvesting set, you must supply a JSON file that contains one or both of the following fields:

- Definition: A search query to select the datasets to be harvested. For example, a query containing authorName:YYY would include all datasets where ‘YYY’ is the authorName.
- Description: Text that describes the harvesting set. The description appears in the Manage Harvesting Sets dashboard and in API responses. This field is optional.

Note that you may not modify the name of an existing harvesting set.

An example JSON file would look like this:

```
{  
  "definition": "authorName:Finch, Fiona AND subject:trees",  
  "description": "Fiona Finch's Datasets with subject of trees"  
}
```

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export SPECNAME=ffAuthor

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X PUT "$SERVER_URL/api/harvest/server/oaisets/
  -$SPECNAME" --upload-file modify-harvestset-fin.ch.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without the environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X PUT "https://demo.
  dataverse.org/api/harvest/server/oaisets/ffAuthor" --upload-file "modify-harvestset-
  -fin.ch.json"
```

Only users with superuser permissions may modify harvesting sets.

Delete an Existing Harvesting Set

To delete a harvesting set, use the set's database name. For example, to delete an existing harvesting set whose database name is "ffAuthor":

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export SPECNAME=ffAuthor

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X DELETE "$SERVER_URL/api/harvest/server/oaisets/
↪$SPECNAME"
```

The fully expanded example above (without the environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE "https://demo.
↪dataverse.org/api/harvest/server/oaisets/ffAuthor"
```

Only users with superuser permissions may delete harvesting sets.

3.6.14 Managing Harvesting Clients

The following API can be used to create and manage “Harvesting Clients”. A Harvesting Client is a configuration entry that allows your Dataverse installation to harvest and index metadata from a specific remote location, either regularly, on a configured schedule, or on a one-off basis. For more information, see the *Managing Harvesting Clients* section of the Admin Guide.

List All Configured Harvesting Clients

Shows all the Harvesting Clients configured:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/harvest/clients/
```

Show a Specific Harvesting Client

Shows a Harvesting Client with a defined nickname:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/harvest/clients/$nickname
```

```
curl "http://localhost:8080/api/harvest/clients/myclient"

{
  "status": "OK",
  {
    "data": {
      "lastDatasetsFailed": "22",
      "lastDatasetsDeleted": "0",
      "metadataFormat": "oai_dc",
      "archiveDescription": "This Dataset is harvested from our partners. Clicking the
↪link will take you directly to the archival source of the data.",
      "archiveUrl": "https://dataverse.foo.edu",
      "harvestUrl": "https://dataverse.foo.edu/oai",
    }
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    "style": "dataverse",
    "type": "oai",
    "dataverseAlias": "fooData",
    "nickName": "myClient",
    "set": "fooSet",
    "schedule": "none",
    "status": "inActive",
    "lastHarvest": "Thu Oct 13 14:48:57 EDT 2022",
    "lastResult": "SUCCESS",
    "lastSuccessful": "Thu Oct 13 14:48:57 EDT 2022",
    "lastNonEmpty": "Thu Oct 13 14:48:57 EDT 2022",
    "lastDatasetsHarvested": "137"
}
}

```

Create a Harvesting Client

To create a new harvesting client:

```
POST http://$SERVER/api/harvest/clients/$nickname
```

`nickname` is the name identifying the new client. It should be alpha-numeric and may also contain `-`, `_`, or `%`, but no spaces. Must also be unique in the installation.

You must supply a JSON file that describes the configuration, similarly to the output of the GET API above. The following fields are mandatory:

- `dataverseAlias`: The alias of an existing collection where harvested datasets will be deposited
- `harvestUrl`: The URL of the remote OAI archive
- `archiveUrl`: The URL of the remote archive that will be used in the redirect links pointing back to the archival locations of the harvested records. It may or may not be on the same server as the `harvestUrl` above. If this OAI archive is another Dataverse installation, it will be the same URL as `harvestUrl` minus the `"/oai"`. For example: <https://demo.dataverse.org/> vs. <https://demo.dataverse.org/oai>
- `metadataFormat`: A supported metadata format. As of writing this the supported formats are `"oai_dc"`, `"oai_ddi"` and `"dataverse_json"`.

The following optional fields are supported:

- `archiveDescription`: What the name suggests. If not supplied, will default to “This Dataset is harvested from our partners. Clicking the link will take you directly to the archival source of the data.”
- `set`: The OAI set on the remote server. If not supplied, will default to `none`, i.e., “harvest everything”.
- `style`: Defaults to `“default”` - a generic OAI archive. (Make sure to use `“dataverse”` when configuring harvesting from another Dataverse installation).

Generally, the API will accept the output of the GET version of the API for an existing client as valid input, but some fields will be ignored. For example, as of writing this there is no way to configure a harvesting schedule via this API.

An example JSON file would look like this:

```
{
  "nickName": "zenodo",
  "dataverseAlias": "zenodoHarvested",
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
"harvestUrl": "https://zenodo.org/oai2d",
"archiveUrl": "https://zenodo.org",
"archiveDescription": "Moissonné depuis la collection LMOPS de l'entrepôt Zenodo. En ↵cliquant sur ce jeu de données, vous serez redirigé vers Zenodo.",
"metadataFormat": "oai_dc",
"set": "user-lmops"
}
```

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=http://localhost:8080

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" "$SERVER_ ↵URL/api/harvest/clients/zenodo" --upload-file client.json
```

The fully expanded example above (without the environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X POST -H "Content-Type:application/json" "http://localhost:8080/api/harvest/clients/zenodo" --upload-file "client.json"

{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": {
    "metadataFormat": "oai_dc",
    "archiveDescription": "Moissonné depuis la collection LMOPS de l'entrepôt Zenodo. En ↵cliquant sur ce jeu de données, vous serez redirigé vers Zenodo.",
    "archiveUrl": "https://zenodo.org",
    "harvestUrl": "https://zenodo.org/oai2d",
    "style": "default",
    "type": "oai",
    "dataverseAlias": "zenodoHarvested",
    "nickName": "zenodo",
    "set": "user-lmops",
    "schedule": "none",
    "status": "inActive",
    "lastHarvest": "N/A",
    "lastSuccessful": "N/A",
    "lastNonEmpty": "N/A",
    "lastDatasetsHarvested": "N/A",
    "lastDatasetsDeleted": "N/A"
  }
}
```

Only users with superuser permissions may create or configure harvesting clients.

Modify a Harvesting Client

Similar to the API above, using the same JSON format, but run on an existing client and using the PUT method instead of POST.

Delete a Harvesting Client

Self-explanatory:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE "http://  
localhost:8080/api/harvest/clients/$nickName"
```

Only users with superuser permissions may delete harvesting clients.

3.6.15 PIDs

PIDs is short for Persistent IDentifiers. Examples include DOI or Handle. There are some additional PID operations listed in the *Managing Datasets and Dataverse Collections* section of the Admin Guide.

Get Info on a PID

Get information on a PID, especially its “state” such as “draft” or “findable”. Currently, this API only works on DataCite DOIs. A superuser API token is required.

Note: See *curl Examples and Environment Variables* if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export PID=doi:10.70122/FK2/9BXT50  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/pids?persistentId=$PID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/  
api/pids?persistentId=doi:10.70122/FK2/9BXT50
```

List Unreserved PIDs

Get a list of PIDs that have not been reserved on the PID provider side. This can happen, for example, if a dataset is created while the PID provider is down. A superuser API token is required.

Note: See *curl Examples and Environment Variables* if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
  
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/pids/unreserved
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx https://demo.dataverse.org/
  ↵api/pids/unreserved
```

Reserve a PID

Reserved a PID for a dataset. A superuser API token is required.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PID=doi:10.70122/FK2/9BXT50

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/pids/:persistentId/reserve?
  ↵persistentId=$PID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST https://demo.
  ↵dataverse.org/api/pids/:persistentId/reserve?persistentId=doi:10.70122/FK2/9BXT50
```

Delete a PID

Delete PID (this is only possible for PIDs that are in the “draft” state) and within a Dataverse installation, set `globalIdcreateTime` to null and `identifierregistered` to false. A superuser API token is required.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PID=doi:10.70122/FK2/9BXT50

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/pids/:persistentId/delete?
  ↵persistentId=$PID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X DELETE https://demo.
  ↵dataverse.org/api/pids/:persistentId/delete?persistentId=doi:10.70122/FK2/9BXT50
```

3.6.16 Admin

This is the administrative part of the API. For security reasons, it is absolutely essential that you block it before allowing public access to a Dataverse installation. Blocking can be done using settings. See the `post-install-api-block.sh` script in the `scripts/api` folder for details. See [Blocking API Endpoints](#) in Securing Your Installation section of the Configuration page of the Installation Guide.

List All Database Settings

List all settings:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/settings
```

Configure Database Setting

Sets setting `name` to the body of the request:

```
PUT http://$SERVER/api/admin/settings/$name
```

Get Single Database Setting

Get the setting under `name`:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/settings/$name
```

Delete Database Setting

Delete the setting under `name`:

```
DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/settings/$name
```

Manage Banner Messages

Communications to users can be handled via banner messages that are displayed at the top of all pages within your Dataverse installation. Two types of banners can be configured:

- A banner message where `dismissibleByUser` is set to false will be displayed to anyone viewing the application. These messages will be dismissible for a given session but will be displayed in any subsequent session until they are deleted by the Admin. This type of banner message is useful for situations such as upcoming maintenance windows and other downtime.
- A banner message where `dismissibleByUser` is set to true is intended to be used in situations where the Admin wants to make sure that all logged in users see a certain notification. These banner messages will only be displayed to users when they are logged in and can be dismissed by the logged in user. Once they have been dismissed by a user, that user will not see the message again. This type of banner message is useful for situations where a message needs to communicated once, such as a minor terms of use update or an update about a new workflow in your Dataverse installation.

Note that HTML can be included in banner messages.

Add a Banner Message:

```
curl -H "Content-type:application/json" -X POST http://$SERVER/api/admin/bannerMessage --  
-u upload-file messages.json
```

Where `messages.json` looks like this:

```
{
  "dismissibleByUser": "true",
  "messageTexts": [
    {
      "lang": "en",
      "message": "Dismissible Banner Message added via API"
    },
    {
      "lang": "fr",
      "message": "Message de bannière ajouté via l'API"
    }
  ]
}
```

Get a list of active Banner Messages:

```
curl -X GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/bannerMessage
```

Delete a Banner Message by its id:

```
curl -X DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/bannerMessage/$id
```

Deactivate a Banner Message by its id (allows you to hide a message while retaining information about which users have dismissed the banner):

```
curl -X PUT http://$SERVER/api/admin/bannerMessage/$id/deactivate
```

List Authentication Provider Factories

List the authentication provider factories. The alias field of these is used while configuring the providers themselves.

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticationProviderFactories
```

List Authentication Providers

List all the authentication providers in the system (both enabled and disabled):

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticationProviders
```

Add Authentication Provider

Add new authentication provider. The POST data is in JSON format, similar to the JSON retrieved from this command's GET counterpart.

```
POST http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticationProviders
```

Show Authentication Provider

Show data about an authentication provider:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticationProviders/$id
```

Enable or Disable an Authentication Provider

Enable or disable an authentication provider (denoted by `id`):

```
PUT http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticationProviders/$id/enabled
```

Note: The former endpoint, ending with `:enabled` (that is, with a colon), is still supported, but deprecated.

Check If an Authentication Provider is Enabled

Check whether an authentication provider is enabled:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticationProviders/$id/enabled
```

The body of the request should be either `true` or `false`. Content type has to be `application/json`, like so:

```
curl -H "Content-type: application/json" -X POST -d"false" http://localhost:8080/api/  
admin/authenticationProviders/echo-dignified/:enabled
```

Delete an Authentication Provider

Deletes an authentication provider from the system. The command succeeds even if there is no such provider, as the postcondition holds: there is no provider by that id after the command returns.

```
DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticationProviders/$id/
```

List Global Roles

List all global roles in the system.

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/roles
```

Create Global Role

Creates a global role in the Dataverse installation. The data POSTed are assumed to be a role JSON.

```
POST http://$SERVER/api/admin/roles
```

Delete Global Role

A curl example using an ID

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/admin/roles/$ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/admin/roles/24
```

A curl example using a Role alias ALIAS

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ALIAS=roleAlias

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X DELETE "$SERVER_URL/api/admin/roles/:alias?alias=
˓→$ALIAS"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" -X DELETE https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/admin/roles/:alias?alias=roleAlias
```

List Users

List users with the options to search and “page” through results. Only accessible to superusers. Optional parameters:

- **searchTerm** A string that matches the beginning of a user identifier, first name, last name or email address.
- **itemsPerPage** The number of detailed results to return. The default is 25. This number has no limit. e.g. You could set it to 1000 to return 1,000 results
- **selectedPage** The page of results to return. The default is 1.

- **sortKey** A string that represents a field that is used for sorting the results. Possible values are “id”, “useridentifier” (username), “lastname” (last name), “firstname” (first name), “email” (email address), “affiliation” (affiliation), “superuser” (flag that denotes if the user is an administrator of the site), “position”, “createdtime” (created time), “lastlogintime” (last login time), “lastapiusetetime” (last API use time), “authproviderid” (the authentication provider ID). To sort in reverse order you can add “desc” e.g. “id desc”. The default value is “useridentifier”.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" $SERVER_URL/api/admin/list-users

# sort by createdtime (the creation time of the account)
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/admin/list-users?
↪sortKey=createdtime"
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" https://demo.dataverse.
↪org/api/admin/list-users

# sort by createdtime (the creation time of the account)
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" "https://demo.dataverse.
↪org/api/admin/list-users?sortKey=createdtime"
```

Sample output appears below.

- When multiple pages of results exist, the `selectedPage` parameters may be specified.
- Note, the resulting `pagination` section includes `pageCount`, `previousPageNumber`, `nextPageNumber`, and other variables that may be used to re-create the UI.

```
{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": {
    "userCount": 27,
    "selectedPage": 1,
    "pagination": {
      "isNecessary": true,
      "numResults": 27,
      "numResultsString": "27",
      "docsPerPage": 25,
      "selectedPageNumber": 1,
      "pageCount": 2,
      "hasPreviousPageNumber": false,
      "previousPageNumber": 1,
      "hasNextPageNumber": true,
      "nextPageNumber": 2,
      "startResultNumber": 1,
      "endResultNumber": 25,
      "startResultNumberString": "1",
      "endResultNumberString": "25",
      "remainingResults": 2,
      "numberNextResults": 2,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

"pageNumberList": [
    1,
    2
],
},
"bundleStrings": {
    "userId": "ID",
    "userIdentifier": "Username",
    "lastName": "Last Name",
    "firstName": "First Name",
    "email": "Email",
    "affiliation": "Affiliation",
    "position": "Position",
    "isSuperuser": "Superuser",
    "authenticationProvider": "Authentication",
    "roles": "Roles",
    "createdTime": "Created Time",
    "lastLoginTime": "Last Login Time",
    "lastApiUseTime": "Last API Use Time"
},
"users": [
    {
        "id": 8,
        "userIdentifier": "created1",
        "lastName": "created1",
        "firstName": "created1",
        "email": "created1@g.com",
        "affiliation": "hello",
        "isSuperuser": false,
        "authenticationProvider": "BuiltinAuthenticationProvider",
        "roles": "Curator",
        "createdTime": "2017-06-28 10:36:29.444"
    },
    {
        "id": 9,
        "userIdentifier": "created8",
        "lastName": "created8",
        "firstName": "created8",
        "email": "created8@g.com",
        "isSuperuser": false,
        "authenticationProvider": "BuiltinAuthenticationProvider",
        "roles": "Curator",
        "createdTime": "2000-01-01 00:00:00.0"
    },
    {
        "id": 1,
        "userIdentifier": "dataverseAdmin",
        "lastName": "Admin",
        "firstName": "Dataverse",
        "email": "dataverse@mailinator2.com",
        "affiliation": "Dataverse.org",
        "position": "Admin",
    }
]
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        "isSuperuser":true,
        "authenticationProvider":"BuiltinAuthenticationProvider",
        "roles":"Admin, Contributor",
        "createdTime":"2000-01-01 00:00:00.0",
        "lastLoginTime":"2017-07-03 12:22:35.926",
        "lastApiUseTime":"2017-07-03 12:55:57.186"
    }

    // ... 22 more user documents ...
}

}

```

Note: “List all users” GET `http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticatedUsers` is deprecated, but supported.

List Single User

List user whose `identifier` (without the @ sign) is passed:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticatedUsers/$identifier
```

Sample output using “dataverseAdmin” as the `identifier`:

```
{
  "authenticationProviderId": "builtin",
  "persistentUserId": "dataverseAdmin",
  "position": "Admin",
  "id": 1,
  "identifier": "@dataverseAdmin",
  "displayName": "Dataverse Admin",
  "firstName": "Dataverse",
  "lastName": "Admin",
  "email": "dataverse@mailinator.com",
  "superuser": true,
  "affiliation": "Dataverse.org"
}
```

Create an Authenticated User

Create an authenticatedUser:

```
POST http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticatedUsers
```

POSTed JSON example:

```
{
  "authenticationProviderId": "orcid",
  "persistentUserId": "0000-0002-3283-0661",
  "identifier": "@pete",
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
"firstName": "Pete K.",
"lastName": "Dataversky",
"email": "pete@mailinator.com"
}
```

Merge User Accounts

If a user has created multiple accounts and has been performed actions under both accounts that need to be preserved, these accounts can be combined. One account can be merged into another account and all data associated with both accounts will be combined in the surviving account. Only accessible to superusers.:.

```
POST https://$SERVER/api/users/$toMergeIdentifier/mergeIntoUser/$continuingIdentifier
```

Example: curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: \$API_TOKEN" -X POST http://demo.dataverse.org/api/users/jsmith2/mergeIntoUser/jsmith

This action moves account data from jsmith2 into the account jsmith and deletes the account of jsmith2.

Note: User accounts can only be merged if they are either both active or both deactivated. See [deactivate a user](#).

Change User Identifier

Changes identifier for user in `AuthenticatedUser`, `BuiltinUser`, `AuthenticatedUserLookup` & `RoleAssignment`. Allows them to log in with the new identifier. Only accessible to superusers.:.

```
POST http://$SERVER/api/users/$oldIdentifier/changeIdentifier/$newIdentifier
```

Example: curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: \$API_TOKEN" -X POST https://demo.dataverse.org/api/users/johnsmith/changeIdentifier/jsmith

This action changes the identifier of user johnsmith to jsmith.

Make User a SuperUser

Toggles superuser mode on the `AuthenticatedUser` whose `identifier` (without the @ sign) is passed.

```
POST http://$SERVER/api/admin/superuser/$identifier
```

Delete a User

Deletes an `AuthenticatedUser` whose `identifier` (without the @ sign) is passed.

```
DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticatedUsers/$identifier
```

Deletes an `AuthenticatedUser` whose `id` is passed.

```
DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/authenticatedUsers/id/$id
```

Note: If the user has performed certain actions such as creating or contributing to a Dataset or downloading a file they cannot be deleted. To see where in the database these actions are stored you can use the [Show User Traces API](#). If a user cannot be deleted for this reason, you can choose to [deactivate a user](#).

Deactivate a User

Deactivates a user. A superuser API token is not required but the command will operate using the first superuser it finds.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export SERVER_URL=http://localhost:8080
export USERNAME=jdoe

curl -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/admin/authenticatedUsers/$USERNAME/deactivate
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -X POST http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticatedUsers/jdoe/deactivate
```

The database ID of the user can be passed instead of the username.

```
export SERVER_URL=http://localhost:8080
export USERID=42

curl -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/admin/authenticatedUsers/id/$USERID/deactivate
```

Note: A primary purpose of most Dataverse installations is to serve an archive. In the archival space, there are best practices around the tracking of data access and the tracking of modifications to data and metadata. In support of these key workflows, a simple mechanism to delete users that have performed edit or access actions in the system is not provided. Providing a Deactivate User endpoint for users who have taken certain actions in the system alongside a Delete User endpoint to remove users that haven't taken certain actions in the system is by design.

This is an irreversible action. There is no option to undeactivate a user.

Deactivating a user with this endpoint will:

- Deactivate the user's ability to log in to the Dataverse installation. A message will be shown, stating that the account has been deactivated. The user will not be able to create a new account with the same email address, ORCID, Shibboleth, or other login type.
- Deactivate the user's ability to use the API
- Remove the user's access from all Dataverse collections, datasets and files
- Prevent a user from being assigned any roles
- Cancel any pending file access requests generated by the user
- Remove the user from all groups
- No longer have notifications generated or sent by the Dataverse installation
- Prevent the account from being converted into an OAuth or Shibboleth account.
- Prevent the user from becoming a superuser.

Deactivating a user with this endpoint will keep:

- The user's contributions to datasets, including dataset creation, file uploads, and publishing.
- The user's access history to datafiles in the Dataverse installation, including guestbook records.
- The user's account information (specifically name, email, affiliation, and position)

Show User Traces

Show the traces that the user has left in the system, such as datasets created, guestbooks filled out, etc. This can be useful for understanding why a user cannot be deleted. A superuser API token is required.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export USERNAME=jdoe

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X GET $SERVER_URL/api/users/$USERNAME/traces
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X GET https://demo.
˓→dataverse.org/api/users/jdoe/traces
```

Remove All Roles from a User

Removes all roles from the user. This is equivalent of clicking the “Remove All Roles” button in the superuser dashboard. Note that you can preview the roles that will be removed with the [Show User Traces](#) API. A superuser API token is required.

Note: See [curl Examples and Environment Variables](#) if you are unfamiliar with the use of export below.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export USERNAME=jdoe

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/users/$USERNAME/removeRoles
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST http://
˓→localhost:8080/api/users/jdoe/removeRoles
```

List Role Assignments of a Role Assignee

List all role assignments of a role assignee (i.e. a user or a group):

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/assignments/assignees/$identifier
```

Note that `identifier` can contain slashes (e.g. `&ip/localhost-users`).

List Permissions a User Has on a Dataverse Collection or Dataset

List permissions a user (based on API Token used) has on a Dataverse collection or dataset:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/permissions/$identifier
```

The \$identifier can be a Dataverse collection alias or database id or a dataset persistent ID or database id.

Show Role Assignee

List a role assignee (i.e. a user or a group):

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/assignee/$identifier
```

The \$identifier should start with an @ if it's a user. Groups start with &. "Built in" users and groups start with :. Private URL users start with #.

Saved Search

The Saved Search, Linked Dataverses, and Linked Datasets features shipped with Dataverse 4.0, but as a "superuser-only" because they are **experimental** (see [#1364](#), [#1813](#), [#1840](#), [#1890](#), [#1939](#), [#2167](#), [#2186](#), [#2053](#), and [#2543](#)). The following API endpoints were added to help people with access to the "admin" API make use of these features in their current form. There is a known issue ([#1364](#)) that once a link to a Dataverse collection or dataset is created, it cannot be removed (apart from database manipulation and reindexing) which is why a **DELETE** endpoint for saved searches is neither documented nor functional. The Linked Dataverse collections feature is [powered by Saved Search](#) and therefore requires that the "makelinks" endpoint be executed on a periodic basis as well.

List all saved searches.

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/savedsearches/list
```

List a saved search by database id.

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/savedsearches/$id
```

Execute a saved search by database id and make links to Dataverse collections and datasets that are found. The JSON response indicates which Dataverse collections and datasets were newly linked versus already linked. The `debug=true` query parameter adds to the JSON response extra information about the saved search being executed (which you could also get by listing the saved search).

```
PUT http://$SERVER/api/admin/savedsearches/makelinks/$id?debug=true
```

Execute all saved searches and make links to Dataverse collections and datasets that are found. `debug` works as described above. This happens automatically with a timer. For details, see [Saved Searches Links Timer](#) in the Admin Guide.

```
PUT http://$SERVER/api/admin/savedsearches/makelinks/all?debug=true
```

Dataset Integrity

Recalculate the UNF value of a dataset version, if it's missing, by supplying the dataset version database id:

```
POST http://$SERVER/api/admin/datasets/integrity/{datasetVersionId}/fixmissingunf
```

Datafile Integrity

Recalculate the check sum value value of a datafile, by supplying the file's database id and an algorithm (Valid values for \$ALGORITHM include MD5, SHA-1, SHA-256, and SHA-512):

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/admin/
  ↵computeDataFileHashValue/{fileId}/algorithm/$ALGORITHM
```

Validate an existing check sum value against one newly calculated from the saved file:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/admin/
  ↵validateDataFileHashValue/{fileId}
```

Physical Files Validation in a Dataset

The following validates all the physical files in the dataset specified, by recalculating the checksums and comparing them against the values saved in the database:

```
$SERVER_URL/api/admin/validate/dataset/files/{datasetId}
```

It will report the specific files that have failed the validation. For example:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/validate/dataset/files/:persistentId/?
  ↵persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/XXXXX
  {"dataFiles": [
    {"datafileId":2658,"storageIdentifier":"file://123-aaa","status":"valid"},
    {"datafileId":2659,"storageIdentifier":"file://123-bbb","status":"invalid"
  ↵","errorMessage":"Checksum mismatch for datafile id 2669"},
    {"datafileId":2659,"storageIdentifier":"file://123-ccc","status":"valid"}
  ]
}
```

These are only available to super users.

Dataset Validation

Validate the dataset and its components (DatasetVersion, FileMetadatas, etc.) for constraint violations:

```
curl $SERVER_URL/api/admin/validate/dataset/{datasetId}
```

if validation fails, will report the specific database entity and the offending value. For example:

```
{"status":"OK","data":{ "entityClassDatabaseTableRowId": "[DatasetVersion id:73]", "field":
  ↵"archiveNote", "invalidValue": "random text, not a url"}}
```

If the optional argument `variables=true` is specified, the API will also validate the metadata associated with any tabular data files found in the dataset specified. (For example: an invalid or empty variable name).

Validate all the datasets in the Dataverse installation, report any constraint violations found:

```
curl $SERVER_URL/api/admin/validate/datasets
```

If the optional argument `variables=true` is specified, the API will also validate the metadata associated with any tabular data files. (For example: an invalid or empty variable name). Note that validating all the tabular metadata may significantly increase the run time of the full validation pass.

This API streams its output in real time, i.e. it will start producing the output immediately and will be reporting on the progress as it validates one dataset at a time. For example:

```
{"datasets": [
    {"datasetId":27,"status":"valid"}, 
    {"datasetId":29,"status":"valid"}, 
    {"datasetId":31,"status":"valid"}, 
    {"datasetId":33,"status":"valid"}, 
    {"datasetId":35,"status":"valid"}, 
    {"datasetId":41,"status":"invalid","entityClassDatabaseTableRowId": 
    ↪ "[DatasetVersion id:73]", "field": "archiveNote", "invalidValue": "random text, not a url"} 
    ↪ , 
    {"datasetId":57,"status":"valid"} 
]
```

Note that if you are attempting to validate a very large number of datasets in your Dataverse installation, this API may time out - subject to the timeout limit set in your app server configuration. If this is a production Dataverse installation serving large amounts of data, you most likely have that timeout set to some high value already. But if you need to increase it, it can be done with the `asadmin` command. For example:

```
asadmin set server-config.network-config.protocols.protocol.http-listener-1.http.request-
↪ timeout-seconds=3600
```

Workflows

List all available workflows in the system:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows
```

Get details of a workflow with a given id:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows/$id
```

Add a new workflow. Request body specifies the workflow properties and steps in JSON format. Sample json files are available at `scripts/api/data/workflows/`:

```
POST http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows
```

Delete a workflow with a specific id:

```
DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows/$id
```

Warning: If the workflow designated by \$id is a default workflow, a 403 FORBIDDEN response will be returned, and the deletion will be canceled.

List the default workflow for each trigger type:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows/default/
```

Set the default workflow for a given trigger. This workflow is run when a dataset is published. The body of the PUT request is the id of the workflow. Trigger types are PrePublishDataset, PostPublishDataset:

```
PUT http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows/default/$triggerType
```

Get the default workflow for `triggerType`. Returns a JSON representation of the workflow, if present, or 404 NOT FOUND.

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows/default/$triggerType
```

Unset the default workflow for `triggerType`. After this call, dataset releases are done with no workflow.

```
DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows/default/$triggerType
```

Set the whitelist of IP addresses separated by a semicolon (;) allowed to resume workflows. Request body is a list of IP addresses allowed to send “resume workflow” messages to this Dataverse installation:

```
PUT http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows/ip-whitelist
```

Get the whitelist of IP addresses allowed to resume workflows:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows/ip-whitelist
```

Restore the whitelist of IP addresses allowed to resume workflows to default (localhost only):

```
DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/workflows/ip-whitelist
```

Metrics

Clear all cached metric results:

```
DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/clearMetricsCache
```

Clear a specific metric cache. Currently this must match the name of the row in the table, which is named `metricName*_metricYYYYMM` (or just `metricName` if there is no date range for the metric). For example `dataversesToMonth_2018-05`:

```
DELETE http://$SERVER/api/admin/clearMetricsCache/$metricDbName
```

Inherit Dataverse Collection Role Assignments

Recursively applies the role assignments of the specified Dataverse collection, for the roles specified by the :InheritParentRoleAssignments setting, to all Dataverse collections contained within it:

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/dataverse/{dataverse alias}/addRoleAssignmentsToChildren
```

Note: setting :InheritParentRoleAssignments will automatically trigger inheritance of the parent Dataverse collection's role assignments for a newly created Dataverse collection. Hence this API call is intended as a way to update existing child Dataverse collections or to update children after a change in role assignments has been made on a parent Dataverse collection.

Manage Available Standard License Terms

For more context about configuring licenses, see [Configuring Licenses](#) in the Installation Guide.

View the list of standard license terms that can be selected for a dataset:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
curl $SERVER_URL/api/licenses
```

View the details of the standard license with the database ID specified in \$ID:

```
export ID=1
curl $SERVER_URL/api/licenses/$ID
```

Superusers can add a new license by posting a JSON file adapted from this example `add-license.json` file located at `/_static/api/add-license.json`. The name and uri of the new license must be unique. If you are interested in adding a Creative Commons license, you are encouraged to use the JSON files under [Adding Creative Common Licenses](#):

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
curl -X POST -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN --data-binary @add-license.json $SERVER_URL/api/licenses
```

Superusers can change whether an existing license is active (usable for new dataset versions) or inactive (only allowed on already-published versions) specified by the license \$ID:

```
export STATE=true
curl -X PUT -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/licenses/$ID/:active/$STATE
```

Superusers may change the default license by specifying the license \$ID:

```
curl -X PUT -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/licenses/default/$ID
```

Superusers can delete a license, provided it is not in use, by the license \$ID:

```
curl -X DELETE -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/licenses/$ID
```

Superusers can change the sorting order of a license specified by the license \$ID:

```
export SORT_ORDER=100
curl -X PUT -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_URL/api/licenses/$ID/:sortOrder/$SORT_ORDER
```

List Dataset Templates

List all templates in the system.

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/templates
```

List templates in a given dataverse by the dataverse's alias or id.

```
GET http://$SERVER/api/admin/templates/{alias or id}
```

Delete Dataset Template

A curl example using an ID

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ID=24

curl -X DELETE $SERVER_URL/api/admin/template/$ID
```

The fully expanded example above (without environment variables) looks like this:

```
curl -X DELETE https://demo.dataverse.org/api/admin/template/24
```

Request Signed URL

Dataverse has the ability to create signed URLs for its API calls. A signature, which is valid only for the specific API call and only for a specified duration, allows the call to proceed with the authentication of the specified user. It is intended as an alternative to the use of an API key (which is valid for a long time period and can be used with any API call). Signed URLs were developed to support External Tools but may be useful in other scenarios where Dataverse or a third-party tool needs to delegate limited access to another user or tool. This API call allows a Dataverse superUser to generate a signed URL for such scenarios. The JSON input parameter required is an object with the following keys:

- url - the exact URL to sign, including api version number and all query parameters
- timeOut - how long in minutes the signature should be valid for, default is 10 minutes
- httpMethod - which HTTP method is required, default is GET
- user - the user identifier for the account associated with this signature, the default is the superuser making the call. The API call will succeed/fail based on whether the specified user has the required permissions.

A curl example using allowing access to a dataset's metadata

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export API_KEY=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export JSON='{"url":"https://demo.dataverse.org/api/v1/datasets/:persistentId/?
˓→persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/J8SJZB","timeOut":5,"user":"alberteinstein"}'

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_KEY" -H 'Content-Type:application/json' -d "$JSON" $SERVER_
˓→URL/api/admin/requestSignedUrl
```

Please see *dataverse.api.signature-secret* for the configuration option to add a shared secret, enabling extra security.

3.7 Metrics API

The Metrics API provides counts of downloads, datasets created, files uploaded, and more, as described below. The Dataverse Software also includes aggregate counts of Make Data Count metrics (described in the [Make Data Count](#) section of the Admin Guide and available per-Dataset through the [Native API](#)). A table of all the endpoints is listed below.

Contents:

- [Categories](#)
- [Return Formats](#)
- [Filtering with Query Parameters](#)
 - [parentAlias](#)
 - [dataLocation](#)
 - [country](#)
- [Endpoint Table](#)

Note: The Metrics API can be used from scripts running in web browsers, as it allows cross-origin resource sharing (CORS).

Note: For all metrics *besides* Past Days Count (/pastDays/\$days) - recalculated daily, and (/toMonth/\$month) for prior months - never recalculated, the setting MetricsCacheTimeoutMinutes defines how long the cached value will be returned by subsequent queries.

3.7.1 Categories

The Metrics API includes several categories of endpoints that provide different ways of understanding the evolution of metrics over time:

- Total - an aggregate count over all-time:
 - Form: GET `https://protect\T1\textdollarSERVER/api/info/metrics\protect\T1\textdollar$type`
 - where \$type can be set, for example, to `dataverses` (Dataverse collections), `datasets`, `files` or `downloads`.
 - Example: `curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/downloads`
 - Return: Most of these calls return a simple JSON object with a `count` whose value is the metric's total count. Some calls, such as `filedownloads` return aggregate metrics per item (e.g. per file or by subject) as a JSONArray or CSV (see Return Formats below)
- To-Month - a count of various objects in dataverse up to and including a specified month \$YYYY-DD in YYYY-MM format (e.g. 2018-01):
 - Form: GET `https://protect\T1\textdollarSERVER/api/info/metrics\protect\T1\textdollar$type/toMonth/\protect\T1\textdollarYYYY-DD`

- where \$type can be set, for example, to dataverses (Dataverse collections), datasets, files or downloads.
- Example: curl <https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/dataverses/toMonth/2018-01>
- Return: Most of these calls return a simple JSON object with a count whose value is the metric's total count. One variant, /api/info/metrics/datasets/bySubject/toMonth return aggregate metrics per Dataset Subject as a JSONArray or CSV (see Return Formats below)
- Past Days - a count of various objects in a Dataverse installation for the past \$days (e.g. 30):
 - Form: GET <https://protect\T1\textdollarSERVER/api/info/metrics\protect\T1\textdollartype/pastDays\protect\T1\textdollardays>
 - where \$type can be set, for example, to dataverses (Dataverse collections), datasets, files or downloads.
 - Example: curl <https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/datasets/pastDays/30>
 - Return: A simple JSON object with a count whose value is the metric's total count.
- Monthly - a time series of the metric with aggregate values per month with counts up to and including the given month:
 - Form: GET <https://protect\T1\textdollarSERVER/api/info/metrics\protect\T1\textdollartype/monthly>
 - where \$type can be set, for example, to dataverses (Dataverse collections), datasets, files or downloads.
 - Example: curl <https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/downloads/monthly>
 - Return: A JSON Array or CSV file with an array of counts per month. Variants of this category that provide a time series per object return that information in the same formats (JSON array, CSV) with one time-series column per item (see Return Formats below).
- Tree - endpoints that describe the structure of the tree of published Dataverses, as of now or as of the end of a specified month. The monthly version could be used to show growth of the Dataverse instance over time, but the initial use case for these endpoints was to provide a means to list the tree in a selection widget to scope the metrics displayed in the local Dataverse metrics page in the dataverse-metrics app.
 - Form: GET <https://protect\T1\textdollarSERVER/api/info/metrics/tree>
 - or
 - Form: GET <https://protect\T1\textdollarSERVER/api/info/metrics/tree/toMonth\protect\T1\textdollarYYYY-DD>
 - Example: curl <https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/tree>
 - Return: A nested JSON array containing JSON objects for each Dataverse collection with key/values for id, ownerId, alias, depth, and name, and a JSON array containing analogous objects for Dataverse collections within the current one.

3.7.2 Return Formats

There are a number of API calls that provide time series, information reported per item (e.g. per dataset, per file, by subject, by category, and by file Mimetype), or both (time series per item). Because these calls all report more than a single number, the API provides two optional formats for the return that can be selected by specifying an HTTP Accept Header for the desired format:

- application/json - a JSON array of objects. For time-series, the objects include key/values for the date and count for that month. For per-item calls, the objects include the item (e.g. for a subject), or it's id/pid (for a dataset or datafile). For timeseries per-item, the objects also include a date. In all cases, the response is a single array.
 - Example: `curl -H 'Accept:application/json' https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/downloads/monthly`
- comma-separated-value (CSV) - a CSV file with rows corresponding to each JSON object in the application/json format. Column headers are included (e.g. date,count or subject,count or date,pid,id,count (for a time series per file)).
 - Example: `curl -H 'Accept:text/csv' https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/downloads/monthly`
 - The default format is CSV, so `curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/downloads/monthly`, or typing this URL into a browser return the CSV format.

3.7.3 Filtering with Query Parameters

To further tailor your metric, query parameters can be provided. On relevant endpoints, these query parameters can be used together.

parentAlias

Specifies which Dataverse sub-collection the metric should be collected for. Not including this parameter gathers metrics for the entire instance.

Example: `curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/datasets/?parentAlias=abc` would return the number of datasets in the Dataverse collection with alias 'abc' and in sub-collections within it.

dataLocation

Specifies whether the metric should query local data, remote data (e.g. harvested), or all data when getting results. Only works for dataset metrics.

Example: `curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/datasets/?dataLocation=remote`

country

The Make Data Count endpoints are also able to filter results by Country (specified using the ISO 3166 Country codes)

Example: `curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/info/metrics/makeDataCount/viewsTotal?country=au`

3.7.4 Endpoint Table

The following table lists the available metrics endpoints (not including the Make Data Counts endpoints a single dataset which are part of the *Native API*) along with additional notes about them.

Table 1: Metrics Endpoints

endpoint	vari- ables	for- mats	scope	lim- its	cached	mining	notes
/api/info/metrics/dataverses	count	json csv	collec- tion sub- tree	pub- lished	y	as of now/total	collection subtree means you can get info for the instance or with ?parentAlias={alias} can optionally specify a dataverse which should be used to scope the query.
/api/info/metrics/dataverses/toMonth/{yyyy-MM}	count	json csv	collec- tion sub- tree	pub- lished	y	cumula- tive up to month specified	
/api/info/metrics/dataverses/monthly	date, count	json csv	collec- tion sub- tree	pub- lished	y	monthly cumu- lative time- series from first date of first entry to now	
/api/info/metrics/dataverses/pastDays/{n}	count	json csv	collec- tion sub- tree	pub- lished	y	aggregate count for past n days	
/api/info/metrics/dataverses/byCategory	cat- e- gory, count	json csv	collec- tion sub- tree	pub- lished	y	total count per category	
/api/info/metrics/dataverses/bySubject	sub- ject, count	json csv	collec- tion sub- tree	all	y	total count per subject	

continues on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

endpoint	vari- ables	for- mats	scope	lim- its	cached	meaning	notes
/api/info/metrics/datasets	count	json csv	col- lec- tion sub- tree	re- leased, choice of all, local or re- mote (har- vested)	y	as of now/total	released means only currently released dataset versions (not unpublished or DEACCESSIONED versions)
/api/info/metrics/datasets/toMonth/{yyyy- MM}	count	json csv	col- lec- tion sub- tree	re- leased, choice of all, local or re- mote (har- vested)	y	cumula- tive up to month specified	
/api/info/metrics/datasets/monthly	date, count	json csv	col- lec- tion sub- tree	re- leased, choice of all, local or re- mote (har- vested)	y	monthly cumu- lative time- series from first date of first entry to now	released means only currently released dataset versions (not unpublished or DEACCESSIONED versions)
/api/info/metrics/datasets/pastDays/{n}	count	json csv	col- lec- tion sub- tree	re- leased, choice of all, local or re- mote (har- vested)	y	aggregate count for past n days	
/api/info/metrics/datasets/bySubject	sub- ject, count	json csv	col- lec- tion sub- tree	re- leased, choice of all, local or re- mote (har- vested)	y	total count per subject	

continues on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

endpoint	vari- ables	for- mats	scope	lim- its	cached	meaning	notes
/api/info/metrics/datasets/bySubject/toMonth/{yyyy-MM}	subject, count	text/yaml/json/csv	collection subtree	released, choice of all, local or remote (harvested)	y	cumulative count per subject up to month specified	
/api/info/metrics/files	count	json	collection subtree	in released datasets	y	as of now/total	
/api/info/metrics/files/toMonth/{yyyy-MM}	count	json	collection subtree	in released datasets	y	cumulative up to month specified	
/api/info/metrics/files/monthly	date, count	json/csv	collection subtree	in released datasets	y	monthly cumulative time-series from first date of first entry to now	date is the month when the first version containing the file was released (or created for harvested versions)
/api/info/metrics/files/pastDays/{n}	count	json	collection subtree	in released datasets	y	aggregate count for past n days	
/api/info/metrics/files/byType	mime-type, count, size	json/csv	collection subtree	in released datasets	y	current totals	
/api/info/metrics/files/byType/monthly	date, mime-type, count, size	json/csv	collection subtree	in released datasets	y	monthly cumulative time-series from first date of first entry to now	data for a specific mime-type is only listed starting with the first month there are files of that type

continues on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

endpoint	vari- ables	for- mats	scope	lim- its	caching	notes
/api/info/metrics/downloads	count	json	collection subtree	pub- lished	y as of now/total	published for downloads means ‘recorded in guest-bookresponse’ which occurs for any files that were ever in a published version, even if that version is now DEACCESSIONED, the file isn’t in a current version, etc.
/api/info/metrics/downloads/toMonth/{yyyy-MM}	count	json	collection subtree	pub- lished	y cumula- tive up to month specified	downloads from versions that do not have a release-time (from older Dataverse versions) are included in this cumulative count and the total as of now (line above)
/api/info/metrics/downloads/pastDays/{n}	count	json	collection subtree	pub- lished	y aggregate count for past n days	
/api/info/metrics/downloads/monthly	date, count	json csv	collection subtree	pub- lished	y monthly cumula- tive time- series from first date of first entry to now	counts from dataset versions with no releasetime (legacy from old Dataverse versions) are counted as occurring in the month prior to the first count that does have a date
/api/info/metrics/filedownloads	count by id, pid	json csv	collection subtree	pub- lished	y as of now/totals	download counts per file id. PIDs are also included in output if they exist
/api/info/metrics/filedownloads/toMonth/{yyyy-MM}	count by id, pid	json csv	collection subtree	pub- lished	y cumula- tive up to month specified	download counts per file id to the specified month. PIDs are also included in output if they exist

continues on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

endpoint	vari- ables for scope mats	lim- its	cached meanings	notes
/api/info/metrics/filedownloads/monthly	date, jsoncount, csv, collection id, pid	collection subtree	published	y monthly cumulative time-series by file id, pid from first date of first entry to now unique downloads per month by file (id, pid) sorted in decreasing order of counts
/api/info/metrics/makeDataCount/{metric}	count	jsoncollection subtree, optionally also by {country}	published, MDC	y count for specified {metric} as of now/total published means in the mdc logs which are not created for unpublished datasets, so this is filtered like downloads and includes counts from DEACCESSED, old versions.
/api/info/metrics/makeDataCount/{metric} MM}	fromMojibyte, toMojibyte	jsoncollection subtree, optionally also by {country}	published, MDC	y cumulative count for specified {metric} through specified month These metrics are also limited by the MDC start date and by MDC filtering done by counter-processor
/api/info/metrics/makeDataCount/{metric}	interval, jsoncount, csv	jsoncollection subtree, optionally also by {country}	published, MDC	y monthly cumulative time-series of counts for specified {metric} These metrics are also limited by the MDC start date and by MDC filtering done by counter-processor

continues on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

endpoint	vari- ables	for- mats	scope	lim- its	caching	notes
/api/info/metrics/uniquedownloads	pid, count	json csv	col- lec- tion sub- tree	pub- lished	y	total count of unique users who have downloaded from the datasets in scope
/api/info/metrics/uniquedownloads/monthly	date, pid, count	json csv	col- lec- tion sub- tree	pub- lished	y	monthly cumulative time-series of unique user counts for datasets in the dataverse scope
/api/info/metrics/uniquedownloads/toMonth{MM}	yyyymm count	json csv	col- lec- tion sub- tree	pub- lished	y	cumulative count of unique users who have downloaded from the datasets in scope through specified month

continues on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

endpoint	vari- ables	for- mats	scope	lim- its	caching	notes
/api/info/metrics/filedownloads/monthly	date, json count, csv collection id, pid	json collection subtree	published	y	monthly cumulative time-series by file id, pid from first date of first entry to now	unique downloads (as defined above) per month by file (id, pid) sorted in decreasing order of counts
/api/info/metrics/uniquefiledownloads	count by id, pid	json csv	collection subtree	published	y as of now/totals	unique download counts per file id. PIDs are also included in output if they exist
/api/info/metrics/uniquefiledownloads/toMM}	Month by id, pid	json csv	collection subtree	published	y cumula- tive up to month specified	unique download counts per file id to the specified month. PIDs are also included in output if they exist
/api/info/metrics/tree	id, ownerId, alias, depth, name, children	json	collection subtree	published	y tree of data- verses starting at the root or a specified parentAl- ias with their id, owner id, alias, name, a com- puted depth, and ar- ray of children data- verses	underlying code can also include draft dataverses, this is not currently accessible via api, depth starts at 0

continues on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

endpoint	vari- ables	for- mats	scope	lim- its	cached	meaning	notes
/api/info/metrics/tree/toMonth/{yyyy-MM}	id, ownerId, alias, depth, name, children	json	collection subtree	published	y	tree of data-verses in existence as of specified date starting at the root or a specified parentAlias with their id, owner id, alias, name, a computed depth, and array of children data-verses	underlying code can also include draft dataverses, this is not currently accessible via api, depth starts at 0

3.8 SWORD API

SWORD stands for “Simple Web-service Offering Repository Deposit” and is a “profile” of AtomPub ([RFC 5023](#)) which is a RESTful API that allows non-Dataverse Software to deposit files and metadata into a Dataverse installation. *Client libraries* are available in Python, Javascript, Java, R, Ruby, and PHP.

Contents:

- [*About*](#)
- [*Authentication for SWORD*](#)
- [*Backward incompatible changes*](#)
- [*New features as of v1.1*](#)
- [*curl examples*](#)
 - [*Retrieve SWORD service document*](#)
 - [*Create a dataset with an Atom entry*](#)
 - * [*Dublin Core Terms \(DC Terms\) Qualified Mapping - Dataverse Project DB Element Crosswalk*](#)
 - [*List datasets in a Dataverse Collection*](#)

- Add files to a dataset with a zip file
- Display a dataset atom entry
- Display a dataset statement
- Delete a file by database id
- Replacing metadata for a dataset
- Delete a dataset
- Determine if a Dataverse Collection has been published
- Publish a Dataverse Collection
- Publish a dataset
- Known issues
- Bug fixes in v1.1
- Client libraries

3.8.1 About

Introduced in Dataverse Network (DVN) 3.6, the SWORD API was formerly known as the “Data Deposit API” and `data-deposit/v1` appeared in the URLs. For backwards compatibility these URLs continue to work (with deprecation warnings). Due to architectural changes and security improvements (especially the introduction of API tokens) in Dataverse Software 4.0, a few backward incompatible changes were necessarily introduced and for this reason the version has been increased to v1.1. For details, see [Backward incompatible changes](#).

The Dataverse Software implements most of `SWORDv2`, which is specified at <http://swordapp.github.io/SWORDv2-Profile/SWORDProfile.html>. Please reference the `SWORDv2` specification for expected HTTP status codes (i.e. 201, 204, 404, etc.), headers (i.e. “Location”), etc.

As a profile of AtomPub, XML is used throughout SWORD. As of Dataverse Software 4.0 datasets can also be created via JSON using the “native” API. SWORD is limited to the dozen or so fields listed below in the crosswalk, but the native API allows you to populate all metadata fields available in a Dataverse installation.

3.8.2 Authentication for SWORD

The [API Tokens and Authentication](#) section describes how to pass API tokens for the “native” API (as a header or query parameter) but SWORD uses a different mechanism known as HTTP Basic Authentication ([RFC 7617](#)).

HTTP Basic Authentication commonly makes use of both a username and a password but the SWORD API uses only a username that is populated with the user’s API token. The password should be blank or empty.

Clients such as `curl` expect both a username and a password separated by a colon. With `curl`, the way to indicate that the password should be blank or empty is to include the colon at the end of the username (the API token) like this:

```
curl -u 54b143b5-d001-4254-afc0-a1c0f6a5b5a7:
```

All the `curl` examples below take this form but instead of showing an API token like above, a Bash environment variable called `$API_TOKEN` is shown instead like this:

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN:
```

3.8.3 Backward incompatible changes

For better security than in DVN 3.x, usernames and passwords are no longer accepted. The use of an API token is required.

Differences in Dataverse Software 4 from DVN 3.x lead to a few minor backward incompatible changes in the Dataverse Software implementation of SWORD, which are listed below. Old v1 URLs should continue to work but the Service Document will contain a deprecation warning and responses will contain v1.1 URLs. See also [Known issues](#).

- Newly required fields when creating/editing datasets for compliance with the [Joint Declaration for Data Citation principles](#).
 - `dcterms:creator` (maps to `authorName`)
 - `dcterms:description`
- Deaccessioning is no longer supported. An alternative will be developed at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/778>
- The Service Document will show a single API Terms of Use rather than root level and Dataverse collection level Deposit Terms of Use.
- As of Dataverse Software 5.10, NONE is no longer supported as a license.

3.8.4 New features as of v1.1

- The Dataverse Software supports API tokens and requires them to be used for APIs instead of a username and password. In the curl examples below, you will see `curl -u $API_TOKEN:` showing that you should send your API token as the username and nothing as the password. For example, `curl -u 54b143b5-d001-4254-afc0-a1c0f6a5b5a7:`. See also [Authentication for SWORD](#).
- SWORD operations no longer require “admin” permission. In order to use any SWORD operation in DVN 3.x, you had to be an “admin” on a Dataverse collection (the container for your dataset) and similar rules were applied in Dataverse Software 4.4 and earlier (the `EditDataverse` permission was required). The SWORD API has now been fully integrated with the Dataverse Software permission model such that any action you have permission to perform in the GUI or “native” API you are able to perform via SWORD. This means that even a user with a “Contributor” role can operate on datasets via SWORD. Note that users with the “Contributor” role do not have the `PublishDataset` permission and will not be able publish their datasets via any mechanism, GUI or API.
- Dataverse collections can be published via SWORD.
- Datasets versions will only be increased to the next minor version (i.e. 1.1) rather than a major version (2.0) if possible. This depends on the nature of the change. Adding or removing a file, for example, requires a major version bump.
- “Author Affiliation” can now be populated with an XML attribute. For example: `<dcterms:creator affiliation="Coffee Bean State University">Stumptown, Jane</dcterms:creator>`
- “Contributor” can now be populated and the “Type” (Editor, Funder, Researcher, etc.) can be specified with an XML attribute. For example: `<dcterms:contributor type="Funder">CaffeineForAll</dcterms:contributor>`
- “License” can now be set with `dcterms:license` and the possible values determined by the installation (“CC0 1.0” and “CC BY 4.0” by default). “License” interacts with “Terms of Use” (`dcterms:rights`) in that if you include `dcterms:rights` in the XML and don’t include `dcterms:license`, the license will be “Custom Dataset Terms” and “Terms of Use” will be populated. If you don’t include `dcterms:rights`, the default license will be used. It is invalid to specify a license and also include `dcterms:rights`; an error will be returned. For backwards compatibility, `dcterms:rights` is allowed to be blank (i.e. `<dcterms:rights></dcterms:rights>`) but blank values will not be persisted to the database and the license will be set to “Custom Dataset Terms”. Note

that if admins of an installation have disabled “Custom Dataset Terms” you will get an error if you try to pass `dcterms:rights`.

- “Contact E-mail” is automatically populated from dataset owner’s email.
- “Subject” uses our controlled vocabulary list of subjects. This list is in the Citation Metadata of our User Guide > [Metadata References](#). Otherwise, if a term does not match our controlled vocabulary list, it will put any subject terms in “Keyword”. If Subject is empty it is automatically populated with “N/A”.
- Zero-length files are now allowed (but not necessarily encouraged).
- “Depositor” and “Deposit Date” are auto-populated.

3.8.5 curl examples

Retrieve SWORD service document

The service document enumerates the Dataverse collections (also “collections” from a SWORD perspective) the user can deposit data into. The “collectionPolicy” element for each Dataverse collections contains the Terms of Use. Any user with an API token can use this API endpoint. Institution-wide Shibboleth groups are not respected because membership in such a group can only be set via a browser.

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN: https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/service-document
```

Create a dataset with an Atom entry

To create a dataset, you must have the “Dataset Creator” role (the `AddDataset` permission) on a Dataverse collection. Practically speaking, you should first retrieve the service document to list the Dataverse collections into which you are authorized to deposit data.

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN: --data-binary "@path/to/atom-entry-study.xml" -H "Content-Type: application/atom+xml" https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/collection/dataverse/$DATAVERSE_ALIAS
```

Example Atom entry (XML)

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<entry xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2005/Atom"
       xmlns:dcterms="http://purl.org/dc/terms/">
  <!-- some embedded metadata -->
  <dcterms:title>Roasting at Home</dcterms:title>
  <dcterms:creator>Peets, John</dcterms:creator>
  <dcterms:creator affiliation="Coffee Bean State University">Stumptown, Jane</dcterms:creator>
  <!-- Dataverse controlled vocabulary subject term -->
  <dcterms:subject>Chemistry</dcterms:subject>
  <!-- keywords -->
  <dcterms:subject>coffee</dcterms:subject>
  <dcterms:subject>beverage</dcterms:subject>
  <dcterms:subject>caffeine</dcterms:subject>
  <dcterms:description>Considerations before you start roasting your own coffee at home.</dcterms:description>
  <!-- Producer with financial or admin responsibility of the data -->
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
<dcterms:publisher>Coffee Bean State University</dcterms:publisher>
<dcterms:contributor type="Funder">CaffeineForAll</dcterms:contributor>
<!-- production date -->
<dcterms:date>2013-07-11</dcterms:date>
<!-- kind of data -->
<dcterms:type>aggregate data</dcterms:type>
<!-- List of sources of the data collection-->
<dcterms:source>Stumptown, Jane. 2011. Home Roasting. Coffeemill Press.</
dcterms:source>
<!-- related materials -->
<dcterms:relation>Peets, John. 2010. Roasting Coffee at the Coffee Shop. Coffeemill_
Press</dcterms:relation>
<!-- geographic coverage -->
<dcterms:coverage>United States</dcterms:coverage>
<dcterms:coverage>Canada</dcterms:coverage>
<!-- license and restrictions -->
<dcterms:license>CC0 1.0</dcterms:license>
<!--<dcterms:rights>Downloader will not use the Materials in any way prohibited by<u
applicable laws.</dcterms:rights>-->
<!-- related publications -->
<dcterms:isReferencedBy holdingsURI="http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/dvn333" agency="DOI"<u
IDNo="10.1038/dvn333">Peets, J., && Stumptown, J. (2013). Roasting at Home. New_
England Journal of Coffee, 3(1), 22-34.</dcterms:isReferencedBy>
</entry>
```

Dublin Core Terms (DC Terms) Qualified Mapping - Dataverse Project DB Element Crosswalk

DC (terms: namespace)	Dataverse Software DB Element	Re-required	Note
dc-terms:title	title	Y	Title of the Dataset.
dc-terms:creator	authorName (LastName, FirstName)	Y	Author(s) for the Dataset.
dc-terms:subject	subject (Controlled Vocabulary) OR keyword	Y	Controlled Vocabulary list is in our User Guide > Metadata References .
dc-terms:description	dsDescriptionValue	Y	Describing the purpose, scope or nature of the Dataset. Can also use dcterms:abstract.
dc-terms:publisher	producerName		Person or agency financially or administratively responsible for the Dataset
dc-terms:contributor	datasetContactEmail	Y	Contact Email is required so will need to add an attribute type="Contact". Also used for Funder: add attribute type="Funder" which maps to contributorName.
dc-terms:date	productionDate (YYYY-MM-DD or YYYY-MM or YYYY)		Production date of Dataset.
dc-terms:type	kindOfData		Type of data included in the file: survey data, census/enumeration data, aggregate data, clinical.
dc-terms:source	dataSources		List of books, articles, data files if any that served as the sources for the Dataset.
dc-terms:relation	relatedMaterial		Any related material (journal article citation is not included here - see: dcterms:isReferencedBy below).
dc-terms:coverage	otherGeographicCoverage		General information on the geographic coverage of the Dataset.
dc-terms:license	license		Set the license. Alternatively, use the dcterms:rights field instead.
dc-terms:rights	termsofuse		If not using dcterms:license, enter any terms of use or restrictions for the Dataset.
dc-terms:isReferencedBy	publicationCitation		The publication (journal article, book, other work) that uses this dataset (include citation, permanent identifier (DOI), and permanent URL).

List datasets in a Dataverse Collection

You must have permission to add datasets in a Dataverse collection (the Dataverse collection should appear in the service document) to list the datasets inside. Institution-wide Shibboleth groups are not respected because membership in such a group can only be set via a browser.

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN: https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/collection/
→dataverse/$DATAVERSE_ALIAS
```

Add files to a dataset with a zip file

You must have `EditDataset` permission (Contributor role or above such as Curator or Admin) on the dataset to add files.

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN: --data-binary @path/to/example.zip -H "Content-Disposition: u
˓→filename=example.zip" -H "Content-Type: application/zip" -H "Packaging: http://purl.
˓→org/net/sword/package/SimpleZip" https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/
˓→edit-media/study/doi:TEST/12345
```

Display a dataset atom entry

You must have `ViewUnpublishedDataset` permission (Contributor role or above such as Curator or Admin) on the dataset to view its Atom entry.

Contains data citation (bibliographicCitation), alternate URI (persistent URI of study), edit URI, edit media URI, statement URI.

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN: https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/edit/study/
˓→doi:TEST/12345
```

Display a dataset statement

Contains title, author, feed of file entries, latestVersionState, locked boolean, updated timestamp. You must have `ViewUnpublishedDataset` permission (Contributor role or above such as Curator or Admin) on the dataset to display the statement.

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN: https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/statement/study/
˓→doi:TEST/12345
```

Delete a file by database id

You must have `EditDataset` permission (Contributor role or above such as Curator or Admin) on the dataset to delete files.

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN: -X DELETE https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/edit-
˓→media/file/123
```

Replacing metadata for a dataset

Please note that **ALL** metadata (title, author, etc.) will be replaced, including fields that can not be expressed with “dcterms” fields. You must have `EditDataset` permission (Contributor role or above such as Curator or Admin) on the dataset to replace metadata.

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN: --upload-file "path/to/atom-entry-study2.xml" -H "Content-Type:
˓→application/atom+xml" https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/edit/study/
˓→doi:TEST/12345`
```

Delete a dataset

You must have the `DeleteDatasetDraft` permission (Contributor role or above such as Curator or Admin) on the dataset to delete it. Please note that if the dataset has never been published you will be able to delete it completely but if the dataset has already been published you will only be able to delete post-publication drafts, never a published version.

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN: -i -X DELETE https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/
  ↵edit/study/doi:TEST/12345
```

Determine if a Dataverse Collection has been published

This API endpoint is the same as the “list datasets in a Dataverse collection” endpoint documented above and the same permissions apply but it is documented here separately to point out that you can look for a boolean called `dataverseHasBeenReleased` to know if a Dataverse collection has been released, which is required for publishing a dataset.

```
curl -u $API_TOKEN: https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/collection/
  ↵dataverse/$DATVERSE_ALIAS
```

Publish a Dataverse Collection

The `cat /dev/null` and `--data-binary @-` arguments are used to send zero-length content to the API, which is required by the upstream library to process the `In-Progress: false` header. You must have the `PublishDataverse` permission (Admin role) on the Dataverse collection to publish it.

```
cat /dev/null | curl -u $API_TOKEN: -X POST -H "In-Progress: false" --data-binary @-
  ↵https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/edit/dataverse/$DATVERSE_ALIAS
```

Publish a dataset

The `cat /dev/null` and `--data-binary @-` arguments are used to send zero-length content to the API, which is required by the upstream library to process the `In-Progress: false` header. You must have the `PublishDataset` permission (Curator or Admin role) on the dataset to publish it.

```
cat /dev/null | curl -u $API_TOKEN: -X POST -H "In-Progress: false" --data-binary @-
  ↵https://$HOSTNAME/dvn/api/data-deposit/v1.1/swordv2/edit/study/doi:TEST/12345
```

3.8.6 Known issues

- Deleting a file from a published version (not a draft) creates a draft but doesn’t delete the file: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/2464>
- The Service Document does not honor groups within groups: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/3056>
- Should see all the fields filled in for a dataset regardless of what the parent Dataverse collection specifies: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/756>
- SWORD 2.0 Profile 6.4 “Retrieving the content” has not been implemented: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/183>
- Deaccessioning via API is not supported (it was in DVN 3.x): <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/778>

- Let file metadata (i.e. description) be specified during zip upload: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/723>
- SWORD: Display of actual dcterms xml element for equivalent of required field not found: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/1019>

3.8.7 Bug fixes in v1.1

- Fix Abdera ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException with non-existent atom-entry-study.xml in SWORD jar (up-stream ideally) <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/893>
- Sword API: Can't create study when hidden characters are introduced in atom.xml <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/894>

3.8.8 Client libraries

- Python: <https://github.com/swordapp/python-client-sword2>
- Java: <https://github.com/swordapp/JavaClient2.0>
- R: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-client-r>
- Ruby: <https://github.com/swordapp/sword2ruby>
- PHP: <https://github.com/swordapp/swordappv2-php-library>

3.9 Client Libraries

Listed below are a variety of client libraries to help you interact with Dataverse APIs from Python, R, Javascript, etc. To get support for any of these client libraries, please consult each project's README.

Contents:

- *C/C++*
- *Java*
- *Javascript*
- *Julia*
- *PHP*
- *Python*
- *R*
- *Ruby*

3.9.1 C/C++

<https://github.com/aeonSolutions/OpenScience-Dataverse-API-C-library> is the official C/C++ library for Dataverse APIs.

This C/C++ library was created and is currently maintained by [Miguel T](#). To learn how to install and use it, see the project's [wiki page](#).

3.9.2 Java

<https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-client-java> is the official Java library for Dataverse APIs.

Richard Adams from [ResearchSpace](#) created and maintains this library.

3.9.3 Javascript

<https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-client-javascript> is the official Javascript package for Dataverse APIs. It can be found on npm at <https://www.npmjs.com/package/js-dataverse>

It was created and is maintained by [The Agile Monkeys](#).

3.9.4 Julia

<https://github.com/gaelforget/Dataverse.jl> is the official Julia package for Dataverse APIs. It can be found on JuliaHub (<https://juliahub.com/ui/Packages/Dataverse/xWAqY/>) and leverages pyDataverse to provide an interface to Dataverse's data access API and native API. Dataverse.jl provides a few additional functionalities with documentation (<https://gaelforget.github.io/Dataverse.jl/dev/>) and a demo notebook (<https://gaelforget.github.io/Dataverse.jl/dev/notebook.html>).

It was created and is maintained by [Gael Forget](#).

3.9.5 PHP

There is no official PHP library for Dataverse APIs (please [get in touch](#) if you'd like to create one!) but there is a SWORD library written in PHP listed under [Client libraries](#) in the [SWORD API](#) documentation.

3.9.6 Python

There are two Python modules for interacting with Dataverse APIs.

[pyDataverse](#) primarily allows developers to manage Dataverse collections, datasets and datafiles. Its intention is to help with data migrations and DevOps activities such as testing and configuration management. The module is developed by [Stefan Kasberger](#) from [AUSSDA - The Austrian Social Science Data Archive](#).

[dataverse-client-python](#) had its initial release in 2015. Robert Liebowitz created this library while at the [Center for Open Science \(COS\)](#) and the COS uses it to integrate the [Open Science Framework \(OSF\)](#) with Dataverse installations via an add-on which itself is open source and listed on the [Apps](#) page.

3.9.7 R

<https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-client-r> is the official R package for Dataverse APIs. The latest release can be installed from CRAN. The R client can search and download datasets. It is useful when automatically (instead of manually) downloading data files as part of a script. For bulk edit and upload operations, we currently recommend pyDataverse.

The package is currently maintained by Shiro Kuriwaki. It was originally created by Thomas Leeper and then formerly maintained by Will Beasley.

3.9.8 Ruby

https://github.com/libis/dataverse_api is a Ruby gem for Dataverse APIs. It is registered as a library on Rubygems (<https://rubygems.org/search?query=dataverse>).

The gem is created and maintained by the LIBIS team (<https://www.libis.be>) at the University of Leuven (<https://www.kuleuven.be>).

3.10 Building External Tools

External tools can provide additional features that are not part of the Dataverse Software itself, such as data exploration. Thank you for your interest in building an external tool for the Dataverse Software!

Contents:

- *Introduction*
- *Examples of External Tools*
- *How External Tools Are Presented to Users*
- *Creating an External Tool Manifest*
 - *Examples of Manifests*
 - * *External Tools for Files*
 - * *External Tools for Datasets*
 - *Terminology*
 - *Reserved Words*
 - *Authorization Options*
 - *Internationalization of Your External Tool*
 - *Using Example Manifests to Get Started*
- *Testing Your External Tool*
- *Spreading the Word About Your External Tool*
 - *Adding Your Tool to the Inventory of External Tools*
 - *Demoing Your External Tool*
 - *Announcing Your External Tool*

3.10.1 Introduction

External tools are additional applications the user can access or open from your Dataverse installation to preview, explore, and manipulate data files and datasets. The term “external” is used to indicate that the tool is not part of the main Dataverse Software.

Once you have created the external tool itself (which is most of the work!), you need to teach a Dataverse installation how to construct URLs that your tool needs to operate. For example, if you’ve deployed your tool to fabulousfiletool.com your tool might want the ID of a file and the siteUrl of the Dataverse installation like this: <https://fabulousfiletool.com?fileId=42&siteUrl=http://demo.dataverse.org>

In short, you will be creating a manifest in JSON format that describes not only how to construct URLs for your tool, but also what types of files your tool operates on, where it should appear in the Dataverse installation web interfaces, etc.

The possibilities for external tools are endless. Let’s look at some examples to get your creative juices flowing. Then we’ll look at a complete list of parameters you can use when creating the manifest file for your tool.

If you’re still looking for more information on external tools, you can also watch a video introduction called [Background on the External Tool Framework \(slides\)](#) from the 2020 Dataverse Community Meeting.

3.10.2 Examples of External Tools

Note: This is the same list that appears in the [External Tools](#) section of the Admin Guide.

Tool	Type	Scope	Description
Data Explorer	explore	file	A GUI which lists the variables in a tabular data file allowing searching, charting and cross tabulation analysis. See the README.md file at https://github.com/scholarsportal/dataverse-data-explorer-v2 for the instructions on adding Data Explorer to your Dataverse.
Whole Tale	explore	dataset	A platform for the creation of reproducible research packages that allows users to launch containerized interactive analysis environments based on popular tools such as Jupyter and RStudio. Using this integration, Dataverse users can launch Jupyter and RStudio environments to analyze published datasets. For more information, see the Whole Tale User Guide .
File Previewers	explore	file	A set of tools that display the content of files - including audio, html, Hypothes.is annotations, images, PDF, text, video, tabular data, spreadsheets, GeoJSON, and ZipFiles - allowing them to be viewed without downloading the file. The previewers can be run directly from github.io , so the only required step is using the Dataverse API to register the ones you want to use. Documentation, including how to optionally brand the previewers, and an invitation to contribute through github are in the README.md file. Initial development was led by the Qualitative Data Repository and the spreadsheet previewer was added by the Social Sciences and Humanities Open Cloud (SSHOC) project. https://github.com/gdcc/dataverse-previewers
Data Curation Tool	configure	file	A GUI for curating data by adding labels, groups, weights and other details to assist with informed reuse. See the README.md file at https://github.com/scholarsportal/Dataverse-Data-Curation-Tool for the installation instructions.

3.10.3 How External Tools Are Presented to Users

An external tool can appear in your Dataverse installation in a variety of ways:

- as an explore, preview, or configure option for a file
- as an explore option for a dataset
- as an embedded preview on the file landing page

See also the [Testing External Tools](#) section of the Admin Guide for some perspective on how Dataverse installations will expect to test your tool before announcing it to their users.

3.10.4 Creating an External Tool Manifest

External tools must be expressed in an external tool manifest file, a specific JSON format a Dataverse installation requires. As the author of an external tool, you are expected to provide this JSON file and installation instructions on a web page for your tool.

Examples of Manifests

Let's look at two examples of external tool manifests (one at the file level and one at the dataset level) before we dive into how they work.

External Tools for Files

`fabulousFileTool.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/root/external-tools/fabulousFileTool.json` is a file level both an “explore” tool and a “preview” tool that operates on tabular files:

```
{  
  "displayName": "Fabulous File Tool",  
  "description": "A non-existent tool that is fabulous fun for files!",  
  "toolName": "fabulous",  
  "scope": "file",  
  "types": [  
    "explore",  
    "preview"  
  ],  
  "toolUrl": "https://fabulousfiletool.com",  
  "contentType": "text/tab-separated-values",  
  "httpMethod": "GET",  
  "toolParameters": {  
    "queryParameters": [  
      {  
        "fileid": "{fileId}"  
      },  
      {  
        "datasetPid": "{datasetPid}"  
      },  
      {  
        "locale": "{localeCode}"  
      }  
    ]  
  }  
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

],
"allowedApiCalls": [
{
  "name":"retrieveDataFile",
  "httpMethod":"GET",
  "urlTemplate":"/api/v1/access/datafile/{fileId}",
  "timeOut":270
}
]
}
}

```

External Tools for Datasets

`dynamicDatasetTool.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/root/external-tools/dynamicDatasetTool.json` is a dataset level explore tool:

```

{
  "displayName": "Dynamic Dataset Tool",
  "description": "Dazzles! Dizzying!",
  "scope": "dataset",
  "types": [
    "explore"
  ],
  "toolUrl": "https://dynamicdatasettool.com/v2",
  "toolParameters": {
    "queryParameters": [
      {
        "PID": "{datasetPid}"
      },
      {
        "locale": "{localeCode}"
      }
    ],
    "allowedApiCalls": [
      {
        "name":"retrieveDatasetJson",
        "httpMethod":"GET",
        "urlTemplate":"/api/v1/datasets/{datasetId}",
        "timeOut":10
      }
    ]
  }
}

```


Terminology

Term	Definition
external tool manifest	A JSON file the defines the URL constructed by a Dataverse installation when users click explore or configure tool options. External tool makers are asked to host this JSON file on a website (no app store yet, sorry) and explain how to use install and use the tool. Examples include <code>fabulousFileTool.json</code> located at <code>/_static/installation/files/root/external-tools/fabulousFileTool.json</code> and <code>dynamicDatasetTool.json</code> located at <code>/_static/installation/files/root/external-tools/dynamicDatasetTool.json</code> as well as the real world examples above such as Data Explorer.
displayName	The name of the tool in the Dataverse installation web interface. For example, “Data Explorer”.
description	The description of the tool, which appears in a popup (for configure tools only) so the user who clicked the tool can learn about the tool before being redirected the tool in a new tab in their browser. HTML is supported.
scope	Whether the external tool appears and operates at the file level or the dataset level. Note that a file level tool much also specify the type of file it operates on (see “contentType” below).
types	Whether the external tool is an explore tool, a preview tool, a configure tool or any combination of these (multiple types are supported for a single tool). Configure tools require an API token because they make changes to data files (files within datasets). Configure tools are currently not supported at the dataset level. The older “type” keyword that allows you to pass a single type as a string is deprecated but still supported.
toolUrl	The base URL of the tool before query parameters are added.
contentType	File level tools operate on a specific file type (content type or MIME type such as “application/pdf”) and this must be specified. Dataset level tools do not use contentType.
toolParameters	httpMethod , queryParameters , and allowedApiCalls are supported and described below.
httpMethod	Either GET or POST.
queryParameters	Key/value combinations that can be appended to the toolUrl. For example, once substitution takes place (described below) the user may be redirected to <code>https://fabulousfiletool.com?fileId=42&siteUrl=http://demo.dataverse.org</code> .
query parameter keys	An arbitrary string to associate with a value that is populated with a reserved word (described below). As the author of the tool, you have control over what “key” you would like to be passed to your tool. For example, if you want to have your tool receive and operate on the query parameter “dataverse fileId=42” instead of just “fileId=42”, that’s fine.
query parameter values	A mechanism for substituting reserved words with dynamic content . For example, in your manifest file, you can use a reserved word (described below) such as <code>{fileId}</code> to pass a file’s database id to your tool in a query parameter. Your tool might receive this query parameter as “fileId=42”.
reserved words	A set of strings surrounded by curly braces such as <code>{fileId}</code> or <code>{datasetId}</code> that will be inserted into query parameters. See the table below for a complete list.
allowedApiCalls	An array of objects defining callbacks the tool is allowed to make to the Dataverse API. If the dataset or file being accessed is not public, the callback URLs will be signed to allow the tool access for a defined time.
allowedApiCalls name	A name the tool will use to identify this callback URL such as <code>retrieveDataFile</code> .
allowedApiCalls urlTemplate	The relative URL for the callback using reserved words to indicate where values should be dynamically substituted such as <code>/api/v1/datasets/{datasetId}</code> .
allowedApiCalls httpMethod	Which HTTP method the specified callback uses such as GET or POST.
allowedApiCalls timeOut	For non-public datasets and datafiles, how many minutes the signed URLs given to the tool should be valid for. Must be an integer.
toolName	A name of an external tool that is used to differentiate between external tools and also used in <code>bundle.properties</code> for localization in the Dataverse installation web interface. For example, the <code>toolName</code> for Data Explorer is <code>explorer</code> . For the Data Curation Tool the <code>toolName</code> is <code>dct</code> . This is an optional parameter in the manifest JSON file.

Reserved Words

Reserved word	Status	Description
{siteUrl}	optional	The URL of the Dataverse installation from which the tool was launched. For example, https://demo.dataverse.org .
{fileId}	depends	The database ID of a file the user clicks “Explore” or “Configure” on. For example, 42. This reserved word is required for file level tools unless you use {filePid} instead.
{filePid}	depends	The Persistent ID (DOI or Handle) of a file the user clicks “Explore” or “Configure” on. For example, doi:10.7910/DVN/TJCLKP/3VSTKY. Note that not all Dataverse installations have Persistent IDs (PIPs) enabled at the file level. This reserved word is required for file level tools unless you use {fileId} instead.
{apiToken}	optional	The Dataverse installation’s API token of the user launching the external tool, if available. Please note that API tokens should be treated with the same care as a password. For example, f3465b0c-f830-4bc7-879f-06c0745a5a5c.
{datasetId}	depends	The database ID of the dataset. For example, 42. This reserved word is required for dataset level tools unless you use {datasetPid} instead.
{datasetPid}	depends	The Persistent ID (DOI or Handle) of the dataset. For example, doi:10.7910/DVN/TJCLKP. This reserved word is required for dataset level tools unless you use {datasetId} instead.
{datasetVersion}	optional	The friendly version number (or :draft) of the dataset version the file level tool is being launched from. For example, 1.0 or :draft.
{localeCode}	optional	The code for the language (“en” for English, “fr” for French, etc.) that user has selected from the language toggle in a Dataverse installation. See also Internationalization .

Authorization Options

When called for datasets or data files that are not public (i.e. in a draft dataset or for a restricted file), external tools are allowed access via the user’s credentials. This is accomplished by one of two mechanisms:

- Signed URLs (more secure, recommended)
 - Configured via the `allowedApiCalls` section of the manifest. The tool will be provided with signed URLs allowing the specified access to the given dataset or datafile for the specified amount of time. The tool will not be able to access any other datasets or files the user may have access to and will not be able to make calls other than those specified.
 - For tools invoked via a GET call, Dataverse will include a callback query parameter with a Base64 encoded value. The decoded value is a signed URL that can be called to retrieve a JSON response containing all of the `queryParameters` and `allowedApiCalls` specified in the manifest.
 - For tools invoked via POST, Dataverse will send a JSON body including the requested `queryParameters` and `allowedApiCalls`. Dataverse expects the response to the POST to indicate a redirect which Dataverse will use to open the tool.
- API Token (deprecated, less secure, not recommended)
 - Configured via the `queryParameters` by including an `{apiToken}` value. When this is present Dataverse will send the user’s `apiToken` to the tool. With the user’s API token, the tool can perform any action via the Dataverse API that the user could. External tools configured via this method should be assessed for their trustworthiness.

- For tools invoked via GET, this will be done via a query parameter in the request URL which could be cached in the browser’s history. Dataverse expects the response to the POST to indicate a redirect which Dataverse will use to open the tool.
- For tools invoked via POST, Dataverse will send a JSON body including the apiToken.

Internationalization of Your External Tool

The name and description of your tool can be localized and made available in different languages in your Dataverse installation’s web interface. Use the `toolName` parameter in the manifest JSON file and then add that `toolName` to `bundle.properties`.

For example, if the `toolName` of your external tool is `fabulous` then the lines in `Bundle.properties` should be:

```
externaltools.fabulous.displayname=Fabulous File Tool           externaltools.fabulous.  
description=Fabulous Fun for Files!
```

Using Example Manifests to Get Started

Again, you can use `fabulousFileTool.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/root/external-tools/fabulousFileTool.json` or `dynamicDatasetTool.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/root/external-tools/dynamicDatasetTool.json` as a starting point for your own manifest file.

3.10.5 Testing Your External Tool

As the author of an external tool, you are not expected to learn how to install and operate a Dataverse installation. There’s a very good chance your tool can be added to a server Dataverse Community developers use for testing if you reach out on any of the channels listed under [Getting Help](#) in the Developer Guide.

By all means, if you’d like to install a Dataverse installation yourself, a number of developer-centric options are available. For example, there’s a script to spin up a Dataverse installation on EC2 at <https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-ansible>. The process for using curl to add your external tool to your Dataverse installation is documented under [Managing External Tools](#) in the Admin Guide.

3.10.6 Spreading the Word About Your External Tool

Adding Your Tool to the Inventory of External Tools

Once you’ve gotten your tool working, please make a pull request to update the list of tools above! You are also welcome to download `dataverse-external-tools.tsv` located at `/_static/admin/dataverse-external-tools.tsv`, add your tool to the TSV file, create and issue at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues>, and then upload your TSV file there.

Unless your tool runs entirely in a browser, you may have integrated server-side software with your Dataverse installation. If so, please double check that your software is listed in the [Integrations](#) section of the Admin Guide and if not, please open an issue or pull request to add it. Thanks!

If you’ve thought to yourself that there ought to be an app store for Dataverse Software external tools, you’re not alone. Please see <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/5688> :)

Demoing Your External Tool

<https://demo.dataverse.org> is the place to play around with the Dataverse Software and your tool can be included. Please email support@dataverse.org to start the conversation about adding your tool. Additionally, you are welcome to open an issue at <https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-ansible> which already includes a number of the tools listed above.

Announcing Your External Tool

You are welcome to announce your external tool at <https://groups.google.com/forum/#!forum/dataverse-community>. If you're too shy, we'll do it for you. We'll probably tweet about it too. Thank you for your contribution to the Dataverse Project!

3.11 Dataset Curation Label API

When the `:AllowedCurationLabels` setting has been used to define Curation Labels, this API can be used to set these labels on draft datasets. Superusers can define which set of labels are allowed for a given datasets in a collection/an individual dataset using the api described in the [Managing Datasets and Dataverse Collections](#) section. The API here can be used by curators/those who have permission to publish the dataset to get/set/change/delete the label currently assigned to a draft dataset.

This functionality is intended as a mechanism to integrate the Dataverse software with an external curation process/application: it is a way to make the state of a draft dataset, as defined in the external process, visible within Dataverse. These labels have no other effect in Dataverse and are only visible to curators/those with permission to publish the dataset. Any curation label assigned to a draft dataset will be removed upon publication.

3.11.1 Get a Draft Dataset's Curation Label

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export DATASET_ID='12345'
export DATASET_PID='doi:10.5072/FK2A1B2C3'
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
```

Example 1: Get the label using the DATASET ID

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$DATASET_ID/curationStatus"
→"
```

Example 2: Get the label using the DATASET PID

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
→curationStatus?persistentId=$DATASET_PID"
```

You should expect a 200 (“OK”) response and the draft dataset’s curation status label contained in a JSON ‘data’ object.

3.11.2 Set a Draft Dataset's Curation Label

To add a curation label for a draft Dataset, specify the Dataset ID (DATASET_ID) or Persistent identifier (DATASET_PID) and the label desired.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export DATASET_ID='12345'
export DATASET_PID='doi:10.5072/FK2A1B2C3'
export LABEL='Author contacted'
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
```

Example: Add the label using the DATASET ID

```
curl -X PUT -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$DATASET_ID/
↪curationStatus?label=$LABEL"
```

Example 2: Add a description using the DATASET PID

```
curl -X PUT -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
↪curationStatus?label=$LABEL&persistentId=$DATASET_PID"
```

You should expect a 200 (“OK”) response indicating that the label has been set. 403/Forbidden and 400/Bad Request responses are also possible, i.e. if you don’t have permission to make this change or are trying to add a label that isn’t in the allowed set or to add a label to a dataset with no draft version.

3.11.3 Delete a Draft Dataset's Curation Label

To delete the curation label on a draft Dataset, specify the Dataset ID (DATASET_ID) or Persistent identifier (DATASET_PID).

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export DATASET_PID='doi:10.5072/FK2A1B2C3'
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
```

Example: Delete the label using the DATASET PID

```
curl -X DELETE -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
↪curationStatus?persistentId=$DATASET_PID"
```

You should expect a 200 (“OK”) response indicating the label has been removed.

3.11.4 Get the Set of Allowed Labels for a Dataset

To get the list of allowed curation labels allowed for a given Dataset

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export DATASET_ID='12345'
export DATASET_PID='doi:10.5072/FK2A1B2C3'
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
```

Example 1: Get the label using the DATASET ID

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$DATASET_ID/
˓→allowedCurationLabels"
```

Example 2: Get the label using the DATASET PID

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
˓→allowedCurationLabels?persistentId=$DATASET_PID"
```

You should expect a 200 (“OK”) response with a comma-separated list of allowed labels contained in a JSON ‘data’ object.

3.12 Linked Data Notification API

Dataverse has a limited, experimental API implementing a Linked Data Notification inbox allowing it to receive messages indicating a link between an external resource and a Dataverse dataset. The motivating use case is to support a use case where Dataverse administrators may wish to create back-links to the remote resource (e.g. as a Related Publication, Related Material, etc.).

Upon receipt of a relevant message, Dataverse will create Announcement Received notifications for superusers, who can edit the dataset involved. (In the motivating use case, these users may then add an appropriate relationship and use the Update Current Version publishing option to add it to the most recently published version of the dataset.)

The :LDNMessageHosts setting is a comma-separated whitelist of hosts from which Dataverse will accept and process messages. By default, no hosts are allowed. * can be used in testing to indicate all hosts are allowed.

Messages can be sent via POST, using the application/ld+json Content-Type:

```
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org

curl -X POST -H 'ContentType:application/ld+json' $SERVER_URL/api/inbox --upload-file=
˓→message.jsonld
```

The supported message format is described by our preliminary specification. The format is expected to change in the near future to match the standard for relationship announcements being developed as part of the COAR Notify Project.

An example message is shown below. It indicates that a resource with the name “An Interesting Title” exists and “IsSupplementedBy” the dataset with DOI <https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/GCCDL>. If this dataset is managed in the receiving Dataverse, a notification will be sent to user with the relevant permissions (as described above).

```
{
  "@context": [
    "https://www.w3.org/ns/activitystreams",
    "https://purl.org/coar/notify"
  ],
  "id": "urn:uuid:94ecae35-dcf4-4182-8550-22c7164fe23f",
  "actor": {
    "id": "https://research-organisation.org/dspace",
    "name": "DSpace Repository",
    "type": "Service"
  },
  "context": {
    "IsSupplementedBy": {
      "
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    "id": "http://dev-hdc3b.lib.harvard.edu/dataset.xhtml?persistentId=doi:10.5072/
    ↵FK2/GGCCDL",
      "ietf:cite-as": "https://doi.org/10.5072/FK2/GGCCDL",
      "type": "sorg:Dataset"
    }
  },
  "object": {
    "id": "https://research-organisation.org/dspace/item/35759679-5df3-4633-b7e5-
    ↵4cf24b4d0614",
      "ietf:cite-as": "https://research-organisation.org/authority/resolve/35759679-5df3-
    ↵4633-b7e5-4cf24b4d0614",
      "sorg:name": "An Interesting Title",
      "type": "sorg:ScholarlyArticle"
    },
    "origin": {
      "id": "https://research-organisation.org/dspace",
      "inbox": "https://research-organisation.org/dspace/inbox/",
      "type": "Service"
    },
    "target": {
      "id": "https://research-organisation.org/dataverse",
      "inbox": "https://research-organisation.org/dataverse/inbox/",
      "type": "Service"
    },
    "type": [
      "Announce",
      "coar-notify:ReleaseAction"
    ]
  }
}

```

3.13 Apps

The introduction of Dataverse Software APIs has fostered the development of a variety of software applications that are listed in the *Integrations*, *External Tools*, and *Reporting Tools and Common Queries* sections of the Admin Guide.

The apps below are open source and demonstrate how to use Dataverse Software APIs. Some of these apps are built on *Client Libraries* that are available for Dataverse Software APIs in Python, Javascript, R, and Java.

Contents:

- *Javascript*
 - *Data Explorer*
 - *Data Curation Tool*
 - *File Previewers*
- *Python*
 - *dataverse-sample-data*
 - *Texas Digital Library dataverse-reports*

- *OSF*
- *dataverse-metrics*
- *Whole Tale*
- *Archivematica*
- *repo2docker*
- *dataverse-migration-scripts*
- *Java*
 - *DVUploader*
 - *Dataverse for Android*
- *PHP*
 - *OJS*
 - *OpenScholar*

3.13.1 Javascript

Data Explorer

Data Explorer is a GUI which lists the variables in a tabular data file allowing searching, charting and cross tabulation analysis.

<https://github.com/scholarsportal/Dataverse-Data-Explorer-v2>

Data Curation Tool

Data Curation Tool is a GUI for curating data by adding labels, groups, weights and other details to assist with informed reuse.

<https://github.com/scholarsportal/Dataverse-Data-Curation-Tool>

File Previewers

File Previewers are tools that display the content of files - including audio, html, Hypothes.is annotations, images, PDF, text, video, GeoJSON - allowing them to be viewed without downloading.

<https://github.com/gdcc/dataverse-previewers>

3.13.2 Python

Please note that there are multiple Python modules for Dataverse Software APIs listed in the *Client Libraries* section.

dataverse-sample-data

dataverse-sample-data allows you to populate your Dataverse installation with sample data. It makes uses of pyDataverse, which is listed in the *Client Libraries* section.

<https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-sample-data>

Texas Digital Library dataverse-reports

Dataverse Installation Reports from Texas Digital Library generates and emails statistical reports for a Dataverse installation using the native API and database queries.

<https://github.com/TexasDigitalLibrary/dataverse-reports>

OSF

OSF allows you to view, download, and upload files to and from a dataset in a Dataverse installation from an Open Science Framework (OSF) project.

<https://github.com/CenterForOpenScience/osf.io/tree/develop/addons/dataverse>

dataverse-metrics

dataverse-metrics aggregates and visualizes metrics across multiple Dataverse installations but can also be used with a single installation.

<https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-metrics>

Whole Tale

Whole Tale enables researchers to analyze data using popular tools including Jupyter and RStudio with the ultimate goal of supporting publishing of reproducible research packages.

https://github.com/whole-tale/girder_wholtale/tree/v0.7/server/lib/dataverse

Archivematica

Archivematica is an integrated suite of open-source tools for processing digital objects for long-term preservation.

<https://github.com/arte factual/archivematica/tree/v1.9.2/src/MCPClient/lib/clientScripts>

repo2docker

repo2docker is a command line tool that allows you to create and start a Docker image from a code repository that follows the [reproducible executable environment specification](<https://repo2docker.readthedocs.io/en/latest/specification.html>). repo2docker supports Dataverse installation DOIs to find and retrieve datasets.

<https://github.com/jupyter/repo2docker/blob/master/repo2docker/contentproviders/dataverse.py>

dataverse-migration-scripts

This series of Python scripts offers a starting point for migrating datasets from one Dataverse installation to another. Multiple parts of the process are handled in these scripts, including adding users, collections, and multiple versions of datasets. These scripts were developed to migrate data from version 4.20 to 5.1, but may provide a helpful starting point for other software versions. The *migration APIs* added in version 5.6 are not used. You can find more details in the repository, as well as [this Google group thread](#).

<https://github.com/scholarsportal/dataverse-migration-scripts>

3.13.3 Java

Please note that there is a Java library for Dataverse Software APIs listed in the *Client Libraries* section.

DVUploader

The open-source DVUploader tool is a stand-alone command-line Java application that uses the Dataverse Software API to upload files to a specified Dataset. Files can be specified by name, or the DVUploader can upload all files in a directory or recursively from a directory tree. The DVUploader can also verify that uploaded files match their local sources by comparing the local and remote fixity checksums. Source code, the latest release - jar file, and documentation are available on GitHub. DVUploader's creation was supported by the Texas Digital Library.

<https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-uploader>

Dataverse for Android

Dataverse Software on Android makes use of a Dataverse installation's Search API.

<https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-android>

3.13.4 PHP

OJS

The Open Journal Systems (OJS) Dataverse Software Plugin adds data sharing and preservation to the OJS publication process.

https://github.com/pkp/ojs/tree/ojs-stable-2_4_8/plugins/generic/dataverse

OpenScholar

The Dataverse Software module from OpenScholar allows a Dataverse installation's widgets to be easily embedded in its web pages:

https://github.com/openscholar/openscholar/tree/SCHOLAR-3.x/openscholar/modules/os_features/os_dataverse

3.14 Frequently Asked Questions

APIs are less intuitive than graphical user interfaces (GUIs) so questions are expected!

Contents:

- *What is an API?*
- *What Are Common Use Cases for Dataverse Software APIs?*
- *Where Can I Find Examples of Using Dataverse Software APIs?*
- *When Should I Use the Native API vs. the SWORD API?*
- *To Operate on a Dataset Should I Use Its DOI (or Handle) or Its Database ID?*
- *Where is the Comprehensive List of All API Functionality?*
- *Is There a Changelog of API Functionality That Has Been Added Over Time?*
- *What Functionality is GUI Only and Not Available Via API*
- *Why Are the Return Values (HTTP Status Codes) Not Documented?*
- *What If My Question Is Not Answered Here?*

3.14.1 What is an API?

See “What is an API?” in the [Introduction](#) section.

3.14.2 What Are Common Use Cases for Dataverse Software APIs?

See the [Getting Started with APIs](#) section for common use cases for researchers and curators. Other types of API users should find starting points at [Types of Dataverse Software API Users](#).

3.14.3 Where Can I Find Examples of Using Dataverse Software APIs?

See the [Getting Started with APIs](#) section links to examples using curl.

For examples in Javascript, Python, R, and Java, and PHP, see the [Apps](#) and [Client Libraries](#) sections.

3.14.4 When Should I Use the Native API vs. the SWORD API?

The *SWORD API* is based on a standard, works fine, and is fully supported, but much more development effort has been going into the *Native API*, which is not based on a standard. It is specific to the Dataverse Software.

SWORD uses XML. The Native API uses JSON.

SWORD only supports a dozen or so operations. The Native API supports many more.

3.14.5 To Operate on a Dataset Should I Use Its DOI (or Handle) or Its Database ID?

It is fine to target a dataset using either its Persistent ID (PID such as DOI or Handle) or its database id.

Here's an example from *Publish a Dataset* of targeting a dataset using its DOI:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST "https://demo.  
˓→dataverse.org/api/datasets/:persistentId/actions/:publish?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/  
˓→J8SJZB&type=major"
```

You can target the same dataset with its database ID ("42" in the example below), like this:

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx -X POST "https://demo.  
˓→dataverse.org/api/datasets/42/actions/:publish?type=major"
```

Note that when multiple query parameters are used (such as `persistentId` and `type` above) there is a question mark (?) before the first query parameter and ampersands (&) before each of the subsequent query parameters. Also, & has special meaning in Unix shells such as Bash so you must put quotes around the entire URL.

3.14.6 Where is the Comprehensive List of All API Functionality?

There are so many Dataverse Software APIs that a single page in this guide would probably be overwhelming. See *Lists of Dataverse APIs* for links to various pages.

It is possible to get a complete list of API functionality in Swagger/OpenAPI format if you deploy Dataverse Software 5.x. For details, see <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/5794>

3.14.7 Is There a Changelog of API Functionality That Has Been Added Over Time?

No, but there probably should be. If you have suggestions for how it should look, please create an issue at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues>

3.14.8 What Functionality is GUI Only and Not Available Via API

The following tasks cannot currently be automated via API because no API exists for them. The web interface should be used instead for these GUI-only features:

- Setting a logo image, URL, and tagline when creating a Dataverse collection.
- Editing properties of an existing Dataverse collection.
- Set "Enable Access Request" for Terms of Use: <https://groups.google.com/d/msg/dataverse-community/oKdesT9rFGc/qM6wrsnnBAAJ>
- Downloading a guestbook.

- Set guestbook_id for a dataset: <https://groups.google.com/d/msg/dataverse-community/oKdesT9rFGc/qM6wrsnnBAAJ>
- Filling out a guestbook. See also https://groups.google.com/d/msg/dataverse-dev/G9FNGP_bT0w/dgE2Fk4iBQAJ
- Seeing why a file failed ingest.
- Dataset templates.
- Deaccessioning datasets.

If you would like APIs for any of the features above, please open a GitHub issue at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues>

You are also welcome to open an issue to add to the list above. Or you are welcome to make a pull request. Please see the *Writing Documentation* section of the Developer Guide for instructions.

3.14.9 Why Are the Return Values (HTTP Status Codes) Not Documented?

They should be. Please consider making a pull request to help. The *Writing Documentation* section of the Developer Guide should help you get started. *Create a Dataverse Collection* has an example you can follow or you can come up with a better way.

3.14.10 What If My Question Is Not Answered Here?

Please ask! For information on where to ask, please see *Getting Help*.

INSTALLATION GUIDE

Contents:

4.1 Introduction

Welcome! Thanks for installing [The Dataverse Project](#)!

Contents:

- [*Quick Links*](#)
- [*Intended Audience*](#)
- [*Related Guides*](#)
- [*Getting Help*](#)
 - [*Information to Send to Support When Installation Fails*](#)
- [*Improving this Guide*](#)

4.1.1 Quick Links

If you are installing the Dataverse Software for the first time, please proceed to the [*Preparation*](#) section.

Jump ahead to [*Configuration*](#) or [*Upgrading*](#) for an existing Dataverse installation.

4.1.2 Intended Audience

This guide is intended primarily for sysadmins who are installing, configuring, and upgrading a Dataverse installation. Sysadmins are expected to be comfortable using standard Linux commands, issuing curl commands, and running SQL scripts.

4.1.3 Related Guides

Many “admin” functions can be performed by Dataverse installation users themselves (non-superusers) as documented in the [User Guide](#) and that guide is a good introduction to the features of the Dataverse Software from an end user perspective.

If you are a sysadmin who likes to code, you may find the [API Guide](#) useful, and you may want to consider improving the installation script or hacking on the community-lead configuration management options mentioned in the [Preparation](#) section. If you **really** like to code and want to help with the Dataverse Software code, please check out the [Developer Guide](#)!

4.1.4 Getting Help

To get help installing or configuring a Dataverse installation, please try one or more of:

- posting to the [dataverse-community](#) Google Group.
- asking at <http://chat.dataverse.org>
- emailing support@dataverse.org to open a private ticket at <https://help.hmdc.harvard.edu>

Information to Send to Support When Installation Fails

If you’ve encountered a problem installing Dataverse and are ready to ask for help, please consider sending along the following information so that the Dataverse team and community can more easily assist you.

- Version of Dataverse you are trying to install.
- Operating system (usually a Linux distribution) and version.
- Output from the installer (STDOUT, STDERR).
- The `scripts/api/setup-all.*.log` files left behind by the installer.
- The `server.log` file from Payara (by default at `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/server.log`).

4.1.5 Improving this Guide

If you spot a typo in this guide or would like to suggest an improvement, please find the appropriate file in <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/tree/develop/doc/sphinx-guides/source/installation> and send a pull request as explained in the [Writing Documentation](#) section of the Developer Guide. You are also welcome to simply open an issue at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues> to describe the problem with this guide.

Next is the [Preparation](#) section.

4.2 Preparation

> "What are you preparing? You're always preparing! Just go!" -- Spaceballs

We'll try to get you up and running as quickly as possible, but we thought you might like to hear about your options. :)

Contents:

- *Choose Your Own Installation Adventure*
 - *Standard Installation*
 - *Advanced Installation*
- *Architecture and Components*
 - *Required Components*
 - *Optional Components*
- *System Requirements*
 - *Hardware Requirements*
 - *Software Requirements*
- *Decisions to Make*
- *Next Steps*

4.2.1 Choose Your Own Installation Adventure

Standard Installation

Installing the Dataverse Software involves some system configuration followed by executing an installation script that will guide you through the installation process as described in [Installation](#), but reading about the [Architecture and Components](#) of the Dataverse Software is recommended first.

Advanced Installation

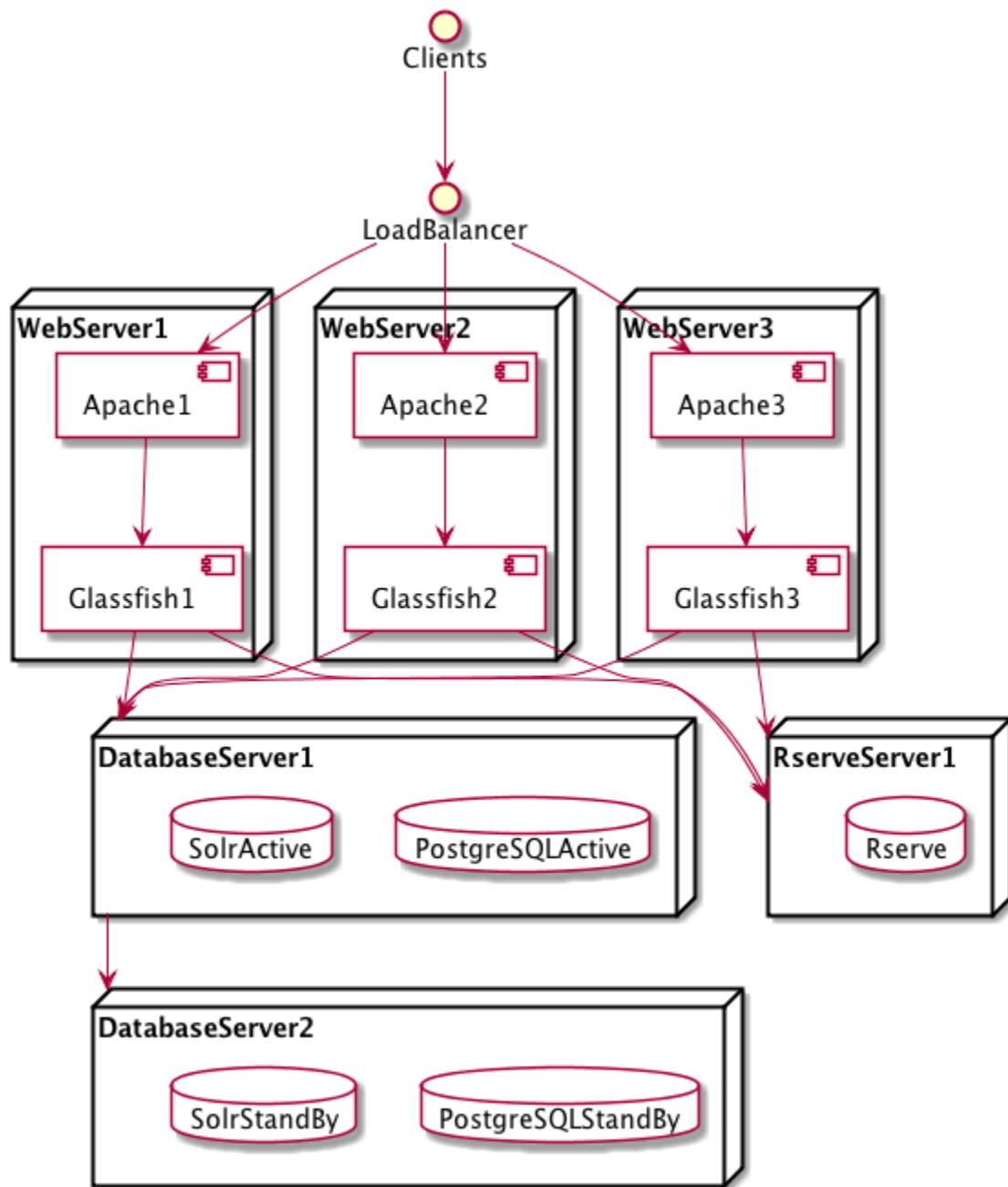
There are some community-lead projects to use configuration management tools such as Ansible and Puppet to automate the installation and configuration of the Dataverse Software, but support for these solutions is limited to what the Dataverse Community can offer as described in each project's webpage:

- <https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-ansible>
- <https://gitlab.com/lip-computing/dataverse>
- <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-puppet>

(Please note that the “dataverse-ansible” repo is used in a script that allows the Dataverse Software to be installed on Amazon Web Services (AWS) from arbitrary GitHub branches as described in the [Deployment](#) section of the Developer Guide.)

The Dataverse Project team is happy to “bless” additional community efforts along these lines (i.e. Docker, Chef, Salt, etc.) by creating a repo under <https://github.com/gdcc> and managing team access.

The Dataverse Software permits a fair amount of flexibility in where you choose to install the various components. The diagram below shows a load balancer, multiple proxies and web servers, redundant database servers, and offloading of potentially resource intensive work to a separate server. (Glassfish is shown rather than Payara.)



A setup such as this is advanced enough to be considered out of scope for this guide (apart from a stub in the [Advanced Installation](#) section) but you are welcome to ask questions about similar configurations via the support channels listed in the [Introduction](#).

4.2.2 Architecture and Components

The Dataverse Software is a Java Enterprise Edition (EE) web application that is shipped as a WAR (Web ARchive) file. This WAR file is deployed to an application server or app server.

Required Components

When planning your installation you should be aware of the following components of the Dataverse Software architecture:

- Linux: RHEL or derivative is highly recommended since all development and QA happens on this distribution.
- App server: Payara is the recommended Jakarta EE application server.
- PostgreSQL: a relational database.
- Solr: a search engine. A Dataverse Software-specific schema is provided.
- SMTP server: for sending mail for password resets and other notifications.
- Persistent identifier service: DOI and Handle support are provided. Production use requires a registered DOI or Handle.net authority.
- Rserve: runs as a daemon to execute R code.

Optional Components

There are a number of optional components you may choose to install or configure, including:

- External Tools: Third party tools for data exploration can be added to the Dataverse installation by following the instructions in the *External Tools* section of the Admin Guide.
- Dropbox integration `dataverse.dropbox.key`: for uploading files from the Dropbox API.
- Apache: a web server that can “reverse proxy” Jakarta EE applications (like the Dataverse Software) and rewrite HTTP traffic.
- Shibboleth: an authentication system described in *Shibboleth*. Its use with a Dataverse installation requires Apache.
- OAuth2: an authentication system described in *OAuth Login Options*.

See also the *Integrations* section of the Admin Guide.

4.2.3 System Requirements

Hardware Requirements

A basic Dataverse installation runs fine on modest hardware. For example, as of this writing the test installation at <http://phoenix.dataverse.org> is backed by a single virtual machine with two 2.8 GHz processors, 8 GB of RAM and 50 GB of disk.

In contrast, before we moved it to the Amazon Cloud, the production installation at <https://dataverse.harvard.edu> was backed by six servers with two Intel Xeon 2.53 Ghz CPUs and either 48 or 64 GB of RAM. The three servers with 48 GB of RAM run were web frontends running Glassfish 4 and Apache and were load balanced by a hardware device. The remaining three servers with 64 GB of RAM were the primary and backup database servers and a server dedicated to running Rserve. Multiple TB of storage were mounted from a SAN via NFS.

Currently, the Harvard Dataverse Repository is served by four AWS server nodes: two “m4.4xlarge” instances (64GB/16 vCPU) as web frontends, one 32GB/8 vCPU (“m4.2xlarge”) instance for the Solr search engine, and one 16GB/4 vCPU (“m4.xlarge”) instance for R. The PostgreSQL database is served by Amazon RDS, and physical files are stored on Amazon S3.

The Dataverse Software installation script will attempt to give your app server the right amount of RAM based on your system.

Experimentation and testing with various hardware configurations is encouraged, or course, but do reach out as explained in the *Introduction* as needed for assistance.

Software Requirements

See *Architecture and Components* for an overview of required and optional components. The *Prerequisites* section is oriented toward installing the software necessary to successfully run the Dataverse Software installation script. Pages on optional components contain more detail of software requirements for each component.

Clients are expected to be running a relatively modern browser.

4.2.4 Decisions to Make

Here are some questions to keep in the back of your mind as you test and move into production:

- How much storage do I need?
- Which features do I want based on *Architecture and Components*?
- How do I want my users to log in to the Dataverse installation? With local accounts? With Shibboleth/SAML? With OAuth providers such as ORCID, GitHub, or Google?
- Do I want to run my app server on the standard web ports (80 and 443) or do I want to “front” my app server with a proxy such as Apache or nginx? See “Network Ports” in the *Configuration* section.
- How many points of failure am I willing to tolerate? How much complexity do I want?
- How much does it cost to subscribe to a service to create persistent identifiers such as DOIs or handles?
- What licenses should I make available to my users?

4.2.5 Next Steps

Proceed to the *Prerequisites* section which will help you get ready to run the Dataverse Software installation script.

4.3 Prerequisites

Before running the Dataverse Software installation script, you must install and configure Linux, Java, Payara, PostgreSQL, Solr, and jq. The other software listed below is optional but can provide useful features.

After following all the steps below, you can proceed to the *Installation* section.

Contents:

- *Linux*
- *Java*

- *Installing Java*
- *Payara*
 - *Installing Payara*
 - *Launching Payara on System Boot*
- *PostgreSQL*
 - *Installing PostgreSQL*
 - *Configuring Database Access for the Dataverse Installation (and the Dataverse Software Installer)*
- *Solr*
 - *Supported Versions*
 - *Installing Solr*
 - *Solr Init Script*
 - *Securing Solr*
- *jq*
 - *Installing jq*
- *ImageMagick*
 - *Installing and configuring ImageMagick*
- *R*
 - *Installing R*
 - *Installing the required R libraries*
 - *Rserve*
- *Counter Processor*
 - *Installing Counter Processor*
 - *Installing GeoLite Country Database*
 - *Creating a counter User*
 - *Installing Counter Processor Python Requirements*
- *Next Steps*

4.3.1 Linux

We assume you plan to run your Dataverse installation on Linux and we recommend RHEL or a derivative such as RockyLinux or AlmaLinux, which is the distribution family tested by the Dataverse Project team. Please be aware that while EL8 (RHEL/derivatives) is the recommended platform, the steps below were originally written for EL6 and may need to be updated (please feel free to make a pull request!). A number of community members have installed the Dataverse Software in Debian/Ubuntu environments.

4.3.2 Java

The Dataverse Software requires Java SE 11 (or higher).

Installing Java

The Dataverse Software should run fine with only the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) installed, but installing the Java Development Kit (JDK) is recommended so that useful tools for troubleshooting production environments are available. We recommend using Oracle JDK or OpenJDK.

The Oracle JDK can be downloaded from <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html>

On a RHEL/derivative, install OpenJDK (devel version) using yum:

```
# sudo yum install java-11-openjdk
```

If you have multiple versions of Java installed, Java 11 should be the default when `java` is invoked from the command line. You can test this by running `java -version`.

On RHEL/derivative you can make Java 11 the default with the `alternatives` command, having it prompt you to select the version of Java from a list:

```
# alternatives --config java
```

4.3.3 Payara

Payara 5.2022.3 is recommended. Newer versions might work fine, regular updates are recommended.

Installing Payara

Note: The Dataverse Software installer need not be run as root, and it is recommended that Payara not run as root either. We suggest the creation of a “dataverse” service account for this purpose:

```
# useradd dataverse
```

- Download and install Payara (installed in `/usr/local/payara5` in the example commands below):

```
# wget https://s3-eu-west-1.amazonaws.com/payara.fish/Payara+Downloads/5.2022.3/
˓→payara-5.2022.3.zip
# unzip payara-5.2022.3.zip
# mv payara5 /usr/local
```

If you intend to install and run Payara under a service account (and we hope you do), chown -R the Payara hierarchy to root to protect it but give the service account access to the below directories:

- Set service account permissions:

```
# chown -R root:root /usr/local/payara5
# chown dataverse /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/lib
# chown -R dataverse:dataverse /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1
```

After installation, you may chown the lib/ directory back to root; the installer only needs write access to copy the JDBC driver into that directory.

- Change from `-client` to `-server` under `<jvm-options>-client</jvm-options>`:

```
# vim /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/config/domain.xml
```

This recommendation comes from <http://www.c2b2.co.uk/middleware-blog/glassfish-4-performance-tuning-monitoring-and-troubleshooting-php> among other places.

Launching Payara on System Boot

The Dataverse Software installation script will start Payara if necessary, but you may find the following scripts helpful to launch Payara start automatically on boot. They were originally written for Glassfish but have been adjusted for Payara.

- The `Systemd` file located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/systemd/payara.service` may be serve as a reference for systems using Systemd (such as RHEL/derivative or Debian 10, Ubuntu 16+)
- The `init` script located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/init.d/payara.init.service` may be useful for RHEL/derivative or Ubuntu >= 14 if you're using a Payara service account, or
- The `Payara init` script located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/init.d/payara.init.root` may be helpful if you're just going to run Payara as root (not recommended).

It is not necessary for Payara to be running before you execute the Dataverse Software installation script; it will start Payara for you.

Please note that you must run Payara in an English locale. If you are using something like `LANG=de_DE.UTF-8`, ingest of tabular data will fail with the message “RoundRoutines:decimal separator no in right place”.

Also note that Payara may utilize more than the default number of file descriptors, especially when running batch jobs such as harvesting. We have increased ours by adding `ulimit -n 32768` to our Payara init script. On operating systems which use systemd such as RHEL/derivative, file descriptor limits may be increased by adding a line like `LimitNOFILE=32768` to the systemd unit file. You may adjust the file descriptor limits on running processes by using the `prlimit` utility:

```
# sudo prlimit --pid pid --nofile=32768:32768
```

4.3.4 PostgreSQL

Installing PostgreSQL

The application has been tested with PostgreSQL versions up to 13 and version 10+ is required. We recommend installing the latest version that is available for your OS distribution. *For example*, to install PostgreSQL 13 under RHEL7/derivative:

```
# yum install -y https://download.postgresql.org/pub/repos/yum/reporpms/EL-7-x86_64/pgdg-redhat-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
# yum makecache fast
# yum install -y postgresql13-server
# /usr/pgsql-13/bin/postgresql-13-setup initdb
# /usr/bin/systemctl start postgresql-13
# /usr/bin/systemctl enable postgresql-13
```

For RHEL8/derivative the process would be identical, except for the first two commands: you would need to install the “EL-8” yum repository configuration and run `yum makecache` instead.

Configuring Database Access for the Dataverse Installation (and the Dataverse Software Installer)

- The application and the installer script will be connecting to PostgreSQL over TCP/IP, using password authentication. In this section we explain how to configure PostgreSQL to accept these connections.
- If PostgreSQL is running on the same server as Payara, find the localhost (127.0.0.1) entry that's already in the pg_hba.conf and modify it to look like this:

```
host all all 127.0.0.1/32 md5
```

Once you are done with the prerequisites and run the installer script (documented here: [Installation](#)) it will ask you to enter the address of the Postgres server. Simply accept the default value 127.0.0.1 there.

- The Dataverse Software installer script will need to connect to PostgreSQL **as the admin user**, in order to create and set up the database that the Dataverse installation will be using. If for whatever reason it is failing to connect (for example, if you don't know/remember what your Postgres admin password is), you may choose to temporarily disable all the access restrictions on localhost connections, by changing the above line to:

```
host all all 127.0.0.1/32 trust
```

Note that this rule opens access to the database server **via localhost only**. Still, in a production environment, this may constitute a security risk. So you will likely want to change it back to "md5" once the installer has finished.

- If the Dataverse installation is running on a different server, you will need to add a new entry to the pg_hba.conf granting it access by its network address:

```
host all all [ADDRESS]      255.255.255.255 md5
```

Where [ADDRESS] is the numeric IP address of the Payara server. Enter this address when the installer asks for the PostgreSQL server address.

- In some distributions, PostgreSQL is pre-configured so that it doesn't accept network connections at all. Check that the listen_address line in the configuration file postgresql.conf is not commented out and looks like this:

```
listen_addresses='*'
```

The file postgresql.conf will be located in the same directory as the pg_hba.conf above.

- **Important: PostgreSQL must be restarted** for the configuration changes to take effect! On RHEL7/derivative and similar (provided you installed Postgres as instructed above):

```
# systemctl restart postgresql-13
```

On MacOS X a "Reload Configuration" icon is usually supplied in the PostgreSQL application folder. Or you could look up the process id of the PostgreSQL postmaster process, and send it the SIGHUP signal:

```
kill -1 PROCESS_ID
```

4.3.5 Solr

The Dataverse Software search index is powered by Solr.

Supported Versions

The Dataverse Software has been tested with Solr version 8.11.1. Future releases in the 8.x series are likely to be compatible; however, this cannot be confirmed until they are officially tested. Major releases above 8.x (e.g. 9.x) are not supported.

Installing Solr

You should not run Solr as root. Create a user called `solr` and a directory to install Solr into:

```
useradd solr
mkdir /usr/local/solr
chown solr:solr /usr/local/solr
```

Become the `solr` user and then download and configure Solr:

```
su - solr
cd /usr/local/solr
wget https://archive.apache.org/dist/lucene/solr/8.11.1/solr-8.11.1.tgz
tar xvzf solr-8.11.1.tgz
cd solr-8.11.1
cp -r server/solr/configsets/_default server/solr/collection1
```

You should already have a “dvinstall.zip” file that you downloaded from <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/releases>. Unzip it into `/tmp`. Then copy the files into place:

```
cp /tmp/dvinstall/schema*.xml /usr/local/solr/solr-8.11.1/server/solr/collection1/conf
cp /tmp/dvinstall/solrconfig.xml /usr/local/solr/solr-8.11.1/server/solr/collection1/conf
```

Note: The Dataverse Project team has customized Solr to boost results that come from certain indexed elements inside the Dataverse installation, for example prioritizing results from Dataverse collections over Datasets. If you would like to remove this, edit your `solrconfig.xml` and remove the `<str name="qf">` element and its contents. If you have ideas about how this boosting could be improved, feel free to contact us through our Google Group <https://groups.google.com/forum/#!forum/dataverse-dev>.

A Dataverse installation requires a change to the `jetty.xml` file that ships with Solr. Edit `/usr/local/solr/solr-8.11.1/server/etc/jetty.xml`, increasing `requestHeaderSize` from `8192` to `102400`

Solr will warn about needing to increase the number of file descriptors and max processes in a production environment but will still run with defaults. We have increased these values to the recommended levels by adding `ulimit -n 65000` to the init script, and the following to `/etc/security/limits.conf`:

```
solr soft nproc 65000
solr hard nproc 65000
solr soft nofile 65000
solr hard nofile 65000
```

On operating systems which use systemd such as RHEL/derivative, you may then add a line like `LimitNOFILE=65000` for the number of open file descriptors and a line with `LimitNPROC=65000` for the max processes to the systemd unit file, or adjust the limits on a running process using the `prlimit` tool:

```
# sudo prlimit --pid pid --nofile=65000:65000
```

Solr launches asynchronously and attempts to use the lsof binary to watch for its own availability. Installation of this package isn't required but will prevent a warning in the log at startup:

```
# yum install lsof
```

Finally, you need to tell Solr to create the core "collection1" on startup:

```
echo "name=collection1" > /usr/local/solr/solr-8.11.1/server/solr/collection1/core.  
properties
```

Solr Init Script

Please choose the right option for your underlying Linux operating system. It will not be necessary to execute both!

For systems running systemd (like RedHat or derivatives since 7, Debian since 9, Ubuntu since 15.04), as root, use the `solr.service` located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/systemd/solr.service` and place it in `/tmp`. Then start Solr and configure it to start at boot with the following commands:

```
cp /tmp/solr.service /etc/systemd/system  
systemctl daemon-reload  
systemctl start solr.service  
systemctl enable solr.service
```

For systems using init.d (like CentOS 6), use the `Solr init script` located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/init.d/solr` and place it in `/tmp`. Then start Solr and configure it to start at boot with the following commands:

```
cp /tmp/solr /etc/init.d  
service start solr  
chkconfig solr on
```

Securing Solr

Our sample init script and systemd service file linked above tell Solr to only listen on localhost (127.0.0.1). We strongly recommend that you also use a firewall to block access to the Solr port (8983) from outside networks, for added redundancy.

It is **very important** not to allow direct access to the Solr API from outside networks! Otherwise, any host that can reach the Solr port (8983 by default) can add or delete data, search unpublished data, and even reconfigure Solr. For more information, please see https://lucene.apache.org/solr/guide/7_3/securing-solr.html. A particularly serious security issue that has been identified recently allows a potential intruder to remotely execute arbitrary code on the system. See [RCE in Solr via Velocity Template](#) for more information.

If you're running your Dataverse installation across multiple service hosts you'll want to remove the `jetty.host` argument (`-j jetty.host=127.0.0.1`) from the startup command line, but make sure Solr is behind a firewall and only accessible by the Dataverse installation host(s), by specific ip address(es).

We additionally recommend that the Solr service account's shell be disabled, as it isn't necessary for daily operation:

```
# usermod -s /sbin/nologin solr
```

For Solr upgrades or further configuration you may temporarily re-enable the service account shell:

```
# usermod -s /bin/bash solr
```

or simply prepend each command you would run as the Solr user with “sudo -u solr”:

```
# sudo -u solr command
```

Finally, we would like to reiterate that it is simply never a good idea to run Solr as root! Running the process as a non-privileged user would substantially minimize any potential damage even in the event that the instance is compromised.

4.3.6 jq

Installing jq

jq is a command line tool for parsing JSON output that is used by the Dataverse Software installation script. It is available in the EPEL repository:

```
# yum install epel-release
# yum install jq
```

or you may install it manually:

```
# cd /usr/bin
# wget http://stedolan.github.io/jq/download/linux64/jq
# chmod +x jq
# jq --version
```

4.3.7 ImageMagick

The Dataverse Software uses [ImageMagick](#) to generate thumbnail previews of PDF files. This is an optional component, meaning that if you don’t have ImageMagick installed, there will be no thumbnails for PDF files, in the search results and on the dataset pages; but everything else will be working. (Thumbnail previews for non-PDF image files are generated using standard Java libraries and do not require any special installation steps).

Installing and configuring ImageMagick

On a Red Hat or derivative Linux distribution, you can install ImageMagick with something like:

```
# yum install ImageMagick
```

(most RedHat systems will have it pre-installed). When installed using standard yum mechanism, above, the executable for the ImageMagick convert utility will be located at /usr/bin/convert. No further configuration steps will then be required.

If the installed location of the convert executable is different from /usr/bin/convert, you will also need to specify it in your Payara configuration using the JVM option, below. For example:

```
<jvm-options>-Ddataverse.path.imagemagick.convert=/opt/local/bin/convert</jvm-options>
```

(see the [Configuration](#) section for more information on the JVM options)

4.3.8 R

The Dataverse Software uses R to handle tabular data files. The instructions below describe a **minimal** R Project installation. It will allow you to ingest R (.RData) files as tabular data and to export tabular data as .RData files. R can be considered an optional component, meaning that if you don't have R installed, you will still be able to run and use the Dataverse Software - but the functionality specific to tabular data mentioned above will not be available to your users.

Installing R

For RHEL/derivative, the EPEL distribution is strongly recommended:

If yum isn't configured to use EPEL repositories (<https://fedoraproject.org/wiki/EPEL>):

RHEL8/derivative users can install the epel-release RPM:

```
yum install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-8.noarch.rpm
```

RHEL7/derivative users can install the epel-release RPM:

```
yum install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

RHEL 8 users will need to enable the CodeReady-Builder repository:

```
subscription-manager repos --enable codeready-builder-for-rhel-8-x86_64-rpms
```

Rocky or AlmaLinux 8.3+ users will need to enable the PowerTools repository:

```
dnf config-manager --enable powertools
```

RHEL 7 users will want to log in to their organization's respective RHN interface, find the particular machine in question and:

- click on "Subscribed Channels: Alter Channel Subscriptions"
- enable EPEL, Server Extras, Server Optional

Finally, install R with yum:

```
yum install R-core R-core-devel
```

Installing the required R libraries

The following R packages (libraries) are required:

```
R2HTML  
rjson  
DescTools  
Rserve  
haven
```

Install them following the normal R package installation procedures. For example, with the following R commands:

```
install.packages("R2HTML", repos="https://cloud.r-project.org/", lib="/usr/lib64/R/
library")
install.packages("rjson", repos="https://cloud.r-project.org/", lib="/usr/lib64/R/library
")
install.packages("DescTools", repos="https://cloud.r-project.org/", lib="/usr/lib64/R/
library")
install.packages("Rserve", repos="https://cloud.r-project.org/", lib="/usr/lib64/R/
library")
install.packages("haven", repos="https://cloud.r-project.org/", lib="/usr/lib64/R/library
")
```

Rserve

The Dataverse Software uses [Rserve](#) to communicate to R. Rserve is installed as a library package, as described in the step above. It runs as a daemon process on the server, accepting network connections on a dedicated port. This requires some extra configuration and we provide a script for setting it up.

You'll want to obtain local copies of the Rserve setup files found in <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/tree/master/scripts/r/rserve> either by cloning a local copy of the IQSS repository: git clone -b master <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse.git> or by downloading the files individually.

Run the script as follows (as root):

```
cd <DATVERSE SOURCE TREE>/scripts/r/rserve
./rserve-setup.sh
```

The setup script will create a system user rserve that will run the daemon process. It will install the startup script for the daemon (/etc/init.d/rserve), so that it gets started automatically when the system boots. This is an init.d-style startup file. If this is a RedHat/CentOS 7 system, you may want to use the /scripts/r/rserve/rserve.service systemd unit file instead. Copy it into the /usr/lib/systemd/system/ directory, then:

```
# systemctl daemon-reload
# systemctl enable rserve
# systemctl start rserve
```

Note that the setup will also set the Rserve password to “rserve”. Rserve daemon runs under a non-privileged user id, so there's not much potential for security damage through unauthorized access. It is however still a good idea to **change the password**. The password is specified in /etc/Rserv.pwd. You can consult [Rserve documentation](#) for more information on password encryption and access security.

You should already have the following 4 JVM options added to your domain.xml by the Dataverse installer:

```
<jvm-options>-Ddataverse.rserve.host=localhost</jvm-options>
<jvm-options>-Ddataverse.rserve.port=6311</jvm-options>
<jvm-options>-Ddataverse.rserve.user=rserve</jvm-options>
<jvm-options>-Ddataverse.rserve.password=rserve</jvm-options>
```

If you have changed the password, make sure it is correctly specified in the dataverse.rserve.password option above. If Rserve is running on a host that's different from your Dataverse installation, change the dataverse.rserve.host option above as well (and make sure the port 6311 on the Rserve host is not firewalled from your Dataverse installation host).

4.3.9 Counter Processor

Counter Processor is required to enable Make Data Count metrics in a Dataverse installation. See the [Make Data Count](#) section of the Admin Guide for a description of this feature. Counter Processor is open source and we will be downloading it from <https://github.com/CDLUC3/counter-processor>

Installing Counter Processor

A scripted installation using Ansible is mentioned in the [Make Data Count](#) section of the Developer Guide.

As root, download and install Counter Processor:

```
cd /usr/local
wget https://github.com/CDLUC3/counter-processor/archive/v0.1.04.tar.gz
tar xvfz v0.1.04.tar.gz
cd /usr/local/counter-processor-0.1.04
```

Installing GeoLite Country Database

Counter Processor can report per country results if the optional GeoLite Country Database is installed. At present, this database is free but to use it one must sign an agreement (EULA) with MaxMind. (The primary concern appears to be that individuals can opt-out of having their location tracked via IP address and, due to various privacy laws, MaxMind needs a way to comply with that for products it has “sold” (for no cost in this case). Their agreement requires you to either configure automatic updates to the GeoLite Country database or be responsible on your own for managing take down notices.) The process required to sign up, download the database, and to configure automated updating is described at <https://blog.maxmind.com/2019/12/18/significant-changes-to-accessing-and-using-geolite2-databases/> and the links from that page.

As root, change to the Counter Processor directory you just created, download the GeoLite2-Country tarball from MaxMind, untar it, and copy the geoip database into place:

```
<download or move the GeoLite2-Country.tar.gz to the /usr/local/counter-processor-0.1.04 directory>
tar xvfz GeoLite2-Country.tar.gz
cp GeoLite2-Country_*/*GeoLite2-Country.mmdb maxmind_geoipl
```

Creating a counter User

As root, create a “counter” user and change ownership of Counter Processor directory to this new user:

```
useradd counter
chown -R counter:counter /usr/local/counter-processor-0.1.04
```

Installing Counter Processor Python Requirements

Counter Processor version 0.1.04 requires Python 3.7 or higher. This version of Python is available in many operating systems, and is purportedly available for RHEL7 or CentOS 7 via Red Hat Software Collections. Alternately, one may compile it from source.

The following commands are intended to be run as root but we are aware that Pythonistas might prefer fancy virtualenv or similar setups. Pull requests are welcome to improve these steps!

Install Python 3.9:

```
yum install python39
```

Install Counter Processor Python requirements:

```
python3.9 -m ensurepip
cd /usr/local/counter-processor-0.1.04
pip3 install -r requirements.txt
```

See the [Make Data Count](#) section of the Admin Guide for how to configure and run Counter Processor.

4.3.10 Next Steps

Now that you have all the prerequisites in place, you can proceed to the [Installation](#) section.

4.4 Installation

Now that the [Prerequisites](#) are in place, we are ready to execute the Dataverse Software installation script (the “installer”) and verify that the installation was successful by logging in with a “superuser” account.

Contents:

- [Running the Dataverse Software Installer](#)
- [Logging In](#)
 - [Superuser Account](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Dataset Cannot Be Published](#)
 - [Got ERR_ADDRESS_UNREACHABLE While Navigating on Interface or API Calls](#)
 - [Problems Sending Email](#)
 - [Mail Host Configuration & Authentication](#)
 - [UnknownHostException While Deploying](#)
- [Fresh Reinstall](#)
 - [Drop database](#)
 - [Clear Solr](#)
 - [Deleting Uploaded Files](#)

– *Rerun Installer*

- *Getting Support for Installation Trouble*

4.4.1 Running the Dataverse Software Installer

A scripted, interactive installer is provided. This script will configure your app server environment, create the database, set some required options and start the application. Some configuration tasks will still be required after you run the installer! So make sure to consult the next section.

As mentioned in the [Prerequisites](#) section, RHEL or a derivative such as RockyLinux or AlmaLinux is recommended. (The installer is also known to work on Mac OS X for setting up a development environment.)

Generally, the installer has a better chance of succeeding if you run it against a freshly installed Payara node that still has all the default configuration settings. In any event, please make sure that it is still configured to accept http connections on port 8080 - because that's where the installer expects to find the application once it's deployed.

You should have already downloaded the installer from <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/releases> when setting up and starting Solr under the [Prerequisites](#) section. Again, it's a zip file with “dvinstall” in the name.

Unpack the zip file - this will create the directory dvinstall.

Important: The installer will need to use the PostgreSQL command line utility psql in order to configure the database. If the executable is not in your system PATH, the installer will try to locate it on your system. However, we strongly recommend that you check and make sure it is in the PATH. This is especially important if you have multiple versions of PostgreSQL installed on your system. Make sure the psql that came with the version that you want to use with your Dataverse installation is the first on your path. For example, if the PostgreSQL distribution you are running is installed in /Library/PostgreSQL/13, add /Library/PostgreSQL/13/bin to the beginning of your \$PATH variable. If you are *running* multiple PostgreSQL servers, make sure you know the port number of the one you want to use, as the installer will need it in order to connect to the database (the first PostgreSQL distribution installed on your system is likely using the default port 5432; but the second will likely be on 5433, etc.) Does every word in this paragraph make sense? If it does, great - because you definitely need to be comfortable with basic system tasks in order to install the Dataverse Software. If not - if you don't know how to check where your PostgreSQL is installed, or what port it is running on, or what a \$PATH is... it's not too late to stop. Because it will most likely not work. And if you contact us for help, these will be the questions we'll be asking you - so, again, you need to be able to answer them comfortably for it to work.

It is no longer necessary to run the installer as root!

Just make sure the user running the installer has write permission to:

- /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/lib
- /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1
- the current working directory of the installer (it currently writes its logfile there), and
- your jvm-option specified files.dir

The only reason to run Payara as root would be to allow Payara itself to listen on the default HTTP(S) ports 80 and 443, or any other port below 1024. However, it is simpler and more secure to run Payara run on its default port of 8080 and hide it behind an Apache Proxy, via AJP, running on port 80 or 443. This configuration is required if you're going to use Shibboleth authentication. See more discussion on this here: [Shibboleth](#).)

Read the installer script directions like this:

```
$ cd dvinstall  
$ less README_python.txt
```

Alternatively you can use the *README_python.txt* located at */scripts/installer/README_python.txt* from this guide.

Follow the instructions in the text file.

The script will prompt you for some configuration values. If this is a test/evaluation installation, it may be possible to accept the default values provided for most of the settings:

- Internet Address of your host: localhost
- Payara Directory: /usr/local/payara5
- Payara User: current user running the installer script
- Administrator email address for this Dataverse installation: (none)
- SMTP (mail) server to relay notification messages: localhost
- Postgres Server Address: [127.0.0.1]
- Postgres Server Port: 5432
- Postgres ADMIN password: secret
- Name of the Postgres Database: dvndb
- Name of the Postgres User: dvnapp
- Postgres user password: secret
- Remote Solr indexing service: LOCAL
- Rserve Server: localhost
- Rserve Server Port: 6311
- Rserve User Name: rserve
- Rserve User Password: rserve
- Administration Email address for the installation;
- Postgres admin password - We'll need it in order to create the database and user for the Dataverse Software installer to use, without having to run the installer as root. If you don't know your Postgres admin password, you may simply set the authorization level for localhost to "trust" in the PostgreSQL pg_hba.conf file (See the PostgreSQL section in the Prerequisites). If this is a production environment, you may want to change it back to something more secure, such as "password" or "md5", after the installation is complete.
- Network address of a remote Solr search engine service (if needed) - In most cases, you will be running your Solr server on the same host as the Dataverse Software application (then you will want to leave this set to the default value of LOCAL). But in a serious production environment you may set it up on a dedicated separate server.

If desired, these default values can be configured by creating a `default.config` (located at */scripts/installer/default.config*) file in the installer's working directory with new values (if this file isn't present, the above defaults will be used).

This allows the installer to be run in non-interactive mode (with `./install -y -f > install.out 2> install.err`), which can allow for easier interaction with automated provisioning tools.

All the Payara configuration tasks performed by the installer are isolated in the shell script `dvinstall/as-setup.sh` (as `asadmin` commands).

While Postgres can accomodate usernames and database names containing hyphens, it is strongly recommended to use only alphanumeric characters.

IMPORTANT: As a security measure, the `as-setup.sh` script stores passwords as "aliases" rather than plain-text. If you change your database password, for example, you will need to update the alias with `asadmin`

`update-password-alias dataverse.db.password`, for example. Here is a list of the password aliases that are set by the installation process and entered into Payara's `domain.xml` file:

- `dataverse.db.password`
- `doi_password_alias`
- `rserve_password_alias`

For more information, please see <https://docs.payara.fish/documentation/payara-server/password-aliases/password-alias-asadmin-commands.html>

IMPORTANT: The installer will also ask for an external site URL for the Dataverse installation. It is *imperative* that this value be supplied accurately, or a long list of functions will be inoperable, including:

- email confirmation links
- password reset links
- generating a Private URL
- exporting to Schema.org format (and showing JSON-LD in HTML's `<meta/>` tag)
- exporting to DDI format
- which Dataverse installation an “external tool” should return to
- URLs embedded in SWORD API responses

The supplied site URL will be saved under the JVM option `dataverse.siteUrl`.

IMPORTANT: Please note, that “out of the box” the installer will configure the Dataverse installation to leave unrestricted access to the administration APIs from (and only from) localhost. Please consider the security implications of this arrangement (anyone with shell access to the server can potentially mess with your Dataverse installation). An alternative solution would be to block open access to these sensitive API endpoints completely; and to only allow requests supplying a pre-defined “unblock token” (password). If you prefer that as a solution, please consult the supplied script `post-install-api-block.sh` for examples on how to set it up. See also “Securing Your Installation” under the [Configuration](#) section.

The Dataverse Software uses [JHOVE](#) to help identify the file format (CSV, PNG, etc.) for files that users have uploaded. The installer places files called `jhove.conf` and `jhoveConfig.xsd` into the directory `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/config` by default and makes adjustments to the `jhove.conf` file based on the directory into which you chose to install Payara.

4.4.2 Logging In

Out of the box, Payara runs on port 8080 and 8181 rather than 80 and 443, respectively, so visiting <http://localhost:8080> (substituting your hostname) should bring up a login page. See the [Shibboleth](#) page for more on ports, but for now, let's confirm we can log in by using port 8080. Poke a temporary hole in your firewall, if needed.

Superuser Account

We'll use the superuser account created by the installer to make sure you can log into the Dataverse installation. For more on the difference between being a superuser and having the "Admin" role, read about configuring the root Dataverse collection in the [Configuration](#) section.

(The `dvinstall/setup-all.sh` script, which is called by the installer sets the password for the superuser account account and the username and email address come from a file it references at `dvinstall/data/user-admin.json`.)

Use the following credentials to log in:

- URL: <http://localhost:8080>
- username: dataverseAdmin
- password: admin

Congratulations! You have a working Dataverse installation. Soon you'll be tweeting at [@dataverseorg](#) asking to be added to the map at <http://dataverse.org> :)

Trouble? See if you find an answer in the troubleshooting section below.

Next you'll want to check out the [Configuration](#) section, especially the section on security which reminds you to change the password above.

4.4.3 Troubleshooting

If the following doesn't apply, please get in touch as explained in [Getting Help](#).

Dataset Cannot Be Published

Check to make sure you used a fully qualified domain name when installing the Dataverse Software. You can change the `dataverse.fqdn` JVM option after the fact per the [Configuration](#) section.

Got ERR_ADDRESS_UNREACHABLE While Navigating on Interface or API Calls

If you are receiving an `ERR_ADDRESS_UNREACHABLE` while navigating the GUI or making an API call, make sure the `siteUrl` JVM option is defined. For details on how to set `siteUrl`, please refer to `dataverse.siteUrl` from the [Configuration](#) section. For context on why setting this option is necessary, refer to `dataverse.fqdn` from the [Configuration](#) section.

Problems Sending Email

If your Dataverse installation is not sending system emails, you may need to provide authentication for your mail host. First, double check the SMTP server being used with this Payara `asadmin` command:

```
./asadmin get server.resources.mail-resource.mail/notifyMailSession.host
```

This should return the DNS of the mail host you configured during or after installation. `mail/notifyMailSession` is the JavaMail Session that's used to send emails to users.

If the command returns a host you don't want to use, you can modify your `notifyMailSession` with the Payara `asadmin set` command with necessary options ([click here for the manual page](#)), or via the admin console at <http://localhost:4848> with your domain running.

If your mail host requires a username/password for access, continue to the next section.

Mail Host Configuration & Authentication

If you need to alter your mail host address, user, or provide a password to connect with, these settings are easily changed in the Payara admin console or via command line.

For the Payara console, load a browser with your domain online, navigate to <http://localhost:4848> and on the side panel find JavaMail Sessions. By default, the Dataverse Software uses a session named mail/notifyMailSession for routing outgoing emails. Click this mail session in the window to modify it.

When fine tuning your JavaMail Session, there are a number of fields you can edit. The most important are:

- **Mail Host:** Desired mail host's DNS address (e.g. smtp.gmail.com)
- **Default User:** Username mail host will recognize (e.g. user@gmail.com)
- **Default Sender Address:** Email address that your Dataverse installation will send mail from

Depending on the SMTP server you're using, you may need to add additional properties at the bottom of the page (below "Advanced").

From the "Add Properties" utility at the bottom, use the "Add Property" button for each entry you need, and include the name / corresponding value as needed. Descriptions are optional, but can be used for your own organizational needs.

Note: These properties are just an example. You may need different/more/fewer properties all depending on the SMTP server you're using.

Name	Value
mail.smtp.auth	true
mail.smtp.password	[Default User password*]
mail.smtp.port	[Port number to route through]

***WARNING:** Entering a password here will *not* conceal it on-screen. It's recommended to use an *app password* (for smtp.gmail.com users) or utilize a dedicated/non-personal user account with SMTP server auths so that you do not risk compromising your password.

If your installation's mail host uses SSL (like smtp.gmail.com) you'll need these name/value pair properties in place:

Name	Value
mail.smtp.socketFactory.port	465
mail.smtp.port	465
mail.smtp.socketFactory.fallback	false
mail.smtp.socketFactory.class	javax.net.ssl.SSLSocketFactory

The mail session can also be set from command line. To use this method, you will need to delete your notifyMailSession and create a new one. See the below example:

- Delete: `./asadmin delete-javamail-resource mail/notifyMailSession`
- Create (remove brackets and replace the variables inside): `./asadmin create-javamail-resource --mailhost [smtp.gmail.com] --mailuser [test\@test\.com] --fromaddress [test\@test\.com] --property mail.smtp.auth=[true]:mail.smtp.password=[password]:mail.smtp.port=[465]:mail.smtp.socketFactory.port=[465]:mail.smtp.socketFactory.fallback=[false]:mail.smtp.socketFactory.class=[javax.net.ssl.SSLSocketFactory] mail/notifyMailSession`

Be sure you save the changes made here and then restart your Payara server to test it out.

UnknownHostException While Deploying

If you are seeing “Caused by: java.net.UnknownHostException: myhost: Name or service not known” in server.log and your hostname is “myhost” the problem is likely that “myhost” doesn’t appear in /etc/hosts. See also <http://stackoverflow.com/questions/21817809/glassfish-exception-during-deployment-project-with-stateful-ejb/21850873#21850873>

4.4.4 Fresh Reinstall

Early on when you’re installing the Dataverse Software, you may think, “I just want to blow away what I’ve installed and start over.” That’s fine. You don’t have to uninstall the various components like Payara, PostgreSQL and Solr, but you should be conscious of how to clear out their data. For Payara, a common helpful process is to:

- Stop Payara;
- Remove the generated, lib/databases and osgi-cache directories from the domain1 directory;
- Start Payara

Drop database

In order to drop the database, you have to stop Payara, which will have open connections. Before you stop Payara, you may as well undeploy the war file. First, find the name like this:

```
./asadmin list-applications
```

Then undeploy it like this:

```
./asadmin undeploy dataverse-VERSION
```

Stop Payara with the init script provided in the *Prerequisites* section or just use:

```
./asadmin stop-domain
```

With Payara down, you should now be able to drop your database and recreate it:

```
psql -U dvnapp -c 'DROP DATABASE "dvndb"' template1
```

Clear Solr

The database is fresh and new but Solr has stale data it in. Clear it out with this command:

```
curl http://localhost:8983/solr/collection1/update/json?commit=true -H "Content-type: application/json" -X POST -d "{\"delete\": { \"query\":\"*:*\\"}}"
```

Deleting Uploaded Files

The path below will depend on the value for `dataverse.files.directory` as described in the *Configuration* section:

```
rm -rf /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/files
```

Rerun Installer

With all the data cleared out, you should be ready to rerun the installer per above.

Related to all this is a series of scripts at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/blob/develop/scripts/deploy/phoenix.dataverse.org/deploy> that Dataverse Project Team and Community developers use have the test server <http://phoenix.dataverse.org> rise from the ashes before integration tests are run against it. For more on this topic, see *Rebuilding Your Dev Environment* section of the Developer Guide.

4.4.5 Getting Support for Installation Trouble

See *Getting Help*.

4.5 Configuration

Now that you've successfully logged into your Dataverse installation with a superuser account after going through a basic *Installation*, you'll need to secure and configure your installation.

Settings within your Dataverse installation itself are managed via JVM options or by manipulating values in the *setting* table directly or through API calls.

Once you have finished securing and configuring your Dataverse installation, you may proceed to the *Admin Guide* for more information on the ongoing administration of a Dataverse installation. Advanced configuration topics are covered in the *Shibboleth* and *OAuth Login Options* sections.

Contents:

- *Securing Your Installation*
 - *Changing the Superuser Password*
 - *Blocking API Endpoints*
 - *Forcing HTTPS*
 - *Recording User IP Addresses*
 - *Privacy Considerations*
 - * *Email Privacy*
 - *Additional Recommendations*
 - * *Run Payara as a User Other Than Root*
 - * *Enforce Strong Passwords for User Accounts*
 - *Ongoing Security of Your Installation*
 - *Reporting Security Issues*
- *Network Ports*
- *Root Dataverse Collection Permissions*
- *Persistent Identifiers and Publishing Datasets*
 - *Configuring Your Dataverse Installation for DOIs*
 - *Configuring Your Dataverse Installation for Handles*

- *Auth Modes: Local vs. Remote vs. Both*
 - *Local Only Auth*
 - *Both Local and Remote Auth*
 - *Remote Only Auth*
- *File Storage: Using a Local Filesystem and/or Swift and/or Object Stores and/or Trusted Remote Stores*
 - *Multi-store Basics*
 - *File Storage*
 - *Swift Storage*
 - * *Setting up Compute with Swift*
 - *Amazon S3 Storage (or Compatible)*
 - * *First: Set Up Accounts and Access Credentials*
 - *Preparation When Using Amazon's S3 Service*
 - *Preparation When Using Custom S3-Compatible Service*
 - *Manually Set Up Credentials File*
 - *Console Commands to Set Up Access Configuration*
 - * *Second: Configure Your Dataverse Installation to use S3 Storage*
 - *List of S3 Storage Options*
 - *Credentials via MicroProfile Config*
 - *Reported Working S3-Compatible Storage*
 - *Migrating from Local Storage to S3*
 - *Trusted Remote Storage*
 - *Temporary Upload File Storage*
- *Branding Your Installation*
 - *Parts of a Dataverse Installation Webpage*
 - *Installation Name/Brand Name*
 - *Header Block*
 - * *Navbar*
 - *Custom Navbar Logo*
 - *About URL*
 - *User Guide URL*
 - *Support URL*
 - *Sign Up*
 - * *Custom Header*
 - *Content Block*
 - * *Custom Homepage*

- *Footer Block*
 - * *Default Footer*
 - *Footer Copyright*
 - * *Custom Footer*
- *Custom Stylesheet*
- *Internationalization*
 - *Adding Multiple Languages to the Dropdown in the Header*
 - *Allowing the Language Used for Dataset Metadata to be Specified*
 - *Configuring the “lang” Directory*
 - *Creating a languages.zip File*
 - *Load the languages.zip file into your Dataverse Installation*
 - *How to Help Translate the Dataverse Software Into Your Language*
 - *Tools for Translators*
- *Web Analytics Code*
 - *Tracking Button Clicks*
- *Configuring Licenses*
 - *Setting the Default License*
 - *Adding Licenses*
 - * *Adding Creative Common Licenses*
 - * *Adding Custom Licenses*
 - *Removing Licenses*
 - *Disabling Custom Dataset Terms*
- *Sorting licenses*
- *BagIt File Handler*
- *BagIt Export*
 - *Duracloud Configuration*
 - *Local Path Configuration*
 - *Google Cloud Configuration*
 - *S3 Configuration*
 - *BagIt Export API Calls*
 - *PostPublication Workflow*
- *Going Live: Launching Your Production Deployment*
 - *Letting Search Engines Crawl Your Installation*
 - * *Ensure robots.txt Is Not Blocking Search Engines*
 - * *Creating a Sitemap and Submitting it to Search Engines*

- *Putting Your Dataverse Installation on the Map at dataverse.org*
- *Administration of Your Dataverse Installation*
- *Setting Up Integrations*
- *JVM Options*
 - *dataverse.fqdn*
 - *dataverse.siteUrl*
 - *dataverse.files.directory*
 - *dataverse.files.uploads*
 - *dataverse.auth.password-reset-timeout-in-minutes*
 - *dataverse.db.name*
 - *dataverse.db.user*
 - *dataverse.db.password*
 - *dataverse.db.host*
 - *dataverse.db.port*
 - *dataverse.solr.host*
 - *dataverse.solr.port*
 - *dataverse.solr.core*
 - *dataverse.solr.protocol*
 - *dataverse.solr.path*
 - *dataverse.rserve.host*
 - *dataverse.rserve.port*
 - *dataverse.rserve.user*
 - *dataverse.rserve.password*
 - *dataverse.rserve.tempdir*
 - *dataverse.dropbox.key*
 - *dataverse.path.imagemagick.convert*
 - *dataverse.dataAccess.thumbnail.image.limit*
 - *dataverse.dataAccess.thumbnail.pdf.limit*
 - *doi.baseurlstring*
 - *doi.dataciterestapiurlstring*
 - *doi.username*
 - *doi.password*
 - *dataverse.handle.net.admcredfile*
 - *dataverse.handle.net.admprivphrase*
 - *dataverse.handle.net.index*

- *dataverse.timerServer*
- *dataverse.lang.directory*
- *dataverse.files.hide-schema-dot-org-download-urls*
- *dataverse.useripaddresssourceheader*
- *dataverse.api.signature-secret*
- *Application Server Settings*
 - *http.request-timeout-seconds*
 - *mp.config.profile*
- *Database Settings*
 - *:BlockedApiPolicy*
 - *:BlockedApiEndpoints*
 - *:BlockedApiKey*
 - *BuiltinUsers.KEY*
 - *:SearchApiRequiresToken*
 - *:SystemEmail*
 - *:HomePageCustomizationFile*
 - *:LogoCustomizationFile*
 - *:HeaderCustomizationFile*
 - *:DisableRootDataverseTheme*
 - *:FooterCustomizationFile*
 - *:StyleCustomizationFile*
 - *:WebAnalyticsCode*
 - *:FooterCopyright*
 - *:DoiProvider*
 - *:Protocol*
 - *:Authority*
 - *:Shoulder*
 - *:IdentifierGenerationStyle*
 - *:DataFilePIDFormat*
 - *:FilePIDsEnabled*
 - *:IndependentHandleService*
 - *:HandleAuthHandle*
 - *:FileValidationOnPublishEnabled*
 - *:ApplicationTermsOfUse*
 - *:ApplicationPrivacyPolicyUrl*

- `:ApiTermsOfUse`
- `:ExcludeEmailFromExport`
- `:NavbarAboutUrl`
- `:NavbarGuidesUrl`
- `:GuidesBaseUrl`
- `:GuidesVersion`
- `:NavbarSupportUrl`
- `:MetricsUrl`
- `:MaxFileSizeInBytes`
- `:MultipleUploadFilesLimit`
- `:ZipDownloadLimit`
- `:TabularIngestSizeLimit`
- `:ZipUploadFilesLimit`
- `:SolrHostColonPort`
- `:SolrFullTextIndexing`
- `:SolrMaxFileSizeForFullTextIndexing`
- `:SignUpUrl`
- `:LoginSessionTimeout`
- `:DatasetPublishPopupCustomText`
- `:DatasetPublishPopupCustomTextOnAllVersions`
- `:SearchHighlightFragmentSize`
- `:ScrubMigrationData`
- `:MinutesUntilConfirmEmailTokenExpires`
- `:DefaultAuthProvider`
- `:AllowSignUp`
- `:AllowRemoteAuthSignUp`
- `:FileFixityChecksumAlgorithm`
- `:PVMinLength`
- `:PVMaxLength`
- `:PVNumberOfConsecutiveDigitsAllowed`
- `:PVCharacterRules`
- `:PVNumberOfCharacteristics`
- `:PVDictionaries`
- `:PVGoodStrength`
- `:PVCustomPasswordResetAlertMessage`

- `:ShibPassiveLoginEnabled`
- `:ShibAffiliationAttribute`
- `:ShibAttributeCharacterSetConversionEnabled`
- `:ShibAffiliationOrder`
- `:ShibAffiliationSeparator`
- `:ComputeBaseUrl`
- `:CloudEnvironmentName`
- `:PublicInstall`
- `:DataCaptureModuleUrl`
- `:RepositoryStorageAbstractionLayerUrl`
- `:UploadMethods`
- `:DownloadMethods`
- `:GuestbookResponsesPageDisplayLimit`
- `:CustomDatasetSummaryFields`
- `:AllowApiClientLookupViaApi`
- `:ProvCollectionEnabled`
- `:MetricsCacheTimeoutMinutes`
- `:MDCLogPath`
- `:DisplayMDCMetrics`
- `:Languages`
- `:MetadataLanguages`
- `:InheritParentRoleAssignments`
- `:AllowCors`
- `:ChronologicalDateFacets`
- `:CustomZipDownloadServiceUrl`
- `:CreateDataFilesMaxErrorsToDisplay`
- `:BagItHandlerEnabled`
- `:BagValidatorJobPoolSize`
- `:BagValidatorMaxErrors`
- `:BagValidatorJobWaitInterval`
- `:ArchiverClassName`
- `:ArchiverSettings`
- `:BagGeneratorThreads`
- `:DuraCloudHost`
- `:DuraCloudPort`

- `:DuraCloudContext`
- `:BagItLocalPath`
- `:GoogleCloudBucket`
- `:GoogleCloudProject`
- `:S3ArchiverConfig`
- `:InstallationName`
- `:ExportInstallationAsDistributorOnlyWhenNotSet`
- `:AnonymizedFieldTypeNames`
- `:DatasetChecksumValidationSizeLimit`
- `:DataFileChecksumValidationSizeLimit`
- `:SendNotificationOnDatasetCreation`
- `:CVocConf`
- `:ControlledVocabularyCustomJavaScript`
- `:AllowedCurationLabels`
- `:AllowCustomTermsOfUse`
- `:MaxEmbargoDurationInMonths`
- `:DataverseMetadataValidatorScript`
- `:DataverseMetadataPublishValidationFailureMsg`
- `:DataverseMetadataUpdateValidationFailureMsg`
- `:DatasetMetadataValidatorScript`
- `:DatasetMetadataValidationFailureMsg`
- `:ExternalValidationAdminOverride`
- `:FileCategories`
- `:ShowMuteOptions`
- `:AlwaysMuted`
- `:NeverMuted`
- `:LDNMessageHosts`
- `:LDN_TARGET`
- `:LDNAnnounceRequiredFields`
- `:GlobusBasicToken`
- `:GlobusEndpoint`
- `:GlobusStores`
- `:GlobusAppURL`
- `:GlobusPollingInterval`
- `:GlobusSingleFileTransfer`

– :WebloaderUrl

4.5.1 Securing Your Installation

Changing the Superuser Password

The default password for the “dataverseAdmin” superuser account is “admin”, as mentioned in the *Installation* section, and you should change it, of course.

Blocking API Endpoints

The *Native API* contains a useful but potentially dangerous API endpoint called “admin” that allows you to change system settings, make ordinary users into superusers, and more. The “builtin-users” endpoint lets admins create a local/builtin user account if they know the key defined in *BuiltinUsers.KEY*.

By default, most APIs can be operated on remotely and a number of endpoints do not require authentication. The endpoints “admin” and “builtin-users” are limited to localhost out of the box by the settings *:BlockedApiEndpoints* and *:BlockedApiPolicy*.

It is very important to keep the block in place for the “admin” endpoint, and to leave the “builtin-users” endpoint blocked unless you need to access it remotely. Documentation for the “admin” endpoint is spread across the *Native API* section of the API Guide and the *Admin Guide*.

It’s also possible to prevent file uploads via API by adjusting the *:UploadMethods* database setting.

Forcing HTTPS

To avoid having your users send credentials in the clear, it’s strongly recommended to force all web traffic to go through HTTPS (port 443) rather than HTTP (port 80). The ease with which one can install a valid SSL cert into Apache compared with the same operation in Payara might be a compelling enough reason to front Payara with Apache. In addition, Apache can be configured to rewrite HTTP to HTTPS with rules such as those found at <https://wiki.apache.org/httpd/RewriteHTTPToHTTPS> or in the section on *Shibboleth*.

Recording User IP Addresses

By default, the Dataverse installation captures the IP address from which requests originate. This is used for multiple purposes including controlling access to the admin API, IP-based user groups and Make Data Count reporting. When the Dataverse installation is configured behind a proxy such as a load balancer, this default setup may not capture the correct IP address. In this case all the incoming requests will be logged in the access logs, MDC logs etc., as if they are all coming from the IP address(es) of the load balancer itself. Proxies usually save the original address in an added HTTP header, from which it can be extracted. For example, AWS LB records the “true” original address in the standard *X-Forwarded-For* header. If your Dataverse installation is running behind an IP-masking proxy, but you would like to use IP groups, or record the true geographical location of the incoming requests with Make Data Count, you may enable the IP address lookup from the proxy header using the JVM option *dataverse.useripaddresssourceheader*, described further below.

Before doing so however, you must absolutely **consider the security risks involved!** This option must be enabled **only** on a Dataverse installation that is in fact fully behind a proxy that properly, and consistently, adds the *X-Forwarded-For* (or a similar) header to every request it forwards. Consider the implications of activating this option on a Dataverse installation that is not running behind a proxy, *or running behind one, but still accessible from the insecure locations bypassing the proxy*: Anyone can now add the header above to an incoming request, supplying an arbitrary IP address that the Dataverse installation will trust as the true origin of the call. Thus giving an attacker an easy way to, for example,

get in a privileged IP group. The implications could be even more severe if an attacker were able to pretend to be coming from `localhost`, if a Dataverse installation is configured to trust localhost connections for unrestricted access to the admin API! We have addressed this by making it so that Dataverse installation should never accept `localhost`, `127.0.0.1`, `0:0:0:0:0:0:1` etc. when supplied in such a header. But if you have reasons to still find this risk unacceptable, you may want to consider turning open localhost access to the API off (See [Securing Your Installation](#) for more information.)

This is how to verify that your proxy or load balancer, etc. is handling the originating address headers properly and securely: Make sure access logging is enabled in your application server (Payara) configuration. (`<http-service access-logging-enabled="true">` in the `domain.xml`). Add the address header to the access log format. For example, on a system behind AWS ELB, you may want to use something like `%client.name% %datetime% %request% %status% %response.length% %header.referer% %header.x-forwarded-for%`. Once enabled, access the Dataverse installation from outside the LB. You should now see the real IP address of your remote client in the access log. For example, something like: `"1.2.3.4" "01/Jun/2020:12:00:00 -0500" "GET /dataverse.xhtml HTTP/1.1" 200 81082 "NULL-REFERER" "128.64.32.16"`

In this example, `128.64.32.16` is your remote address (that you should verify), and `1.2.3.4` is the address of your LB. If you're not seeing your remote address in the log, do not activate the JVM option! Also, verify that all the entries in the log have this header populated. The only entries in the access log that you should be seeing without this header (logged as "NULL-HEADER-X-FORWARDED-FOR") are local requests, made from `localhost`, etc. In this case, since the request is not coming through the proxy, the local IP address should be logged as the primary one (as the first value in the log entry, `%client.name%`). If you see any requests coming in from remote, insecure subnets without this header - do not use the JVM option!

Once you are ready, enable the [JVM option](#). Verify that the remote locations are properly tracked in your MDC metrics, and/or your IP groups are working. As a final test, if your Dataverse installation is allowing unrestricted localhost access to the admin API, imitate an attack in which a malicious request is pretending to be coming from `127.0.0.1`. Try the following from a remote, insecure location:

```
curl https://your.dataverse.edu/api/admin/settings --header "X-FORWARDED-FOR: 127.0.0.1"
```

First of all, confirm that access is denied! If you are in fact able to access the settings api from a location outside the proxy, **something is seriously wrong**, so please let us know, and stop using the JVM option. Otherwise check the access log entry for the header value. What you should see is something like `"127.0.0.1, 128.64.32.16"`. Where the second address should be the real IP of your remote client. The fact that the "fake" `127.0.0.1` you sent over is present in the header is perfectly ok. This is the proper proxy behavior - it preserves any incoming values in the X-Forwarded-Header, if supplied, and adds the detected incoming address to it, *on the right*. It is only this rightmost comma-separated value that Dataverse installation should ever be using.

Still feel like activating this option in your configuration? - Have fun and be safe!

Privacy Considerations

Email Privacy

Out of the box, your Dataverse installation will list email addresses of the contacts for datasets when users visit a dataset page and click the "Export Metadata" button. Additionally, out of the box, the Dataverse installation will list email addresses of Dataverse collection contacts via API (see [View a Dataverse Collection](#) in the [Native API](#) section of the API Guide). If you would like to exclude these email addresses from export, set `:ExcludeEmailFromExport` to true.

Additional Recommendations

Run Payara as a User Other Than Root

See the [Payara](#) section of [Prerequisites](#) for details and init scripts for running Payara as non-root.

Related to this is that you should remove `/root/.payara/pass` to ensure that Payara isn't ever accidentally started as root. Without the password, Payara won't be able to start as root, which is a good thing.

Enforce Strong Passwords for User Accounts

Your Dataverse installation only stores passwords (as salted hash, and using a strong hashing algorithm) for “builtin” users. You can increase the password complexity rules to meet your security needs. If you have configured your Dataverse installation to allow login from remote authentication providers such as Shibboleth, ORCID, GitHub or Google, you do not have any control over those remote providers’ password complexity rules. See the [Auth Modes: Local vs. Remote vs. Both](#) section below for more on login options.

Even if you are satisfied with the out-of-the-box password complexity rules the Dataverse Software ships with, for the “dataverseAdmin” account you should use a strong password so the hash cannot easily be cracked through dictionary attacks.

Password complexity rules for “builtin” accounts can be adjusted with a variety of settings documented below. Here’s a list:

- `:PVMinLength`
- `:PVMaxLength`
- `:PVNumberOfConsecutiveDigitsAllowed`
- `:PVCharacterRules`
- `:PVNumberOfCharacteristics`
- `:PVDictionaries`
- `:PVGoodStrength`
- `:PVCustomPasswordResetAlertMessage`

Ongoing Security of Your Installation

Like any application, you should keep up-to-date with patches to both the Dataverse software and the platform (usually Linux) it runs on. Dataverse releases are announced on the [dataverse-community](#) mailing list, the Dataverse [blog](#), and in [chat.dataverse.org](#).

In addition to these public channels, you can subscribe to receive security notices via email from the Dataverse team. These notices are sent to the `contact_email` in the installation [spreadsheet](#) and you can open an issue in the [dataverse-installations](#) repo to add or change the contact email. Security notices are also sent to people and organizations that prefer to remain anonymous. To be added to this private list, please email support@dataverse.org.

For additional details about security practices by the Dataverse team, see the [Security](#) section of the Developer Guide.

Reporting Security Issues

If you have a security issue to report, please email it to security@dataverse.org.

4.5.2 Network Ports

Remember how under “Decisions to Make” in the *Preparation* section we mentioned you’ll need to make a decision about whether or not to introduce a proxy in front of the Dataverse Software such as Apache or nginx? The time has come to make that decision.

The need to redirect port HTTP (port 80) to HTTPS (port 443) for security has already been mentioned above and the fact that Payara puts these services on 8080 and 8181, respectively, was touched on in the *Installation* section. In production, you don’t want to tell your users to use your Dataverse installation on ports 8080 and 8181. You should have them use the standard HTTPS port, which is 443.

Your decision to proxy or not should primarily be driven by which features of the Dataverse Software you’d like to use. If you’d like to use Shibboleth, the decision is easy because proxying or “fronting” Payara with Apache is required. The details are covered in the *Shibboleth* section.

Even if you have no interest in Shibboleth, you may want to front your Dataverse installation with Apache or nginx to simply the process of installing SSL certificates. There are many tutorials on the Internet for adding certs to Apache, including a some [notes used by the Dataverse Project team](#), but the process of adding a certificate to Payara is arduous and not for the faint of heart. The Dataverse Project team cannot provide much help with adding certificates to Payara beyond linking to [tips](#) on the web.

Still not convinced you should put Payara behind another web server? Even if you manage to get your SSL certificate into Payara, how are you going to run Payara on low ports such as 80 and 443? Are you going to run Payara as root? Bad idea. This is a security risk. Under “Additional Recommendations” under “Securing Your Installation” above you are advised to configure Payara to run as a user other than root.

There’s also the issue of serving a production-ready version of robots.txt. By using a proxy such as Apache, this is a one-time “set it and forget it” step as explained below in the “Going Live” section.

If you are convinced you’d like to try fronting Payara with Apache, the *Shibboleth* section should be good resource for you.

If you really don’t want to front Payara with any proxy (not recommended), you can configure Payara to run HTTPS on port 443 like this:

```
./asadmin set server-config.network-config.network-listeners.network-listener.  
http-listener-2.port=443
```

What about port 80? Even if you don’t front your Dataverse installation with Apache, you may want to let Apache run on port 80 just to rewrite HTTP to HTTPS as described above. You can use a similar command as above to change the HTTP port that Payara uses from 8080 to 80 (substitute `http-listener-1.port=80`). Payara can be used to enforce HTTPS on its own without Apache, but configuring this is an exercise for the reader. Answers here may be helpful: <http://stackoverflow.com/questions/25122025/glassfish-v4-java-7-port-unification-error-not-able-to-redirect-http-to>

If you are running an installation with Apache and Payara on the same server, and would like to restrict Payara from responding to any requests to port 8080 from external hosts (in other words, not through Apache), you can restrict the AJP listener to localhost only with:

```
./asadmin set server-config.network-config.network-listeners.network-listener.  
http-listener-1.address=127.0.0.1
```

You should **NOT** use the configuration option above if you are running in a load-balanced environment, or otherwise have the web server on a different host than the application server.

4.5.3 Root Dataverse Collection Permissions

The user who creates a Dataverse collection is given the “Admin” role on that Dataverse collection. The root Dataverse collection is created automatically for you by the installer and the “Admin” is the superuser account (“dataverseAdmin”) we used in the *Installation* section to confirm that we can log in. These next steps of configuring the root Dataverse collection require the “Admin” role on the root Dataverse collection, but not the much more powerful superuser attribute. In short, users with the “Admin” role are subject to the permission system. A superuser, on the other hand, completely bypasses the permission system. You can give non-superusers the “Admin” role on the root Dataverse collection if you’d like them to configure the root Dataverse collection.

In order for non-superusers to start creating Dataverse collections or datasets, you need click “Edit” then “Permissions” and make choices about which users can add Dataverse collections or datasets within the root Dataverse collection. (There is an API endpoint for this operation as well.) Again, the user who creates a Dataverse collection will be granted the “Admin” role on that Dataverse collection. Non-superusers who are not “Admin” on the root Dataverse collection will not be able to do anything useful until the root Dataverse collection has been published.

As the person installing the Dataverse Software, you may or may not be a local metadata expert. You may want to have others sign up for accounts and grant them the “Admin” role at the root Dataverse collection to configure metadata fields, templates, browse/search facets, guestbooks, etc. For more on these topics, consult the *Dataverse Collection Management* section of the User Guide.

4.5.4 Persistent Identifiers and Publishing Datasets

Persistent identifiers are a required and integral part of the Dataverse Software. They provide a URL that is guaranteed to resolve to the datasets or files they represent. The Dataverse Software currently supports creating identifiers using DOI and Handle.

By default, the installer configures a default DOI namespace (10.5072) with DataCite as the registration provider. Please note that as of the release 4.9.3, we can no longer use EZID as the provider. Unlike EZID, DataCite requires that you register for a test account, configured with your own prefix (please contact support@datacite.org). Once you receive the login name, password, and prefix for the account, configure the credentials in your domain.xml, as the following two JVM options:

```
<jvm-options>-Ddoi.username=...</jvm-options>
<jvm-options>-Ddoi.password=...</jvm-options>
```

and restart Payara. The prefix can be configured via the API (where it is referred to as “Authority”):

```
curl -X PUT -d 10.xxxx http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:Authority
```

Once this is done, you will be able to publish datasets and files, but the persistent identifiers will not be citable, and they will only resolve from the DataCite test environment (and then only if the Dataverse installation from which you published them is accessible - DOIs minted from your laptop will not resolve). Note that any datasets or files created using the test configuration cannot be directly migrated and would need to be created again once a valid DOI namespace is configured.

To properly configure persistent identifiers for a production installation, an account and associated namespace must be acquired for a fee from a DOI or HDL provider. **DataCite** (<https://www.datacite.org>) is the recommended DOI provider (see <https://dataversecommunity.global> for more on joining DataCite) but **EZID** (<http://ezid.cdlib.org>) is an option for the University of California according to <https://www.cdlib.org/cdlinfo/2017/08/04/ezid-doi-service-is-evolving/>. **Handle.Net** (<https://www.handle.net>) is the HDL provider.

Once you have your DOI or Handle account credentials and a namespace, configure your Dataverse installation to use them using the JVM options and database settings below.

Configuring Your Dataverse Installation for DOIs

By default, your Dataverse installation attempts to register DOIs for each dataset and file under a test authority, though you must apply for your own credentials as explained above.

Here are the configuration options for DOIs:

JVM Options:

- *doi.baseurlstring*
- *doi.username*
- *doi.password*
- *doi.dataciterestapiurlstring*

Database Settings:

- *:DoiProvider*
- *:Protocol*
- *:Authority*
- *:Shoulder*
- *:IdentifierGenerationStyle* (optional)
- *:DataFilePIDFormat* (optional)
- *:FilePIDsEnabled* (optional, defaults to true)

Configuring Your Dataverse Installation for Handles

Here are the configuration options for handles:

JVM Options:

- *dataverse.handle.net.admcredfile*
- *dataverse.handle.net.admprivphrase*
- *dataverse.handle.net.index*

Database Settings:

- *:Protocol*
- *:Authority*
- *:IdentifierGenerationStyle* (optional)
- *:DataFilePIDFormat* (optional)
- *:IndependentHandleService* (optional)
- *:HandleAuthHandle* (optional)

Note: If you are **minting your own handles** and plan to set up your own handle service, please refer to [Handle.Net documentation](#).

4.5.5 Auth Modes: Local vs. Remote vs. Both

There are three valid configurations or modes for authenticating users to your Dataverse installation:

Local Only Auth

Out of the box, your Dataverse installation is configured in “local only” mode. The “dataverseAdmin” superuser account mentioned in the [Installation](#) section is an example of a local account. Internally, these accounts are called “builtin” because they are built in to the Dataverse Software application itself.

Both Local and Remote Auth

The `authenticationproviderrow` database table controls which “authentication providers” are available within a Dataverse installation. Out of the box, a single row with an id of “builtin” will be present. For each user in a Dataverse installation, the `authenticateduserlookup` table will have a value under `authenticationproviderid` that matches this id. For example, the default “dataverseAdmin” user will have the value “builtin” under `authenticationproviderid`. Why is this important? Users are tied to a specific authentication provider but conversion mechanisms are available to switch a user from one authentication provider to the other. As explained in the [Account Creation + Management](#) section of the User Guide, a graphical workflow is provided for end users to convert from the “builtin” authentication provider to a remote provider. Conversion from a remote authentication provider to the builtin provider can be performed by a sysadmin with access to the “admin” API. See the [Native API](#) section of the API Guide for how to list users and authentication providers as JSON.

Adding and enabling a second authentication provider ([Add Authentication Provider](#) and [Enable or Disable an Authentication Provider](#)) will result in the Log In page showing additional providers for your users to choose from. By default, the Log In page will show the “builtin” provider, but you can adjust this via the `:DefaultAuthProvider` configuration option. Further customization can be achieved by setting `:AllowSignUp` to “false”, thus preventing users from creating local accounts via the web interface. Please note that local accounts can also be created through the API by enabling the `builtin-users` endpoint ([BlockedApiEndpoints](#)) and setting the `BuiltinUsers.KEY` database setting ([BuiltinUsers.KEY](#)).

To configure Shibboleth see the [Shibboleth](#) section and to configure OAuth see the [OAuth Login Options](#) section.

Remote Only Auth

As for the “Remote only” authentication mode, it means that:

- Shibboleth or OAuth has been enabled.
- `:AllowSignUp` is set to “false” to prevent users from creating local accounts via the web interface.
- `:DefaultAuthProvider` has been set to use the desired authentication provider
- The “builtin” authentication provider has been disabled ([Enable or Disable an Authentication Provider](#)). Note that disabling the “builtin” authentication provider means that the API endpoint for converting an account from a remote auth provider will not work. Converting directly from one remote authentication provider to another (i.e. from GitHub to Google) is not supported. Conversion from remote is always to “builtin”. Then the user initiates a conversion from “builtin” to remote. Note that longer term, the plan is to permit multiple login options to the same Dataverse installation account per <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/3487> (so all this talk of conversion will be moot) but for now users can only use a single login option, as explained in the [Account Creation + Management](#) section of the User Guide. In short, “remote only” might work for you if you only plan to use a single remote authentication provider such that no conversion between remote authentication providers will be necessary.

4.5.6 File Storage: Using a Local Filesystem and/or Swift and/or Object Stores and/or Trusted Remote Stores

By default, a Dataverse installation stores all data files (files uploaded by end users) on the filesystem at `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/files`. This path can vary based on answers you gave to the installer (see the [Running the Dataverse Software Installer](#) section of the Installation Guide) or afterward by reconfiguring the `dataverse.files.\<id\>.directory` JVM option described below.

A Dataverse installation can alternately store files in a Swift or S3-compatible object store, and can now be configured to support multiple stores at once. With a multi-store configuration, the location for new files can be controlled on a per-Dataverse collection basis.

A Dataverse installation may also be configured to reference some files (e.g. large and/or sensitive data) stored in a web-accessible trusted remote store.

The following sections describe how to set up various types of stores and how to configure for multiple stores.

Multi-store Basics

To support multiple stores, a Dataverse installation now requires an id, type, and label for each store (even for a single store configuration). These are configured by defining two required jvm options:

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.type=<type>"  
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.label=<label>"
```

Out of the box, a Dataverse installation is configured to use local file storage in the ‘file’ store by default. You can add additional stores and, as a superuser, configure specific Dataverse collections to use them (by editing the ‘General Information’ for the Dataverse collection as described in the [Managing Datasets and Dataverse Collections](#) section).

Note that the “`-Ddataverse.files.directory`”, if defined, continues to control where temporary files are stored (in the `/temp` subdir of that directory), independent of the location of any ‘file’ store defined above.

If you wish to change which store is used by default, you’ll need to delete the existing default storage driver and set a new one using jvm options.

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS delete-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.storage-driver-id=file"  
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.storage-driver-id=<id>"
```

It is also possible to set maximum file upload size limits per store. See the [:MaxFileSizeInBytes](#) setting below.

File Storage

File stores have one option - the directory where files should be stored. This can be set using

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.directory=<file_directory>"
```

Multiple file stores should specify different directories (which would nominally be the reason to use multiple file stores), but one may share the same directory as “`-Ddataverse.files.directory`” option - this would result in temp files being stored in the `/temp` subdirectory within the file store’s root directory.

Swift Storage

Rather than storing data files on the filesystem, you can opt for an experimental setup with a [Swift Object Storage](#) backend. Each dataset that users create gets a corresponding “container” on the Swift side, and each data file is saved as a file within that container.

In order to configure a Swift installation, you need to complete these steps to properly modify the JVM options:

First, run all the following create commands with your Swift endpoint information and credentials:

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.type=swift"
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.
˓→defaultEndpoint=endpoint1"
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.authType.
˓→endpoint1=your-auth-type"
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.authUrl.
˓→endpoint1=your-auth-url"
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.tenant.
˓→endpoint1=your-tenant-name"
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.username.
˓→endpoint1=your-username"
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.endpoint.
˓→endpoint1=your-swift-endpoint"
```

auth_type can either be keystone, keystone_v3, or it will assumed to be basic. auth_url should be your keystone authentication URL which includes the tokens (e.g. for keystone, <https://openstack.example.edu:35357/v2.0/tokens> and for keystone_v3, <https://openstack.example.edu:35357/v3/auth/tokens>). swift_endpoint is a URL that looks something like <http://rdgw.swift.example.org/swift/v1>.

Then create a password alias by running (without changes):

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.swift.password.endpoint1=
˓→'\${ALIAS=swiftpassword-alias}'"
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-password-alias swiftpassword-alias
```

The second command will trigger an interactive prompt asking you to input your Swift password.

Second, update the JVM option dataverse.files.storage-driver-id by running the delete command:

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS delete-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.storage-driver-id=file"
```

Then run the create command:

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.storage-driver-id=swift"
```

You also have the option to set a **custom container name separator**. It is initialized to `_`, but you can change it by running the create command:

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.swift.
folderPathSeparator=-"
```

By default, your Swift installation will be public-only, meaning users will be unable to put access restrictions on their data. If you are comfortable with this level of privacy, the final step in your setup is to set the [:PublicInstall](#) setting to `true`.

In order to **enable file access restrictions**, you must enable Swift to use temporary URLs for file access. To enable usage of temporary URLs, set a hash key both on your swift endpoint and in your swift.properties file. You can do so by running the create command:

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.swift.hashKey.
endpoint1=your-hash-key"
```

You also have the option to set a custom expiration length, in seconds, for a generated temporary URL. It is initialized to 60 seconds, but you can change it by running the create command:

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.swift.
temporaryUrlExpiryTime=3600"
```

In this example, you would be setting the expiration length for one hour.

Setting up Compute with Swift

Once you have configured a Swift Object Storage backend, you also have the option of enabling a connection to a computing environment. To do so, you need to configure the database settings for `:ComputeBaseUrl` and `:CloudEnvironmentName`.

Once you have set up `:ComputeBaseUrl` properly in both the Dataverse installation and your cloud environment, validated users will have three options for accessing the computing environment:

- Compute on a single dataset
- Compute on multiple datasets
- Compute on a single datafile

The compute tool options on dataset and file pages will link validated users to your computing environment. If a user is computing on one dataset, the compute tool option will redirect to:

`:ComputeBaseUrl?datasetPersistentId`

If a user is computing on multiple datasets, the compute tool option will redirect to:

`:ComputeBaseUrl/multiparty?datasetPersistentId&anotherDatasetPersistentId&anotherDatasetPersistentId&..`

If a user is computing on a single file, depending on the configuration of your installation, the compute tool option will either redirect to:

`:ComputeBaseUrl?datasetPersistentId=yourObject`

if your installation's `:PublicInstall` setting is true, or:

`:ComputeBaseUrl?datasetPersistentId=yourObject&temp_url_sig=yourTempUrlSig&temp_url_expires=yourTempUrlExpires`

You can configure this redirect properly in your cloud environment to generate a temporary URL for access to the Swift objects for computing.

Amazon S3 Storage (or Compatible)

The Dataverse Software supports Amazon S3 storage as well as other S3-compatible stores (like Minio, Ceph RADOS S3 Gateway and many more) for files uploaded to your Dataverse installation.

The Dataverse Software S3 driver supports multi-part upload for large files (over 1 GB by default - see the min-part-size option in the table below to change this).

Note: The Dataverse Project Team is most familiar with AWS S3, and can provide support on its usage with the Dataverse Software. Thanks to community contributions, the application's architecture also allows non-AWS S3 providers. The Dataverse Project Team can provide very limited support on these other providers. We recommend reaching out to the wider Dataverse Project Community if you have questions.

First: Set Up Accounts and Access Credentials

The Dataverse Software and the AWS SDK make use of the “AWS credentials profile file” and “AWS config profile file” located in `~/.aws/` where `~` is the home directory of the user you run Payara as. This file can be generated via either of two methods described below:

1. Manually through creation of the credentials and config files or
2. Automatically via the AWS console commands.

Some usage scenarios might be eased without generating these files. You may also provide *static credentials* via [MicroProfile Config](#), see below.

Preparation When Using Amazon's S3 Service

You'll need an AWS account with an associated S3 bucket for your installation to use. From the S3 management console (e.g. <https://console.aws.amazon.com/>), you can poke around and get familiar with your bucket.

Make note of the **bucket's name** and the **region** its data is hosted in.

To **create a user** with full S3 access and nothing more for security reasons, we recommend using IAM (Identity and Access Management). See [IAM User Guide](#) for more info on this process.

Generate the user keys needed for a Dataverse installation afterwards by clicking on the created user. (You can skip this step when running on EC2, see below.)

Tip: If you are hosting your Dataverse installation on an AWS EC2 instance alongside storage in S3, it is possible to use IAM Roles instead of the credentials file (the file at `~/.aws/credentials` mentioned below). Please note that you will still need the `~/.aws/config` file to specify the region. For more information on this option, see <http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/iam-roles-for-amazon-ec2.html>

Preparation When Using Custom S3-Compatible Service

We assume you have your S3-compatible custom storage in place, up and running, ready for service.

Please make note of the following details:

- **Endpoint URL** - consult the documentation of your service on how to find it.
 - Example: <https://play.minio.io:9000>
- **Region:** Optional, but some services might use it. Consult your service documentation.
 - Example: `us-east-1`
- **Access key ID and secret access key:** Usually you can generate access keys within the user profile of your service.
 - Example:
 - * ID: `Q3AM3UQ867SPQQA43P2F`
 - * Key: `zuf+tfteSlswRu7BJ86wekitnifLbZam1KYY3TG`
- **Bucket name:** The Dataverse installation will fail opening and uploading files on S3 if you don't create one.
 - Example: `dataverse`

Manually Set Up Credentials File

To create the `~/.aws/credentials` file manually, you will need to generate a key/secret key (see above). Once you have acquired the keys, they need to be added to the `credentials` file. The format for credentials is as follows:

```
[default]
aws_access_key_id = <insert key, no brackets>
aws_secret_access_key = <insert secret key, no brackets>
```

While using Amazon's service, you must also specify the AWS region in the `~/.aws/config` file, for example:

```
[default]
region = us-east-1
```

Additional profiles can be added to these files by appending the relevant information in additional blocks:

```
[default]
aws_access_key_id = <insert key, no brackets>
aws_secret_access_key = <insert secret key, no brackets>

[profilename2]
aws_access_key_id = <insert key, no brackets>
aws_secret_access_key = <insert secret key, no brackets>
```

Place these two files in a folder named `.aws` under the home directory for the user running your Dataverse Installation on Payara. (From the [AWS Command Line Interface Documentation](#): “In order to separate credentials from less sensitive options, region and output format are stored in a separate file named config in the same folder”)

Console Commands to Set Up Access Configuration

Begin by installing the CLI tool `pip` (package installer for Python) to install the [AWS command line interface](#) if you don't have it.

First, we'll get our access keys set up. If you already have your access keys configured, skip this step. From the command line, run:

- `pip install awscli`
- `aws configure`

You'll be prompted to enter your Access Key ID and secret key, which should be issued to your AWS account. The subsequent config steps after the access keys are up to you. For reference, the keys will be stored in `~/.aws/credentials`, and your AWS access region in `~/.aws/config`.

TIP: When using a custom S3 URL endpoint, you need to add it to every aws call: `aws --endpoint-url <URL> s3 ...`
 (you may omit it while configuring).

Second: Configure Your Dataverse Installation to use S3 Storage

To set up an S3 store, you must define the id, type, and label as for any store:

```
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.type=s3"  
./asadmin $ASADMIN_OPTS create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.files.<id>.label=<label>"
```

Then, we'll need to identify which S3 bucket we're using. Replace <your_bucket_name> with, of course, your bucket:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.bucket-name=<your_bucket_name>"
```

Optionally, you can have users download files from S3 directly rather than having files pass from S3 through Payara to your users. To accomplish this, set `dataverse.files.<id>.download-redirect` to true like this:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.download-redirect=true"
```

If you enable `dataverse.files.<id>.download-redirect` as described above, note that the S3 URLs expire after an hour by default but you can configure the expiration time using the `dataverse.files.<id>.url-expiration-minutes` JVM option. Here's an example of setting the expiration time to 120 minutes:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.url-expiration-minutes=120"
```

By default, your store will use the [default] profile in your .aws configuration files. To use a different profile, which would be necessary if you have two s3 stores at different locations, you can specify the profile to use:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.profile=<profilename>"
```

Larger installations may want to increase the number of open S3 connections allowed (default is 256): For example,

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.connection-pool-size=4096"
```

In case you would like to configure Dataverse to use a custom S3 service instead of Amazon S3 services, please add the options for the custom URL and region as documented below. Please read above if your desired combination has been tested already and what other options have been set for a successful integration.

Lastly, go ahead and restart your Payara server. With Dataverse deployed and the site online, you should be able to upload datasets and data files and see the corresponding files in your S3 bucket. Within a bucket, the folder structure emulates that found in local file storage.

List of S3 Storage Options

JVM Option	Value	Description	Default value
dataverse.files.storage-driver-id	<id>	Enable <id> as the default storage driver.	file
dataverse.files.<id>.type	s3	Required to mark this storage as S3 based.	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.label	<?>	Required label to be shown in the UI for this storage	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.bucket-name	<?>	The bucket name. See above.	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.download-redirect	true/false	Enable direct download or proxy through Dataverse.	false
dataverse.files.<id>.upload-redirect	true/false	Enable direct upload of files added to a dataset to the S3 store.	false
dataverse.files.<id>.ingestsizelimit	<size in bytes>	Maximum size of directupload files that should be ingested	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.url-expiration-minutes	<?>	If direct uploads/downloads: time until links expire. Optional.	60
dataverse.files.<id>.min-part-size	<?>	Multipart direct uploads will occur for files larger than this. Optional.	1024***3
dataverse.files.<id>.custom-endpoint-url	<?>	Use custom S3 endpoint. Needs URL either with or without protocol.	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.custom-endpoint-region	<?>	Only used when using custom endpoint. Optional.	dataverse
dataverse.files.<id>.profile	<?>	Allows the use of AWS profiles for storage spanning multiple AWS accounts.	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.proxy-url	<?>	URL of a proxy protecting the S3 store. Optional.	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.path-style-access	true/false	Use path style buckets instead of subdomains. Optional.	false
dataverse.files.<id>.payload-signing	true/false	Enable payload signing. Optional	false
dataverse.files.<id>.chunked-encoding	true/false	Disable chunked encoding. Optional	true
dataverse.files.<id>.connection-pool-size	<?>	The maximum number of open connections to the S3 server	256

MicroProfile Config Option	Value	Description	Default value
dataverse.files.<id>.access-key	<?>	Provide static access key ID. Read before use!	""
dataverse.files.<id>.secret-key	<?>	Provide static secret access key. Read before use!	""

Credentials via MicroProfile Config

Optionally, you may provide static credentials for each S3 storage using MicroProfile Config options:

- `dataverse.files.<id>.access-key` for this storage's "access key ID"
- `dataverse.files.<id>.secret-key` for this storage's "secret access key"

You may provide the values for these via any supported MicroProfile Config API source.

WARNING:

For security, do not use the sources “environment variable” or “system property” (JVM option) in a production context! Rely on password alias, secrets directory or cloud based sources instead!

NOTE:

1. Providing both AWS CLI profile files (as setup in first step) and static keys, credentials from `~/.aws` will win over configured keys when valid!
2. A non-empty `dataverse.files.<id>.profile` will be ignored when no credentials can be found for this profile name. Current codebase does not make use of “named profiles” as seen for AWS CLI besides credentials.

Reported Working S3-Compatible Storage

Minio v2018-09-12

Set `dataverse.files.<id>.path-style-access=true`, as Minio works path-based. Works pretty smooth, easy to setup. **Can be used for quick testing, too:** just use the example values above. Uses the public (read: unsecure and possibly slow) <https://play.minio.io:9000> service.

StorJ Object Store

StorJ is a distributed object store that can be configured with an S3 gateway. Per the S3 Storage instructions above, you’ll first set up the StorJ S3 store by defining the id, type, and label. After following the general installation, set the following configurations to use a StorJ object store: `dataverse.files.<id>.payload-signing=true` and `dataverse.files.<id>.chunked-encoding=false`. For step-by-step instructions see <https://docs.storj.io/dcs/how-tos/dataverse-integration-guide/>

Note that for direct uploads and downloads, Dataverse redirects to the proxy-url but presigns the urls based on the `dataverse.files.<id>.custom-endpoint-url`. Also, note that if you choose to enable `dataverse.files.<id>.download-redirect` the S3 URLs expire after 60 minutes by default. You can change that minute value to reflect a timeout value that’s more appropriate by using `dataverse.files.<id>.url-expiration-minutes`.

Surf Object Store v2019-10-30

Set `dataverse.files.<id>.payload-signing=true` and `dataverse.files.<id>.chunked-encoding=false` to use Surf Object Store.

Note that the `dataverse.files.<id>.proxy-url` setting can be used in installations where the object store is proxied, but it should be considered an advanced option that will require significant expertise to properly configure. For direct uploads and downloads, Dataverse redirects to the proxy-url but presigns the urls based on the `dataverse.files.<id>.custom-endpoint-url`. Additional configuration (appropriate CORS settings, proxy caching/timeout configuration, and proxy settings to pass headers to/from S3 and to avoid adding additional headers) will also be needed to enable use of a proxy with direct upload and download. For Amazon AWS, see comments in the `edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.dataaccess.S3AccessIO` class about support for AWS’s bucket-specific DNS names.

SeaweedFS

SeaweedFS is a distributed storage system that has S3 compatibility. Set the S3 storage options as explained above. Make sure to set `dataverse.files.<id>.path-style-access` to true. You will need to create the bucket beforehand. You can do this with the filer API using curl commands. For example, to create an empty bucket called `dataverse`:

```
curl -X POST "http://localhost:8888/buckets/"  
curl -X POST "http://localhost:8888/buckets/dataverse/"
```

You will also need to set an access and secret key. One way to do this is via a static file. As an example, your `config.json` might look like this if you’re using a bucket called `dataverse`:

```
{  
  "identities": [
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
{
  "name": "anonymous",
  "credentials": [
    {
      "accessKey": "secret",
      "secretKey": "secret"
    }
  ],
  "actions": [
    "Read:dataverse",
    "List:dataverse",
    "Tagging:dataverse",
    "Write:dataverse"
  ]
}
```

And lastly, to start up the SeaweedFS server and various components you could use a command like this:

```
weed server -s3 -metricsPort=9327 -dir=/data -s3.config=/config.json
```

Additional Reported Working S3-Compatible Storage

If you are successfully using an S3 storage implementation not yet listed above, please feel free to [open an issue at Github](#) and describe your setup. We will be glad to add it.

Migrating from Local Storage to S3

Is currently documented on the [Deployment](#) page.

Trusted Remote Storage

In addition to having the type “remote” and requiring a label, Trusted Remote Stores are defined in terms of a baseURL - all files managed by this store must be at a path starting with this URL, and a baseStore - a file, s3, or swift store that can be used to store additional ancillary dataset files (e.g. metadata exports, thumbnails, auxiliary files, etc.). These and other available options are described in the table below.

Trusted remote stores can range from being a static trusted website to a sophisticated service managing access requests and logging activity and/or managing access to a secure enclave. See [Big Data Support](#) for additional information on how to use a trusted remote store. For specific remote stores, consult their documentation when configuring the remote store in your Dataverse installation.

Note that in the current implementation, activities where Dataverse needs access to data bytes, e.g. to create thumbnails or validate hash values at publication will fail if a remote store does not allow Dataverse access. Implementers of such trusted remote stores should consider using Dataverse’s settings to disable ingest, validation of files at publication, etc. as needed.

Once you have configured a trusted remote store, you can point your users to the [Add a Remote File to a Dataset](#) section of the API Guide.

JVM Option	Value	Description	Default value
dataverse.files.<id>.type	remote	Required to mark this storage as remote.	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.label	<?>	Required label to be shown in the UI for this storage.	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.base-url	<?>	Required All files must have URLs of the form <baseUrl>/* .	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.base-store	<?>	Optional The id of a base store (of type file, s3, or swift).	(the default store)
dataverse.files.<id>.download-redirect	true/false	Enable direct download (should usually be true).	false
dataverse.files.<id>.secret-key	<?>	A key used to sign download requests sent to the remote store. Optional.	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.url-expiration-minutes	<?>	If direct downloads and using signing: time until links expire. Optional.	60
dataverse.files.<id>.remote-store-name	<?>	A short name used in the UI to indicate where a file is located. Optional.	(none)
dataverse.files.<id>.remote-store-url	<?>	A url to an info page about the remote store used in the UI. Optional.	(none)

Temporary Upload File Storage

When uploading files via the API or Web UI, you need to be aware that multiple steps are involved to enable features like ingest processing, transfer to a permanent storage, checking for duplicates, unzipping etc.

All of these processes are triggered after finishing transfers over the wire and moving the data into a temporary (configurable) location on disk at `${dataverse.files.directory}/temp`.

Before being moved there,

- JSF Web UI uploads are stored at `${dataverse.files.uploads}`, defaulting to /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/uploads folder in a standard installation. This place is configurable and might be set to a separate disk volume where stale uploads are purged periodically.
- API uploads are stored at the system's temporary files location indicated by the Java system property `java.io.tmpdir`, defaulting to /tmp on Linux. If this location is backed by a `tmpfs` on your machine, large file uploads via API will cause RAM and/or swap usage bursts. You might want to point this to a different location, restrict maximum size of it, and monitor for stale uploads.

4.5.7 Branding Your Installation

A Dataverse installation can be branded in a number of ways.

A simple option for branding your installation is to adjust the theme of a Dataverse collection. You can change colors, add a logo, add a tagline, or add a website link to the Dataverse collection header section of the page. These options are outlined under *Theme* in the *Dataverse Collection Management* section of the User Guide.

More advanced customization is described below and covers the following areas.

- Custom installation name/brand
- Custom header
- Navbar settings
- Custom welcome/homepage
- Custom footer

- Footer settings
- CSS stylesheet

Downloadable sample HTML and CSS files are provided below which you can edit as you see fit. It's up to you to create a directory in which to store these files, such as `/var/www/dataverse` in the examples below.

Additional samples from community member Sherry Lake are available at <https://github.com/shlake/LibraDataHomepage>.

Parts of a Dataverse Installation Webpage

Before reading about the available customization options, you might want to familiarize yourself with the parts of a Dataverse installation webpage.

The image below indicates that the page layout consists of three main blocks: a header block, a content block, and a footer block:



Installation Name/Brand Name

It's common for a Dataverse installation to have some sort of installation name or brand name like "HeiDATA", "Libra Data", or "MELDATA".

The installation name appears in various places such as notifications, support links, and metadata exports.

Out of the box, the installation name comes from the name of root Dataverse collection ("Root" by default). You can simply change the name of this collection to set the installation name you want.

Alternatively, you can have independent names for the root Dataverse collection and the installation name by having the installation name come from the `:InstallationName` setting.

Note that you can use `:SystemEmail` to control the name that appears in the "from" address of email messages sent by a Dataverse installation. This overrides the name of the root Dataverse collection and `:InstallationName`.

If you have an image for your installation name, you can use it as the "Custom Navbar Logo", described below.

Header Block

Within the header block, you have a navbar (which will always be displayed) and you may insert a custom header that will be displayed above the navbar.

Navbar

The navbar is the component displayed by default on the header block and will be present on every Dataverse webpage.

The navbar encompasses several configurable settings (described below) that manage user interaction with a Dataverse installation.

Custom Navbar Logo

The Dataverse Software allows you to replace the default Dataverse Project icon and name branding in the navbar with your own custom logo. Note that this logo is separate from the logo used in the theme of the root Dataverse collection (see [Theme](#)).

The custom logo image file is expected to be small enough to fit comfortably in the navbar, no more than 50 pixels in height and 160 pixels in width. Create a navbar directory in your Payara logos directory and place your custom logo there. By default, your logo image file will be located at `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/docroot/logos/navbar/logo.png`.

Given this location for the custom logo image file, run this curl command to add it to your settings:

```
curl -X PUT -d '/logos/navbar/logo.png' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:LogoCustomizationFile
```

To revert to the default configuration and have the Dataverse Project icon be displayed, run the following command:

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:LogoCustomizationFile
```

About URL

Refer to [:NavbarAboutUrl](#) for setting a fully-qualified URL which will be used for the “About” link in the navbar.

User Guide URL

Refer to [:NavbarGuidesUrl](#), [:GuidesBaseUrl](#), and [:GuidesVersion](#) for setting a fully-qualified URL which will be used for the “User Guide” link in the navbar.

Support URL

Refer to [:NavbarSupportUrl](#) for setting to a fully-qualified URL which will be used for the “Support” link in the navbar.

Sign Up

Refer to [:SignUpUrl](#) and [:AllowSignUp](#) for setting a relative path URL to which users will be sent for sign up and for controlling the ability for creating local user accounts.

Custom Header

As a starting point you can copy the `custom-header.html` file located at `/_static/installation/files/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-header.html` and place it at `/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-header.html`.

Given this location for the custom header HTML file, run this curl command to add it to your settings:

```
curl -X PUT -d '/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-header.html' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:HeaderCustomizationFile
```

If you have enabled a custom header or navbar logo, you might prefer to disable the theme of the root dataverse. You can do so by setting `:DisableRootDataverseTheme` to true like this:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'true' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DisableRootDataverseTheme
```

Please note: Disabling the display of the root Dataverse collection theme also disables your ability to edit it. Remember that Dataverse collection owners can set their Dataverse collections to “inherit theme” from the root. Those Dataverse collections will continue to inherit the root Dataverse collection theme (even though it no longer displays on the root). If you would like to edit the root Dataverse collection theme in the future, you will have to re-enable it first.

Content Block

As shown in the image under [Parts of a Dataverse Installation Webpage](#), the content block is the area below the header and above the footer.

By default, when you view the homepage of a Dataverse installation, the content block shows the root Dataverse collection. This page contains the data available in the Dataverse installation (e.g. dataverses and datasets) and the functionalities that allow the user to interact with the platform (e.g. search, create/edit data and metadata, etc.).

Rather than showing the root Dataverse collection on the homepage, the content block can show a custom homepage instead. Read on for details.

Custom Homepage

When you configure a custom homepage, it **replaces** the root Dataverse collection in the content block, serving as a welcome page. This allows for complete control over the look and feel of the content block for your installation's homepage.

As a starting point, copy the `custom-homepage.html` located at `/_static/installation/files/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-homepage.html` and place it at `/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-homepage.html`.

Given this location for the custom homepage HTML file, run this curl command to add it to your settings:

```
curl -X PUT -d '/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-homepage.html' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:HomePageCustomizationFile
```

Note that the `custom-homepage.html` file provided has multiple elements that assume your root Dataverse collection still has an alias of "root". While you were branding your root Dataverse collection, you may have changed the alias to "harvard" or "librascholar" or whatever and you should adjust the custom homepage code as needed.

Note: If you prefer to start with less of a blank slate, you can review the custom homepage used by the Harvard Dataverse Repository, which includes branding messaging, action buttons, search input, subject links, and recent dataset links. This page was built to utilize the *Metrics API* to deliver dynamic content to the page via Javascript. The files can be found at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse.harvard.edu>

If you decide you'd like to remove this setting, use the following curl command:

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:HomePageCustomizationFile
```

Footer Block

Within the footer block you have the default footer section (which will always be displayed) and you can insert a custom footer that will be displayed below the default footer.

Default Footer

The default footer is the component displayed by default on the footer block and will be present on every Dataverse webpage. Its configuration options are described below.

Footer Copyright

Refer to *:FooterCopyright* to add customized text to the Copyright section of the default Dataverse footer

Custom Footer

As mentioned above, the custom footer appears below the default footer.

As a starting point, copy the `custom-footer.html` located at `/_static/installation/files/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-footer.html` and place it at `/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-footer.html`.

Given this location for the custom footer HTML file, run this curl command to add it to your settings:

```
curl -X PUT -d '/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-footer.html' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:FooterCustomizationFile
```

Custom Stylesheet

You can style your custom homepage, footer, and header content with a custom CSS file. With advanced CSS know-how, you can achieve custom branding and page layouts by utilizing `position`, `padding` or `margin` properties.

As a starting point, copy the `custom-stylesheet.css` located at `/_static/installation/files/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-stylesheet.css` and place it at `/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-stylesheet.css`.

Given this location for the custom CSS file, run this curl command to add it to your settings:

```
curl -X PUT -d '/var/www/dataverse/branding/custom-stylesheet.css' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:StyleCustomizationFile
```

4.5.8 Internationalization

The Dataverse Software is being translated into multiple languages by the Dataverse Project Community! Please see below for how to help with this effort!

Adding Multiple Languages to the Dropdown in the Header

The presence of the `:Languages` database setting adds a dropdown in the header for multiple languages. For example to add English and French to the dropdown:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:Languages -X PUT -d '[{"locale":"en", "title":"English"}, {"locale":"fr", "title":"Français"}]'
```

When a user selects one of the available choices, the Dataverse user interfaces will be translated into that language (assuming you also configure the “lang” directory and populate it with translations as described below).

Allowing the Language Used for Dataset Metadata to be Specified

Since dataset metadata can only be entered in one language, and administrators may wish to limit which languages metadata can be entered in, Dataverse also offers a separate setting defining allowed metadata languages. The presence of the `:MetadataLanguages` database setting identifies the available options (which can be different from those in the `:Languages` setting above, with fewer or more options).

Dataverse collection admins can select from these options to indicate which language should be used for new Datasets created with that specific collection. If they do not, users will be asked when creating a dataset to select the language they want to use when entering metadata. Similarly, when this setting is defined, Datasets created/imported/migrated are required to specify a `metadataLanguage` compatible with the collection’s requirement.

When creating or editing a dataset, users will be asked to enter the metadata in that language. The metadata language selected will also be shown when dataset metadata is viewed and will be included in metadata exports (as appropriate for each format) for published datasets:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:MetadataLanguages -X PUT -d '[{"locale":"en", "title":"English"}, {"locale":"fr", "title":"Français"}]'
```

Note that metadata selected from Controlled Vocabularies will also display in the metadata language of the dataset, but only if translations have been configured, i.e. you configure the “lang” directory and populate it with translations as described below). In metadata export files, controlled vocabulary values will be included in the Dataverse installations default language and in the metadata language of the dataset (if specified).

Configuring the “lang” Directory

Translations for the Dataverse Software are stored in “properties” files in a directory on disk (e.g. `/home/dataverse/langBundles`) that you specify with the `dataverse.lang.directory` `dataverse.lang.directory` JVM option, like this:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Ddataverse.lang.directory=/home/dataverse/langBundles'
```

Go ahead and create the directory you specified.

```
mkdir /home/dataverse/langBundles
```

Creating a languages.zip File

The Dataverse Software provides an API endpoint for adding languages using a zip file.

First, clone the “dataverse-language-packs” git repo.

```
git clone https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-language-packs.git
```

Take a look at <https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-language-packs/branches> to see if the version of the Dataverse Software you’re running has translations.

Change to the directory for the git repo you just cloned.

```
cd dataverse-language-packs
```

Switch (`git checkout`) to the branch based on the Dataverse Software version you are running. The branch “dataverse-v4.13” is used in the example below.

```
export BRANCH_NAME=dataverse-v4.13
```

```
git checkout $BRANCH_NAME
```

Create a “languages” directory in “/tmp”.

```
mkdir /tmp/languages
```

Copy the properties files into the “languages” directory

```
cp -R en_US/*.properties /tmp/languages
```

```
cp -R fr_CA/*.properties /tmp/languages
```

Create the zip file

```
cd /tmp/languages
```

```
zip languages.zip *.properties
```

Load the languages.zip file into your Dataverse Installation

Now that you have a “languages.zip” file, you can load it into your Dataverse installation with the command below.

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/datasetfield/loadpropertyfiles -X POST --upload-file /tmp/languages/languages.zip -H "Content-Type: application/zip"
```

Click on the languages using the drop down in the header to try them out.

How to Help Translate the Dataverse Software Into Your Language

Please join the [dataverse-internationalization-wg](mailto:dataverse-internationalization-wg@googlegroups.com) mailing list and contribute to <https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-language-packs> to help translate the Dataverse Software into various languages!

Some external tools are also ready to be translated, especially if they are using the {localeCode} reserved word in their tool manifest. For details, see the [Building External Tools](#) section of the API Guide.

Tools for Translators

The list below depicts a set of tools that can be used to ease the amount of work necessary for translating the Dataverse software by facilitating this collaborative effort and enabling the reuse of previous work:

- [Weblate for the Dataverse Software](#), made available in the scope of the [SSHOC](#) project.
- [easyTranslationHelper](#), a tool developed by [University of Aveiro](#).

4.5.9 Web Analytics Code

Your analytics code can be added to your Dataverse installation in a similar fashion to how you brand it, by adding a custom HTML file containing the analytics code snippet and adding the file location to your settings.

Popular analytics providers Google Analytics (<https://www.google.com/analytics/>) and Matomo (formerly “Piwik”; <https://matomo.org/>) have been set up to work with the Dataverse Software. Use the documentation they provide to add the analytics code to your custom HTML file. This allows for more control of your analytics, making it easier to customize what you prefer to track.

Create your own `analytics-code.html` file using the analytics code snippet provided by Google or Matomo and place it somewhere on the server, outside the application deployment directory; for example: `/var/www/dataverse/branding/analytics-code.html`. Here is an *example* of what your HTML file will look like:

```
<!-- Global Site Tag (gtag.js) - Google Analytics -->
<script async="async" src="https://www.googletagmanager.com/gtag/js?id=YOUR-ACCOUNT-CODE
  "></script>
<script>
  //<![CDATA[
  window.dataLayer = window.dataLayer || [];
  function gtag(){dataLayer.push(arguments);}
  gtag('js', new Date());

  gtag('config', 'YOUR-ACCOUNT-CODE');
  //]]>
</script>
```

IMPORTANT: Note the “`async`” attribute in the first script line above. In the documentation provided by Google, its value is left blank (as in `<script async src="...">`). It must be set as in the example above (`<script async="async" src="...">`), otherwise it may cause problems with some browsers.

Once you have created the analytics file, run this curl command to add it to your settings (using the same file location as in the example above):

```
curl -X PUT -d '/var/www/dataverse/branding/analytics-code.html' http://localhost:8080/
api/admin/settings/:WebAnalyticsCode
```

Tracking Button Clicks

The basic analytics configuration above tracks page navigation. However, it does not capture potentially interesting events, such as those from users clicking buttons on pages, that do not result in a new page opening. In a Dataverse installation, these events include file downloads, requesting access to restricted data, exporting metadata, social media sharing, requesting citation text, launching external tools, contacting authors, and launching computations.

Both Google and Matomo provide the optional capability to track such events and the Dataverse Software has added CSS style classes (btn-compute, btn-contact, btn-download, btn-explore, btn-export, btn-preview, btn-request, btn-share, and downloadCitation) to its HTML to facilitate it.

For Google Analytics, the example `analytics-code.html` script located at `/_static/installation/files/var/www/dataverse/branding/analytics-code.html` will track both page hits and events within your Dataverse installation. You would use this file in the same way as the shorter example above, putting it somewhere outside your deployment directory, replacing `YOUR ACCOUNT CODE` with your actual code and setting `:WebAnalyticsCode` to reference it.

Once this script is running, you can look in the Google Analytics console (Realtime/Events or Behavior/Events) and view events by type and/or the Dataset or File the event involves.

4.5.10 Configuring Licenses

On a new Dataverse installation, users may select from the following licenses or terms:

- CC0 1.0 (default)
- CC BY 4.0
- Custom Dataset Terms

(Note that existing Dataverse installations which are upgraded from 5.9 or previous will only offer CC0 1.0, added automatically during the upgrade to version 5.10.)

If the Dataverse Installation supports multiple languages, the license name/description translations should be added to the License properties files. (See [Internationalization](#) for more on properties files and internationalization in general.) To create the key, the license name has to be converted to lowercase, replace space with underscore.

Example:

```
license.cc0_1.0.description=Creative Commons CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication.  
license.cc0_1.0.name=CC0 1.0
```

You have a lot of control over which licenses and terms are available. You can remove licenses and add new ones. You can decide which license is the default. You can remove “Custom Dataset Terms” as an option. You can remove all licenses and make “Custom Dataset Terms” the only option.

Before making changes, you are encouraged to read the [Terms](#) section of the User Guide about why CC0 is the default and what the “Custom Dataset Terms” option allows.

Setting the Default License

The default license can be set with a curl command as explained in the API Guide under [Manage Available Standard License Terms](#).

Note that “Custom Dataset Terms” is not a license and cannot be set to be the default.

Adding Licenses

Licenses are added with curl using JSON file as explained in the API Guide under [Manage Available Standard License Terms](#).

Adding Creative Common Licenses

JSON files for [Creative Commons](#) licenses are provided below. Note that a new installation of Dataverse already includes CC0 and CC BY.

- licenseCC0-1.0.json located at /scripts/api/data/licenses/licenseCC0-1.0.json
- licenseCC-BY-4.0.json located at /scripts/api/data/licenses/licenseCC-BY-4.0.json
- licenseCC-BY-SA-4.0.json located at /scripts/api/data/licenses/licenseCC-BY-SA-4.0.json
- licenseCC-BY-NC-4.0.json located at /scripts/api/data/licenses/licenseCC-BY-NC-4.0.json
- licenseCC-BY-NC-SA-4.0.json located at /scripts/api/data/licenses/licenseCC-BY-NC-SA-4.0.json
- licenseCC-BY-ND-4.0.json located at /scripts/api/data/licenses/licenseCC-BY-ND-4.0.json
- licenseCC-BY-NC-ND-4.0.json located at /scripts/api/data/licenses/licenseCC-BY-NC-ND-4.0.json

Adding Custom Licenses

If you are interested in adding a custom license, you will need to create your own JSON file as explained in see [Standardizing Custom Licenses](#).

Removing Licenses

Licenses can be removed with a curl command as explained in the API Guide under [Manage Available Standard License Terms](#).

Disabling Custom Dataset Terms

See [:AllowCustomTermsOfUse](#) for how to disable the “Custom Dataset Terms” option.

4.5.11 Sorting licenses

The default order of licenses in the dropdown in the user interface is as follows:

- The default license is shown first
- Followed by the remaining installed licenses in the order of installation
- The custom license is at the end

Only the order of the installed licenses can be changed with the API calls. The default license always remains first and the custom license last.

The order of licenses can be changed by setting the `sortOrder` property of a license. For the purpose of making sorting easier and to allow grouping of the licenses, `sortOrder` property does not have to be unique. Licenses with the same `sortOrder` are sorted by their ID, i.e., first by the `sortOrder`, then by the ID. Nevertheless, you can set a unique `sortOrder` for every license in order to sort them fully manually.

The `sortOrder` is an whole number and is used to sort licenses in ascending fashion.

Changing the sorting order of a license specified by the license `$ID` is done by superusers using the following API call:

```
export SORT_ORDER=100
curl -X PUT -H 'Content-Type: application/json' -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN $SERVER_
↪URL/api/licenses/$ID/:sortOrder/$SORT_ORDER
```

4.5.12 BagIt File Handler

BagIt file handler detects and transforms zip files with a BagIt package format into Dataverse DataFiles. The system validates the checksums of the files in the package payload as described in the first manifest file with a hash algorithm that we support. Take a look at `BagChecksumType` class for the list of the currently supported hash algorithms.

The checksum validation uses a thread pool to improve performance. This thread pool can be adjusted to your Dataverse installation requirements.

BagIt file handler configuration settings:

- `:BagItHandlerEnabled`
- `:BagValidatorJobPoolSize`
- `:BagValidatorMaxErrors`
- `:BagValidatorJobWaitInterval`

4.5.13 BagIt Export

Your Dataverse installation may be configured to submit a copy of published Datasets, packaged as [Research Data Alliance conformant](#) zipped [BagIt](#) archival Bags (sometimes called BagPacks) to [Chronopolis](#) via DuraCloud or alternately to any folder on the local filesystem.

These archival Bags include all of the files and metadata in a given dataset version and are sufficient to recreate the dataset, e.g. in a new Dataverse instance, or potentially in another RDA-conformant repository.

The Dataverse Software offers an internal archive workflow which may be configured as a PostPublication workflow via an admin API call to manually submit previously published Datasets and prior versions to a configured archive such as Chronopolis. The workflow creates a [JSON-LD](#) serialized [OAI-ORE](#) map file, which is also available as a metadata export format in the Dataverse Software web interface.

At present, archiving classes include the DuraCloudSubmitToArchiveCommand, LocalSubmitToArchiveCommand, GoogleCloudSubmitToArchive, and S3SubmitToArchiveCommand , which all extend the AbstractSubmitToArchiveCommand and use the configurable mechanisms discussed below. (A DRSSubmitToArchiveCommand, which works with Harvard's DRS also exists and, while specific to DRS, is a useful example of how Archivers can support single-version-only semantics and support archiving only from specified collections (with collection specific parameters)).

All current options support the archival status APIs and the same status is available in the dataset page version table (for contributors/those who could view the unpublished dataset, with more detail available to superusers).

Duracloud Configuration

Also note that while the current Chronopolis implementation generates the archival Bag and submits it to the archive's DuraCloud interface, the step to make a 'snapshot' of the space containing the archival Bag (and verify it's successful submission) are actions a curator must take in the DuraCloud interface.

The minimal configuration to support an archiver integration involves adding a minimum of two Dataverse Software Keys and any required Payara jvm options. The example instructions here are specific to the DuraCloud Archiver:

:ArchiverClassName - the fully qualified class to be used for archiving. For example:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ArchiverClassName -X PUT -d "edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.engine.command.impl.DuraCloudSubmitToArchiveCommand"
```

:ArchiverSettings - the archiver class can access required settings including existing Dataverse installation settings and dynamically defined ones specific to the class. This setting is a comma-separated list of those settings. For example:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ArchiverSettings -X PUT -d ":DuraCloudHost, :DuraCloudPort, :DuraCloudContext, :BagGeneratorThreads"
```

The DPN archiver defines three custom settings, one of which is required (the others have defaults):

:DuraCloudHost - the URL for your organization's Duracloud site. For example:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DuraCloudHost -X PUT -d "qdr.duracloud.org"
```

:DuraCloudPort and :DuraCloudContext are also defined if you are not using the defaults ("443" and "duracloud" respectively). (Note: these settings are only in effect if they are listed in the :ArchiverSettings. Otherwise, they will not be passed to the DuraCloud Archiver class.)

It also can use one setting that is common to all Archivers: :BagGeneratorThreads

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:BagGeneratorThreads -X PUT -d '8'
```

By default, the Bag generator zips two datafiles at a time when creating the archival Bag. This setting can be used to lower that to 1, i.e. to decrease system load, or to increase it, e.g. to 4 or 8, to speed processing of many small files.

Archivers may require JVM options as well. For the Chronopolis archiver, the username and password associated with your organization's Chronopolis/DuraCloud account should be configured in Payara:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Dduracloud.username=YOUR_USERNAME_HERE'  
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Dduracloud.password=YOUR_PASSWORD_HERE'
```

Local Path Configuration

ArchiverClassName - the fully qualified class to be used for archiving. For example:

```
curl -X PUT -d "edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.engine.command.impl.LocalSubmitToArchiveCommand"  
http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ArchiverClassName
```

:BagItLocalPath - the path to where you want to store the archival Bags. For example:

```
curl -X PUT -d /home/path/to/storage http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/  
:BagItLocalPath
```

:ArchiverSettings - the archiver class can access required settings including existing Dataverse installation settings and dynamically defined ones specific to the class. This setting is a comma-separated list of those settings. For example:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ArchiverSettings -X PUT -d  
":BagItLocalPath, :BagGeneratorThreads"
```

:BagItLocalPath is the file path that you've set in :ArchiverSettings. See the DuraCloud Configuration section for a description of :BagGeneratorThreads.

Google Cloud Configuration

The Google Cloud Archiver can send Dataverse Archival Bags to a bucket in Google's cloud, including those in the 'Coldline' storage class (cheaper, with slower access)

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ArchiverClassName -X PUT -d "edu.harvard.  
iq.dataverse.engine.command.impl.GoogleCloudSubmitToArchiveCommand"
```

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ArchiverSettings -X PUT -d  
":GoogleCloudBucket, :GoogleCloudProject, :BagGeneratorThreads"
```

The Google Cloud Archiver defines two custom settings, both are required. It can also use the :BagGeneratorThreads setting as described in the DuraCloud Configuration section above. The credentials for your account, in the form of a json key file, must also be obtained and stored locally (see below):

In order to use the Google Cloud Archiver, you must have a Google account. You will need to create a project and bucket within that account and provide those values in the settings:

:GoogleCloudBucket - the name of the bucket to use. For example:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:GoogleCloudBucket -X PUT -d "qdr-archive"
```

:GoogleCloudProject - the name of the project managing the bucket. For example:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:GoogleCloudProject -X PUT -d "qdr-project"
```

The Google Cloud Archiver also requires a key file that must be renamed to 'googlecloudkey.json' and placed in the directory identified by your 'dataverse.files.directory' jvm option. This file can be created in the Google Cloud Console. (One method: Navigate to your Project 'Settings'/'Service Accounts', create an account, give this account the 'Cloud Storage'/'Storage Admin' role, and once it's created, use the 'Actions' menu to 'Create Key', selecting the 'JSON' format option. Use this as the 'googlecloudkey.json' file.)

For example:

```
cp <your key file> /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/files/googlecloudkey.json
```

S3 Configuration

The S3 Archiver can send Dataverse Archival Bag to a bucket at any S3 endpoint. The configuration for the S3 Archiver is independent of any S3 store that may be configured in Dataverse and may, for example, leverage colder (cheaper, slower access) storage.

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ArchiverClassName -X PUT -d "edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.engine.command.impl.S3SubmitToArchiveCommand"
```

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ArchiverSettings -X PUT -d ":S3ArchiverConfig, :BagGeneratorThreads"
```

The S3 Archiver defines one custom setting, a required :S3ArchiverConfig. It can also use the :BagGeneratorThreads setting as described in the DuraCloud Configuration section above.

The credentials for your S3 account, can be stored in a profile in a standard credentials file (e.g. `~/.aws/credentials`) referenced via “profile” key in the :S3ArchiverConfig setting (will default to the default entry), or can via MicroProfile settings as described for S3 stores (`dataverse.s3archiver.access-key` and `dataverse.s3archiver.secret-key`)

The :S3ArchiverConfig setting is a JSON object that must include an “`s3_bucket_name`” and may include additional S3-related parameters as described for S3 Stores, including “`profile`”, “`connection-pool-size`”, “`custom-endpoint-url`”, “`custom-endpoint-region`”, “`path-style-access`”, “`payload-signing`”, and “`chunked-encoding`”.

:S3ArchiverConfig - minimally includes the name of the bucket to use. For example:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:S3ArchiverConfig -X PUT -d '{"s3_bucket_name": "archival-bucket"}'
```

:S3ArchiverConfig - example to also set the name of an S3 profile to use. For example:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:S3ArchiverConfig -X PUT -d '{"s3_bucket_name": "archival-bucket", "profile": "archiver"}'
```

BagIt Export API Calls

Once this configuration is complete, you, as a user with the *PublishDataset* permission, should be able to use the admin API call to manually submit a DatasetVersion for processing:

```
curl -X POST -H "X-Dataverse-key: <key>" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/submitDatasetVersionToArchive/{id}/{version}
```

where:

{id} is the DatasetId (the database id of the dataset) and

{version} is the friendly version number, e.g. “1.2”.

or in place of the DatasetID, you can use the string :persistentId as the {id} and add the DOI/PID as a query parameter like this: `?persistentId=<DOI>`. Here is how the full command would look:

```
curl -X POST -H "X-Dataverse-key: <key>" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/submitDatasetVersionToArchive/:persistentId/{version}?persistentId=<DOI>"
```

The submitDatasetVersionToArchive API (and the workflow discussed below) attempt to archive the dataset version via an archive specific method. For Chronopolis, a DuraCloud space named for the dataset (its DOI with “.” and “:” replaced with “-”, e.g. `doi-10-5072-fk2-tgbh1b`) is created and two files are uploaded to it: a version-specific `datacite.xml` metadata file and a BagIt bag containing the data and an OAI-ORE map file. (The `datacite.xml` file, stored outside the Bag as well as inside, is intended to aid in discovery while the ORE map file is “complete”, containing all user-entered metadata and is intended as an archival record.)

In the Chronopolis case, since the transfer from the DuraCloud front-end to archival storage in Chronopolis can take significant time, it is currently up to the admin/curator to submit a ‘snap-shot’ of the space within DuraCloud and to

monitor its successful transfer. Once transfer is complete the space should be deleted, at which point the Dataverse Software API call can be used to submit a Bag for other versions of the same dataset. (The space is reused, so that archival copies of different dataset versions correspond to different snapshots of the same DuraCloud space.).

A batch version of this admin API call is also available:

```
curl -X POST -H "X-Dataverse-key: <key>" 'http://localhost:8080/api/admin/archiveAllUnarchivedDatasetVersions?listonly=true&limit=10&latestonly=true'
```

The archiveAllUnarchivedDatasetVersions call takes 3 optional configuration parameters.

- listonly=true will cause the API to list dataset versions that would be archived but will not take any action.
- limit=<n> will limit the number of dataset versions archived in one API call to <= <n>.
- latestonly=true will limit archiving to only the latest published versions of datasets instead of archiving all unarchived versions.

Note that because archiving is done asynchronously, the calls above will return OK even if the user does not have the *PublishDataset* permission on the dataset(s) involved. Failures are indicated in the log and the archivalStatus calls in the native API can be used to check the status as well.

PostPublication Workflow

To automate the submission of archival copies to an archive as part of publication, one can setup a Dataverse Software Workflow using the “archiver” workflow step - see the [Workflows](#) guide.

The archiver step uses the configuration information discussed above including the :ArchiverClassName setting. The workflow step definition should include the set of properties defined in :ArchiverSettings in the workflow definition.

To active this workflow, one must first install a workflow using the archiver step. A simple workflow that invokes the archiver step configured to submit to DuraCloud as its only action is included in the Dataverse Software at /scripts/api/data/workflows/internal-archiver-workflow.json.

Using the Workflow Native API (see the [Native API](#) guide) this workflow can be installed using:

```
curl -X POST -H 'Content-type: application/json' --upload-file internal-archiver-workflow.json http://localhost:8080/api/admin/workflows
```

The workflow id returned in this call (or available by doing a GET of /api/admin/workflows) can then be submitted as the default PostPublication workflow:

```
curl -X PUT -d {id} http://localhost:8080/api/admin/workflows/default/PostPublishDataset
```

Once these steps are taken, new publication requests will automatically trigger submission of an archival copy to the specified archiver, Chronopolis’ DuraCloud component in this example. For Chronopolis, as when using the API, it is currently the admin’s responsibility to snap-shot the DuraCloud space and monitor the result. Failure of the workflow, (e.g. if DuraCloud is unavailable, the configuration is wrong, or the space for this dataset already exists due to a prior publication action or use of the API), will create a failure message but will not affect publication itself.

4.5.14 Going Live: Launching Your Production Deployment

This guide has attempted to take you from kicking the tires on the Dataverse Software to finalizing your installation before letting real users in. In theory, all this work could be done on a single server but better would be to have separate staging and production environments so that you can deploy upgrades to staging before deploying to production. This “Going Live” section is about launching your **production** environment.

Before going live with your Dataverse installation, you must take the steps above under “Securing Your Installation” and you should at least review the various configuration options listed below. An attempt has been made to put the more commonly-configured options earlier in the list.

Out of the box, the Dataverse Software attempts to block search engines from crawling your Dataverse installation so that test datasets do not appear in search results until you’re ready.

Letting Search Engines Crawl Your Installation

Ensure robots.txt Is Not Blocking Search Engines

For a public production Dataverse installation, it is probably desired that search agents be able to index published pages (AKA - pages that are visible to an unauthenticated user). Polite crawlers usually respect the [Robots Exclusion Standard](#); we have provided an example of a production robots.txt at `/_static/util/robots.txt`.

We **strongly recommend** using the crawler rules in the sample robots.txt linked above. Note that they make the Dataverse collection and dataset pages accessible to the search engine bots; but discourage them from actually crawling the site, by following any search links - facets and such - on the Dataverse collection pages. Such crawling is very inefficient in terms of system resources, and often results in confusing search results for the end users of the search engines (for example, when partial search results are indexed as individual pages).

The recommended solution instead is to directly point the bots to the dataset and Dataverse collection pages that need to be indexed, by advertising them via an explicit sitemap (please see the next section for details on how to generate the sitemap).

You can of course modify your own robots.txt to suit your specific needs as necessary. If you don’t want your datasets to be indexed at all, you can tell the bots to stay away from your site completely. But, as noted above, keep in mind that only the good, “polite” bots honor these rules! You are not really blocking anyone from accessing your site by adding a “Disallow” rule in robots.txt - it is a suggestion only. A rogue bot can and will violate it. If you are having trouble with the site being overloaded with what looks like heavy automated crawling, you may have to resort to blocking this traffic by other means - for example, via rewrite rules in Apache, or even by a Firewall.

(See the sample robots.txt file linked above for some comments on how to set up different “Allow” and “Disallow” rules for different crawler bots)

You have a couple of options for putting an updated robots.txt file into production. If you are fronting Payara with Apache as recommended above, you can place robots.txt in the root of the directory specified in your `VirtualHost` and to your Apache config a `ProxyPassMatch` line like the one below to prevent Payara from serving the version of robots.txt that is embedded in the Dataverse Software war file:

```
# don't let Payara serve its version of robots.txt
ProxyPassMatch ^/robots.txt$ !
```

For more of an explanation of `ProxyPassMatch` see the [Shibboleth](#) section.

If you are not fronting Payara with Apache you’ll need to prevent Payara from serving the robots.txt file embedded in the war file by overwriting robots.txt after the war file has been deployed. The downside of this technique is that you will have to remember to overwrite robots.txt in the “exploded” war file each time you deploy the war file, which probably means each time you upgrade to a new version of the Dataverse Software. Furthermore, since the version of the Dataverse Software is always incrementing and the version can be part of the file path, you will need to be conscious

of where on disk you need to replace the file. For example, for Dataverse Software 4.6.1 the path to robots.txt may be /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/applications/dataverse-4.6.1/robots.txt with the version number 4.6.1 as part of the path.

Creating a Sitemap and Submitting it to Search Engines

Search engines have an easier time indexing content when you provide them a sitemap. The Dataverse Software sitemap includes URLs to all published Dataverse collections and all published datasets that are not harvested or deaccessioned.

Create or update your sitemap by adding the following curl command to cron to run nightly or as you see fit:

```
curl -X POST http://localhost:8080/api/admin/sitemap
```

This will create or update a file in the following location unless you have customized your installation directory for Payara:

```
/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/docroot/sitemap/sitemap.xml
```

On Dataverse installation with many datasets, the creation or updating of the sitemap can take a while. You can check Payara's server.log file for "BEGIN updateSiteMap" and "END updateSiteMap" lines to know when the process started and stopped and any errors in between.

<https://demo.dataverse.org/sitemap.xml> is the sitemap URL for the Dataverse Project Demo site and yours should be similar.

Once the sitemap has been generated and placed in the domain docroot directory, it will become available to the outside callers at <YOUR_SITE_URL>/sitemap/sitemap.xml; it will also be accessible at <YOUR_SITE_URL>/sitemap.xml (via a *pretty-faces* rewrite rule). Some search engines will be able to find it at this default location. Some, **including Google**, need to be **specifically instructed** to retrieve it.

One way to submit your sitemap URL to Google is by using their "Search Console" (<https://search.google.com/search-console>). In order to use the console, you will need to authenticate yourself as the owner of your Dataverse site. Various authentication methods are provided; but if you are already using Google Analytics, the easiest way is to use that account. Make sure you are logged in on Google with the account that has the edit permission on your Google Analytics property; go to the search console and enter the root URL of your Dataverse installation, then choose Google Analytics as the authentication method. Once logged in, click on "Sitemaps" in the menu on the left. (todo: add a screenshot?) Consult Google's "submit a sitemap" instructions for more information; and/or similar instructions for other search engines.

Putting Your Dataverse Installation on the Map at dataverse.org

Congratulations! You've gone live! It's time to announce your new data repository to the world! You are also welcome to contact support@dataverse.org to have the Dataverse Project Team add your installation to the map at <http://dataverse.org>. Thank you for installing the Dataverse Software!

Administration of Your Dataverse Installation

Now that you're live you'll want to review the *Admin Guide* for more information about the ongoing administration of a Dataverse installation.

Setting Up Integrations

Before going live, you might want to consider setting up integrations to make it easier for your users to deposit or explore data. See the [Integrations](#) section of the Admin Guide for details.

4.5.15 JVM Options

JVM stands for Java Virtual Machine and as a Java application, Payara can read JVM options when it is started. A number of JVM options are configured by the installer below is a complete list of the Dataverse Software-specific JVM options. You can inspect the configured options by running:

```
./asadmin list-jvm-options | egrep 'dataverse|doi'
```

When changing values these values with `asadmin`, you'll need to delete the old value before adding a new one, like this:

```
./asadmin delete-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.fqdn=old.example.com"
```

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.fqdn=dataverse.example.com"
```

It's also possible to change these values by stopping Payara, editing `payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/config/domain.xml`, and restarting Payara.

dataverse.fqdn

If the Dataverse installation has multiple DNS names, this option specifies the one to be used as the “official” hostname. For example, you may want to have `dataverse.example.edu`, and not the less appealing `server-123.example.edu` to appear exclusively in all the registered global identifiers, etc.

- Email confirmation links
- Password reset links
- Generating a Private URL
- PID minting
- Exporting to Schema.org format (and showing JSON-LD in HTML’s `<meta/>` tag)
- Exporting to DDI format
- Which Dataverse installation an “external tool” should return to
- URLs embedded in SWORD API responses
- ...

Usually it will follow the pattern `https://<full-qualified-domain-name>/<some-place-to-go-to>`. Only the FQDN part of your Dataverse installation URL can be determined by setting `dataverse.fqdn`.

Notes:

- The URL will default to using `https://` and no additional port information. If that does not suit your setup, you can define an additional option, `dataverse.siteUrl`, *explained below*, which always takes precedence.
- Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable `DATAVERSE_FQDN`. Defaults to `localhost` when used with `mp.config.profile=ct`

dataverse.siteUrl

`dataverse.siteUrl` is used to configure the URL for your Dataverse installation that you plan to advertise to your users. As explained in the [installation](#) docs, this setting is critical for the correct operation of your installation. For example, your site URL could be <https://dataverse.example.edu>. That is, even though the server might also be available at uglier URLs such as <https://server-123.example.edu>, the site URL is the “official” URL.

That said, some environments may require using a different URL pattern to access your installation. You might need to use HTTP without “S”, a non-standard port and so on. This is especially useful in development or testing environments.

You can provide any custom tailored site URL via `dataverse.siteUrl`, which always takes precedence. Example: `dataverse.siteUrl=http://localhost:8080`

If you wish to change your site URL by changing the domain configuration, you should edit your `domain.xml` directly to avoid problems with colons in commands. Find a line similar to `<jvm-options>-Ddataverse.siteUrl=https://dataverse.example.edu</jvm-options>` and change it. You can specify the protocol, host, and port number and should not include a trailing slash.

Notes:

- This setting may be used in combination with variable replacement, referencing `dataverse.fqdn` with `./asadmin create-jvm-options "\-Ddataverse.siteUrl=http\://\$\{dataverse.fqdn\}\:8080"`
- Remember to restart Payara after editing `domain.xml`.
- Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable `DATVERSE_SITEURL`. Defaults to `http://\$\{dataverse.fqdn\}:8080` when used with `mp.config.profile=ct`
- We are absolutely aware that it’s confusing to have both `dataverse.fqdn` and `dataverse.siteUrl`. <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/6636> is about resolving this confusion.

dataverse.files.directory

This is how you configure the path Dataverse uses for temporary files. (File store specific `dataverse.files.<id>.directory` options set the permanent data storage locations.)

dataverse.files.uploads

Configure a folder to store the incoming file stream during uploads (before transferring to `$(dataverse.files.directory)/temp`). Please also see [Temporary Upload File Storage](#) for more details. You can use an absolute path or a relative, which is relative to the application server domain directory.

Defaults to `./uploads`, which resolves to `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/uploads` in a default installation.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable `DATVERSE_FILES_UPLOADS`.

dataverse.auth.password-reset-timeout-in-minutes

Users have 60 minutes to change their passwords by default. You can adjust this value here.

dataverse.db.name

The PostgreSQL database name to use for the Dataverse installation.

Defaults to `dataverse` (but the installer sets it to `dvnadb`).

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable `DATVERSE_DB_NAME`.

dataverse.db.user

The PostgreSQL user name to connect with.

Defaults to `dataverse` (but the installer sets it to `dvnapp`).

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable `DATVERSE_DB_USER`.

dataverse.db.password

The PostgreSQL users password to connect with.

Preferrably use a JVM alias, as passwords in environment variables aren't safe.

```
echo "AS_ADMIN_ALIASPASSWORD=change-me-super-secret" > /tmp/password.txt
asadmin create-password-alias --passwordfile /tmp/password.txt dataverse.db.password
rm /tmp/password.txt
```

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable `DATVERSE_DB_PASSWORD`.

dataverse.db.host

The PostgreSQL server to connect to.

Defaults to `localhost`.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable `DATVERSE_DB_HOST`.

dataverse.db.port

The PostgreSQL server port to connect to.

Defaults to 5432, the default PostgreSQL port.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable `DATVERSE_DB_PORT`.

dataverse.solr.host

The hostname of a Solr server to connect to. Remember to restart / redeploy Dataverse after changing the setting (as with [:SolrHostColonPort](#)).

Defaults to localhost.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable DATAVERSE_SOLR_HOST. Defaults to solr, when used with `mp.config.profile=ct` ([see below](#)).

dataverse.solr.port

The Solr server port to connect to. Remember to restart / redeploy Dataverse after changing the setting (as with [:SolrHostColonPort](#)).

Defaults to 8983, the default Solr port.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable DATAVERSE_SOLR_PORT.

dataverse.solr.core

The name of the Solr core to use for this Dataverse installation. Might be used to switch to a different core quickly. Remember to restart / redeploy Dataverse after changing the setting (as with [:SolrHostColonPort](#)).

Defaults to collection1.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable DATAVERSE_SOLR_CORE.

dataverse.solr.protocol

The Solr server URL protocol for the connection. Remember to restart / redeploy Dataverse after changing the setting (as with [:SolrHostColonPort](#)).

Defaults to http, but might be set to https for extra secure Solr installations.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable DATAVERSE_SOLR_PROTOCOL.

dataverse.solr.path

The path part of the Solr endpoint URL (e.g. /solr/collection1 or http://localhost:8389/solr/collection1). Might be used to target a Solr API at non-default places. Remember to restart / redeploy Dataverse after changing the setting (as with [:SolrHostColonPort](#)).

Defaults to /solr/\${dataverse.solr.core}, interpolating the core name when used. Make sure to include the variable when using it to configure your core name!

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable DATAVERSE_SOLR_PATH.

dataverse.rserve.host

Host name for Rserve, used for tasks that require use of R (to ingest RData files and to save tabular data as RData frames).

Defaults to localhost.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable DATAVERSE_RSERVE_HOST.

dataverse.rserve.port

Port number for Rserve, used for tasks that require use of R (to ingest RData files and to save tabular data as RData frames).

Defaults to 6311 when not configured or no valid integer.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable DATAVERSE_RSERVE_PORT.

dataverse.rserve.user

Username for Rserve, used for tasks that require use of R (to ingest RData files and to save tabular data as RData frames).

Defaults to rserve.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable DATAVERSE_RSERVE_USER.

dataverse.rserve.password

Password for Rserve, used for tasks that require use of R (to ingest RData files and to save tabular data as RData frames).

Defaults to rserve.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable DATAVERSE_RSERVE_PASSWORD.

dataverse.rserve.tempdir

Temporary directory used by Rserve (defaults to /tmp/Rserv). Note that this location is local to the host on which Rserv is running (specified in dataverse.rserve.host above). When talking to Rserve, Dataverse needs to know this location in order to generate absolute path names of the files on the other end.

Defaults to /tmp/Rserv.

Can also be set via *MicroProfile Config API* sources, e.g. the environment variable DATAVERSE_RSERVE_TEMPDIR.

dataverse.dropbox.key

Dropbox provides a Chooser app, which is a Javascript component that allows you to upload files to your Dataverse installation from Dropbox. It is an optional configuration setting, which requires you to pass it an app key and configure the :UploadMethods database setting. For more information on setting up your Chooser app, visit <https://www.dropbox.com/developers/chooser>.

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.dropbox.key={{YOUR_APP_KEY}}"
```

dataverse.path.imagemagick.convert

For overriding the default path to the convert binary from ImageMagick (/usr/bin/convert).

dataverse.dataAccess.thumbnail.image.limit

For limiting the size (in bytes) of thumbnail images generated from files. The default is 3000000 bytes (3 MB).

dataverse.dataAccess.thumbnail.pdf.limit

For limiting the size (in bytes) of thumbnail images generated from files. The default is 1000000 bytes (1 MB).

doi.baseurlstring

As of this writing, “<https://mds.datacite.org>” (DataCite) and “<https://ezid.cdlib.org>” (EZID) are the main valid values.

Out of the box, the Dataverse Software is configured to use a test MDS DataCite base URL string. You can delete it like this:

```
./asadmin delete-jvm-options '-Ddoi.baseurlstring=https\://mds.test.datacite.org'
```

Then, to switch to production DataCite, you can issue the following command:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Ddoi.baseurlstring=https\://mds.datacite.org'
```

See also these related database settings below:

- [*:DoiProvider*](#)
- [*:Protocol*](#)
- [*:Authority*](#)
- [*:Shoulder*](#)

doi.dataciterestapiurlstring

This configuration option affects the `updateCitationsForDataset` API endpoint documented under [Configuring Your Dataverse Installation for Make Data Count Citations](#) in the Admin Guide as well as the `/pids/*` API.

As of this writing, “<https://api.datacite.org>” (DataCite) and “<https://api.test.datacite.org>” (DataCite Testing) are the main valid values.

Out of the box, the Dataverse Software is configured to use a test DataCite REST API base URL string. You can delete it like this:

```
./asadmin delete-jvm-options '-Ddoi.dataciterestapiurlstring=https\://api.test.datacite.org'
```

Then, to switch to production DataCite, you can issue the following command:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Ddoi.dataciterestapiurlstring=https\://api.datacite.org'
```

For backward compatibility, if this option is not defined, the value of ‘-Ddoi.mdcbaseurlstring’ is used if set. If not the default used is “<https://api.datacite.org>”.

See also these related database settings below:

- [*:MDCLogPath*](#)

- :DisplayMDCMetrics

doi.username

Used in conjunction with `doi.baseurlstring`.

Once you have a username from your provider, you can enter it like this:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Ddoi.username=YOUR_USERNAME_HERE'
```

doi.password

Used in conjunction with `doi.baseurlstring`.

Once you have a password from your provider, you can enter it like this:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Ddoi.password=YOUR_PASSWORD_HERE'
```

dataverse.handlenet.admcredfile

If you're using **handles**, this JVM setting configures access credentials so your Dataverse installation can talk to your Handle.Net server. This is the private key generated during Handle.Net server installation. Typically the full path is set to `handle/svr_1/admpriv.bin`. Please refer to [Handle.Net's documentation](#) for more info.

dataverse.handlenet.admprivphrase

This JVM setting is also part of **handles** configuration. The Handle.Net installer lets you choose whether to encrypt the admcredfile private key or not. If you do encrypt it, this is the pass phrase that it's encrypted with.

dataverse.handlenet.index

If you want to use different index than the default 300

dataverse.timerServer

This JVM option is only relevant if you plan to run multiple Payara servers for redundancy. Only one Payara server can act as the dedicated timer server and for details on promoting or demoting a Payara server to handle this responsibility, see [Dataverse Installation Application Timers](#).

dataverse.lang.directory

This JVM option is used to configure the path where all the language specific property files are to be stored. If this option is set then the English property file must be present in the path along with any other language property file. You can download language property files from <https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-language-packs>

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Ddataverse.lang.directory=PATH_LOCATION_HERE'
```

If this value is not set, by default, a Dataverse installation will read the English language property files from the Java Application.

See also [Internationalization](#).

dataverse.files.hide-schema-dot-org-download-urls

Please note that this setting is experimental.

By default, download URLs to files will be included in Schema.org JSON-LD output. To prevent these URLs from being included in the output, set `dataverse.files.hide-schema-dot-org-download-urls` to true as in the example below.

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Ddataverse.files.hide-schema-dot-org-download-urls=true'
```

Please note that there are other reasons why download URLs may not be included for certain files such as if a guestbook entry is required or if the file is restricted.

For more on Schema.org JSON-LD, see the [Metadata Export](#) section of the Admin Guide.

dataverse.useripaddresssourceheader

Make sure to read the section about the [Security Implications](#) of using this option earlier in the guide!

If set, specifies an HTTP Header such as X-Forwarded-For to use to retrieve the user's IP address. For example:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Ddataverse.useripaddresssourceheader=X-Forwarded-For'
```

This setting is useful in cases such as running your Dataverse installation behind load balancers where the default option of getting the Remote Address from the servlet isn't correct (e.g. it would be the load balancer IP address). Note that unless your installation always sets the header you configure here, this could be used as a way to spoof the user's address. Allowed values are:

```
"X-Forwarded-For",
"Proxy-Client-IP",
"WL-Proxy-Client-IP",
"HTTP_X_FORWARDED_FOR",
"HTTP_X_FORWARDED",
"HTTP_X_CLUSTER_CLIENT_IP",
"HTTP_CLIENT_IP",
"HTTP_FORWARDED_FOR",
"HTTP_FORWARDED",
"HTTP_VIA",
"REMOTE_ADDR"
```

dataverse.api.signature-secret

Context: Dataverse has the ability to create “Signed URLs” for its API calls. Using signed URLs is more secure than providing API tokens, which are long-lived and give the holder all of the permissions of the user. In contrast, signed URLs are time limited and only allow the action of the API call in the URL. See [Authorization Options](#) and [Request Signed URL](#) for more details.

The key used to sign a URL is created from the API token of the creating user plus a signature-secret provided by an administrator. **Using a signature-secret is highly recommended.** This setting defaults to an empty string. Using a non-empty signature-secret makes it impossible for someone who knows an API token from forging signed URLs and provides extra security by making the overall signing key longer.

Since the signature-secret is sensitive, you should treat it like a password. Here is an example how to set your shared secret with the secure method “password alias”:

```
echo "AS_ADMIN_ALIASPASSWORD=change-me-super-secret" > /tmp/password.txt
asadmin create-password-alias --passwordfile /tmp/password.txt dataverse.api.signature-
˓→secret
rm /tmp/password.txt
```

Can also be set via any [supported MicroProfile Config API source](#), e.g. the environment variable `DATAVERSE_API_SIGNATURE_SECRET`.

WARNING: For security, do not use the sources “environment variable” or “system property” (JVM option) in a production context! Rely on password alias, secrets directory or cloud based sources instead!

4.5.16 Application Server Settings

`http.request-timeout-seconds`

To facilitate large file upload and download, the Dataverse Software installer bumps the Payara `server-config.network-config.protocols.protocol.http-listener-1.http.request-timeout-seconds` setting from its default 900 seconds (15 minutes) to 1800 (30 minutes). Should you wish to shorten or lengthen this window, issue for example:

```
./asadmin set server-config.network-config.protocols.protocol.http-listener-1.http-
request-timeout-seconds=3600
```

and restart Payara to apply your change.

`mp.config.profile`

MicroProfile Config 2.0 defines the [concept of “profiles”](#). They can be used to change configuration values by context. This is used in Dataverse to change some configuration defaults when used inside container context rather classic installations.

As per the spec, you will need to set the configuration value `mp.config.profile` to `ct` as early as possible. This is best done with a system property:

```
./asadmin create-system-properties 'mp.config.profile=ct'
```

You might also create your own profiles and use these, please refer to the upstream documentation linked above.

4.5.17 Database Settings

These settings are stored in the `setting` database table but can be read and modified via the “admin” endpoint of the [Native API](#) for easy scripting.

The most commonly used configuration options are listed first.

The pattern you will observe in curl examples below is that an HTTP PUT is used to add or modify a setting. If you perform an HTTP GET (the default when using curl), the output will contain the value of the setting, if it has been set. You can also do a GET of all settings with `curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings` which you may want to pretty-print by piping the output through a tool such as `jq` by appending `| jq ..`. If you want to remove a setting, use an HTTP DELETE such as `curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:GuidesBaseUrl`.

:BlockedApiPolicy

:BlockedApiPolicy affects access to the list of API endpoints defined in :BlockedApiEndpoints.

Out of the box, localhost-only is the default policy, as mentioned in [Blocking API Endpoints](#). The other valid options are the following.

- localhost-only: Allow from localhost.
- unblock-key: Require a key defined in :BlockedApiKey.
- drop: Disallow the blocked endpoints completely.

Below is an example of setting localhost-only.

```
curl -X PUT -d localhost-only http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:BlockedApiPolicy
```

:BlockedApiEndpoints

A comma-separated list of API endpoints to be blocked. For a standard production installation, the installer blocks both “admin” and “builtin-users” by default per the security section above:

```
curl -X PUT -d "admin,builtin-users" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:BlockedApiEndpoints
```

See the [Lists of Dataverse APIs](#) for lists of API endpoints.

:BlockedApiKey

:BlockedApiKey is used in conjunction with :BlockedApiEndpoints and :BlockedApiPolicy and will not be enabled unless the policy is set to unblock-key as demonstrated below. Please note that the order is significant. You should set :BlockedApiKey first to prevent locking yourself out.

```
curl -X PUT -d s3kretKey http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:BlockedApiKey  
curl -X PUT -d unblock-key http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:BlockedApiPolicy
```

Now that :BlockedApiKey has been enabled, blocked APIs can be accessed using the query parameter unblock-key=theKeyYouChose as in the example below.

```
curl https://demo.dataverse.org/api/admin/settings?unblock-key=theKeyYouChose
```

BuiltinUsers.KEY

The key required to create users via API as documented at [Native API](#). Unlike other database settings, this one doesn’t start with a colon.

```
curl -X PUT -d builtInS3kretKey http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/BuiltinUsers.KEY
```

:SearchApiRequiresToken

In Dataverse Software 4.7 and lower, the *Search API* required an API token, but as of Dataverse Software 4.7.1 this is no longer the case. If you prefer the old behavior of requiring API tokens to use the Search API, set `:SearchApiRequiresToken` to true.

```
curl -X PUT -d true http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:SearchApiRequiresToken
```

:SystemEmail

This is the email address that “system” emails are sent from such as password reset links. Your Dataverse installation will not send mail without this setting in place.

```
curl -X PUT -d 'LibraScholar SWAT Team <support@librascholar.edu>' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:SystemEmail
```

Note that only the email address is required, which you can supply without the < and > signs, but if you include the text, it’s the way to customize the name of your support team, which appears in the “from” address in emails as well as in help text in the UI. If you don’t include the text, the installation name (see *Branding Your Installation*) will appear in the “from” address.

Please note that if you’re having any trouble sending email, you can refer to “Troubleshooting” under *Installation*.

:HomePageCustomizationFile

See *Branding Your Installation* above.

:LogoCustomizationFile

See *Branding Your Installation* above.

:HeaderCustomizationFile

See *Branding Your Installation* above.

:DisableRootDataverseTheme

See *Branding Your Installation* above.

:FooterCustomizationFile

See *Branding Your Installation* above.

:StyleCustomizationFile

See [Branding Your Installation](#) above.

:WebAnalyticsCode

See [Web Analytics Code](#) above.

:FooterCopyright

By default the footer says “Copyright © [YYYY]” but you can add text after the year, as in the example below.

```
curl -X PUT -d ", Your Institution" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:FooterCopyright
```

:DoiProvider

As of this writing “DataCite” and “EZID” are the only valid options for production installations. Developers using Dataverse Software 4.10+ are welcome to use the keyword “FAKE” to configure a non-production installation with a non-resolving, in-code provider, which will basically short-circuit the DOI publishing process. :DoiProvider is only needed if you are using DOI.

```
curl -X PUT -d DataCite http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DoiProvider
```

This setting relates to the :Protocol, :Authority, :Shoulder, and :IdentifierGenerationStyle database settings below as well as the following JVM options:

- *doi.baseurlstring*
- *doi.username*
- *doi.password*

:Protocol

As of this writing “doi” and “hdl” are the only valid option for the protocol for a persistent ID.

```
curl -X PUT -d doi http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:Protocol
```

:Authority

Use the authority assigned to you by your DoiProvider or HandleProvider.

Please note that the authority cannot have a slash (“/”) in it.

```
curl -X PUT -d 10.xxxx http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:Authority
```

:Shoulder

Out of the box, the DOI shoulder is set to “FK2/” but this is for testing only! When you apply for your DOI namespace, you may have requested a shoulder. The following is only an example and a trailing slash is optional.

```
curl -X PUT -d "MyShoulder/" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:Shoulder
```

:IdentifierGenerationStyle

By default, the Dataverse Software generates a random 6 character string, pre-pended by the Shoulder if set, to use as the identifier for a Dataset. Set this to `storedProcGenerated` to generate instead a custom *unique* identifier (again pre-pended by the Shoulder if set) through a database stored procedure or function (the assumed default setting is `randomString`). In addition to this setting, a stored procedure or function must be created in the database.

As a first example, the `createsequence.sql` script located at `/_static/util/createsequence.sql` produces sequential numerical values. You may need to make some changes to suit your system setup, see the comments for more information:

```
-- A script for creating a numeric identifier sequence, and an external
-- stored procedure, for accessing the sequence from inside the application,
-- in a non-hacky, JPA way.

-- NOTE:

-- 1. The database user name "dvnapp" is hard-coded here - it may
-- need to be changed to match your database user name;

-- 2. In the code below, the sequence starts with 1, but it can be adjusted by
-- changing the MINVALUE as needed.

CREATE SEQUENCE datasetidentifier_seq
    INCREMENT 1
    MINVALUE 1
    MAXVALUE 9223372036854775807
    START 1
    CACHE 1;

ALTER TABLE datasetidentifier_seq OWNER TO "dvnapp";

-- And now create a PostgreSQL FUNCTION, for JPA to
-- access as a NamedStoredProcedure:

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION generateIdentifierFromStoredProcedure()
RETURNS varchar AS $$
DECLARE
    identifier varchar;
BEGIN
    identifier := nextval('datasetidentifier_seq')::varchar;
    RETURN identifier;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql IMMUTABLE;
```

As a second example, the `identifier_from_timestamp.sql` script located at `/_static/util/identifier_from_timestamp.sql` produces sequential 8 character identifiers from a base36 representation

of current timestamp.

```
-- A script for creating, through a database stored procedure, sequential
-- 8 character identifiers from a base36 representation of current timestamp.

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION base36_encode(
    IN digits bigint, IN min_width int = 0)
RETURNS varchar AS $$

DECLARE
    chars char[];
    ret varchar;
    val bigint;
BEGIN
    chars := ARRAY[
        '0', '1', '2', '3', '4', '5', '6', '7', '8', '9',
        'a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e', 'f', 'g', 'h', 'i', 'j',
        'k', 'l', 'm', 'n', 'o', 'p', 'q', 'r', 's', 't',
        'u', 'v', 'w', 'x', 'y', 'z'];
    val := digits;
    ret := '';
    IF val < 0 THEN
        val := val * -1;
    END IF;
    WHILE val != 0 LOOP
        ret := chars[(val % 36)+1] || ret;
        val := val / 36;
    END LOOP;

    IF min_width > 0 AND char_length(ret) < min_width THEN
        ret := lpad(ret, min_width, '0');
    END IF;

    RETURN ret;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql IMMUTABLE;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION generateIdentifierFromStoredProcedure()
RETURNS varchar AS $$

DECLARE
    curr_time_msec bigint;
    identifier varchar;
BEGIN
    curr_time_msec := extract(epoch from now())*1000;
    identifier := base36_encode(curr_time_msec);
    RETURN identifier;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql IMMUTABLE;
```

Note that the SQL in these examples scripts is Postgres-specific. If necessary, it can be reimplemented in any other SQL flavor - the standard JPA code in the application simply expects the database to have a saved function (“stored procedure”) named `generateIdentifierFromStoredProcedure()` returning a single `varchar` argument.

Please note that `:IdentifierGenerationStrategy` also plays a role for the “identifier” for files. See the section on [DataFilePIDFormat](#) below for more details.

:DataFilePIDFormat

This setting controls the way that the “identifier” component of a file’s persistent identifier (PID) relates to the PID of its “parent” dataset.

By default the identifier for a file is dependent on its parent dataset. For example, if the identifier of a dataset is “TJCLKP”, the identifier for a file within that dataset will consist of the parent dataset’s identifier followed by a slash (“/”), followed by a random 6 character string, yielding “TJCLKP/MLGWJO”. Identifiers in this format are what you should expect if you leave :DataFilePIDFormat undefined or set it to DEPENDENT and have not changed the :IdentifierGenerationStyle setting from its default.

Alternatively, the identifier for File PIDs can be configured to be independent of Dataset PIDs using the setting INDEPENDENT. In this case, file PIDs will not contain the PIDs of their parent datasets, and their PIDs will be generated the exact same way that datasets’ PIDs are, based on the :IdentifierGenerationStyle setting described above (random 6 character strings or custom unique identifiers through a stored procedure, pre-pended by any shoulder).

The chart below shows examples from each possible combination of parameters from the two settings. :IdentifierGenerationStyle can be either randomString (the default) or storedProcGenerated and :DataFilePIDFormat can be either DEPENDENT (the default) or INDEPENDENT. In the examples below the “identifier” for the dataset is “TJCLKP” for randomString and “100001” for storedProcGenerated (when using sequential numerical values, as described in :IdentifierGenerationStyle above), or “krby26qt” for storedProcGenerated (when using base36 timestamps, as described in :IdentifierGenerationStyle above).

	randomString	storedProcGenerated (sequential numbers)	storedProcGenerated (base36 timestamps)
DEPENDENT	TJ-CLKP/MLGWJO	100001/1	krby26qt/1
INDEPENDENT	MLGWJO	100002	krby27pz

As seen above, in cases where :IdentifierGenerationStyle is set to storedProcGenerated and :DataFilePIDFormat is set to DEPENDENT, each file within a dataset will be assigned a number *within* that dataset starting with “1”.

Otherwise, if :DataFilePIDFormat is set to INDEPENDENT, each file within the dataset is assigned with a new PID which is the next available identifier provided from the database stored procedure. In our example: “100002” when using sequential numbers or “krby27pz” when using base36 timestamps.

:FilePIIDsEnabled

Toggles publishing of file-based PIDs for the entire installation. By default this setting is absent and Dataverse Software assumes it to be true. If enabled, the registration will be performed asynchronously (in the background) during publishing of a dataset.

If you don’t want to register file-based PIDs for your installation, set:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'false' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:FilePIIDsEnabled
```

Note: File-level PID registration was added in Dataverse Software 4.9; it could not be disabled until Dataverse Software 4.9.3.

:IndependentHandleService

Specific for Handle PIDs. Set this setting to true if you want to use a Handle service which is setup to work ‘independently’ (No communication with the Global Handle Registry). By default this setting is absent and the Dataverse Software assumes it to be false.

```
curl -X PUT -d 'true' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:IndependentHandleService
```

:HandleAuthHandle

Specific for Handle PIDs. Set this setting to <prefix>/<suffix> to be used on a global handle service when the public key is NOT stored in the default handle. By default this setting is absent and the Dataverse Software assumes it to be not set. If the public key for instance is stored in handle: 21.T12996/USER01. For this handle the prefix is ‘21.T12996’ and the suffix is ‘USER01’. The command to execute is then:

```
curl -X PUT -d '21.T12996/USER01' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:HandleAuthHandle
```

:FileValidationOnPublishEnabled

Toggles validation of the physical files in the dataset when it’s published, by recalculating the checksums and comparing against the values stored in the DataFile table. By default this setting is absent and the Dataverse Software assumes it to be true. If enabled, the validation will be performed asynchronously, similarly to how we handle assigning persistent identifiers to datafiles, with the dataset locked for the duration of the publishing process.

If you don’t want the datafiles to be validated on publish, set:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'false' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:FileValidationOnPublishEnabled
```

:ApplicationTermsOfUse

Upload an default language HTML file containing the Terms of Use to be displayed at sign up. Supported HTML tags are listed under the [Dataset + File Management](#) section of the User Guide.

```
curl -X PUT -d@/tmp/apptou.html http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ApplicationTermsOfUse
```

To upload a language specific Terms of Use file,

```
curl -X PUT -d@/tmp/apptou_fr.html http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ApplicationTermsOfUse/lang/fr
```

To delete language specific option,

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ApplicationTermsOfUse/lang/fr
```

:ApplicationPrivacyPolicyUrl

Specify a URL where users can read your Privacy Policy, linked from the bottom of the page.

```
curl -X PUT -d https://dataverse.org/best-practices/harvard-dataverse-privacy-policy
http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ApplicationPrivacyPolicyUrl
```

:ApiTermsOfUse

Specify a URL where users can read your API Terms of Use. API users can retrieve this URL from the SWORD Service Document or the [Info](#) section of our [Native API](#) documentation.

```
curl -X PUT -d https://dataverse.org/best-practices/harvard-api-tou http://
localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ApiTermsOfUse
```

:ExcludeEmailFromExport

See also [Privacy Considerations](#) above.

Set :ExcludeEmailFromExport to prevent email addresses for contacts from being exposed in XML or JSON representations of dataset and Dataverse collection metadata. For a list exported formats such as DDI, see the [Metadata Export](#) section of the Admin Guide.

```
curl -X PUT -d true http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ExcludeEmailFromExport
```

Note: After making a change to this setting, a reExportAll needs to be run before the changes will be reflected in the exports:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/metadata/reExportAll
```

This will *force* a re-export of every published, local dataset, regardless of whether it has already been exported or not.

The call returns a status message informing the administrator, that the process has been launched (`{"status": "WORKFLOW_IN_PROGRESS"}`). The administrator can check the progress of the process via log files: [Payara directory]/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/export_[time stamp].log.

:NavbarAboutUrl

Set :NavbarAboutUrl to a fully-qualified URL which will be used for the “About” link in the navbar.

Note: The “About” link will not appear in the navbar until this option is set.

```
curl -X PUT -d http://dataverse.example.edu http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/
:NavbarAboutUrl
```

:NavbarGuidesUrl

Set :NavbarGuidesUrl to a fully-qualified URL which will be used for the “User Guide” link in the navbar.

Note: by default, the URL is composed from the settings :GuidesBaseUrl and :GuidesVersion below.

```
curl -X PUT -d http://example.edu/fancy-dataverse-guide http://localhost:8080/api/admin/
settings/:NavbarGuidesUrl
```

:GuidesBaseUrl

Set :GuidesBaseUrl to override the default value “<http://guides.dataverse.org>”. If you are interested in writing your own version of the guides, you may find the [Writing Documentation](#) section of the Developer Guide helpful.

```
curl -X PUT -d http://dataverse.example.edu http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:GuidesBaseUrl
```

:GuidesVersion

Set :GuidesVersion to override the version number in the URL of guides. For example, rather than <http://guides.dataverse.org/en/4.6/user/account.html> the version is overridden to <http://guides.dataverse.org/en/1234-new-feature/user/account.html> in the example below:

```
curl -X PUT -d 1234-new-feature http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:GuidesVersion
```

:NavbarSupportUrl

Set :NavbarSupportUrl to a fully-qualified URL which will be used for the “Support” link in the navbar.

Note that this will override the default behaviour for the “Support” menu option, which is to display the Dataverse collection ‘feedback’ dialog.

```
curl -X PUT -d http://dataverse.example.edu/supportpage.html http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:NavbarSupportUrl
```

:MetricsUrl

Make the metrics component on the root Dataverse collection a clickable link to a website where you present metrics on your Dataverse installation, perhaps one of the community-supported tools mentioned in the [Reporting Tools and Common Queries](#) section of the Admin Guide.

```
curl -X PUT -d http://metrics.dataverse.example.edu http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:MetricsUrl
```

:MaxFileUploadSizeInBytes

This setting controls the maximum size of uploaded files. - To have one limit for all stores, set *MaxFileUploadSizeInBytes* to “2147483648”, for example, to limit the size of files uploaded to 2 GB:

```
curl -X PUT -d 2147483648 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:MaxFileUploadSizeInBytes
```

- To have limits per store with an optional default, use a serialized json object for the value of *MaxFileUploadSizeInBytes* with an entry per store, as in the following example, which maintains a 2 GB default and adds higher limits for stores with ids “fileOne” and “s3”.

```
curl -X PUT -d '{"default": "2147483648", "fileOne": "40000000000", "s3": "80000000000"}' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:MaxFileUploadSizeInBytes
```

Notes:

- For SWORD, this size is limited by the Java Integer.MAX_VALUE of 2,147,483,647. (see: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/2169>)
- If the MaxFileUploadSizeInBytes is NOT set, uploads, including SWORD may be of unlimited size.

- For larger file upload sizes, you may need to configure your reverse proxy timeout. If using apache2 (httpd) with Shibboleth, add a timeout to the ProxyPass defined in etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf (which is described in the [Shibboleth](#) setup).

:MultipleUploadFilesLimit

This setting controls the number of files that can be uploaded through the UI at once. The default is 1000. It should be set to 1 or higher since 0 has no effect. To limit the number of files in a zip file, see :ZipUploadFilesLimit.

```
curl -X PUT -d 500 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:MultipleUploadFilesLimit
```

:ZipDownloadLimit

For performance reasons, your Dataverse installation will only allow creation of zip files up to 100 MB, but the limit can be increased. Here's an example of raising the limit to 1 GB:

```
curl -X PUT -d 10000000000 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ZipDownloadLimit
```

In the UI, users trying to download a zip file larger than the Dataverse installation's :ZipDownloadLimit will receive messaging that the zip file is too large, and the user will be presented with alternate access options.

:TabularIngestSizeLimit

Threshold in bytes for limiting whether or not “ingest” it attempted for tabular files (which can be resource intensive). For example, with the below in place, files greater than 2 GB in size will not go through the ingest process:

```
curl -X PUT -d 20000000000 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:TabularIngestSizeLimit
```

(You can set this value to 0 to prevent files from being ingested at all.)

You can override this global setting on a per-format basis for the following formats:

- DTA
- POR
- SAV
- Rdata
- CSV
- XLSX

For example, if you want your Dataverse installation to not attempt to ingest Rdata files larger than 1 MB, use this setting:

```
curl -X PUT -d 1000000 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:TabularIngestSizeLimit:Rdata
```

:ZipUploadFilesLimit

Limit the number of files in a zip that your Dataverse installation will accept. In the absence of this setting, your Dataverse instalation defaults to a limit of 1,000 files per zipfile.

```
curl -X PUT -d 2048 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ZipUploadFilesLimit
```

:SolrHostColonPort

By default your Dataverse installation will attempt to connect to Solr on port 8983 on localhost. Use this setting to change the hostname or port. You must restart Payara after making this change.

```
curl -X PUT -d localhost:8983 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:SolrHostColonPort
```

Note: instead of using a database setting, you could alternatively use JVM settings like *dataverse.solr.host*.

:SolrFullTextIndexing

Whether or not to index the content of files such as PDFs. The default is false.

```
curl -X PUT -d true http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:SolrFullTextIndexing
```

:SolrMaxFileSizeForFullTextIndexing

If :SolrFullTextIndexing is set to true, the content of files of any size will be indexed. To set a limit in bytes for which files to index in this way:

```
curl -X PUT -d 314572800 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:SolrMaxFileSizeForFullTextIndexing
```

:SignUpUrl

The relative path URL to which users will be sent for sign up. The default setting is below.

```
curl -X PUT -d '/dataverseuser.xhtml?editMode=CREATE' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:SignUpUrl
```

:LoginSessionTimeout

Session timeout (in minutes) for logged-in users. The default is 8 hours (480 minutes). For the anonymous user sessions, the timeout is set to the default value, configured in the web.xml file of the Dataverse installation.

In the example below we reduce the timeout to 4 hours:

```
curl -X PUT -d 240 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:LoginSessionTimeout
```

:DatasetPublishPopupCustomText

Set custom text a user will view when publishing a dataset. Note that this text is exposed via the “Info” endpoint of the [Native API](#).

```
curl -X PUT -d "Deposit License Requirements" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DatasetPublishPopupCustomText
```

If you have a long text string, you can upload it as a file as in the example below.

```
curl -X PUT --upload-file /tmp/long.txt http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DatasetPublishPopupCustomText
```

:DatasetPublishPopupCustomTextOnAllVersions

Set whether a user will see the custom text when publishing all versions of a dataset

```
curl -X PUT -d true http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DatasetPublishPopupCustomTextOnAllVersions
```

:SearchHighlightFragmentSize

Set :SearchHighlightFragmentSize to override the default value of 100 from <https://wiki.apache.org/solr/HighlightingParameters#hl fragsize>. In practice, a value of “320” seemed to fix the issue at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/2191>

```
curl -X PUT -d 320 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:SearchHighlightFragmentSize
```

:ScrubMigrationData

Allow for migration of non-conformant data (especially dates) from Dataverse Software 3.x to Dataverse Software 4.x

:MinutesUntilConfirmEmailTokenExpires

The duration in minutes before “Confirm Email” URLs expire. The default is 1440 minutes (24 hours). See also the [User Administration](#) section of our Admin Guide.

:DefaultAuthProvider

If you have enabled Shibboleth and/or one or more OAuth providers, you may wish to make one of these authentication providers the default when users visit the Log In page. If unset, this will default to builtin but these valid options (depending if you’ve done the setup described in the [Shibboleth](#) or [OAuth Login Options](#) sections) are:

- builtin
- shib
- orcid
- github
- google

Here is an example of setting the default auth provider back to builtin:

```
curl -X PUT -d builtin http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DefaultAuthProvider
```

:AllowSignUp

Set to false to disallow local accounts from being created. See also the sections on [Shibboleth](#) and [OAuth Login Options](#).

```
curl -X PUT -d 'false' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:AllowSignUp
```

:AllowRemoteAuthSignUp

This is a **compound** setting that enables or disables sign up for new accounts for individual OAuth2 authentication methods (such as Orcid, Google and GitHub). This way it is possible to continue allowing logins via an OAuth2 provider for already existing accounts, without letting new users create accounts with this method.

By default, if the setting is not present, all configured OAuth sign ups are allowed. If the setting is present, but the value for this specific method is not specified, it is assumed that the sign ups are allowed for it.

Examples:

This curl command...

```
curl -X PUT -d '{"default":"false"}' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:AllowRemoteAuthSignUp
```

...disables all OAuth sign ups.

This curl command...

```
curl -X PUT -d '{"default":"true","google":"false"}' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:AllowRemoteAuthSignUp
```

...keeps sign ups open for all the OAuth login providers except google. (That said, note that the "default": "true" part in this example is redundant, since it would default to true anyway for all the methods other than google.)

See also [OAuth Login Options](#).

:FileFixityChecksumAlgorithm

The Dataverse Software calculates checksums for uploaded files so that users can determine if their file was corrupted via upload or download. This is sometimes called “file fixity”: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File_Fixity

The default checksum algorithm used is MD5 and should be sufficient for establishing file fixity. “SHA-1”, “SHA-256” and “SHA-512” are alternate values for this setting. For example:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'SHA-512' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:FileFixityChecksumAlgorithm
```

The fixity algorithm used on existing files can be changed by a superuser using the API. An optional query parameter (num) can be used to limit the number of updates attempted. The API call will only update the algorithm and checksum for a file if the existing checksum can be validated against the file. Statistics concerning the updates are returned in the response to the API call with details in the log.

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/updateHashValues/{alg}      curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/updateHashValues/{alg}?num=1
```

:PVMINLength

Password policy setting for builtin user accounts: a password's minimum valid character length. The default is 6.

```
curl -X PUT -d 6 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:PVMINLength
```

:PVMaxLength

Password policy setting for builtin user accounts: a password's maximum valid character length.

```
curl -X PUT -d 0 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:PVMaxLength
```

:PVNumberOfConsecutiveDigitsAllowed

By default, passwords can contain an unlimited number of digits in a row. However, if your password policy specifies otherwise (e.g. only four digits in a row are allowed), then you can issue the following curl command to set the number of consecutive digits allowed (this example uses 4):

```
curl -X PUT -d 4 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:PVNumberOfConsecutiveDigitsAllowed
```

:PVCharacterRules

Password policy setting for builtinuser accounts: dictates which types of characters can be required in a password. This setting goes hand-in-hand with :PVNumberOfCharacteristics. The default setting contains two rules:

- one letter
- one digit

The default setting above is equivalent to specifying “Alphabetical:1,Digit:1”.

By specifying “UpperCase:1,LowerCase:1,Digit:1,Special:1”, for example, you can put the following four rules in place instead:

- one uppercase letter
- one lowercase letter
- one digit
- one special character

If you have implemented 4 different character rules in this way, you can also optionally increase :PVNumberOfCharacteristics to as high as 4. However, please note that :PVNumberOfCharacteristics cannot be set to a number higher than the number of character rules or you will see the error, “Number of characteristics must be <= to the number of rules”.

Also note that the Alphabetical setting should not be used in tandem with the UpperCase or LowerCase settings. The Alphabetical setting encompasses both of those more specific settings, so using it with them will cause your password policy to be unnecessarily confusing, and potentially easier to bypass.

```
curl -X PUT -d 'UpperCase:1,LowerCase:1,Digit:1,Special:1' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:PVCharacterRules
```

```
curl -X PUT -d 3 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:PVNumberOfCharacteristics
```

:PVNumberOfCharacteristics

Password policy setting for builtin user accounts: the number indicates how many of the character rules defined by :PVCharacterRules are required as part of a password. The default is 2. :PVNumberOfCharacteristics cannot be set to a number higher than the number of rules or you will see the error, “Number of characteristics must be <= to the number of rules”.

```
curl -X PUT -d 2 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:PVNumberOfCharacteristics
```

:PVDictionaries

Password policy setting for builtin user accounts: set a comma separated list of dictionaries containing words that cannot be used in a user password. /usr/share/dict/words is suggested and shown modified below to not contain words 3 letters or less. You are free to choose a different dictionary. By default, no dictionary is checked.

```
DIR=THE_PATH_YOU_WANT_YOUR_DICTIONARY_TO_RESIDE sed '/^.\{,3\}$/d' /usr/share/dict/words > $DIR/pwdictionary curl -X PUT -d "$DIR/pwdictionary" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:PVDictionaries
```

:PVGoodStrength

Password policy setting for builtin user accounts: passwords of equal or greater character length than the :PVGoodStrength setting are always valid, regardless of other password constraints.

```
curl -X PUT -d 20 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:PVGoodStrength
```

Recommended setting: 20.

:PVCustomPasswordResetAlertMessage

Changes the default info message displayed when a user is required to change their password on login. The default is:
`{0} Reset Password{1} - Our password requirements have changed. Please pick a strong password that matches the criteria below.`

Where the {0} and {1} denote surrounding HTML **bold** tags. It's recommended to put a single space before your custom message for better appearance (as in the default message above). Including the {0} and {1} to bolden part of your message is optional.

Customize the message using the following curl command's syntax:

```
curl -X PUT -d '{0} Action Required:{1} Your current password does not meet all requirements. Please enter a new password meeting the criteria below.' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:PVCustomPasswordResetAlertMessage
```

:ShibPassiveLoginEnabled

Set :ShibPassiveLoginEnabled to true to enable passive login for Shibboleth. When this feature is enabled, an additional Javascript file (isPassive.js) will be loaded for every page. It will generate a passive login request to your Shibboleth SP when an anonymous user navigates to the site. A cookie named “_check_is_passive_dv” will be created to keep track of whether or not a passive login request has already been made for the user.

This implementation follows the example on the Shibboleth wiki documentation page for the isPassive feature: <https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/isPassive>

It is recommended that you configure additional error handling for your Service Provider if you enable passive login. A good way of doing this is described in the Shibboleth wiki documentation:

- In your Service Provider 2.x shibboleth2.xml file, add redirectErrors="#THIS PAGE#" to the Errors element.

You can set the value of "#THIS PAGE#" to the URL of your Dataverse installation homepage, or any other page on your site that is accessible to anonymous users and will have the isPassive.js file loaded.

```
curl -X PUT -d true http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ShibPassiveLoginEnabled
```

:ShibAffiliationAttribute

The Shibboleth affiliation attribute holds information about the affiliation of the user (e.g. "OU") and is read from the DiscoFeed at each login. :ShibAffiliationAttribute is a name of a Shibboleth attribute in the Shibboleth header which your Dataverse installation will read from instead of DiscoFeed. If this value is not set or empty, your Dataverse installation uses the DiscoFeed.

If the attribute is not yet set for the Shibboleth, please consult the Shibboleth Administrators at your institution. Typically it requires changing of the /etc/shibboleth/attribute-map.xml file by adding an attribute request, e.g.

```
<Attribute name="urn:oid:2.5.4.11" id="ou">
    <AttributeDecoder xsi:type="StringAttributeDecoder" caseSensitive="false"/>
</Attribute>
```

In order to implement the change, you should restart Shibboleth and Apache2 services:

```
sudo service shibd restart
sudo service apache2 restart
```

To check if the attribute is sent, you should log in again to the Dataverse installation and check Shibboleth's transaction log. You should see something like this:

```
INFO Shibboleth-TRANSACTION [25]: Cached the following attributes with session (ID: _-9d1f34c0733b61c0feb0ca7596ef43b2) for (applicationId: default) {
INFO Shibboleth-TRANSACTION [25]:           givenName (1 values)
INFO Shibboleth-TRANSACTION [25]:           ou (1 values)
INFO Shibboleth-TRANSACTION [25]:           sn (1 values)
INFO Shibboleth-TRANSACTION [25]:           eppn (1 values)
INFO Shibboleth-TRANSACTION [25]:           mail (1 values)
INFO Shibboleth-TRANSACTION [25]:           displayName (1 values)
INFO Shibboleth-TRANSACTION [25]: }
```

If you see the attribute you requested in this list, you can set the attribute in the Dataverse installation.

To set :ShibAffiliationAttribute:

```
curl -X PUT -d "ou" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ShibAffiliationAttribute
```

To delete :ShibAffiliationAttribute:

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ShibAffiliationAttribute
```

To check the current value of :ShibAffiliationAttribute:

```
curl -X GET http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ShibAffiliationAttribute
```

:ShibAttributeCharacterSetConversionEnabled

It seems that the application server (usually Glassfish or Payara) will interpret all Shibboleth attributes that come through AJP as ISO-8859-1, even if they were originally UTF-8. To circumvent that, we re-encode all received Shibboleth attributes manually as UTF-8 by default. In the case you get garbled characters in Shibboleth-supplied fields (e.g. given name, surname, affiliation), you can disable this behaviour by setting `ShibAttributeCharacterSetConversionEnabled` to false:

```
curl -X PUT -d false http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ShibAttributeCharacterSetConversionEnabled
```

If you managed to get correct accented characters from shibboleth while this setting is `_false_`, please contact us with your application server and Shibboleth configuration!

:ShibAffiliationOrder

Will select the last or first value of an array in affiliation, the array separator can be set using `:ShibAffiliationSeparator`.

To select the last value :

```
curl -X PUT -d "lastAffiliation" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ShibAffiliationOrder
```

To select the first value :

```
curl -X PUT -d "firstAffiliation" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ShibAffiliationOrder
```

:ShibAffiliationSeparator

Set the separator to be used for `:ShibAffiliationOrder`. Default separator : “;”

To change the separator :

```
curl -X PUT -d ";" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ShibAffiliationSeparator
```

:ComputeBaseUrl

Set the base URL for the “Compute” button for a dataset.

```
curl -X PUT -d 'https://giji.massopencloud.org/application/dataverse' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ComputeBaseUrl
```

:CloudEnvironmentName

Set the name of the cloud environment you’ve integrated with your Dataverse installation.

```
curl -X PUT -d 'Massachusetts Open Cloud (MOC)' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:CloudEnvironmentName
```

:PublicInstall

Setting an installation to public will remove the ability to restrict data files or datasets. This functionality of the Dataverse Software will be disabled from your installation.

This is useful for specific cases where an installation's files are stored in public access. Because files stored this way do not obey the Dataverse Software's file restrictions, users would still be able to access the files even when they're restricted. In these cases it's best to use :PublicInstall to disable the feature altogether.

```
curl -X PUT -d true http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:PublicInstall
```

:DataCaptureModuleUrl

The URL for your Data Capture Module (DCM) installation. This component is experimental and can be downloaded from <https://github.com/sbgrid/data-capture-module> .

```
curl -X PUT -d 'https://dcm.example.edu' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DataCaptureModuleUrl
```

:RepositoryStorageAbstractionLayerUrl

The URL for your Repository Storage Abstraction Layer (RSAL) installation. This component is experimental and can be downloaded from <https://github.com/sbgrid/rsal> .

```
curl -X PUT -d 'https://rsal.example.edu' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:RepositoryStorageAbstractionLayerUrl
```

:UploadMethods

This setting controls which upload methods are available to users of your Dataverse installation. The following upload methods are available:

- `native/http`: Corresponds to “Upload with HTTP via your browser” and APIs that use HTTP (SWORD and native).
- `dvwebloader`: Corresponds to *Folder Upload*. Note that `dataverse.files.<id>.upload-redirect` must be set to “true” on an S3 store for this method to show up in the UI. In addition, `:WebloaderUrl` must be set. CORS allowed on the S3 bucket. See [Allow CORS for S3 Buckets](#).
- `dcm/rsync+ssh`: Corresponds to “Upload with rsync+ssh via Data Capture Module (DCM)”. A lot of setup is required, as explained in the *Big Data Support* section of the Developer Guide.

Out of the box only `native/http` is enabled and will work without further configuration. To add multiple upload method, separate them using a comma like this:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'native/http,dcm/rsync+ssh' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:UploadMethods
```

You'll always want at least one upload method, so the easiest way to remove one of them is to simply PUT just the one you want, like this:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'native/http' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:UploadMethods
```

:DownloadMethods

This setting is experimental and related to Repository Storage Abstraction Layer (RSAL).

```
curl -X PUT -d 'rsal/rsync' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DownloadMethods
```

:GuestbookResponsesPageDisplayLimit

Limit on how many guestbook entries to display on the guestbook-responses page. By default, only the 5000 most recent entries will be shown. Use the standard settings API in order to change the limit. For example, to set it to 10,000, make the following API call:

```
curl -X PUT -d 10000 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:GuestbookResponsesPageDisplayLimit
```

:CustomDatasetSummaryFields

You can replace the default dataset metadata fields that are displayed above files table on the dataset page with a custom list separated by commas using the curl command below.

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:CustomDatasetSummaryFields -X PUT -d  
'producer,subtitle,alternativeTitle'
```

You have to put the datasetFieldType name attribute in the :CustomDatasetSummaryFields setting for this to work.

:AllowApiTokenLookupViaApi

The Dataverse Software 4.8.1 and below allowed API Token lookup via API but for better security this has been disabled by default. Set this to true if you really want the old behavior.

```
curl -X PUT -d 'true' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:AllowApiTokenLookupViaApi
```

:ProvCollectionEnabled

Enable the collection of provenance metadata on your Dataverse installation via the provenance popup.

```
curl -X PUT -d 'true' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ProvCollectionEnabled
```

:MetricsCacheTimeoutMinutes

Sets how long a cached metrics result is used before re-running the query for a request. This timeout is only applied to some of the metrics that query the current state of the system, previous months queries are cached indefinitely. See [Metrics API](#) for more info. The default timeout value is 7 days (10080 minutes).

```
curl -X PUT -d 10080 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:MetricsCacheTimeoutMinutes
```

:MDCLogPath

Sets the path where the raw Make Data Count logs are stored before being processed. If not set, no logs will be created for Make Data Count. See also the [Make Data Count](#) section of the Admin Guide.

```
curl -X PUT -d '/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:MDCLogPath
```

:DisplayMDCMetrics

:DisplayMDCMetrics can be set to false to disable display of MDC metrics (e.g. to enable collection of MDC metrics for some period prior to completing the set-up of Counter and performing the other steps described in the [Make Data Count](#) section of the Admin Guide).

```
curl -X PUT -d 'false' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DisplayMDCMetrics
```

:Languages

Sets which languages should be available. If there is more than one, a dropdown is displayed in the header.

See [Internationalization](#) for a curl example and related settings.

:MetadataLanguages

Sets which languages can be used when entering dataset metadata.

See [Internationalization](#) for further discussion, a curl example, and related settings.

:InheritParentRoleAssignments

:InheritParentRoleAssignments can be set to a comma-separated list of role aliases or '*' (all) to cause newly created Dataverse collections to inherit the set of users and/or internal groups who have assignments for those role(s) on the parent Dataverse collection, i.e. those users/groups will be assigned the same role(s) on the new Dataverse collection (in addition to the creator of the new Dataverse collection having an admin role). This can be helpful in situations where multiple organizations are sharing one Dataverse installation. The default, if :InheritParentRoleAssignments is not set is for the creator of the new Dataverse collection to be the only one assigned a role.

```
curl -X PUT -d 'admin, curator' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:InheritParentRoleAssignments or curl -X PUT -d '*' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:InheritParentRoleAssignments
```

:AllowCors

Allows Cross-Origin Resource sharing(CORS). By default this setting is absent and the Dataverse Software assumes it to be true.

If you don't want to allow CORS for your installation, set:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'false' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:AllowCors
```

:ChronologicalDateFacets

Unlike other facets, those indexed by Date/Year are sorted chronologically by default, with the most recent value first. To have them sorted by number of hits, e.g. with the year with the most results first, set this to false

If you don't want date facets to be sorted chronologically, set:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'false' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ChronologicalDateFacets
```

:CustomZipDownloadServiceUrl

The location of the “Standalone Zipper” service. If this option is specified, the Dataverse installation will be redirecting bulk/multi-file zip download requests to that location, instead of serving them internally. See [“Standalone ‘Zipper’ Service Tool](#) of the Advanced Installation guide for information on how to install the external zipper. (This is still an **experimental** feature, as of Dataverse Software 5.0).

To enable redirects to the zipper installed on the same server as the main Dataverse Software application:

```
curl -X PUT -d '/cgi-bin/zipdownload' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:CustomZipDownloadServiceUrl
```

To enable redirects to the zipper on a different server:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'https://zipper.example.edu/cgi-bin/zipdownload' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:CustomZipDownloadServiceUrl
```

:CreateDataFilesMaxErrorsToDisplay

Number of errors to display to the user when creating DataFiles from a file upload. It defaults to 5 errors.

```
curl -X PUT -d '1' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:CreateDataFilesMaxErrorsToDisplay
```

:BagItHandlerEnabled

Part of the database settings to configure the BagIt file handler. Enables the BagIt file handler. By default, the handler is disabled.

```
curl -X PUT -d 'true' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:BagItHandlerEnabled
```

:BagValidatorJobPoolSize

Part of the database settings to configure the BagIt file handler. The number of threads the checksum validation class uses to validate a single zip file. Defaults to 4 threads

```
curl -X PUT -d '10' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:BagValidatorJobPoolSize
```

:BagValidatorMaxErrors

Part of the database settings to configure the BagIt file handler. The maximum number of errors allowed before the validation job aborts execution. This is to avoid processing the whole BagIt package. Defaults to 5 errors.

```
curl -X PUT -d '2' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:BagValidatorMaxErrors
```

:BagValidatorJobWaitInterval

Part of the database settings to configure the BagIt file handler. This is the period in seconds to check for the number of errors during validation. Defaults to 10.

```
curl -X PUT -d '60' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:BagValidatorJobWaitInterval
```

:ArchiverClassName

Your Dataverse installation can export archival “Bag” files to an extensible set of storage systems (see *BagIt Export* above for details about this and for further explanation of the other archiving related settings below). This setting specifies which storage system to use by identifying the particular Java class that should be run. Current configuration options include DuraCloudSubmitToArchiveCommand, LocalSubmitToArchiveCommand, GoogleCloudSubmitToArchiveCommand, and S3SubmitToArchiveCommand.

For examples, see the specific configuration above in *BagIt Export*.

:ArchiverSettings

Each Archiver class may have its own custom settings. Along with setting which Archiver class to use, one must use this setting to identify which setting values should be sent to it when it is invoked. The value should be a comma-separated list of setting names. For example, the LocalSubmitToArchiveCommand only uses the :BagItLocalPath setting. To allow the class to use that setting, this setting must be set as:

```
curl -X PUT -d ':BagItLocalPath' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ArchiverSettings
```

:BagGeneratorThreads

An archiver setting shared by several implementations (e.g. DuraCloud, Google, and Local) that can make Bag generation use fewer or more threads in zipping datafiles that the default of 2

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:BagGeneratorThreads -X PUT -d '8'
```

:DuraCloudHost

:DuraCloudPort

:DuraCloudContext

These three settings define the host, port, and context used by the DuraCloudSubmitToArchiveCommand. :DuraCloud-Host is required. The other settings have default values as noted in the *Duracloud Configuration* section above.

:BagItLocalPath

This is the local file system path to be used with the LocalSubmitToArchiveCommand class. It is recommended to use an absolute path. See the [Local Path Configuration](#) section above.

:GoogleCloudBucket

:GoogleCloudProject

These are the bucket and project names to be used with the GoogleCloudSubmitToArchiveCommand class. Further information is in the [Google Cloud Configuration](#) section above.

:S3ArchiverConfig

This is the JSON configuration object setting to be used with the S3SubmitToArchiveCommand class. Further information is in the [S3 Configuration](#) section above.

:InstallationName

As explained under [Branding Your Installation](#), by default, the name of the root Dataverse collection is used as the “brand name” of the installation, i.e. in emails and metadata exports. If set, :InstallationName overrides this default, allowing the root collection name and brandname to be set independently. (Note that, since metadata export files are cached, they will have to be reexported (see [Metadata Export](#)) before they incorporate a change in this setting.)

:ExportInstallationAsDistributorOnlyWhenNotSet

In the DDI metadata exports, the default behavior is to always add the repository (using its brandname - the root collection name or the value of [:InstallationName](#)) to the stdyDscr/distStmt/distrbtr element. If this setting is true, this will only be done when a Distributor is not already defined in the Dataset metadata. (Note that, since metadata export files are cached, they will have to be reexported (see [Metadata Export](#)) before they incorporate a change in this setting.)

:AnonymizedFieldTypeNames

A comma-separated list of field type names that should be ‘withheld’ when dataset access occurs via a Private Url with Anonymized Access (e.g. to support anonymized review). A suggested minimum includes author, datasetContact, and contributor, but additional fields such as depositor, grantNumber, and publication might also need to be included.

```
curl -X PUT -d 'author, datasetContact, contributor, depositor, grantNumber, publication' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:AnonymizedFieldTypeNames
```

:DatasetChecksumValidationSizeLimit

Setting DatasetChecksumValidationSizeLimit to a threshold in bytes, disables the checksum validation while publishing for any dataset size greater than the limit.

For example, if you want your Dataverse installation to skip validation for any dataset larger than 5 GB while publishing, use this setting:

```
curl -X PUT -d 50000000000 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DatasetChecksumValidationSizeLimit
```

When this option is used to disable the checksum validation, it's strongly recommended to perform periodic asynchronous checks via the integrity API

Refer to “Physical Files Validation in a Dataset” API [Physical Files Validation in a Dataset](#) section of our [Native API](#) documentation.

Also refer to the “Datafile Integrity” API [Datafile Integrity](#)

:DataFileChecksumValidationSizeLimit

Setting `DataFileChecksumValidationSizeLimit` to a threshold in bytes, disables the checksum validation while publishing for any datafiles greater than the limit.

For example, if you want your Dataverse installation to skip validation for any data files larger than 2 GB while publishing, use this setting:

```
curl -X PUT -d 2000000000 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DataFileChecksumValidationSizeLimit
```

When this option is used to disable the checksum validation, it's strongly recommended to perform periodic asynchronous checks via the integrity API

Refer to “Physical Files Validation in a Dataset” API [Physical Files Validation in a Dataset](#) section of our [Native API](#) documentation.

Also refer to the “Datafile Integrity” API [Datafile Integrity](#)

:SendNotificationOnDatasetCreation

A boolean setting that, if true, will send an email and notification to users when a Dataset is created. Messages go to those, other than the dataset creator, who have the ability/permission necessary to publish the dataset. The intent of this functionality is to simplify tracking activity and planning to follow-up contact.

```
curl -X PUT -d true http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:SendNotificationOnDatasetCreation
```

:CVocConf

A JSON-structured setting that configures Dataverse to associate specific metadatablock fields with external vocabulary services and specific vocabularies/sub-vocabularies managed by that service. More information about this capability is available at [Metadata Customization](#).

Scripts that implement this association for specific service protocols are maintained at <https://github.com/gdcc/dataverse-external-vocab-support>. That repository also includes a json-schema for validating the structure required by this setting along with an example metadatablock and sample `:CVocConf` setting values associating entries in the example block with ORCID and SKOSMOS based services.

```
wget https://gdcc.github.io/dataverse-external-vocab-support/examples/config/cvoc-conf.json
```

```
curl -X PUT --upload-file cvoc-conf.json http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:CVocConf
```

:ControlledVocabularyCustomJavaScript

:ControlledVocabularyCustomJavaScript allows a JavaScript file to be loaded into the dataset page for the purpose of showing controlled vocabulary as a list (with optionally translated values) such as author names.

To specify the URL for a custom script covoc.js to be loaded from an external site:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'https://example.com/js/covoc.js' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ControlledVocabularyCustomJavaScript
```

To remove the custom script URL:

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:ControlledVocabularyCustomJavaScript
```

Please note that :CVocConf is a better option if the list is large or needs to be searchable from an external service using protocols such as SKOSMOS.

:AllowedCurationLabels

A JSON Object containing lists of allowed labels (up to 32 characters, spaces allowed) that can be set, via API or UI by users with the permission to publish a dataset. The set of labels allowed for datasets can be selected by a superuser - via the Dataverse collection page (Edit/General Info) or set via API call. The labels in a set should correspond to the states in an organization's curation process and are intended to help users/curators track the progress of a dataset through a defined curation process. A dataset may only have one label at a time and if a label is set, it will be removed at publication time. This functionality is disabled when this setting is empty/not set. Each set of labels is identified by a curationLabelSet name and a JSON Array of the labels allowed in that set.

```
curl -X PUT -d '{"Standard Process": ["Author contacted", "Privacy Review", "Awaiting paper publication", "Final Approval"], "Alternate Process": ["State 1", "State 2", "State 3"]}' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:AllowedCurationLabels
```

If the Dataverse Installation supports multiple languages, the curation label translations should be added to the CurationLabels properties files. (See [Internationalization](#) for more on properties files and internationalization in general.) Since the Curation labels are free text, while creating the key, it has to be converted to lowercase, replace space with underscore.

Example:

```
standard_process=Standard Process  
author_contacted=Author contacted
```

:AllowCustomTermsOfUse

By default, custom terms of data use and access can be specified after selecting “Custom Terms” from the License/DUA dropdown on the Terms tab. When :AllowCustomTermsOfUse is set to false the “Custom Terms” item is not made available to the depositor.

```
curl -X PUT -d false http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:AllowCustomTermsOfUse
```

:MaxEmbargoDurationInMonths

This setting controls whether embargoes are allowed in a Dataverse instance and can limit the maximum duration users are allowed to specify. A value of 0 months or non-existent setting indicates embargoes are not supported. A value of -1 allows embargoes of any length. Any other value indicates the maximum number of months (from the current date) a user can enter for an embargo end date. This limit will be enforced in the popup dialog in which users enter the embargo date. For example, to set a two year maximum:

```
curl -X PUT -d 24 http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:MaxEmbargoDurationInMonths
```

:DataverseMetadataValidatorScript

An optional external script that validates Dataverse collection metadata as it's being updated or published. The script provided should be an executable that takes a single command line argument, the name of the file containing the metadata exported in the native json format. I.e., Dataverse application will be exporting the collection metadata in json format, saving it in a temp file, and passing the name of the temp file to the validation script as the command line argument. The script should exit with a non-zero error code if the validation fails. If that happens, a failure message (customizable in the next two settings below, *:DataverseMetadataPublishValidationFailureMsg* and *:DataverseMetadataUpdateValidationFailureMsg*) will be shown to the user.

For example, once the following setting is created:

```
curl -X PUT -d /usr/local/bin/dv_validator.sh http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DataverseMetadataValidatorScript
```

:DataverseMetadataPublishValidationFailureMsg

Specifies a custom error message shown to the user when a Dataverse collection fails an external metadata validation (as specified in the setting above) during an attempt to publish. If not specified, the default message "This dataverse collection cannot be published because it has failed an external metadata validation test" will be used.

For example:

```
curl -X PUT -d "This content needs to go through an additional review by the Curation Team before it can be published." http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DataverseMetadataPublishValidationFailureMsg
```

:DataverseMetadataUpdateValidationFailureMsg

Same as above, but specifies a custom error message shown to the user when an external metadata validation check fails during an attempt to modify a Dataverse collection. If not specified, the default message "This dataverse collection cannot be updated because it has failed an external metadata validation test" will be used.

:DatasetMetadataValidatorScript

An optional external script that validates dataset metadata during publishing. The script provided should be an executable that takes a single command line argument, the name of the file containing the metadata exported in the native json format. I.e., Dataverse application will be exporting the dataset metadata in json format, saving it in a temp file, and passing the name of the file to the validation script as the command line argument. The script should exit with a non-zero error code if the validation fails. If that happens, the dataset is left unpublished, and a failure message (customizable in the next setting below, *:DatasetMetadataValidationFailureMsg*) will be shown to the user.

For example:

```
curl -X PUT -d /usr/local/bin/ds_validator.sh http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DatasetMetadataValidatorScript
```

In some ways this duplicates a workflow mechanism, since it is possible to define a workflow with additional validation steps. But please note that the important difference is that this external validation happens *synchronously*, while the user is waiting; while a workflow is performed asynchronously with a lock placed on the dataset. This can be useful to some installations, in some situations. But it also means that the script provided should be expected to always work reasonably fast - ideally, in seconds, rather than minutes, etc.

:DatasetMetadataValidationFailureMsg

Specifies a custom error message shown to the user when a dataset fails an external metadata validation (as specified in the setting above) during an attempt to publish. If not specified, the default message “This dataset cannot be published because it has failed an external metadata validation test” will be used.

For example:

```
curl -X PUT -d "This content needs to go through an additional review by the Curation Team before it can be published." http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DatasetMetadataValidationFailureMsg
```

:ExternalValidationAdminOverride

When set to `true`, this setting allows a superuser to publish and/or update Dataverse collections and datasets bypassing the external validation checks (specified by the settings above). In an event where an external script is reporting validation failures that appear to be in error, this option gives an admin with superuser privileges a quick way to publish the dataset or update a collection for the user.

:FileCategories

Overrides the default list of file categories that is used in the UI when adding tags to files. The default list is Documentation, Data, and Code.

This setting is a comma-separated list of the new tags.

To override the default list with Docs, Data, Code, and Workflow:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'Docs,Data,Code,Workflow' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:FileCategories
```

To remove the override and go back to the default list:

```
curl -X PUT -d '' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:FileCategories
```

:ShowMuteOptions

Allows users to mute notifications by showing additional configuration options in the Notifications tab of the account page (see [Notifications](#) in the User Guide). By default, this setting is “false” and users cannot mute any notifications (this feature is not shown in the user interface).

For configuration details, see [Letting Users Manage Notifications](#).

:AlwaysMuted

Overrides the default empty list of always muted notifications. Always muted notifications cannot be unmuted by the users. Always muted notifications are not shown in the notification settings for the users.

For configuration details, see [Letting Users Manage Notifications](#).

:NeverMuted

Overrides the default empty list of never muted notifications. Never muted notifications cannot be muted by the users. Always muted notifications are grayed out and are not adjustable by the user.

For configuration details, see [Letting Users Manage Notifications](#).

:LDNMessageHosts

The comma-separated list of hosts allowed to send Dataverse Linked Data Notification messages. See [Linked Data Notification API](#) for details. * allows messages from anywhere (not recommended for production). By default, messages are not accepted from anywhere.

:LDN_TARGET

The URL of an LDN Inbox to which the LDN Announce workflow step will send messages. See [Workflows](#) for details.

:LDNAnnounceRequiredFields

The list of parent dataset field names for which the LDN Announce workflow step should send messages. See [Workflows](#) for details.

:GlobusBasicToken

GlobusBasicToken encodes credentials for Globus integration. See [Globus File Transfer](#) for details.

:GlobusEndpoint

GlobusEndpoint is Globus endpoint id used with Globus integration. See [Globus File Transfer](#) for details.

:GlobusStores

A comma-separated list of the S3 stores that are configured to support Globus integration. See [Globus File Transfer](#) for details.

:GlobusAppURL

The URL where the `dataverse-globus` “transfer” app has been deployed to support Globus integration. See [Globus File Transfer](#) for details.

:GlobusPollingInterval

The interval in seconds between Dataverse calls to Globus to check on upload progress. Defaults to 50 seconds. See [Globus File Transfer](#) for details.

:GlobusSingleFileTransfer

A true/false option to add a Globus transfer option to the file download menu which is not yet fully supported in the `dataverse-globus` app. See [Globus File Transfer](#) for details.

:WebloaderUrl

The URL for main HTML file in <https://github.com/gdcc/dvwebloader> when that app is deployed. See also :[Upload-Methods](#) for another required settings.

4.6 Upgrading

When upgrading within Dataverse Software 4.x, you will need to follow the upgrade instructions for each intermediate 4.x. Similarly, when upgrading within Dataverse Software 5.x, you will need to follow the upgrade instructions for each intermediate 5.x version.

Upgrades always involve deploying the latest war file but may also include updating the schema used by Solr or other manual steps. Running database migration scripts was once required but this has been automated (see the `flyway_schema_history` database table to see migrations that have been run).

Please consult the release notes associated with each release at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/releases> for more information.

Upgrading from DVN 3.x is actually a migration due to the many changes. Migration scripts have been checked into the source tree but as of this writing it is expected that people will require assistance running them. Please reach out per the [Introduction](#) section.

4.7 Shibboleth

Contents:

- [Introduction](#)
- [Installation](#)
 - [System Requirements](#)
 - [Install Apache](#)
 - [Install Shibboleth](#)

- * *Install Shibboleth Yum Repo*
- * *Install Shibboleth Via Yum*
- *Configure Payara*
 - *App Server HTTP and HTTPS ports*
 - *AJP*
 - *SSLEngine Warning Workaround*
- *Configure Apache*
 - *Enforce HTTPS*
 - *Edit Apache ssl.conf File*
- *Configure Shibboleth*
 - *shibboleth2.xml*
 - * *Specific Identity Provider(s)*
 - * *Identity Federation*
 - *Shibboleth Attributes*
 - *attribute-map.xml*
 - *Shibboleth and ADFS*
- *Disable or Reconfigure SELinux*
 - *Disable SELinux*
 - *Reconfigure SELinux to Accommodate Shibboleth*
 - * *Put Type Enforcement (TE) File in misc directory*
 - * *Navigate to misc directory*
 - * *Run checkmodule*
 - * *Run semodule_package*
 - * *Run semodule*
- *Restart Apache and Shibboleth*
- *Configure Apache and shibd to Start at Boot*
- *Verify DiscoFeed and Metadata URLs*
- *Add the Shibboleth Authentication Provider to Your Dataverse Installation*
- *Exchange Metadata with Your Identity Provider*
- *Backup sp-cert.pem and sp-key.pem Files*
- *Debugging*
- *Converting Accounts*
 - *Converting Local Users to Shibboleth*
 - *Converting Shibboleth Users to Local*
- *Institution-Wide Shibboleth Groups*

- *Multi-Factor Authentication*

4.7.1 Introduction

By configuring and enabling Shibboleth support in your Dataverse installation, your users will be able to log in using the identity system managed by their institution (“single sign on”, or at least “single password”) rather than having to create yet another password local to your Dataverse installation. Typically, users know their login system by some sort of internal branding such as “HarvardKey” or “Touchstone” (MIT) but within the Dataverse Software application, the Shibboleth feature is known as *Institutional Log In* as explained to end users in the *Account Creation + Management* section of the User Guide.

Shibboleth is an implementation of the [Security Assertion Markup Language \(SAML\)](#) protocol which is similar in spirit to systems used by many webapps that allow you to log in via Google, Facebook, or Twitter.

Shibboleth can be compared and contrasted with OAuth2, which you can read about in the *OAuth Login Options* section.

4.7.2 Installation

We assume you’ve already gone through a basic installation as described in the *Installation* section and that you’ve paid particular attention to the *Auth Modes: Local vs. Remote vs. Both* explanation in the *Configuration* section. You’re going to give Shibboleth a whirl. Let’s get started.

System Requirements

Support for Shibboleth in the Dataverse Software is built on the popular “mod_shib” Apache module, “shibd” daemon, and the [Embedded Discovery Service \(EDS\)](#) Javascript library, all of which are distributed by the [Shibboleth Consortium](#). EDS is bundled with the Dataverse Software, but mod_shib and shibd must be installed and configured per below.

Only Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) and derivatives have been tested (x86_64 versions) by the Dataverse Project team. See <https://shibboleth.atlassian.net/wiki/spaces/SP3/pages/2065335547/LinuxInstall> for details and note that (according to that page) as of this writing Ubuntu and Debian are not officially supported by the Shibboleth project.

Install Apache

We will be “fronting” the app server with Apache so that we can make use of the mod_shib Apache module. We will also make use of the mod_proxy_ajp module built in to Apache.

We include the mod_ssl package to enforce HTTPS per below.

```
yum install httpd mod_ssl
```

Install Shibboleth

Installing Shibboleth will give us both the `shibd` service and the `mod_shib` Apache module.

Install Shibboleth Yum Repo

The Shibboleth project now provides a [web form](#) to generate an appropriate package repository for use with YUM/DNF. You'll want to copy-paste the form results into `/etc/yum.repos.d/shibboleth.repo` or wherever is most appropriate for your operating system.

Install Shibboleth Via Yum

Please note that during the installation it's ok to import GPG keys from the Shibboleth project. We trust them.

```
yum install shibboleth
```

4.7.3 Configure Payara

App Server HTTP and HTTPS ports

Apache will be listening on ports 80 and 443 so we need to make sure the app server isn't using them. If you've been changing the default ports used by the app server per the [Configuration](#) section, revert the HTTP service to listen on 8080, the default port:

```
./asadmin set server-config.network-config.network-listeners.network-listener.  
http-listener-1.port=8080
```

Likewise, if necessary, revert the HTTPS service to listen on port 8181:

```
./asadmin set server-config.network-config.network-listeners.network-listener.  
http-listener-2.port=8181
```

AJP

A `jk-connector` network listener should have already been set up when you ran the installer mentioned in the [Installation](#) section, but for reference, here is the command that is used:

```
./asadmin create-network-listener --protocol http-listener-1 --listenerport 8009  
--jkenabled true jk-connector
```

You can verify this with `./asadmin list-network-listeners`.

This enables the [AJP protocol](#) used in Apache configuration files below.

SSLEngine Warning Workaround

This workaround was required for Glassfish 4 but it is unknown if it is required under Payara.

When fronting Payara with Apache and using the jk-connector (AJP, mod_proxy_ajp), in your Payara server.log you can expect to see “WARNING ... org.glassfish.grizzly.http.server.util.RequestUtils ... jk-connector ... Unable to populate SSL attributes java.lang.IllegalStateException: SSLEngine is null”.

To hide these warnings, run `./asadmin set-log-levels org.glassfish.grizzly.http.server.util.RequestUtils=SEVERE` so that the WARNING level is hidden as recommended at <https://java.net/jira/browse/GLASSFISH-20694> and <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/643#issuecomment-49654847>

4.7.4 Configure Apache

Enforce HTTPS

To prevent attacks such as [FireSheep](#), HTTPS should be enforced. <https://wiki.apache.org/httpd/RewriteHTTPToHTTPS> provides a good method. You **could** copy and paste that those “rewrite rule” lines into Apache’s main config file at `/etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf` but using Apache’s “virtual hosts” feature is recommended so that you can leave the main configuration file alone and drop a host-specific file into place.

Below is an example of how “rewrite rule” lines look within a `VirtualHost` block. Use the sample `dataverse.example.edu.conf` file located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/httpd/conf.d/dataverse.example.edu.conf` and edit it to substitute your own hostname under `ServerName`, and place it at `/etc/httpd/conf.d/dataverse.example.edu.conf` or a filename that matches your hostname. The file must be in `/etc/httpd/conf.d` and must end in “.conf” to be included in Apache’s configuration.

```
<VirtualHost *:80>

ServerName dataverse.example.edu

# From https://wiki.apache.org/httpd/RewriteHTTPToHTTPS

RewriteEngine On
# This will enable the Rewrite capabilities

RewriteCond %{HTTPS} !=on
# This checks to make sure the connection is not already HTTPS

RewriteRule ^/?(.*) https:// %{SERVER_NAME} /$1 [R,L]
# This rule will redirect users from their original location, to the same location but
# using HTTPS.
# i.e. http://www.example.com/foo/ to https://www.example.com/foo/
# The leading slash is made optional so that this will work either in httpd.conf
# or .htaccess context

</VirtualHost>
```

Edit Apache ssl.conf File

`/etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf` should be edited to contain the FQDN of your hostname like this: `ServerName dataverse.example.edu:443` (substituting your hostname).

Near the bottom of `/etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf` but before the closing `</VirtualHost>` directive, add the following:

```
# don't pass paths used by Shibboleth to Payara
ProxyPassMatch ^/Shibboleth.sso !
ProxyPassMatch ^/shibboleth-ds !
# pass everything else to Payara
ProxyPass / ajp://localhost:8009/

<Location /shib.xhtml>
  AuthType shibboleth
  ShibRequestSetting requireSession 1
  require valid-user
</Location>
```

You can use a sample `ssl.conf` file located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf` to compare it against the file you edited.

Note that `/etc/httpd/conf.d/shib.conf` and `/etc/httpd/conf.d/shibboleth-ds.conf` are expected to be present from installing Shibboleth via yum.

You may wish to also add a timeout directive to the `ProxyPass` line within `ssl.conf`. This is especially useful for larger file uploads as apache may prematurely kill the connection before the upload is processed.

e.g. `ProxyPass / ajp://localhost:8009/ timeout=600` defines a timeout of 600 seconds.

Try to strike a balance with the timeout setting. Again a timeout too low will impact file uploads. A timeout too high may cause additional stress on the server as it will have to service idle clients for a longer period of time.

4.7.5 Configure Shibboleth

shibboleth2.xml

`/etc/shibboleth/shibboleth2.xml` should look something like the sample `shibboleth2.xml` file located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/shibboleth/shibboleth2.xml` shown below, but you must substitute your hostname in the `entityID` value. If your starting point is a `shibboleth2.xml` file provided by someone else, you must ensure that `attributePrefix="AJP_"` is added under `ApplicationDefaults` per the [Shibboleth wiki](#). Without the `AJP_` configuration in place, the required [Shibboleth Attributes](#) will be null and users will be unable to log in.

```
<!--
This is an example shibboleth2.xml generated originally by http://testshib.org
and tweaked for Dataverse. See also:

- attribute-map.xml
- dataverse-idp-metadata.xml

https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/NativeSPConfiguration
-->

<SPConfig xmlns="urn:mace:shibboleth:3.0:native:sp:config" xmlns:md=
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    ↵"urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:metadata"
      xmlns:saml="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:assertion"
      clockSkew="1800">

      <!-- FIXME: change the entityID to your hostname. -->
      <ApplicationDefaults entityID="https://dataverse.example.edu/sp"
        REMOTE_USER="eppn" attributePrefix="AJP_">

        <!-- You should use secure cookies if at all possible. See cookieProps in this
        ↵Wiki article. -->
        <!-- https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/NativeSPSessions -->
        <Sessions lifetime="28800" timeout="3600" checkAddress="false" relayState="ss:mem
        ↵" handlerSSL="false">

          <SSO>
            SAML2 SAML1
          </SSO>

          <!-- SAML and local-only logout. -->
          <!-- https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/
        ↵NativeSPServiceLogout -->
          <Logout>SAML2 Local</Logout>

          <!--
            Handlers allow you to interact with the SP and gather more information. ↵
        ↵Try them out!
            Attribute values received by the SP through SAML will be visible at:
            http://dataverse.example.edu/Shibboleth.sso/Session
          -->

          <!-- Extension service that generates "approximate" metadata based on SP
        ↵configuration. -->
          <Handler type="MetadataGenerator" Location="/Metadata" signing="false"/>

          <!-- Status reporting service. -->
          <Handler type="Status" Location="/Status" acl="127.0.0.1"/>

          <!-- Session diagnostic service. -->
          <!-- showAttributeValues must be set to true to see attributes at /
        ↵Shibboleth.sso/Session . -->
          <Handler type="Session" Location="/Session" showAttributeValues="true"/>

          <!-- JSON feed of discovery information. -->
          <Handler type="DiscoveryFeed" Location="/DiscoFeed"/>

        </Sessions>

        <!-- Error pages to display to yourself if something goes horribly wrong. -->
        <Errors supportContact="root@localhost" logoLocation="/shibboleth-sp/logo.jpg"
          styleSheet="/shibboleth-sp/main.css"/>

        <!-- Loads and trusts a metadata file that describes only the Testshib IdP and
  
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

↳ how to communicate with it. -->
    <!-- IdPs we want allow go in /etc/shibboleth/dataverse-idp-metadata.xml -->
    <MetadataProvider type="XML" path="dataverse-idp-metadata.xml" backingFilePath=
↳ "local-idp-metadata.xml" legacyOrgNames="true" reloadInterval="7200"/>
        <!-- Uncomment to enable all the Research & Scholarship IdPs from InCommon -->
        <!--
            <MetadataProvider type="XML" url="http://md.incommon.org/InCommon/InCommon-
↳ metadata.xml" backingFilePath="InCommon-metadata.xml" maxRefreshDelay="3600">
                <DiscoveryFilter type="Whitelist" matcher="EntityAttributes">
                    <saml:Attribute
                        Name="http://macedir.org/entity-category-support"
                        NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:uri">
                        <saml:AttributeValue>http://id.incommon.org/category/research-and-
↳ scholarship</saml:AttributeValue>
                    </saml:Attribute>
                    <saml:Attribute
                        Name="http://macedir.org/entity-category-support"
                        NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:uri">
                        <saml:AttributeValue>http://refeds.org/category/research-and-
↳ scholarship</saml:AttributeValue>
                    </saml:Attribute>
                </DiscoveryFilter>
            </MetadataProvider>
        -->

        <!-- Attribute and trust options you shouldn't need to change. -->
        <AttributeExtractor type="XML" validate="true" path="attribute-map.xml"/>
        <AttributeResolver type="Query" subjectMatch="true"/>
        <AttributeFilter type="XML" validate="true" path="attribute-policy.xml"/>

        <!-- Your SP generated these credentials. They're used to talk to IdP's. -->
        <CredentialResolver type="File" key="sp-key.pem" certificate="sp-cert.pem"/>

    </ApplicationDefaults>

    <!-- Security policies you shouldn't change unless you know what you're doing. -->
    <SecurityPolicyProvider type="XML" validate="true" path="security-policy.xml"/>

    <!-- Low-level configuration about protocols and bindings available for use. -->
    <ProtocolProvider type="XML" validate="true" reloadChanges="false" path="protocols.
↳ xml"/>

</SPConfig>

```

Specific Identity Provider(s)

When configuring the `MetadataProvider` section of `shibboleth2.xml` you should consider if your users will all come from the same Identity Provider (IdP) or not.

Most Dataverse installations will probably only want to authenticate users via Shibboleth using their home institution's Identity Provider (IdP). The configuration above in `shibboleth2.xml` looks for the metadata for the Identity Providers (IdPs) in a file at `/etc/shibboleth/dataverse-idp-metadata.xml`. You can use a sample `dataverse-idp-metadata.xml` file located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/shibboleth/dataverse-idp-metadata.xml` and that includes the SAMLtest IdP from <https://samltest.id> but you will want to edit this file to include the metadata from the Identity Provider you care about. The identity people at your institution will be able to provide you with this metadata and they will very likely ask for a list of attributes that the Dataverse Software requires, which are listed at [Shibboleth Attributes](#).

Identity Federation

Rather than or in addition to specifying individual Identity Provider(s) you may wish to broaden the number of users who can log into your Dataverse installation by registering your Dataverse installation as a Service Provider (SP) within an identity federation. For example, in the United States, users from the many institutions registered with the “InCommon” identity federation that release the “Research & Scholarship Attribute Bundle” will be able to log into your Dataverse installation if you register it as an InCommon Service Provider that is part of the Research & Scholarship (R&S) category.

The details of how to register with an identity federation are out of scope for this document, but a good starting point may be [this list of identity federations across the world](#).

One of the benefits of using shibd is that it can be configured to periodically poll your identity federation for updates as new Identity Providers (IdPs) join the federation you've registered with. For the InCommon federation, [this page describes how to download and verify signed InCommon metadata every hour](#). You can also see an example of this as `maxRefreshDelay="3600"` in the commented out section of the `shibboleth2.xml` file above.

Once you've joined a federation the list of IdPs in the dropdown can be quite long! If you're curious how many are in the list you could try something like this: `curl https://dataverse.example.edu/Shibboleth.sso/DiscoFeed | jq '.[].entityID' | wc -l`

Shibboleth Attributes

The following attributes are required for a successful Shibboleth login:

- Shib-Identity-Provider
- eppn
- givenName
- sn
- email

See also <https://incommon.org/federation/attributes/> and <https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/NativeSPAttributeAccess>

attribute-map.xml

By default, some attributes `/etc/shibboleth/attribute-map.xml` are commented out and “subject-id” is used instead of “eppn”. We recommend using `attribute-map.xml` located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/shibboleth/attribute-map.xml` instead which has these changes and should be compatible with the Dataverse installation.

Shibboleth and ADFS

With appropriate configuration, your Dataverse installation and Shibboleth can make use of “single sign on” using Active Directory. This requires configuring `shibd` and `httpd` to load appropriate libraries, and insuring that the attribute mapping matches those provided. Example configuration files for `shibboleth2.xml` located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/shibboleth/shibboleth2_adfs.xml` and `attribute-map.xml` located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/shibboleth/attribute-map_adfs.xml` may be helpful. Note that your ADFS server hostname goes in the file referenced under “MetadataProvider” in your `shibboleth2.xml` file.

4.7.6 Disable or Reconfigure SELinux

SELinux is set to “enforcing” by default on RHEL/CentOS, but unfortunately Shibboleth does not “just work” with SELinux. You have two options. You can disable SELinux or you can reconfigure SELinux to accommodate Shibboleth.

Disable SELinux

The first and easiest option is to set `SELINUX=permissive` in `/etc/selinux/config` and run `setenforce permissive` or otherwise disable SELinux to get Shibboleth to work. This is apparently what the Shibboleth project expects because their [wiki page](#) says, “At the present time, we do not support the SP in conjunction with SELinux, and at minimum we know that communication between the `mod_shib` and `shibd` components will fail if it’s enabled. Other problems may also occur.”

Reconfigure SELinux to Accommodate Shibboleth

The second (more involved) option is to use the `checkmodule`, `semodule_package`, and `semodule` tools to apply a local policy to make Shibboleth work with SELinux. Let’s get started.

Put Type Enforcement (TE) File in misc directory

Copy and paste or use the `shibboleth.te` located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/selinux/targeted/src/policy/domains/misc/shibboleth.te` Type Enforcement (TE) file below and put it at `/etc/selinux/targeted/src/policy/domains/misc/shibboleth.te`.

```
module shibboleth 1.0;

require {
    class file {open read};
    class sock_file write;
    class unix_stream_socket connectto;
    type httpd_t;
    type initrc_t;
    type var_run_t;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
type var_t;
}

allow httpd_t initrc_t:unix_stream_socket connectto;
allow httpd_t var_run_t:sock_file write;
allow httpd_t var_t:file {open read};
```

(If you would like to know where the `shibboleth.te` came from and how to hack on it, please see the [SELinux](#) section of the Developer Guide. Pull requests are welcome!)

Navigate to misc directory

```
cd /etc/selinux/targeted/src/policy/domains/misc
```

Run checkmodule

```
checkmodule -M -m -o shibboleth.mod shibboleth.te
```

Run semodule_package

```
semodule_package -o shibboleth.pp -m shibboleth.mod
```

Silent is golden. No output is expected.

Run semodule

```
semodule -i shibboleth.pp
```

Silent is golden. No output is expected. This will place a file in `/etc/selinux/targeted/modules/active/modules/shibboleth.pp` and include “shibboleth” in the output of `semodule -l`. See the `semodule` man page if you ever want to remove or disable the module you just added.

Congrats! You’ve made the creator of <http://stopdisablingselinux.com> proud. :)

4.7.7 Restart Apache and Shibboleth

After configuration is complete, restart `shib` and `httpd`.

On CentOS 7:

```
systemctl restart shibd.service
systemctl restart httpd.service
```

On CentOS 6:

```
service shibd restart
service httpd restart
```

4.7.8 Configure Apache and shibd to Start at Boot

On CentOS 7/8:

```
systemctl enable httpd.service
systemctl enable shibd.service
```

On CentOS 6:

```
chkconfig httpd on
chkconfig shibd on
```

4.7.9 Verify DiscoFeed and Metadata URLs

As a sanity check, visit the following URLs (substituting your hostname) to make sure you see JSON and XML:

- <https://dataverse.example.edu/Shibboleth.sso/DiscoFeed>
- <https://dataverse.example.edu/Shibboleth.sso/Metadata>

The JSON in DiscoFeed comes from the list of IdPs you configured in the `MetadataProvider` section of `shibboleth2.xml` and will form a dropdown list on the Login Page.

4.7.10 Add the Shibboleth Authentication Provider to Your Dataverse Installation

Now that you've configured your app server, Apache, and shibd, you are ready to turn your attention back to the Dataverse installation to enable Shibboleth as an “authentication provider.” You will be using curl to POST the following JSON file to the `authenticationProviders` endpoint of the [Native API](#).

```
{
  "id": "shib",
  "factoryAlias": "shib",
  "enabled": true
}
```

```
curl -X POST -H 'Content-type: application/json' --upload-file shibAuthProvider.json
http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticationProviders
```

Now that you've added the Shibboleth authentication provider to your Dataverse installation, as described in the [Account Creation + Management](#) section of the User Guide, you should see a new “Your Institution” button under “Other Log In Options” on the Log In page. After clicking “Your Institution”, you should see the institutions you configured in `/etc/shibboleth/shibboleth2.xml` above. If not, double check the content of the DiscoFeed URL above. If you don't see the “Your Institution” button, confirm that the the “shib” authentication provider has been added by listing all the authentication providers the Dataverse installation knows about:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticationProviders
```

Once you have confirmed that the Dataverse installation's web interface is listing the institutions you expect, you'll want to temporarily remove the Shibboleth authentication provider you just added because users won't be able to log in via their institution until you have exchanged metadata with one or more Identity Providers (IdPs), which is described below. As explained in the section of the [Native API](#) of the API Guide, you can delete an authentication provider by passing its `id`:

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticationProviders/shib
```

Before contacting your actual Identity Provider, we recommend testing first with the “SAMLtest” Identity Provider (IdP) to ensure that you have configured everything correctly. This process is described next.

4.7.11 Exchange Metadata with Your Identity Provider

<https://samltest.id> (SAMLtest) is a fantastic resource for testing Shibboleth configurations. Depending on your relationship with your identity people you may want to avoid bothering them until you have tested your Dataverse installation configuration with the SAMLtest Identity Provider (IdP). This process is explained below.

If you've temporarily configured your `MetadataProvider` to use the SAMLtest Identity Provider (IdP) as outlined above, you can download your metadata like this (substituting your hostname in both places):

```
curl https://dataverse.example.edu/Shibboleth.sso/Metadata > dataverse.example.edu
```

Then upload your metadata to <https://samltest.id/upload.php> (or click "Fetch").

Then try to log in to your Dataverse installation using the SAMLtest IdP. After logging in, you can visit the <https://dataverse.example.edu/Shibboleth.sso/Session> (substituting your hostname) to troubleshoot which attributes are being received. You should see something like the following:

```
Miscellaneous
Session Expiration (barring inactivity): 479 minute(s)
Client Address: 75.69.182.6
SSO Protocol: urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:protocol
Identity Provider: https://samltest.id/saml/idp
Authentication Time: 2019-11-28T01:23:28.381Z
Authentication Context Class: urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.
    ↳ 0:ac:classes:PasswordProtectedTransport
Authentication Context Decl: (none)

Attributes
displayName: Rick Sanchez
eppn: rsanchez@samltest.id
givenName: Rick
mail: rsanchez@samltest.id
sn: Sanchez
telephoneNumber: +1-555-555-5515
uid: rick
```

When you are done testing, you can delete the SAMLtest users you created like this (after you have deleted any data and permissions associated with the users):

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticatedUsers/rick
```

(Of course, you are also welcome to do a fresh reinstall per the [Installation](#) section.)

If your Dataverse installation is working with SAMLtest it **should** work with your institution's Identity Provider (IdP). Next, you should:

- Send your identity people your metadata file above (or a link to download it themselves). From their perspective you are a Service Provider (SP).
- Ask your identity people to send you the metadata for the Identity Provider (IdP) they operate. See the section above on `shibboleth2.xml` and `MetadataProvider` for what to do with the IdP metadata. Restart `shibd` and `httpd` as necessary.
- Re-add Shibboleth as an authentication provider to your Dataverse installation as described above.
- Test login to your Dataverse installation via your institution's Identity Provider (IdP).

4.7.12 Backup sp-cert.pem and sp-key.pem Files

Especially if you have gotten authentication working with your institution’s Identity Provider (IdP), now is the time to make sure you have backups.

The installation and configuration of Shibboleth will result in the following cert and key files being created and it’s important to back them up. The cert is in the metadata you shared with your IdP:

- /etc/shibboleth/sp-cert.pem
- /etc/shibboleth/sp-key.pem

If you have more than one Payara server, you should use the same `sp-cert.pem` and `sp-key.pem` files on all of them. If these files are compromised and you need to regenerate them, you can `cd /etc/shibboleth` and run `keygen.sh` like this (substituting your own hostname):

```
./keygen.sh -f -u shibd -g shibd -h dataverse.example.edu -e https://dataverse.example.edu/sp
```

4.7.13 Debugging

The [Troubleshooting](#) section of the Admin Guide explains how to increase Payara logging levels. The relevant classes and packages are:

- edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Shib
- edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.authorization.providers.shib
- edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.authorization.groups.impl.shib

4.7.14 Converting Accounts

As explained in the [Account Creation + Management](#) section of the User Guide, users can convert from one login option to another.

Converting Local Users to Shibboleth

If you are running in “remote and local” mode and have existing local users that you’d like to convert to Shibboleth users, give them the following steps to follow, which are also explained in the [Account Creation + Management](#) section of the User Guide:

- Log in with your local account to make sure you know your password, which will be needed for the account conversion process.
- Log out of your local account.
- Log in with your Shibboleth account.
- If the email address associated with your local account matches the email address asserted by the Identity Provider (IdP), you will be prompted for the password of your local account and asked to confirm the conversion of your account. You’re done! Browse around to ensure you see all the data you expect to see. Permissions have been preserved.
- If the email address asserted by the Identity Provider (IdP) does not match the email address of any local user, you will be prompted to create a new account. If you were expecting account conversion, you should decline creating a new Shibboleth account, log back in to your local account, and let Support know the email on file for your local account. Support may ask you to change your email address for your local account to the one that is being asserted by the Identity Provider. Someone with access to the Payara logs will see this email address there.

Converting Shibboleth Users to Local

Whereas users convert their own accounts from local to Shibboleth as described above, conversion in the opposite direction is performed by a sysadmin. A common scenario may be as follows:

- A user emails Support saying, “I left the university (or wherever) and can’t log in to the Dataverse installation anymore. What should I do?”
- Support replies asking the user for a new email address (Gmail, new institution email, etc.) to associate with their Dataverse installation account.
- The user replies with a new email address to associate with their Dataverse installation account.
- Support runs the curl command below, supplying the database id of the user to convert and the new email address and notes the username returned.
- Support emails the user and indicates that they should use the password reset feature to set a new password and to make sure to take note of their username under Account Information (or the password reset confirmation email) since the user never had a username before.
- The user resets password and is able to log in with their local account. All permissions have been preserved with the exception of any permissions assigned to an institution-wide Shibboleth group to which the user formerly belonged.

In the example below, the user has indicated that the new email address they’d like to have associated with their account is “`former.shib.user@mailinator.com`” and their user id from the `authenticateduser` database table is “2”. The API token must belong to a superuser (probably the sysadmin executing the command). Note that the old version of this call, `convertShibToBuiltIn`, is deprecated and will be deleted in a future release.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT -d "former.shib.user@mailinator.com" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticatedUsers/id/2/convertRemoteToBuiltIn
```

Rather than looking up the user’s id in the `authenticateduser` database table, you can issue this command to get a listing of all users:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticatedUsers
```

Per above, you now need to tell the user to use the password reset feature to set a password for their local account.

4.7.15 Institution-Wide Shibboleth Groups

The Dataverse Software allows you to optionally define “institution-wide Shibboleth groups” based on the entityID of the Identity Provider (IdP) used to authenticate. For example, an “institution-wide Shibboleth group” with `https://samltest.id/saml/idp` as the IdP would include everyone who logs in via the SAMLtest IdP mentioned above.

To create an institution-wide Shibboleth groups, create a JSON file like `shibGroupSAMLtest.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/etc/shibboleth/shibGroupSAMLtest.json` as below and issue this curl command:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/shib -X POST -H 'Content-type:application/json' --upload-file shibGroupSAMLtest.json
```

```
{
  "name": "All samltest.id Shibboleth Users",
  "attribute": "Shib-Identity-Provider",
  "pattern": "https://samltest.id/saml/idp"
}
```

Institution-wide Shibboleth groups are based on the “Shib-Identity-Provider” SAML attribute asserted at runtime after successful authentication with the Identity Provider (IdP) and held within the browser session rather than being persisted

in the database for any length of time. It is for this reason that roles based on these groups, such as the ability to create a dataset, are not honored by non-browser interactions, such as through the SWORD API.

To list institution-wide Shibboleth groups: curl `http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/shib`

To delete an institution-wide Shibboleth group (assuming id 1): curl `-X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/groups/shib/1`

Support for arbitrary attributes beyond “Shib-Identity-Provider” such as “eduPersonScopedAffiliation”, etc. is being tracked at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/1515>

4.7.16 Multi-Factor Authentication

Institutions that wish to require MFA for their own accounts may add

```
authnContextClassRef="https://refeds.org/profile/mfa"
```

to the shibboleth2.xml SSO element.

Federated institutions that would like to require MFA for their own account but not require MFA of other federated institutions may add

```
<RelyingParty Name="urn:mace:incommon:yourinstitution.edu" authnContextClassRef="https://refeds.org/profile/mfa"/>
```

to shibboleth2.xml, beneath the Sessions and Errors elements.

4.8 OAuth Login Options

Contents:

- *Introduction*
- *Setup*
 - *Identity Provider Side*
 - * *Obtain Client ID and Client Secret*
 - *Dataverse Installation Side*
 - * *ORCID Sandbox*
 - *Disabling Sign Up*
- *Converting Local Users to OAuth*
- *Converting OAuth Users to Local*

4.8.1 Introduction

As explained under “Auth Modes” in the [Configuration](#) section, OAuth2 is one of the ways that you can have end users log in to your Dataverse installation.

[OAuth2](#) is an authentication protocol that allows systems to share user data, while letting the users control what data is being shared. When you see buttons stating “login with Google” or “login through Facebook”, OAuth2 is probably involved. For the purposes of this section, we will shorten “OAuth2” to just “OAuth.” OAuth can be compared and contrasted with [Shibboleth](#).

The Dataverse Software supports four OAuth providers: [ORCID](#), Microsoft Azure Active Directory (AD), [GitHub](#), and [Google](#).

In addition [OpenID Connect Login Options](#) are supported, using a standard based on OAuth2.

4.8.2 Setup

Setting up an OAuth identity provider to work with your Dataverse installation requires setup in two places: the provider, and the Dataverse installation.

Identity Provider Side

Obtain Client ID and Client Secret

Before OAuth providers will release information about their users (first name, last name, etc.) to your Dataverse installation, you must request a “Client ID” and “Client Secret” from them. In many cases you can use providers’ automated system to request these credentials, but if not, contact the provider for assistance.

URLs to help you request a Client ID and Client Secret from the providers supported by the Dataverse Software are provided below. For all of these providers, it’s a good idea to request the Client ID and Client secret using a generic account, perhaps the one that’s associated with the `:SystemEmail` you’ve configured for your Dataverse installation, rather than your own personal Microsoft Azure AD, ORCID, GitHub, or Google account:

- ORCID: <https://orcid.org/content/register-client-application-0>
- Microsoft: <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/active-directory/develop/v1-protocols-oauth-code>
- GitHub: <https://github.com/settings/applications/new> via <https://developer.github.com/v3/oauth/>
- Google: <https://console.developers.google.com/projectselector/apis/credentials> via <https://developers.google.com/identity/protocols/OAuth2WebServer> (pick “OAuth client ID”)

Each of these providers will require the following information from you:

- Basic information about your Dataverse installation such as a name, description, URL, logo, privacy policy, etc.
- OAuth2 Redirect URI (ORCID) or Redirect URI (Microsoft Azure AD) or Authorization Callback URL (GitHub) or Authorized Redirect URIs (Google): This is the URL on the Dataverse installation side to which the user will be sent after successfully authenticating with the identity provider. This should be the advertised URL of your Dataverse installation (the protocol, fully qualified domain name, and optional port configured via the `dataverse.siteUrl1` JVM option mentioned in the [Configuration](#) section) appended with `/oauth2/callback.xhtml` such as <https://dataverse.example.edu/oauth2/callback.xhtml>.

When you are finished you should have a Client ID and Client Secret from the provider. Keep them safe and secret.

Dataverse Installation Side

As explained under “Auth Modes” in the [Configuration](#) section, available authentication providers are stored in the `authenticationprovidererror` database table and can be listed with this command:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticationProviders
```

We will POST a JSON file containing the Client ID and Client Secret to this `authenticationProviders` API endpoint to add another authentication provider. As a starting point, you’ll want to use the JSON template file matching the provider you’re setting up:

- `orcid-public.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/root/auth-providers/orcid-public.json`
- `orcid-member.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/root/auth-providers/orcid-member.json`
- `github.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/root/auth-providers/github.json`
- `google.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/root/auth-providers/google.json`
- `microsoft.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/root/auth-providers/microsoft.json`

Here’s how the JSON template for GitHub looks, for example:

```
{
  "id": "github",
  "factoryAlias": "oauth2",
  "title": "GitHub",
  "subtitle": "",
  "factoryData": "type: github | userEndpoint: NONE | clientId: FIXME | clientSecret: ↵
  ↵FIXME",
  "enabled": true
}
```

Edit the JSON template and replace the two “FIXME” values with the Client ID and Client Secret you obtained earlier. Then use curl to POST the JSON to the Dataverse installation:

```
curl -X POST -H 'Content-type: application/json' --upload-file github.json http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticationProviders
```

After restarting your app server you should see the new provider under “Other options” on the Log In page, as described in the [Account Creation + Management](#) section of the User Guide.

By default, the Log In page will show the “builtin” provider, but you can adjust this via the `:DefaultAuthProvider` configuration option. For details, see [Configuration](#).

ORCID Sandbox

ORCID provides a sandbox registry, which may be useful for staging, or for development installations. This template can be used for configuring this setting (**this is not something you should use in a production environment**):

- `orcid-sandbox.json` located at `/_static/installation/files/root/auth-providers/orcid-sandbox.json`

Disabling Sign Up

See :*AllowRemoteAuthSignUp*.

4.8.3 Converting Local Users to OAuth

Once you have enabled at least one OAuth provider, existing users might want to change their login method from local to OAuth to avoid having a Dataverse installation-specific password. This is documented from the end user perspective in the [Account Creation + Management](#) section of the User Guide. Users will be prompted to create a new account but can choose to convert an existing local account after confirming their password.

4.8.4 Converting OAuth Users to Local

Whereas users convert their own accounts from local to OAuth as described above, conversion in the opposite direction is performed by a sysadmin. A common scenario may be as follows:

- A user emails Support saying, “Rather than logging in with Google, I want to log in with ORCID (or a local password). What should I do?”
- Support replies asking the user for a new email address to associate with their Dataverse installation account.
- The user replies with a new email address to associate with their Dataverse installation account.
- Support runs the curl command below, supplying the database id of the user to convert and the new email address and notes the username returned.
- Support emails the user and indicates that they should use the password reset feature to set a new password and to make sure to take note of their username under Account Information (or the password reset confirmation email) since the user never had a username before.
- The user resets password and is able to log in with their local account. All permissions have been preserved. The user can continue to log in with this Dataverse installation-specific password or they can convert to an identity provider, if available.

In the example below, the user has indicated that the new email address they’d like to have associated with their account is “`former.oauth.user@mailinator.com`” and their user id from the `authenticateduser` database table is “42”. The API token must belong to a superuser (probably the sysadmin executing the command).

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X PUT -d "former.oauth.user@mailinator.com"
http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticatedUsers/id/42/convertRemoteToBuiltIn
```

The expected output is something like this:

```
{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": {
    "email": "former.oauth.user@mailinator.com",
    "username": "jdoe"
  }
}
```

Rather than looking up the user’s id in the `authenticateduser` database table, you can issue this command to get a listing of all users:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticatedUsers
```

Per above, you now need to tell the user to use the password reset feature to set a password for their local account.

4.9 OpenID Connect Login Options

Contents:

- [Introduction](#)
- [Other use cases and combinations](#)
- [How to use](#)

4.9.1 Introduction

The OpenID Connect (or OIDC) standard support is closely related to our [OAuth Login Options](#), as it has been based on the [OAuth 2.0](#) standard. Quick summary: OIDC is using OAuth 2.0, but adds a standardized way how authentication is done, while this is up to providers when using OAuth 2.0 for authentication.

Being a standard, you can easily enable the use of any OpenID connect compliant provider out there for login into your Dataverse installation.

Some prominent provider examples:

- Google
- Microsoft Azure AD
- Yahoo
- ORCID [announced support](#)

You can also either host an OpenID Connect identity management on your own or use a customizable hosted service:

- Okta is a hosted solution
- Keycloak is an open source solution for an IDM/IAM
- Unity IDM is another open source IDM/IAM solution

4.9.2 Other use cases and combinations

- Using your custom identity management solution might be a workaround when you seek for LDAP support, but don't want to go for services like Microsoft Azure AD et al.
- You want to enable users to login in multiple different ways but appear as one account to the Dataverse installation. This is currently not possible within the Dataverse Software itself, but hosting an IDM and attaching the Dataverse installation solves it.
- You want to use the [eduGain Federation](#) or other well known SAML federations, but don't want to deploy Shibboleth as your service provider. Using an IDM solution in front easily allows you to use them without hassle.
- There's also a [Shibboleth IdP \(not SP!\)](#) extension, so if you already have a Shibboleth identity provider at your institution, you can reuse it more easily with your Dataverse installation.
- In the future, OpenID Connect might become a successor to the large scale R&E SAML federations we have nowadays. See also [OpenID Connect Federation Standard](#) (in development)

4.9.3 How to use

Just like with *OAuth Login Options* you need to obtain a *Client ID* and a *Client Secret* from your provider(s).

Note: The Dataverse Software does not support OpenID Connect Dynamic Registration. You need to apply for credentials out-of-band.

The Dataverse installation will discover all necessary metadata for a given provider on its own (this is part of the standard).

To enable this, you need to specify an *Issuer URL* when creating the configuration for your provider (see below).

Finding the issuer URL is best done by searching for terms like “discovery” in the documentation of your provider. The discovery document is always located at <issuer url>/.well-known/openid-configuration (standardized). To be sure, you can always lookup the `issuer` value inside the live JSON-based discovery document.

Please create a `my-oidc-provider.json` file like this, replacing every `<...>` with your values:

```
{  
  "id": "<a unique id>",  
  "factoryAlias": "oidc",  
  "title": "<a title - shown in UI>",  
  "subtitle": "<a subtitle - currently unused in UI>",  
  "factoryData": "type: oidc | issuer: <issuer url> | clientId: <client id> | clientSecret: <client secret>",  
  "enabled": true  
}
```

Now load the configuration into your Dataverse installation using the same API as with *OAuth Login Options*:

```
curl -X POST -H 'Content-type: application/json' --upload-file my-oidc-provider.json  
http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticationProviders
```

The Dataverse installation will automatically try to load the provider and retrieve the metadata. Watch the app server log for errors. You should see the new provider under “Other options” on the Log In page, as described in the *Account Creation + Management* section of the User Guide.

By default, the Log In page will show the “builtin” provider, but you can adjust this via the `:DefaultAuthProvider` configuration option. For details, see *Configuration*.

Hint: In contrast to our *OAuth Login Options*, you can use multiple providers by creating distinct configurations enabled by the same technology and without modifying the Dataverse Software code base (standards for the win!).

4.10 External Tools

External tools can provide additional features that are not part of the Dataverse Software itself, such as data exploration.

Contents:

- *Inventory of External Tools*
- *Managing External Tools*

- *Building External Tools*

4.10.1 Inventory of External Tools

See *Inventory of External Tools*.

4.10.2 Managing External Tools

See the *External Tools* section of the Admin Guide.

4.10.3 Building External Tools

See the *Building External Tools* section of the API Guide.

4.11 Advanced Installation

Advanced installations are not officially supported but here we are at least documenting some tips and tricks that you might find helpful. You can find a diagram of an advanced installation in the *Preparation* section.

Contents:

- *Multiple App Servers*
 - *Detecting Which App Server a User Is On*
- *Licensing*
 - *Standardizing Custom Licenses*
- *Optional Components*
 - *Standalone “Zipper” Service Tool*

4.11.1 Multiple App Servers

You should be conscious of the following when running multiple app servers.

- Only one app server can be the dedicated timer server, as explained in the *Dataverse Installation Application Timers* section of the Admin Guide.
- When users upload a logo or footer for their Dataverse collection using the “theme” feature described in the *Dataverse Collection Management* section of the User Guide, these logos are stored only on the app server the user happened to be on when uploading the logo. By default these logos and footers are written to the directory `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/docroot/logos`.
- When a sitemap is created by an app server it is written to the filesystem of just that app server. By default the sitemap is written to the directory `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/docroot/sitemap`.

- If Make Data Count is used, its raw logs must be copied from each app server to single instance of Counter Processor. See also [:MDCLogPath](#) section in the Configuration section of this guide and the [Make Data Count](#) section of the Admin Guide.
- Dataset draft version logging occurs separately on each app server. See [Edit Draft Versions Logging](#) section in Monitoring of the Admin Guide for details.
- Password aliases (`dataverse.db.password`, etc.) are stored per app server.

Detecting Which App Server a User Is On

If you have successfully installed multiple app servers behind a load balancer you might like to know which server a user has landed on. A straightforward solution is to place a file called `host.txt` in a directory that is served up by Apache such as `/var/www/html` and then configure Apache not to proxy requests to `/host.txt` to the app server. Here are some example commands on RHEL/derivatives that accomplish this:

```
[root@server1 ~]# vim /etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf
[root@server1 ~]# grep host.txt /etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf
ProxyPassMatch ^/host.txt !
[root@server1 ~]# systemctl restart httpd.service
[root@server1 ~]# echo $HOSTNAME > /var/www/html/host.txt
[root@server1 ~]# curl https://dataverse.example.edu/host.txt
server1.example.edu
```

You would repeat the steps above for all of your app servers. If users seem to be having a problem with a particular server, you can ask them to visit <https://dataverse.example.edu/host.txt> and let you know what they see there (e.g. “server1.example.edu”) to help you know which server to troubleshoot.

Please note that [Network Ports](#) under the Configuration section has more information on fronting your app server with Apache. The [Shibboleth](#) section talks about the use of `ProxyPassMatch`.

4.11.2 Licensing

Dataverse allows superusers to specify the list of allowed licenses, to define which license is the default, to decide whether users can instead define custom terms, and to mark obsolete licenses as “inactive” to stop further use of them. These can be accomplished using the [native API](#) and the [:AllowCustomTermsOfUse](#) setting. See also [Configuring Licenses](#).

Standardizing Custom Licenses

In addition, if many datasets use the same set of Custom Terms, it may make sense to create and register a standard license including those terms. Doing this would include:

- Creating and posting an external document that includes the custom terms, i.e. an HTML document with sections corresponding to the terms fields that are used.
- Defining a name, short description, URL (where it is posted), and optionally an icon URL for this license.
- Using the Dataverse API to register the new license as one of the options available in your installation.
- Using the API to make sure the license is active and deciding whether the license should also be the default.
- Once the license is registered with Dataverse, making an SQL update to change datasets/versions using that license to reference it instead of having their own copy of those custom terms.

The benefits of this approach are:

- usability: the license can be selected for new datasets without allowing custom terms and without users having to cut/paste terms or collection administrators having to configure templates with those terms
- efficiency: custom terms are stored per dataset whereas licenses are registered once and all uses of it refer to the same object and external URL
- security: with the license terms maintained external to Dataverse, users cannot edit specific terms and curators do not need to check for edits

Once a standardized version of your Custom Terms are registered as a license, an SQL update like the following can be used to have datasets use it:

```
UPDATE termsfuseandaccess
  SET license_id = (SELECT license.id FROM license WHERE license.name = '<Your License Name>'), termsfuse=null, confidentialitydeclaration=null, t.specialpermissions=null, t.restrictions=null, citationrequirements=null, depositorrequirements=null, conditions=null, disclaimer=null
 WHERE termsfuseandaccess.termsfuse LIKE '%<Unique phrase in your Terms of Use>%';
```

4.11.3 Optional Components

Standalone “Zipper” Service Tool

As of Dataverse Software 5.0 we offer an **experimental** optimization for the multi-file, download-as-zip functionality. If this option (`:CustomZipDownloadServiceUrl`) is enabled, instead of enforcing the size limit on multi-file zipped downloads (as normally specified by the option `:ZipDownloadLimit`), we attempt to serve all the files that the user requested (that they are authorized to download), but the request is redirected to a standalone zipper service running as a cgi-bin executable under Apache. This moves these potentially long-running jobs completely outside the Application Server (Payara), and prevents worker threads from becoming locked serving them. Since zipping is also a CPU-intensive task, it is possible to have this service running on a different host system, freeing the cycles on the main Application Server. (The system running the service needs to have access to the database as well as to the storage filesystem, and/or S3 bucket).

Please consult the [README](#) at `scripts/zipdownload` in the Dataverse Software 5.0+ source tree for more information.

To install:

1. Follow the instructions in the file above to build `zipdownloader-0.0.1.jar`. Please note that the package name and the version were changed as of the release 5.10, as part of an overall cleanup and reorganization of the project tree. In the releases 5.0-5.9 it existed under the name `ZipDownloadService-v1.0.0`. (A pre-built jar file was distributed under that name as part of the 5.0 release on GitHub. Aside from the name change, there have been no changes in the functionality of the tool).
2. Copy it, together with the shell script `cgi-bin/zipdownload` located at `/scripts/zipdownload/cgi-bin/zipdownload` to the `cgi-bin` directory of the chosen Apache server (`/var/www/cgi-bin` standard).
3. Make sure the shell script (`zipdownload`) is executable, and edit it to configure the database access credentials. Do note that the executable does not need access to the entire Dataverse installation database. A security-conscious admin can create a dedicated database user with access to just one table: `CUSTOMZIPSERVICEREQUEST`.

You may need to make extra Apache configuration changes to make sure `/cgi-bin/zipdownload` is accessible from the outside. For example, if this is the same Apache that's in front of your Dataverse installation Payara instance, you will need to add another pass through statement to your configuration:

```
ProxyPassMatch ^/cgi-bin/zipdownload !
```

Test this by accessing it directly at <SERVER URL>/cgi-bin/download. You should get a 404 No such download job!. If instead you are getting an “internal server error”, this may be an SELinux issue; try setenforce Permissive. If you are getting a generic Dataverse collection “not found” page, review the ProxyPassMatch rule you have added.

To activate in your Dataverse installation:

```
curl -X PUT -d '/cgi-bin/zipdownload' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/  
↳:CustomZipDownloadServiceUrl
```

DEVELOPER GUIDE

Contents:

5.1 Introduction

Welcome! The Dataverse Project is an [open source](#) project that loves contributors!

Contents:

- [*Intended Audience*](#)
- [*Getting Help*](#)
- [*Core Technologies*](#)
- [*Roadmap*](#)
- [*Kanban Board*](#)
- [*Issue Tracker*](#)
- [*Related Guides*](#)
- [*Related Projects*](#)

5.1.1 Intended Audience

This guide is intended primarily for developers who want to work on the main Dataverse Software code base at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse> but see “Related Projects” below for other code you can work on!

To get started, you’ll want to set up your [*Development Environment*](#) and make sure you understand the branching strategy described in the [*Version Control*](#) section and how to make a pull request. [*Testing*](#) is expected. Opinions about [*Coding Style*](#) are welcome!

5.1.2 Getting Help

If you have any questions at all, please reach out to other developers via the channels listed in <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/blob/develop/CONTRIBUTING.md> such as <http://chat.dataverse.org>, the `dataverse-dev` mailing list, community calls, or support@dataverse.org.

5.1.3 Core Technologies

The Dataverse Software is a Jakarta EE application that is compiled into a WAR file and deployed to an application server (app server) which is configured to work with a relational database (PostgreSQL) and a search engine (Solr).

We make use of a variety of Jakarta EE technologies such as JPA, JAX-RS, JMS, and JSF. The front end is built using PrimeFaces and Bootstrap.

In addition, we start to adopt parts of Eclipse MicroProfile, namely [MicroProfile Config](#).

5.1.4 Roadmap

For the Dataverse Software development roadmap, please see <https://www.iq.harvard.edu/roadmap-dataverse-project>

5.1.5 Kanban Board

You can get a sense of what's currently in flight (in dev, in QA, etc.) by looking at <https://github.com/orgs/IQSS/projects/2>

5.1.6 Issue Tracker

We use GitHub Issues as our issue tracker: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues>

5.1.7 Related Guides

If you are a developer who wants to make use of the Dataverse Software APIs, please see the [API Guide](#). If you have front-end UI questions, please see the [Style Guide](#).

If you are a sysadmin who likes to code, you may be interested in hacking on installation scripts mentioned in the [Installation Guide](#). We validate the installation scripts with [Tools](#) such as Vagrant and Docker (see the [Docker, Kubernetes, and Containers](#) section).

5.1.8 Related Projects

As a developer, you also may be interested in these projects related to Dataverse:

- External Tools - add additional features to the Dataverse Software without modifying the core: [Building External Tools](#)
- Dataverse Software API client libraries - use Dataverse Software APIs from various languages: [Client Libraries](#)
- DVUploader - a stand-alone command-line Java application that uses the Dataverse Software API to support upload of files from local disk to a Dataset: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-uploader>
- dataverse-sample-data - populate your Dataverse installation with sample data: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-sample-data>

- `dataverse-metrics` - aggregate and visualize metrics for Dataverse installations around the world: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-metrics>
- Configuration management scripts - Ansible, Puppet, etc.: See [Advanced Installation](#) section in the Installation Guide.
- *Universal Numerical Fingerprint (UNF)* (Java) - a Universal Numerical Fingerprint: <https://github.com/IQSS/UNF>
- `DataTags` (Java and Scala) - tag datasets with privacy levels: <https://github.com/IQSS/DataTags>
- `Matrix` - a visualization showing the connectedness and collaboration between authors and their affiliations.
- Third party apps - make use of Dataverse installation APIs: [Apps](#)
- `chat.dataverse.org` - chat interface for Dataverse Project users and developers: <https://github.com/IQSS/chat.dataverse.org>
- [Your project here] :)

Next: [Development Environment](#)

5.2 Development Environment

These instructions are purposefully opinionated and terse to help you get your development environment up and running as quickly as possible! Please note that familiarity with running commands from the terminal is assumed.

Contents:

- [Quick Start](#)
- [Set Up Dependencies](#)
 - [Supported Operating Systems](#)
 - [Install Java](#)
 - [Install Netbeans or Maven](#)
 - [Install Homebrew \(Mac Only\)](#)
 - [Clone the Dataverse Software Git Repo](#)
 - [Build the Dataverse Software War File](#)
 - [Install jq](#)
 - [Install Payara](#)
 - [Install PostgreSQL](#)
 - [Install Solr](#)
- [Run the Dataverse Software Installer Script](#)
 - [Verify the Dataverse Software is Running](#)
- [Configure Your Development Environment for Publishing](#)
- [Configure Your Development Environment for GUI Edits](#)
- [Next Steps](#)

5.2.1 Quick Start

The quickest way to get the Dataverse Software running is to use Vagrant as described in the [Tools](#) section, but for day to day development work, we recommended the following setup.

5.2.2 Set Up Dependencies

Supported Operating Systems

Mac OS X or Linux is required because the setup scripts assume the presence of standard Unix utilities.

Windows is not well supported, unfortunately, but Vagrant and Minishift environments are described in the [Windows Development](#) section.

Install Java

The Dataverse Software requires Java 11.

We suggest downloading OpenJDK from <https://adoptopenjdk.net>

On Linux, you are welcome to use the OpenJDK available from package managers.

Install Netbeans or Maven

NetBeans IDE is recommended, and can be downloaded from <http://netbeans.org>. Developers may use any editor or IDE. We recommend NetBeans because it is free, works cross platform, has good support for Jakarta EE projects, and includes a required build tool, Maven.

Below we describe how to build the Dataverse Software war file with Netbeans but if you prefer to use only Maven, you can find installation instructions in the [Tools](#) section.

Install Homebrew (Mac Only)

On Mac, install Homebrew to simplify the steps below: <https://brew.sh>

Clone the Dataverse Software Git Repo

Fork <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse> and then clone your fork like this:

```
git clone git@github.com:[YOUR GITHUB USERNAME]/dataverse.git
```

Build the Dataverse Software War File

If you installed Netbeans, follow these steps:

- Launch Netbeans and click “File” and then “Open Project”. Navigate to where you put the Dataverse Software code and double-click “Dataverse” to open the project.
- If you see “resolve project problems,” go ahead and let Netbeans try to resolve them. This will probably including downloading dependencies, which can take a while.
- Allow Netbeans to install nb-javac (required for Java 8 and below).

- Select “Dataverse” under Projects and click “Run” in the menu and then “Build Project (Dataverse)”. Check back for “BUILD SUCCESS” at the end.

If you installed Maven instead of Netbeans, run `mvn package`. Check for “BUILD SUCCESS” at the end.

NOTE: Do you use a locale different than `en_US.UTF-8` on your development machine? Are you in a different timezone than Harvard (Eastern Time)? You might experience issues while running tests that were written with these settings in mind. The Maven `pom.xml` tries to handle this for you by setting the locale to `en_US.UTF-8` and timezone UTC, but more, not yet discovered building or testing problems might lurk in the shadows.

Install jq

On Mac, run this command:

```
brew install jq
```

On Linux, install `jq` from your package manager or download a binary from <http://stedolan.github.io/jq/>

Install Payara

Payara 5.2022.3 or higher is required.

To install Payara, run the following commands:

```
cd /usr/local
```

```
sudo curl -O -L https://s3-eu-west-1.amazonaws.com/payara.fish/Payara+Downloads/5.2022.3/payara-5.2022.3.zip
```

```
sudo unzip payara-5.2022.3.zip
```

```
sudo chown -R $USER /usr/local/payara5
```

Install PostgreSQL

The Dataverse Software has been tested with PostgreSQL versions up to 13. PostgreSQL version 10+ is required.

On Mac, go to <https://www.postgresql.org/download/macosx/> and choose “Interactive installer by EDB” option. Note that version 13.5 is used in the command line examples below, but the process should be similar for other versions. When prompted to set a password for the “database superuser (postgres)” just enter “password”.

After installation is complete, make a backup of the `pg_hba.conf` file like this:

```
sudo cp /Library/PostgreSQL/13/data/pg_hba.conf /Library/PostgreSQL/13/data/pg_hba.conf.orig
```

Then edit `pg_hba.conf` with an editor such as vi:

```
sudo vi /Library/PostgreSQL/13/data/pg_hba.conf
```

In the “METHOD” column, change all instances of “scram-sha-256” (or whatever is in that column) to “trust”. This will make it so PostgreSQL doesn’t require a password.

In the Finder, click “Applications” then “PostgreSQL 13” and launch the “Reload Configuration” app. Click “OK” after you see “server signaled”.

Next, to confirm the edit worked, launch the “pgAdmin” application from the same folder. Under “Browser”, expand “Servers” and double click “PostgreSQL 13”. When you are prompted for a password, leave it blank and click “OK”. If you have successfully edited “`pg_hba.conf`”, you can get in without a password.

On Linux, you should just install PostgreSQL using your favorite package manager, such as yum. (Consult the PostgreSQL section of [Prerequisites](#) in the main Installation guide for more info and command line examples). Find pg_hba.conf and set the authentication method to “trust” and restart PostgreSQL.

Install Solr

Solr 8.11.1 is required.

To install Solr, execute the following commands:

```
sudo mkdir /usr/local/solr
sudo chown $USER /usr/local/solr
cd /usr/local/solr
curl -O http://archive.apache.org/dist/lucene/solr/8.11.1/solr-8.11.1.tgz
tar xvfz solr-8.11.1.tgz
cd solr-8.11.1/server/solr
cp -r configsets/_default collection1
curl -O https://raw.githubusercontent.com/IQSS/dataverse/develop/conf/solr/8.11.1/schema.xml
curl -O https://raw.githubusercontent.com/IQSS/dataverse/develop/conf/solr/8.11.1/schema_dv_mdb_fields.xml
mv schema*.xml collection1/conf
curl -O https://raw.githubusercontent.com/IQSS/dataverse/develop/conf/solr/8.11.1/solrconfig.xml
mv solrconfig.xml collection1/conf/solrconfig.xml
cd /usr/local/solr/solr-8.11.1

(Please note that the extra jetty argument below is a security measure to limit connections to Solr to only your computer.
For extra security, run a firewall.)

bin/solr start -j "-Djetty.host=127.0.0.1"
bin/solr create_core -c collection1 -d server/solr/collection1/conf
```

5.2.3 Run the Dataverse Software Installer Script

Navigate to the directory where you cloned the Dataverse Software git repo change directories to the scripts/installer directory like this:

```
cd scripts/installer
```

Create a Python virtual environment, activate it, then install dependencies:

```
python3 -m venv venv
source venv/bin/activate
pip install psycopg2-binary
```

The installer will try to connect to the SMTP server you tell it to use. If you don’t have a mail server handy you can run nc -l 25 in another terminal and choose “localhost” (the default) to get past this check.

Finally, run the installer (see also `README_python.txt` located at `/scripts/installer/README_python.txt` if necessary):

```
python3 install.py
```

Verify the Dataverse Software is Running

After the script has finished, you should be able to log into your Dataverse installation with the following credentials:

- <http://localhost:8080>
- username: dataverseAdmin
- password: admin

5.2.4 Configure Your Development Environment for Publishing

Run the following command:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DoiProvider -X PUT -d FAKE
```

This will disable DOI registration by using a fake (in-code) DOI provider. Please note that this feature is only available in Dataverse Software 4.10+ and that at present, the UI will give no indication that the DOIs thus minted are fake.

5.2.5 Configure Your Development Environment for GUI Edits

Out of the box, a JSF setting is configured for production use and prevents edits to the GUI (xhtml files) from being visible unless you do a full deployment.

It is recommended that you run the following command so that simply saving the xhtml file in Netbeans is enough for the change to show up.

```
asadmin create-system-properties "dataverse.jsf.refresh-period=1"
```

For more on JSF settings like this, see [Java Server Faces \(JSF\) Configuration Options](#).

5.2.6 Next Steps

If you can log in to the Dataverse installation, great! If not, please see the [Troubleshooting](#) section. For further assistance, please see “Getting Help” in the [Introduction](#) section.

You’re almost ready to start hacking on code. Now that the installer script has you up and running, you need to continue on to the [Tips](#) section to get set up to deploy code from your IDE or the command line.

Previous: [Introduction](#) | Next: [Tips](#)

5.3 Windows Development

Development on Windows is not well supported, unfortunately. You will have a much easier time if you develop on Mac or Linux as described under *Development Environment* section.

Vagrant commands appear below and were tested on Windows 10 but the Vagrant environment is currently broken. Please see <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/6849>

Contents:

- *Running the Dataverse Software in Vagrant*
 - *Install Vagrant*
 - *Install VirtualBox*
 - *Reboot*
 - *Install Git*
 - *Configure Git to use Unix Line Endings*
 - *Clone Git Repo*
 - *vagrant up*
- *Improving Windows Support*
 - *Windows Subsystem for Linux*
 - *Discussion and Feedback*

5.3.1 Running the Dataverse Software in Vagrant

Install Vagrant

Download and install Vagrant from <https://www.vagrantup.com>

Vagrant advises you to reboot but let's install VirtualBox first.

Install VirtualBox

Download and install VirtualBox from <https://www.virtualbox.org>

Note that we saw an error saying “Oracle VM VirtualBox 5.2.8 Setup Wizard ended prematurely” but then we re-ran the installer and it seemed to work.

Reboot

Again, Vagrant asks you to reboot, so go ahead.

Install Git

Download and install Git from <https://git-scm.com>

Configure Git to use Unix Line Endings

Launch Git Bash and run the following commands:

```
git config --global core.autocrlf input
```

Pro tip: Use Shift-Insert to paste into Git Bash.

See also <https://help.github.com/articles/dealing-with-line-endings/>

If you skip this step you are likely to see the following error when you run `vagrant up`.

```
/tmp/vagrant-shell: ./install: /usr/bin/perl^M: bad interpreter: No such file or directory
```

Clone Git Repo

From Git Bash, run the following command:

```
git clone https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse.git
```

vagrant up

From Git Bash, run the following commands:

```
cd dataverse
```

The `dataverse` directory you changed is the one you just cloned. Vagrant will operate on a file called `Vagrantfile`.

```
vagrant up
```

After a long while you hopefully will have a Dataverse installation available at <http://localhost:8888>

5.3.2 Improving Windows Support

Windows Subsystem for Linux

We have been unable to get Windows Subsystem for Linux (WSL) to work. We tried following the steps at <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/wsl/install-win10> but the “Get” button was greyed out when we went to download Ubuntu.

Discussion and Feedback

For more discussion of Windows support for Dataverse Software development see our community list thread “[Do you want to develop on Windows?](#)” We would be happy to incorporate feedback from Windows developers into this page. The [Writing Documentation](#) section describes how.

5.4 Tips

If you just followed the steps in [Development Environment](#) for the first time, you will need to get set up to deploy code to your app server. Below you’ll find other tips as well.

Contents:

- [Iterating on Code and Redeploying](#)
 - [Undeploy the war File from the Dataverse Software Installation Script](#)
 - [Add Payara as a Server in Netbeans](#)
 - [Ensure that the Dataverse Software Will Be Deployed to Payara](#)
 - [Make a Small Change to the Code](#)
 - [Confirm the Change Was Deployed](#)
- [Netbeans Connector Chrome Extension](#)
- [Thumbnails](#)
- [Database Schema Exploration](#)
 - [pgAdmin](#)
 - [SchemaSpy](#)
- [Deploying With asadmin](#)
- [Running the Dataverse Software Installation Script in Non-Interactive Mode](#)
- [Preventing Payara from Phoning Home](#)
- [Solr](#)
- [Git](#)
 - [Set Up SSH Keys](#)
 - [Git on Mac](#)
 - [Automation of Custom Build Number on Webpage](#)
- [Sample Data](#)
- [Switching from Glassfish to Payara](#)
- [UI Pages Development](#)
 - [Avoiding Inefficiencies in JSF Render Logic](#)

5.4.1 Iterating on Code and Redeploying

When you followed the steps in the *Development Environment* section, the war file was deployed to Payara by the Dataverse Software installation script. That's fine but once you're ready to make a change to the code you will need to get comfortable with undeploying and redeploying code (a war file) to Payara.

It's certainly possible to manage deployment and undeployment of the war file via the command line using the `asadmin` command that ships with Payara (that's what the Dataverse Software installation script uses and the steps are documented below), but we recommend getting set up with an IDE such as Netbeans to manage deployment for you.

Undeploy the war File from the Dataverse Software Installation Script

Because the initial deployment of the war file was done outside of Netbeans by the Dataverse Software installation script, it's a good idea to undeploy that war file to give Netbeans a clean slate to work with.

Assuming you installed Payara in `/usr/local/payara5`, run the following `asadmin` command to see the version of the Dataverse Software that the Dataverse Software installation script deployed:

```
/usr/local/payara5/bin/asadmin list-applications
```

You will probably see something like `dataverse-5.0 <ejb, web>` as the output. To undeploy, use whichever version you see like this:

```
/usr/local/payara5/bin/asadmin undeploy dataverse-5.0
```

Now that Payara doesn't have anything deployed, we can proceed with getting Netbeans set up to deploy the code.

Add Payara as a Server in Netbeans

Launch Netbeans and click "Tools" and then "Servers". Click "Add Server" and select "Payara Server" and set the installation location to `/usr/local/payara5`. The defaults are fine so you can click "Next" and "Finish".

Please note that if you are on a Mac, Netbeans may be unable to start Payara due to proxy settings in Netbeans. Go to the "General" tab in Netbeans preferences and click "Test connection" to see if you are affected. If you get a green checkmark, you're all set. If you get a red exclamation mark, change "Proxy Settings" to "No Proxy" and retest. A more complicated answer having to do with changing network settings is available at <https://discussions.apple.com/thread/7680039?answerId=30715103022#30715103022> and the bug is also described at https://netbeans.org/bugzilla/show_bug.cgi?id=268076

At this point you can manage Payara using Netbeans. Click "Window" and then "Services". Expand "Servers" and right-click Payara to stop and then start it so that it appears in the Output window. Note that you can expand "Payara" and "Applications" to see if any applications are deployed.

Ensure that the Dataverse Software Will Be Deployed to Payara

Click "Window" and then "Projects". Click "File" and then "Project Properties (dataverse)". Click "Run" and change "Server" from "No Server Selected" to your installation of Payara. Click OK.

Make a Small Change to the Code

Let's make a tiny change to the code, compile the war file, deploy it, and verify that we can see the change.

One of the smallest changes we can make is adjusting the build number that appears in the lower right of every page.

From the root of the git repo, run the following command to set the build number to the word "hello" (or whatever you want):

```
scripts/installer/custom-build-number hello
```

This should update or place a file at `src/main/java/BuildNumber.properties`.

(See also [Automation of Custom Build Number on Webpage](#) for other ways of changing the build number.)

Then, from Netbeans, click "Run" and then "Clean and Build Project (dataverse)". After this completes successfully, click "Run" and then "Run Project (dataverse)"

Confirm the Change Was Deployed

After deployment, check the build number in the lower right to make sure it has been customized. You can also check the build number by running the following command:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/info/version
```

If you can see the change, great! Please go fix a bug or work on a feature! :)

Actually, before you start changing any code, you should create a branch as explained in the [Version Control](#) section.

While it's fresh in your mind, if you have any suggestions on how to make the setup of a development environment easier, please get in touch!

5.4.2 Netbeans Connector Chrome Extension

For faster iteration while working on JSF pages, it is highly recommended that you install the Netbeans Connector Chrome Extension listed in the [Tools](#) section. When you save XHTML or CSS files, you will see the changes immediately. Hipsters call this "hot reloading". :)

5.4.3 Thumbnails

In order for thumbnails to be generated for PDFs, you need to install ImageMagick and configure Dataverse to use the `convert` binary.

Assuming you're using Homebrew:

```
brew install imagemagick
```

Then configure the JVM option mentioned in [ImageMagick](#) to the path to `convert` which for Homebrew is usually `/usr/local/bin/convert`.

5.4.4 Database Schema Exploration

With over 100 tables, the Dataverse Software PostgreSQL database (“dvndb”) can be somewhat daunting for newcomers. Here are some tips for coming up to speed. (See also the [SQL Upgrade Scripts](#) section.)

pgAdmin

Back in the [Development Environment](#) section, we had you install pgAdmin, which can help you explore the tables and execute SQL commands. It’s also listed in the [Tools](#) section.

SchemaSpy

SchemaSpy is a tool that creates a website of entity-relationship diagrams based on your database.

As part of our build process for running integration tests against the latest code in the “develop” branch, we drop the database on the “phoenix” server, recreate the database by deploying the latest war file, and run SchemaSpy to create the following site: <http://phoenix.dataverse.org/schemaspy/latest/relationships.html>

To run this command on your laptop, download SchemaSpy and take a look at the syntax in `scripts/deploy/phoenix.dataverse.org/post`

To read more about the phoenix server, see the [Testing](#) section.

5.4.5 Deploying With asadmin

Sometimes you want to deploy code without using Netbeans or from the command line on a server you have ssh’ed into.

For the `asadmin` commands below, we assume you have already changed directories to `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/bin` or wherever you have installed Payara.

There are four steps to this process:

1. Build the war file: `mvn package`
2. Check which version of the Dataverse Software is deployed: `./asadmin list-applications`
3. Undeploy the Dataverse Software (if necessary): `./asadmin undeploy dataverse-VERSION`
4. Copy the war file to the server (if necessary)
5. Deploy the new code: `./asadmin deploy /path/to/dataverse-VERSION.war`

5.4.6 Running the Dataverse Software Installation Script in Non-Interactive Mode

Rather than running the installer in “interactive” mode, it’s possible to put the values in a file. See “non-interactive mode” in the [Installation](#) section of the Installation Guide.

5.4.7 Preventing Payara from Phoning Home

By default, Glassfish reports analytics information. The administration guide suggests this can be disabled with `./asadmin create-jvm-options -Dcom.sun.enterprise.tools.admingui.NO_NETWORK=true`, should this be found to be undesirable for development purposes. It is unknown if Payara phones home or not.

5.4.8 Solr

Once some Dataverse collections, datasets, and files have been created and indexed, you can experiment with searches directly from Solr at <http://localhost:8983/solr/#/collection1/query> and look at the JSON output of searches, such as this wildcard search: http://localhost:8983/solr/collection1/select?q=*&wt=json&indent=true. You can also get JSON output of static fields Solr knows about: <http://localhost:8983/solr/collection1/schema/fields>

You can simply double-click “start.jar” rather than running `java -jar start.jar` from the command line. Figuring out how to stop Solr after double-clicking it is an exercise for the reader.

5.4.9 Git

Set Up SSH Keys

You can use git with passwords over HTTPS, but it’s much nicer to set up SSH keys. <https://github.com/settings/ssh> is the place to manage the ssh keys GitHub knows about for you. That page also links to a nice howto: <https://help.github.com/articles/generating-ssh-keys>

From the terminal, `ssh-keygen` will create new ssh keys for you:

- private key: `~/.ssh/id_rsa` - It is very important to protect your private key. If someone else acquires it, they can access private repositories on GitHub and make commits as you! Ideally, you’ll store your ssh keys on an encrypted volume and protect your private key with a password when prompted for one by `ssh-keygen`. See also “Why do passphrases matter” at <https://help.github.com/articles/generating-ssh-keys>
- public key: `~/.ssh/id_rsa.pub` - After you’ve created your ssh keys, add the public key to your GitHub account.

Git on Mac

On a Mac, you won’t have git installed unless you have “Command Line Developer Tools” installed but running `git clone` for the first time will prompt you to install them.

Automation of Custom Build Number on Webpage

You can create symbolic links from `.git/hooks/post-checkout` and `.git/hooks/post-commit` to `scripts/installer/custom-build-number-hook` to let Git automatically update `src/main/java/BuildNumber.properties` for you. This will result in showing branch name and commit id in your test deployment webpages on the bottom right corner next to the version.

When you prefer manual updates, there is another script, see above: [Make a Small Change to the Code](#).

An alternative to that is using *MicroProfile Config* and set the option `dataverse.build` via a system property, environment variable (`DATAVERSE_BUILD`) or [one of the other config sources](#).

You could even override the version itself with the option `dataverse.version` in the same way, which is usually picked up from a build time source.

See also discussion of version numbers in [Run a Build to Create the War File](#).

5.4.10 Sample Data

You may want to populate your **non-production** Dataverse installations with sample data. You have a couple options:

- Code in <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-sample-data> (recommended). This set of sample data includes several common data types, data subsetted from production datasets in dataverse.harvard.edu, datasets with file hierarchy, and more.
- Scripts called from `scripts/deploy/phoenix.dataverse.org/post`.

5.4.11 Switching from Glassfish to Payara

If you already have a working dev environment with Glassfish and want to switch to Payara, you must do the following:

- Copy the “domain1” directory from Glassfish to Payara.

5.4.12 UI Pages Development

While most of the information in this guide focuses on service and backing beans (“the back end”) development in Java, working on JSF/Primefaces xhtml pages presents its own unique challenges.

Avoiding Inefficiencies in JSF Render Logic

It is important to keep in mind that the expressions in JSF `rendered=` attributes may be evaluated **multiple** times. So it is crucial not to use any expressions that require database lookups, or otherwise take any appreciable amount of time and resources. Render attributes should exclusively contain calls to methods in backing beans or caching service wrappers that perform any real work on the first call only, then keep returning the cached result on all the consecutive calls. This way it is irrelevant how many times PrimeFaces may need to call the method as any effect on the performance will be negligible.

If you are ever in doubt as to how many times the method in your render logic expression is called, you can simply add a logging statement to the method in question. Or you can simply err on the side of assuming that it’s going to be called a lot, and ensure that any repeated calls are not expensive to process.

A simplest, trivial example would be a direct call to a method in SystemConfig service bean. For example,

```
<h:outputText rendered="#{systemConfig.advancedModeEnabled}" ...
```

If this method (`public boolean isAdvancedModeEnabled()` in `SystemConfig.java`) consults a database setting every time it is called, this database query will be repeated every time JSF reevaluates the expression above. A lookup of a single database setting is not very expensive of course, but repeated enough times unnecessary queries do add up, especially on a busy server. So instead of `SystemConfig`, `SettingsWrapper` (a `ViewScope` bean) should be used to cache the result on the first call:

```
<h:outputText rendered="#{settingsWrapper.advancedModeEnabled}" ...
```

with the following code in `SettingsWrapper.java`:

```
private Boolean advancedModeEnabled = null;

public boolean isAdvancedModeEnabled() {
    if (advancedModeEnabled == null) {
        advancedModeEnabled = systemConfig.isAdvancedModeEnabled();
    }
    return advancedModeEnabled;
}
```

A more serious example would be direct calls to `PermissionServiceBean` methods used in render logic expressions. This is something that has happened and caused some problems in real life. A simple permission service lookup (for example, whether a user is authorized to create a dataset in the current dataverse) can easily take 15 database queries. Repeated multiple times, this can quickly become a measurable delay in rendering the page. `PermissionsWrapper` must be used exclusively for any such lookups from JSF pages.

Previous: [Development Environment](#) | Next: [Troubleshooting](#)

5.5 Troubleshooting

Over in the [Development Environment](#) section we described the “happy path” of when everything goes right as you set up your Dataverse Software development environment. Here are some common problems and solutions for when things go wrong.

Contents:

- [context-root in glassfish-web.xml Munged by Netbeans](#)
- [Configuring / Troubleshooting Mail Host](#)
- [Rebuilding Your Dev Environment](#)
- [DataCite](#)

5.5.1 context-root in glassfish-web.xml Munged by Netbeans

For unknown reasons, Netbeans will sometimes change the following line under `src/main/webapp/WEB-INF/glassfish-web.xml`:

```
<context-root>/</context-root>
```

Sometimes Netbeans will change `/` to `/dataverse`. Sometimes it will delete the line entirely. Either way, you will see very strange behavior when attempting to click around the Dataverse installation in a browser. The homepage will load but icons will be missing. Any other page will fail to load entirely and you’ll see an app server error.

The solution is to put the file back to how it was before Netbeans touched it. If anyone knows of an open Netbeans bug about this, please let us know.

5.5.2 Configuring / Troubleshooting Mail Host

If you have trouble with the SMTP server, consider editing the `install` script to disable the SMTP check.

Out of the box, no emails will be sent from your development environment. This is because you have to set the `:SystemEmail` setting and make sure you’ve configured your SMTP server correctly.

You can configure `:SystemEmail` like this:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'Davisverse SWAT Team <davisthedog@harvard.edu>' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:SystemEmail
```

Unfortunately for developers not at Harvard, the installer script gives you by default an SMTP server of `mail.hmdc.harvard.edu` but you can specify an alternative SMTP server when you run the installer.

You can check the current SMTP server with the `asadmin` command:

```
./asadmin get server.resources.mail-resource.mail/notifyMailSession.host
```

This command helps verify what host your domain is using to send mail. Even if it's the correct hostname, you may still need to adjust settings. If all else fails, there are some free SMTP service options available such as Gmail and MailGun. This can be configured from the Payara console or the command line.

1. First, navigate to your Payara admin console: <http://localhost:4848>
2. From the left-side panel, select **JavaMail Sessions**
3. You should see one session named **mail/notifyMailSession** – click on that.

From this window you can modify certain fields of your Dataverse installation's notifyMailSession, which is the JavaMail session for outgoing system email (such as on user sign up or data publication). Two of the most important fields we need are:

- **Mail Host:** The DNS name of the default mail server (e.g. smtp.gmail.com)
- **Default User:** The username provided to your Mail Host when you connect to it (e.g. johndoe@gmail.com)

Most of the other defaults can safely be left as is. **Default Sender Address** indicates the address that your installation's emails are sent from.

If your user credentials for the SMTP server require a password, you'll need to configure some **Additional Properties** at the bottom.

IMPORTANT: Before continuing, it's highly recommended that your Default User account does NOT use a password you share with other accounts, as one of the additional properties includes entering the Default User's password (without concealing it on screen). For smtp.gmail.com you can safely use an [app password](#) or create an extra Gmail account for use with your Dataverse Software development environment.

Authenticating yourself to a Mail Host can be tricky. As an example, we'll walk through setting up our JavaMail Session to use smtp.gmail.com as a host by way of SSL on port 465. Use the Add Property button to generate a blank property for each name/value pair.

Name	Value
mail.smtp.auth	true
mail.smtp.password	[user's (<i>app</i>) password*]
mail.smtp.port	465
mail.smtp.socketFactory.port	465
mail.smtp.socketFactory.fallback	false
mail.smtp.socketFactory.class	javax.net.ssl.SSLSocketFactory

***WARNING:** Entering a password here will *not* conceal it on-screen. It's recommended to use an [app password](#) (for smtp.gmail.com users) or utilize a dedicated/non-personal user account with SMTP server auths so that you do not risk compromising your password.

Save these changes at the top of the page and restart your app server to try it out.

The mail session can also be set from command line. To use this method, you will need to delete your notifyMailSession and create a new one. See the below example:

- Delete: `./asadmin delete-javamail-resource mail/MyMailSession`
- Create (remove brackets and replace the variables inside): `./asadmin create-javamail-resource --mailhost [smtp.gmail.com] --mailuser [test@test\\.com] --fromaddress [test@test\\.com] --property mail.smtp.auth=[true]:mail.smtp.password=[password]:mail.smtp.port=[465]:mail.smtp.socketFactory.port=[465]:mail.smtp.socketFactory.fallback=[false]:mail.smtp.socketFactory.class=[javax.net.ssl.SSLSocketFactory]`

These properties can be tailored to your own preferred mail service, but if all else fails these settings work fine with Dataverse Software development environments for your localhost.

- If you're seeing a "Relay access denied" error in your app server logs when the Dataverse installation attempts to send an email, double check your user/password credentials for the Mail Host you're using.
- If you're seeing a "Connection refused" / similar error upon email sending, try another port.

As another example, here is how to create a Mail Host via command line for Amazon SES:

- Delete: `./asadmin delete-javamail-resource mail/MyMailSession`
- Create (remove brackets and replace the variables inside): `./asadmin create-javamail-resource --mailhost email-smtp.us-east-1.amazonaws.com --mailuser [test@test\.com] --fromaddress [test@test\.com] --transprotocol aws --transprotocolclass com.amazonaws.services.simpleemail.AWSJavaMailTransport --property mail.smtp.auth=true:mail.smtp.user=[aws_access_key]:mail.smtp.password=[aws_secret_key]:mail.transport.protocol=smtp:mail.smtp.port=587:mail.smtp.starttls.enable=true mail/notifyMailSession`

5.5.3 Rebuilding Your Dev Environment

A script called `dev-rebuild.sh` located at `/scripts/dev/dev-rebuild.sh` is available that does the following:

- Drops the database.
- Clears our Solr.
- Deletes all data files uploaded by users (assuming you are using the default directory).
- Deploys the war file located in the `target` directory.
- Runs `setup-all.sh` in insecure mode so tests will pass.
- Runs post-install SQL statements.
- Publishes the root Dataverse collection.
- Adjusts permissions on the root Dataverse collection so tests will pass.

To execute the script, make sure you have built a war file already and then cd to the root of the source tree and run `scripts/dev/dev-rebuild.sh`. Feedback on this script is welcome!

5.5.4 DataCite

If you are seeing Response code: 400, [url] domain of URL is not allowed it's probably because your `dataverse.siteUrl` JVM option is unset or set to localhost (-Ddataverse.siteUrl=http://localhost:8080). You can try something like this:

```
./asadmin delete-jvm-options '-Ddataverse.siteUrl=http\://localhost\:8080'  
./asadmin create-jvm-options '-Ddataverse.siteUrl=http\://demo.dataverse.org'
```

Previous: [Tips](#) | Next: [Version Control](#)

5.6 Version Control

The Dataverse Project uses git for version control and GitHub for hosting. On this page we'll explain where to find the code, our branching strategy, advice on how to make a pull request, and other git tips.

Contents:

- *Where to Find the Dataverse Software Code*
- *Branching Strategy*
 - *Goals*
 - *Branches*
 - * *The “master” Branch*
 - * *The “develop” Branch*
 - * *Feature Branches*
 - * *Hotfix Branches*
- *How to Make a Pull Request*
 - *Find or Create a GitHub Issue*
 - *Create a New Branch off the develop Branch*
 - *Commit Your Change to Your New Branch*
 - *Push Your Branch to GitHub*
 - *Make a Pull Request*
 - *Make Sure Your Pull Request Has Been Advanced to Code Review*
 - *Summary of Git commands*
- *How to Resolve Conflicts in Your Pull Request*
- *Adding Commits to a Pull Request from a Fork*

5.6.1 Where to Find the Dataverse Software Code

The main Dataverse Software code is available at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse> but as explained in the *Introduction* section under “Related Projects”, there are many other code bases you can hack on if you wish!

5.6.2 Branching Strategy

Goals

The goals of the Dataverse Software branching strategy are:

- allow for concurrent development
- only ship stable code

We follow a simplified “git flow” model described at <http://nvie.com/posts/a-successful-git-branching-model/> involving a “master” branch, a “develop” branch, and feature branches such as “1234-bug-fix”.

Branches

The “master” Branch

The “master” branch represents released versions of the Dataverse Software. As mentioned in the [Making Releases](#) section, at release time we update the master branch to include all the code for that release. Commits are never made directly to master. Rather, master is updated only when we merge code into it from the “develop” branch.

The “develop” Branch

The “develop” branch represents code that was stable enough to merge from a “feature” branch (described below) and that will make it into the next release. Like master, commits are never made to the develop branch. The develop branch is where integration occurs. Your goal is have your code merged into the develop branch after it has been reviewed.

Feature Branches

Feature branches are used for both developing features and fixing bugs. They are named after the GitHub issue they are meant to address, so create a GitHub issue if you need to.

“3728-doc-apipolicy-fix” is an example of a fine name for your feature branch. It tells us that you are addressing <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/3728> and the “slug” is short, descriptive, and starts with the issue number.

Hotfix Branches

Hotfix branches are described under [Making Releases](#).

5.6.3 How to Make a Pull Request

Pull requests take all shapes and sizes, from a one-character typo fix to hundreds of files changing at once. Generally speaking, smaller pull requests are better so that they are easier to code review. That said, don’t hold back on writing enough code or documentation to address the issue to the best of your ability.

If you are writing code (rather than documentation), please see [Testing](#) for guidance on writing tests.

The example of creating a pull request below has to do with fixing an important issue with the documentation but applies to fixing code as well.

Find or Create a GitHub Issue

For guidance on which issue to work on, please ask! Also, see <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/blob/develop/CONTRIBUTING.md>

Let’s say you want to tackle <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/3728> which points out a typo in a page of the Dataverse Software’s documentation.

If you tell us your GitHub username we are happy to add you to the “read only” team at https://github.com/orgs/IQSS/teams/dataverse_READONLY/members so that we can assign the issue to you while you’re working on it. You can also tell us if you’d like to be added to the [Dataverse Community Contributors spreadsheet](#).

Create a New Branch off the develop Branch

Always create your feature branch from the latest code in develop, pulling the latest code if necessary. As mentioned above, your branch should have a name like “3728-doc-apipolicy-fix” that starts with the issue number you are addressing, and ends with a short, descriptive name. Dashes (“-”) and underscores (“_”) in your branch name are ok, but please try to avoid other special characters such as ampersands (“&”) that have special meaning in Unix shells.

Commit Your Change to Your New Branch

Making a commit (or several commits) to that branch. Ideally the first line of your commit message includes the number of the issue you are addressing, such as `Fixed BlockedApiPolicy #3728`.

Push Your Branch to GitHub

Push your feature branch to your fork of the Dataverse Software. Your git command may look something like `git push origin 3728-doc-apipolicy-fix`.

Make a Pull Request

Make a pull request to get approval to merge your changes into the develop branch. Note that once a pull request is created, we’ll remove the corresponding issue from our kanban board so that we’re only tracking one card.

Feedback on the pull request template we use is welcome! Here’s an example of a pull request for issue #3827: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/pull/3827>

Make Sure Your Pull Request Has Been Advanced to Code Review

Now that you’ve made your pull request, your goal is to make sure it appears in the “Code Review” column at <https://github.com/orgs/IQSS/projects/2>.

Look at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/blob/master/CONTRIBUTING.md> for various ways to reach out to developers who have enough access to the GitHub repo to move your issue and pull request to the “Code Review” column.

Summary of Git commands

This section provides sequences of Git commands for three scenarios:

- preparing the first request, when the IQSS Dataverse Software repository and the forked repository are identical
- creating an additional request after some time, when the IQSS Dataverse Software repository is ahead of the forked repository
- while your pull requests are in review the develop branch has been updated, so you have to keep your code base synchronized with the current state of develop branch

In the examples we use 123-COOL-FEATURE as the name of the feature branch, and https://github.com/YOUR_NAME/dataverse.git as your forked repository’s URL. In practice modify both accordingly.

1st scenario: preparing the first pull request

```
# clone Dataverse at Github.com ... then  
  
git clone https://github.com/YOUR_NAME/dataverse.git dataverse_fork  
cd dataverse_fork  
  
# create a new branch locally for the pull request  
git checkout -b 123-COOL-FEATURE  
  
# working on the branch ... then commit changes  
git commit -am "#123 explanation of changes"  
  
# upload the new branch to https://github.com/YOUR_NAME/dataverse  
git push -u origin 123-COOL-FEATURE  
  
# ... then create pull request at github.com/YOUR_NAME/dataverse
```

2nd scenario: preparing another pull request some month later

```
# register IQSS Dataverse repo  
git remote add upstream https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse.git  
  
git checkout develop  
  
# update local develop branch from https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse  
git fetch upstream develop  
git rebase upstream/develop  
  
# update remote develop branch at https://github.com/YOUR_NAME/dataverse  
git push  
  
# create a new branch locally for the pull request  
git checkout -b 123-COOL-FEATURE  
  
# work on the branch and commit changes  
git commit -am "#123 explanation of changes"  
  
# upload the new branch to https://github.com/YOUR_NAME/dataverse  
git push -u origin 123-COOL-FEATURE  
  
# ... then create pull request at github.com/YOUR_NAME/dataverse
```

3rd scenario: synchronize your branch with develop branch

```
git checkout develop  
  
# update local develop branch from https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse  
git fetch upstream develop  
git rebase upstream/develop  
  
# update remote develop branch at https://github.com/YOUR_NAME/dataverse  
git push  
  
# change to the already existing feature branch
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

git checkout 123-COOL-FEATURE

# merge changes of develop to the feature branch
git merge develop

# check if there are conflicts, if there are follow the next command, otherwise skip to ↵
next block
# 1. fix the relevant files (including testing)
# 2. commit changes
git add <fixed files>
git commit

# update remote feature branch at https://github.com/YOUR_NAME/dataverse
git push

```

5.6.4 How to Resolve Conflicts in Your Pull Request

Unfortunately, pull requests can quickly become “stale” and unmergeable as other pull requests are merged into the develop branch ahead of you. This is completely normal, and often occurs because other developers made their pull requests before you did.

The Dataverse Project team may ping you to ask you to merge the latest from the develop branch into your branch and resolve merge conflicts. If this sounds daunting, please just say so and we will assist you.

If you’d like to resolve the merge conflicts yourself, here are some steps to do so that make use of GitHub Desktop and Netbeans.

In GitHub Desktop:

1. Sync from develop.
2. Open the specific branch that’s having the merge conflict.
3. Click “Update from develop”.

In Netbeans:

4. Click Window -> Favorites and open your local Dataverse Software project folder in the Favorites panel.
5. In this file browser, you can follow the red cylinder icon to find files with merge conflicts.
6. Double click the red merge conflicted file.
7. Right click on the red tab for that file and select Git -> Resolve Conflicts.
8. Resolve on right or left (if you select “both” you can do finer edits after).
9. Save all changes

In GitHub Desktop:

10. Commit the merge (append issue number to end, e.g. #3728) and leave note about what was resolved.

In GitHub Issues:

11. Leave a comment for the Dataverse Project team that you have resolved the merge conflicts.

5.6.5 Adding Commits to a Pull Request from a Fork

By default, when a pull request is made from a fork, “Allow edits from maintainers” is checked as explained at <https://help.github.com/articles/allowing-changes-to-a-pull-request-branch-created-from-a-fork/>

This is a nice feature of GitHub because it means that the core dev team for the Dataverse Project can make small (or even large) changes to a pull request from a contributor to help the pull request along on its way to QA and being merged.

GitHub documents how to make changes to a fork at <https://help.github.com/articles/committing-changes-to-a-pull-request-branch-created-from-a-fork/> but as of this writing the steps involve making a new clone of the repo. This works but you might find it more convenient to add a “remote” to your existing clone. The example below uses the fork at <https://github.com/OdumInstitute/dataverse> and the branch [4709-postgresql_96](#) but the technique can be applied to any fork and branch:

```
git remote add OdumInstitute git@github.com:OdumInstitute/dataverse.git  
git fetch OdumInstitute  
git checkout 4709-postgresql\_96  
vim path/to/file.txt  
git commit  
git push OdumInstitute 4709-postgresql\_96
```

Previous: [Troubleshooting](#) | Next: [SQL Upgrade Scripts](#)

5.7 SQL Upgrade Scripts

The database schema for the Dataverse Software is constantly evolving and we have adopted a tool called Flyway to help keep your development environment up to date and in working order. As you make changes to the database schema (changes to @Entity classes), you must write SQL upgrade scripts when needed and follow Flyway file naming conventions.

Contents:

- [Location of SQL Upgrade Scripts](#)
- [How to Determine if You Need to Create a SQL Upgrade Script](#)
- [How to Create a SQL Upgrade Script](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Renaming SQL Upgrade Scripts](#)

5.7.1 Location of SQL Upgrade Scripts

`src/main/resources/db/migration` is the directory where we keep SQL upgrade scripts for Flyway to find.

In the past (before adopting Flyway) we used to keep SQL upgrade scripts in `scripts/database/upgrades`. These scripts can still be used as reference but no new scripts should be added there.

5.7.2 How to Determine if You Need to Create a SQL Upgrade Script

If you are creating a new database table (which maps to an `@Entity` in JPA), you do not need to create or update a SQL upgrade script. The reason for this is that we use `create-tables` in `src/main/resources/META-INF/persistence.xml` so that new tables are automatically created by the app server when you deploy your war file.

If you are doing anything other than creating a new database table such as adding a column to an existing table, you must create or update a SQL upgrade script.

5.7.3 How to Create a SQL Upgrade Script

We assume you have already read the [Version Control](#) section and have been keeping your feature branch up to date with the “develop” branch.

Create a new file called something like `V4.11.0.1__5565-sanitize-directory-labels.sql` in the `src/main/resources/db/migration` directory. Use a version like “4.11.0.1” in the example above where the previously released version was 4.11, ensuring that the version number is unique. Note that this is not the version that you expect the code changes to be included in (4.12 in this example). When the previously released version is a patch version (e.g. 5.10.1), use “5.10.1.1” for the first SQL script version (rather than “5.10.1.0.1”). For the “description” you should the name of your branch, which should include the GitHub issue you are working on, as in the example above. To read more about Flyway file naming conventions, see <https://flywaydb.org/documentation/migrations#naming>

The SQL migration script you wrote will be part of the war file and executed when the war file is deployed. To see a history of Flyway database migrations that have been applied, look at the `flyway_schema_history` table.

As with any task related to the development of the Dataverse Software, if you need any help writing SQL upgrade scripts, please reach out using any of the channels mentioned under “Getting Help” in the [Introduction](#) section.

5.7.4 Troubleshooting

Renaming SQL Upgrade Scripts

Please note that if you need to rename your script (because a new version of the Dataverse Software was released, for example), you will see the error “FlywayException: Validate failed: Detected applied migration not resolved locally” when you attempt to deploy and deployment will fail.

To resolve this problem, delete the old migration from the `flyway_schema_history` table and attempt to redeploy.

Previous: [Version Control](#) | Next: [Testing](#)

5.8 Testing

In order to keep our codebase healthy, the Dataverse Project encourages developers to write automated tests in the form of unit tests and integration tests. We also welcome ideas for how to improve our automated testing.

Contents:

- *The Health of a Codebase*
- *Testing in Depth*
- *Unit Tests*
 - *Unit Test Automation Overview*
 - *Writing Unit Tests with JUnit*
 - * *Refactoring Code to Make It Unit-Testable*
 - * *Parameterized Tests and JUnit Theories*
 - * *JUnit 5 Test Helper Extensions*
 - * *Observing Changes to Code Coverage*
 - * *Testing Commands*
 - * *Running Non-Essential (Excluded) Unit Tests*
- *Integration Tests*
 - *Running the Full API Test Suite Using EC2*
 - *Running the full API test suite using Docker*
 - *Getting Set Up to Run REST Assured Tests*
 - * *The Burrito Key*
 - * *Root Dataverse Collection Permissions*
 - * *Publish Root Dataverse Collection*
 - * *dataverse.siteUrl*
 - * *Identifier Generation*
 - *Writing API Tests with REST Assured*
 - *Writing and Using a Testcontainers Test*
- *Measuring Coverage of Integration Tests*
 - *Add jacocoagent.jar to Payara*
 - *Add jacococli.jar to the WAR File*
 - *Deploy the Instrumented WAR File*
 - *Run Integration Tests*
 - *Create Code Coverage Report*
 - *Read Code Coverage Report*
- *Load/Performance Testing*

- *Locust*
- *download-files.sh script*
- *Continuous Integration*
 - *Enhance build time by caching dependencies*
 - *The Phoenix Server*
 - * *How the Phoenix Tests Work*
 - * *How to Run the Phoenix Tests*
- *Accessibility Testing*
 - *Accessibility Policy*
 - *Accessibility Tools*
- *Future Work*
 - *Future Work on Unit Tests*
 - *Future Work on Integration Tests*
 - *Browser-Based Testing*
 - *Installation Testing*
 - *Future Work on Load/Performance Testing*
 - *Future Work on Accessibility Testing*

5.8.1 The Health of a Codebase

Before we dive into the nut and bolts of testing, let's back up for a moment and think about why we write automated tests in the first place. Writing automated tests is an investment and leads to better quality software. Counterintuitively, writing tests and executing them regularly allows a project to move faster. Martin Fowler explains this well while talking about the health of a codebase:

“This is an economic judgment. Several times, many times, I run into teams that say something like, ‘Oh well. Management isn’t allowing us to do a quality job here because it will slow us down. And we’ve appealed to management and said we need to put more quality in the code, but they’ve said no, we need to go faster instead.’ And my comment to that is well, as soon as you’re framing it in terms of code quality versus speed, you’ve lost. Because the whole point of refactoring is to go faster.

“And this is why I quite like playing a bit more with the metaphor as the health of a codebase. If you keep yourself healthy then you’ll be able to run faster. But if you just say, ‘Well, I want to run a lot so I’m therefore going to run a whole load all the time and not eat properly and not pay attention about this shooting pain going up my leg,’ then you’re not going to be able to run quickly very long. **You have to pay attention to your health. And same with the codebase. You have to continuously say, ‘How do we keep it in a healthy state? Then we can go fast,’ because we’re running marathons here with codebases. And if we neglect that internal quality of the codebase, it hits you surprisingly fast.”**

—Martin Fowler at
<https://devchat.tv/ruby-rogues/178-rr-book-club-refactoring-ruby-with-martin-fowler>

5.8.2 Testing in Depth

Security in depth might mean that your castle has a moat as well as high walls. Likewise, when testing, you should consider testing a various layers of the stack using both unit tests and integration tests.

When writing tests, you may find it helpful to first map out which functions of your code you want to test, and then write a functional unit test for each which can later comprise a larger integration test.

5.8.3 Unit Tests

Creating unit tests for your code is a helpful way to test what you've built piece by piece.

Unit tests can be executed without runtime dependencies on PostgreSQL, Solr, or any other external system. They are the lowest level of testing and are executed constantly on developers' laptops as part of the build process and via continuous integration services in the cloud.

A unit test should execute an operation of your code in a controlled fashion. You must make an assertion of what the expected response gives back. It's important to test optimistic output and assertions (the "happy path"), as well as unexpected input that leads to failure conditions. Know how your program should handle anticipated errors/exceptions and confirm with your test(s) that it does so properly.

Unit Test Automation Overview

We use a variety of tools to write, execute, and measure the code coverage of unit tests, including Maven, JUnit, Jacoco, GitHub, and Coveralls. We'll explain the role of each tool below, but here's an overview of what you can expect from the automation we've set up.

As you prepare to make a pull request, as described in the [Version Control](#) section, you will be working on a new branch you create from the "develop" branch. Let's say your branch is called `1012-private-url`. As you work, you are constantly invoking Maven to build the war file. When you do a "clean and build" in Netbeans, Maven runs all the unit tests (anything ending with `Test.java`) and then runs the results through a tool called Jacoco that calculates code coverage. When you push your branch to GitHub and make a pull request, GitHub Actions runs Maven and Jacoco on your branch and pushes the results to Coveralls, which is a web service that tracks changes to code coverage over time. Note that we have configured Coveralls to not mark small decreases in code coverage as a failure. You can find the Coveralls reports at <https://coveralls.io/github/IQSS/dataverse>

The main takeaway should be that we care about unit testing enough to measure the changes to code coverage over time using automation. Now let's talk about how you can help keep our code coverage up by writing unit tests with JUnit.

Writing Unit Tests with JUnit

We are aware that there are newer testing tools such as TestNG, but we use [JUnit](#) because it's tried and true. We support both (legacy) JUnit 4.x tests (forming the majority of our tests) and newer JUnit 5 based testing.

NOTE: When adding new tests, you should give JUnit 5 a go instead of adding more dependencies to JUnit 4.x.

If writing tests is new to you, poke around existing unit tests which all end in `Test.java` and live under `src/test`. Each test is annotated with `@Test` and should have at least one assertion which specifies the expected result. In Netbeans, you can run all the tests in it by clicking "Run" -> "Test File". From the test file, you should be able to navigate to the code that's being tested by right-clicking on the file and clicking "Navigate" -> "Go to Test/Tested class". Likewise, from the code, you should be able to use the same "Navigate" menu to go to the tests.

NOTE: Please remember when writing tests checking possibly localized outputs to check against `en_US.UTF-8` and `UTC 110n` strings!

Refactoring Code to Make It Unit-Testable

Existing code is not necessarily written in a way that lends itself to easy testing. Generally speaking, it is difficult to write unit tests for both JSF “backing” beans (which end in `Page.java`) and “service” beans (which end in `Service.java`) because they require the database to be running in order to test them. If service beans can be exercised via API they can be tested with integration tests (described below) but a good technique for making the logic testable is to move code to “util beans” (which end in `Util.java`) that operate on Plain Old Java Objects (POJOs). `PrivateUrlUtil.java` is a good example of moving logic from `PrivateUrlServiceBean.java` to a “util” bean to make the code testable.

Parameterized Tests and JUnit Theories

Often times you will want to test a method multiple times with similar values. In order to avoid test bloat (writing a test for every data combination), JUnit offers Data-driven unit tests. This allows a test to be run for each set of defined data values.

JUnit 4 uses `Parameterized.class` and `Theories.class`. For reference, take a look at issue <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/5619>.

JUnit 5 doesn't offer theories (see [jqwik](#) for this), but greatly extended parameterized testing. Some guidance how to write those:

- <https://junit.org/junit5/docs/current/user-guide/#writing-tests-parameterized-tests>
- <https://www.baeldung.com/parameterized-tests-junit-5>
- <https://blog.codefx.org/libraries/junit-5-parameterized-tests/>
- See also some examples in our codebase.

JUnit 5 Test Helper Extensions

Our codebase provides little helpers to ease dealing with state during tests. Some tests might need to change something which should be restored after the test ran.

For unit tests, the most interesting part is to set a JVM setting just for the current test. Please use the `@JvmSetting(key = JvmSettings.XXX, value = "")` annotation on a test method or a test class to set and clear the property automatically.

To set arbitrary system properties for the current test, a similar extension `@SystemProperty(key = "", value = "")` has been added.

Both extensions will ensure the global state of system properties is non-interfering for test executions. Tests using these extensions will be executed in serial.

Observing Changes to Code Coverage

Once you've written some tests, you're probably wondering how much you've helped to increase the code coverage. In Netbeans, do a “clean and build.” Then, under the “Projects” tab, right-click “dataverse” and click “Code Coverage” -> “Show Report”. For each Java file you have open, you should be able to see the percentage of code that is covered by tests and every line in the file should be either green or red. Green indicates that the line is being exercised by a unit test and red indicates that it is not.

In addition to seeing code coverage in Netbeans, you can also see code coverage reports by opening `target/site/jacoco/index.html` in your browser.

Testing Commands

You might find studying the following test classes helpful in writing tests for commands:

- CreatePrivateUrlCommandTest.java
- DeletePrivateUrlCommandTest.java
- GetPrivateUrlCommandTest.java

In addition, there is a writeup on “The Testable Command” at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/blob/develop/doc/theTestableCommand/TheTestableCommand.md>.

Running Non-Essential (Excluded) Unit Tests

You should be aware that some unit tests have been deemed “non-essential” and have been annotated with `@Category(NonEssentialTests.class)` and are excluded from the “dev” Maven profile, which is the default profile. All unit tests (that have not been annotated with `@Ignore`), including these non-essential tests, are run from continuous integration systems such as Jenkins and GitHub Actions with the following `mvn` command that invokes a non-default profile:

```
mvn test -P all-unit-tests
```

Generally speaking, unit tests have been flagged as non-essential because they are slow or because they require an Internet connection. You should not feel obligated to run these tests continuously but you can use the `mvn` command above to run them. To iterate on the unit test in Netbeans and execute it with “Run -> Test File”, you must temporarily comment out the annotation flagging the test as non-essential.

5.8.4 Integration Tests

Unit tests are fantastic for low level testing of logic but aren’t especially real-world-applicable because they do not exercise the Dataverse Software as it runs in production with a database and other runtime dependencies. We test in-depth by also writing integration tests to exercise a running system.

Unfortunately, the term “integration tests” can mean different things to different people. For our purposes, an integration test can have two flavors:

1. Be an API Test:

- Exercise the Dataverse Software APIs.
- Running not automatically on developers’ laptops.
- Operate on a Dataverse installation that is running and able to talk to both PostgreSQL and Solr.
- Written using REST Assured.

2. Be a `Testcontainers` Test:

- Operates any dependencies via the `Testcontainers` API, using containers.
- Written as a JUnit test, using all things necessary to test.
- Makes use of the `Testcontainers` framework.
- Able to run anywhere having Docker around (podman support under construction).

Running the Full API Test Suite Using EC2

Prerequisite: To run the API test suite in an EC2 instance you should first follow the steps in the [Deployment](#) section to get set up with the AWS binary to launch EC2 instances. If you’re here because you just want to spin up a branch, you’ll still want to follow the AWS deployment setup steps, but may find the [ec2-create README.md](#) Quick Start section helpful.

You may always retrieve a current copy of the `ec2-create-instance.sh` script and accompanying `group_var.yml` file from the [dataverse-ansible](#) repo. Since we want to run the test suite, let’s grab the `group_vars` used by Jenkins:

- `ec2-create-instance.sh`
- `jenkins.yml`

Edit `jenkins.yml` to set the desired GitHub repo and branch, and to adjust any other options to meet your needs:

- `dataverse_repo: https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse.git`
- `dataverse_branch: develop`
- `dataverse.api.test_suite: true`
- `dataverse.unittests.enabled: true`
- `dataverse.sampledata.enabled: true`

If you wish, you may pass the script a `-l` flag with a local relative path in which the script will [copy various logs](#) at the end of the test suite for your review.

Finally, run the script:

```
$ ./ec2-create-instance.sh -g jenkins.yml -l log_dir
```

Running the full API test suite using Docker

To run the full suite of integration tests on your laptop, we recommend using the “all in one” Docker configuration described in `conf/docker-aio/readme.md` in the root of the repo.

Alternatively, you can run tests against the app server running on your laptop by following the “getting set up” steps below.

Getting Set Up to Run REST Assured Tests

Unit tests are run automatically on every build, but dev environments and servers require special setup to run REST Assured tests. In short, the Dataverse Software needs to be placed into an insecure mode that allows arbitrary users and datasets to be created and destroyed. This differs greatly from the out-of-the-box behavior of the Dataverse Software, which we strive to keep secure for sysadmins installing the software for their institutions in a production environment.

The [Development Environment](#) section currently refers developers here for advice on getting set up to run REST Assured tests, but we’d like to add some sort of “dev” flag to the installer to put the Dataverse Software in “insecure” mode, with lots of scary warnings that this dev mode should not be used in production.

The instructions below assume a relatively static dev environment on a Mac. There is a newer “all in one” Docker-based approach documented in the [Docker, Kubernetes, and Containers](#) section under “Docker” that you may like to play with as well.

The Burrito Key

For reasons that have been lost to the mists of time, the Dataverse Software really wants you to have a burrito. Specifically, if you're trying to run REST Assured tests and see the error "Dataverse config issue: No API key defined for built in user management", you must run the following curl command (or make an equivalent change to your database):

```
curl -X PUT -d 'burrito' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/BuiltinUsers.KEY
```

Without this "burrito" key in place, REST Assured will not be able to create users. We create users to create objects we want to test, such as Dataverse collections, datasets, and files.

Root Dataverse Collection Permissions

In your browser, log in as dataverseAdmin (password: admin) and click the "Edit" button for your root Dataverse collection. Navigate to Permissions, then the Edit Access button. Under "Who can add to this Dataverse collection?" choose "Anyone with a Dataverse installation account can add sub Dataverse collections and datasets" if it isn't set to this already.

Alternatively, this same step can be done with this script: scripts/search/tests/grant-authusers-add-on-root

Publish Root Dataverse Collection

The root Dataverse collection must be published for some of the REST Assured tests to run.

dataverse.siteUrl

When run locally (as opposed to a remote server), some of the REST Assured tests require the `dataverse.siteUrl` JVM option to be set to `http://localhost:8080`. See [JVM Options](#) section in the Installation Guide for advice changing JVM options. First you should check to check your JVM options with:

```
./asadmin list-jvm-options | egrep 'dataverse|doi'
```

If `dataverse.siteUrl` is absent, you can add it with:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.siteUrl=http\://localhost\:8080"
```

Identifier Generation

`DatasetsIT.java` exercises the feature where the "identifier" of a DOI can be a digit and requires a sequence to be added to your database. See `:IdentifierGenerationStrategy` under the [Configuration](#) section for adding this sequence to your installation of PostgreSQL.

Writing API Tests with REST Assured

Before writing any new REST Assured tests, you should get the tests to pass in an existing REST Assured test file. `BuiltinUsersIT.java` is relatively small and requires less setup than other test files.

You do not have to reinvent the wheel. There are many useful methods you can call in your own tests – especially within `UtilIT.java` – when you need your test to create and/or interact with generated accounts, files, datasets, etc. Similar methods can subsequently delete them to get them out of your way as desired before the test has concluded.

For example, if you're testing your code's operations with user accounts, the method `UtilIT.createRandomUser()`; can generate an account for your test to work with. The same account can then be deleted by your program by calling the `UtilIT.deleteUser()`; method on the imaginary friend your test generated.

Remember, it's only a test (and it's not graded)! Some guidelines to bear in mind:

- Map out which logical functions you want to test
- Understand what's being tested and ensure it's repeatable
- Assert the conditions of success / return values for each operation * A useful resource would be [HTTP status codes](#)
- Let the code do the labor; automate everything that happens when you run your test file.
- Just as with any development, if you're stuck: ask for help!

To execute existing integration tests on your local Dataverse installation, a helpful command line tool to use is Maven. You should have Maven installed as per the [Development Environment](#) guide, but if not it's easily done via Homebrew: `brew install maven`.

Once installed, you may run commands with `mvn [options] [<goal(s)>] [<phase(s)>]`.

- If you want to run just one particular API test, it's as easy as you think:
`mvn test -Dtest=FileRecordJobIT`
- To run more than one test at a time, separate by commas:
`mvn test -Dtest=FileRecordJobIT,ConfirmEmailIT`
- To run any test(s) on a particular domain, replace localhost:8080 with desired domain name:
`mvn test -Dtest=FileMetadataIT -Ddataverse.test.baseurl='http://localhost:8080'`

If you are adding a new test class, be sure to add it to `tests/integration-tests.txt` located at `/tests/integration-tests.txt` so that our automated testing knows about it.

Writing and Using a Testcontainers Test

Most scenarios of integration testing involve having dependent services running. This is where [Testcontainers](#) kicks in by providing a JUnit interface to drive them before and after executing your tests.

Test scenarios are endless. Some examples are migration scripts, persistance, storage adapters etc.

To run a test with Testcontainers, you will need to write a JUnit 5 test. [The upstream project provides some documentation about this.](#)

Please make sure to:

1. End your test class with `IT`
2. Provide a `@Tag("testcontainers")` to be picked up during testing.

```
/** A very minimal example for a Testcontainers integration test class. */
@Testcontainers
@Tag("testcontainers")
class MyExampleIT { /* ... */ }
```

If using upstream Modules, e.g. for PostgreSQL or similar, you will need to add a dependency to `pom.xml` if not present. See the PostgreSQL module example.

To run these tests, simply call out to Maven:

```
mvn -P tc verify
```

Note:

1. Remember to have Docker ready to serve or tests will fail.
 2. This will not run any unit tests or API tests.
-

5.8.5 Measuring Coverage of Integration Tests

Measuring the code coverage of integration tests with Jacoco requires several steps. In order to make these steps clear we'll use “/usr/local/payara5” as the Payara directory and “dataverse” as the Payara Unix user.

Please note that this was tested under Glassfish 4 but it is hoped that the same steps will work with Payara 5.

Add jacocoagent.jar to Payara

In order to get code coverage reports out of Payara we'll be adding `jacocoagent.jar` to the Payara “lib” directory.

First, we need to download Jacoco. Look in `pom.xml` to determine which version of Jacoco we are using. As of this writing we are using 0.8.1 so in the example below we download the Jacoco zip from <https://github.com/jacoco/jacoco/releases/tag/v0.8.1>

Note that we are running the following commands as the user “dataverse”. In short, we stop Payara, add the Jacoco jar file, and start up Payara again.

```
su - dataverse
cd /home/dataverse
mkdir -p local/jacoco-0.8.1
cd local/jacoco-0.8.1
wget https://github.com/jacoco/jacoco/releases/download/v0.8.1/jacoco-0.8.1.zip
unzip jacoco-0.8.1.zip
/usr/local/payara5/bin/asadmin stop-domain
cp /home/dataverse/local/jacoco-0.8.1/lib/jacocoagent.jar /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/
  lib
/usr/local/payara5/bin/asadmin start-domain
```

Add jacococli.jar to the WAR File

As the “dataverse” user, use the `instrument_war_jacoco.bash` located at `/_static/util/instrument_war_jacoco.bash` (or skip ahead to the “git clone” step to get the script that way) and give it two arguments:

- path to your pristine WAR file
- path to the new WAR file the script will create with `jacococli.jar` in it

```
./instrument_war_jacoco.bash dataverse.war dataverse-jacoco.war
```

Deploy the Instrumented WAR File

Please note that you’ll want to undeploy the old WAR file first, if necessary.

Run this as the “dataverse” user.

```
/usr/local/payara5/bin/asadmin deploy dataverse-jacoco.war
```

Note that after deployment the file “`/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/config/jacoco.exec`” exists and is empty.

Run Integration Tests

Note that even though you see “`docker-aio`” in the command below, we assume you are not necessarily running the test suite within Docker. (Some day we’ll probably move this script to another directory.) For this reason, we pass the URL with the normal port (8080) that app servers run on to the `run-test-suite.sh` script.

Note that “`/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/config/jacoco.exec`” will become non-empty after you stop and start Payara. You must stop and start Payara before every run of the integration test suite.

```
/usr/local/payara5/bin/asadmin stop-domain
/usr/local/payara5/bin/asadmin start-domain
git clone https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse.git
cd dataverse
conf/docker-aio/run-test-suite.sh http://localhost:8080
```

(As an aside, you are not limited to API tests for the purposes of learning which code paths are being executed. You could click around the GUI, for example. Jacoco doesn’t know or care how you exercise the application.)

Create Code Coverage Report

Run these commands as the “dataverse” user. The `cd dataverse` means that you should change to the directory where you cloned the “dataverse” git repo.

```
cd dataverse
java -jar /home/dataverse/local/jacoco-0.8.1/lib/jacococli.jar report --classfiles_
└─target/classes --sourcefiles src/main/java --html target/coverage-it/ /usr/local/
└─payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/config/jacoco.exec
```

Read Code Coverage Report

target/coverage-it/index.html is the place to start reading the code coverage report you just created.

5.8.6 Load/Performance Testing

Locust

Load and performance testing is conducted on an as-needed basis but we're open to automating it. As of this writing Locust (<https://locust.io>) scripts at https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-helper-scripts/tree/master/src/stress_tests have been used.

download-files.sh script

One way of generating load is by downloading many files. You can use `download-files.sh` located at `/tests/performance/download-files/download-files.sh`, make it executable (`chmod 755`), and run it with `--help`. You can use `-b` to specify the base URL of the Dataverse installation and `-s` to specify the number of seconds to wait between requests like this:

```
./download-files.sh -b https://dev1.dataverse.org -s 2
```

The script requires a file called `files.txt` to operate and database IDs for the files you want to download should each be on their own line.

5.8.7 Continuous Integration

The Dataverse Project currently makes use of two Continuous Integration platforms, Jenkins and GitHub Actions.

Our Jenkins config is a work in progress and may be viewed at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-jenkins/> A corresponding GitHub webhook is required. Build output is viewable at <https://jenkins.dataverse.org/>

GitHub Actions jobs can be found in `.github/workflows`.

As always, pull requests to improve our continuous integration configurations are welcome.

Enhance build time by caching dependencies

In the future, CI builds in ephemeral build environments and Docker builds can benefit from caching all dependencies and plugins. As the Dataverse Project is a huge project, build times can be enhanced by avoiding re-downloading everything when the Maven POM is unchanged. To seed the cache, use the following Maven goal before using Maven in (optional) offline mode in your scripts:

```
mvn de.qaware.maven:go-offline-maven-plugin:resolve-dependencies``  
mvn -o package -DskipTests
```

The example above builds the WAR file without running any tests. For other scenarios: not using offline mode allows Maven to download more dynamic dependencies, which are not easy to track, like Surefire Plugins. Overall downloads will reduced anyway.

You will obviously have to utilize caching functionality of your CI service or do proper Docker layering.

The Phoenix Server

How the Phoenix Tests Work

A server at <http://phoenix.dataverse.org> has been set up to test the latest code from the develop branch. Testing is done using chained builds of Jenkins jobs:

- A war file is built from the latest code in develop: <https://build.hmdc.harvard.edu:8443/job/phoenix.dataverse.org-build-develop/>
- The resulting war file is deployed to the Phoenix server: <https://build.hmdc.harvard.edu:8443/job/phoenix.dataverse.org-deploy-develop/>
- REST Assured Tests are run across the wire from the Jenkins server to the Phoenix server: <https://build.hmdc.harvard.edu:8443/job/phoenix.dataverse.org-apitest-develop/>

How to Run the Phoenix Tests

- Take a quick look at <http://phoenix.dataverse.org> to make sure the server is up and running Dataverse. If it's down, fix it.
- Log into Jenkins and click "Build Now" at <https://build.hmdc.harvard.edu:8443/job/phoenix.dataverse.org-build-develop/>
- Wait for all three chained Jenkins jobs to complete and note if they passed or failed. If you see a failure, open a GitHub issue or at least get the attention of some developers.

5.8.8 Accessibility Testing

Accessibility Policy

The Dataverse Project aims to improve the user experience for those with disabilities, and are in the process of following the recommendations of the [Harvard University Digital Accessibility Policy](#), which use the Worldwide Web Consortium's Web Content Accessibility Guidelines version 2.1, Level AA Conformance (WCAG 2.1 Level AA) as the standard.

To report an accessibility issue with the Dataverse Software, you can create a new issue in our GitHub repo at: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/>

Accessibility Tools

Our development process will incorporate automated testing provided by tools like [SiteImprove](#) and [Accessibility Management Platform \(AMP\)](#) from Level Access, to run accessibility reports for the application.

Developers who contribute front-end UI code are responsible for understanding the requirements of this standard and the tools and methods for securing conformance with it.

There are browser developer tools such as the [Wave toolbar](#) by WebAIM (available for Chrome, Firefox) and the [Siteimprove Accessibility Checker](#) (available for Chrome, Firefox) that will generate reports for a single page. It is required that developers utilize these tools to catch any accessibility issues with pages or features that are being added to the application UI.

5.8.9 Future Work

We'd like to make improvements to our automated testing. See also 'this thread from our mailing list <<https://groups.google.com/forum/#!topic/dataverse-community/X8OrRWbPimA>'_ asking for ideas from the community, and discussion at 'this GitHub issue. <<https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/2746>'_

Future Work on Unit Tests

- Review pull requests from @bencomp for ideas for approaches to testing: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/pulls?q=is%3Apr+author%3Abencomp>
- Come up with a way to test commands: http://irclog.iq.harvard.edu/dataverse/2015-11-04#i_26750
- Test EJBs using Arquillian, embedded app servers, or similar. @bmckinney kicked the tires on Arquillian at <https://github.com/bmckinney/bio-dataverse/commit/2f243b1db1ca704a42cd0a5de329083763b7c37a>

Future Work on Integration Tests

- Automate testing of dataverse-client-python: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-client-python/issues/10>
- Work with @leeper on testing the R client: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-client-r>
- Review and attempt to implement "API Test Checklist" from @kcondon at <https://docs.google.com/document/d/199Oq1YwQ4pYCguaeW48bIN28QAitSk63NbPYxJHCCAE/edit?usp=sharing>
- Generate code coverage reports for **integration** tests: <https://github.com/pkainulainen/maven-examples/issues/3> and <http://www.petrikainulainen.net/programming/maven/creating-code-coverage-reports-for-unit-and-integration-tests-with-the-jacoco-maven-plugin/>
- Consistent logging of API Tests. Show test name at the beginning and end and status codes returned.
- expected passing and known/expected failing integration tests: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/4438>

Browser-Based Testing

- Revisit Selenium/Open Sauce: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/commit/8a26404> and <https://saucelabs.com/u/esodvn> and <https://saucelabs.com/u/wdjs> and <http://sauceio.com/index.php/2013/05/a-browser-matrix-widget-for-the-open-source-community/>

Installation Testing

- Run *vagrant up* on a server to test the installer
- Work with @donsizemore to automate testing of <https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-ansible>

Future Work on Load/Performance Testing

- Clean up and copy stress tests code, config, and docs into main repo from https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-helper-scripts/tree/master/src/stress_tests
- Marcel Duran created a command-line wrapper for the WebPagetest API that can be used to test performance in your continuous integration pipeline (TAP, Jenkins, etc.): <https://github.com/marcelduran/webpagetest-api/wiki/Test-Specs#jenkins-integration>
- Create top-down checklist, building off the “API Test Coverage” spreadsheet at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/3358#issuecomment-256400776>

Future Work on Accessibility Testing

- Using <https://github.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-ansible> and hooks available from accessibility testing tools, automate the running of accessibility tools on PRs so that developers will receive quicker feedback on proposed code changes that reduce the accessibility of the application.

Previous: [SQL Upgrade Scripts](#) | Next: [Writing Documentation](#)

5.9 Writing Documentation

Contents:

- *Quick Fix*
- *Building the Guides with Sphinx*
 - *Installing Sphinx*
 - *Installing GraphViz*
 - *Editing and Building the Guides*
- *Table of Contents*
- *Images*
- *Cross References*
- *Versions*

5.9.1 Quick Fix

If you find a typo or a small error in the documentation you can fix it using GitHub’s online web editor. Generally speaking, we will be following <https://help.github.com/en/articles/editing-files-in-another-users-repository>

- Navigate to <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/tree/develop/doc/sphinx-guides/source> where you will see folders for each of the guides: admin, api, developers, installation, style, user.
- Find the file you want to edit under one of the folders above.
- Click the pencil icon in the upper-right corner. If this is your first contribution to the Dataverse Project, the hover text over the pencil icon will say “Fork this project and edit this file”.

- Make changes to the file and preview them.
- In the **Commit changes** box, enter a description of the changes you have made and click **Propose file change**.
- Under the **Write** tab, delete the long welcome message and write a few words about what you fixed.
- Click **Create Pull Request**.

That's it! Thank you for your contribution! Your pull request will be added manually to the main Dataverse Project board at <https://github.com/orgs/IQSS/projects/2> and will go through code review and QA before it is merged into the “develop” branch. Along the way, developers might suggest changes or make them on your behalf. Once your pull request has been merged you will be listed as a contributor at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/graphs/contributors>

Please see <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/pull/5857> for an example of a quick fix that was merged (the “Files changed” tab shows how a typo was fixed).

If you would like to read more about the Dataverse Project’s use of GitHub, please see the [Version Control](#) section. For bug fixes and features we request that you create an issue before making a pull request but this is not at all necessary for quick fixes to the documentation.

5.9.2 Building the Guides with Sphinx

The Dataverse guides are written using Sphinx (<http://sphinx-doc.org>). We recommend installing Sphinx and building the guides locally so you can get an accurate preview of your changes.

Installing Sphinx

First, make a fork of <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse> and clone your fork locally. Then change to the `doc/sphinx-guides` directory.

```
cd doc/sphinx-guides
```

Create a Python virtual environment, activate it, then install dependencies:

```
python3 -m venv venv  
source venv/bin/activate  
pip install -r requirements.txt
```

Installing GraphViz

In some parts of the documentation, graphs are rendered as images using the Sphinx GraphViz extension.

Building the guides requires the `dot` executable from GraphViz.

This requires having [GraphViz](#) installed and either having `dot` on the path or adding options to the make call.

Editing and Building the Guides

To edit the existing documentation:

- Create a branch (see [How to Make a Pull Request](#)).
- In doc/sphinx-guides/source you will find the .rst files that correspond to <http://guides.dataverse.org>.
- Using your preferred text editor, open and edit the necessary files, or create new ones.

Once you are done, open a terminal, change directories to doc/sphinx-guides, activate (or reactivate) your Python virtual environment, and build the guides.

```
cd doc/sphinx-guides
source venv/bin/activate
make clean
make html
```

After Sphinx is done processing the files you should notice that the html folder in doc/sphinx-guides/build directory has been updated. You can click on the files in the html folder to preview the changes.

Now you can make a commit with the changes to your own fork in GitHub and submit a pull request. See [How to Make a Pull Request](#).

5.9.3 Table of Contents

Every non-index page should use the following code to display a table of contents of internal sub-headings:

```
.. contents:: |toctitle|
   :local:
```

This code should be placed below any introductory text/images and directly above the first subheading, much like a Wikipedia page.

5.9.4 Images

A good documentation is just like a website enhanced and upgraded by adding high quality and self-explanatory images. Often images depict a lot of written text in a simple manner. Within our Sphinx docs, you can add them in two ways: a) add a PNG image directly and include or b) use inline description languages like GraphViz (current only option).

While PNGs in the git repo can be linked directly via URL, Sphinx-generated images do not need a manual step and might provide higher visual quality. Especially in terms of quality of content, generated images can be extendend and improved by a textbased and reviewable commit, without needing raw data or source files and no diff around.

5.9.5 Cross References

NOTE: When adding ReStructured Text (RST) cross references, use the hyphen character (-) as the word separator for the cross reference label. For example, my-reference-label would be the preferred label for a cross reference as opposed to, for example, my_reference_label.

5.9.6 Versions

For installations hosting their own copies of the guides, note that as each version of the Dataverse Software is released, there is an updated version of the guides released with it. Google and other search engines index all versions, which may confuse users who discover your guides in the search results as to which version they should be looking at. When learning about your installation from the search results, it is best to be viewing the *latest* version.

In order to make it clear to the crawlers that we only want the latest version discoverable in their search results, we suggest adding this to your `robots.txt` file:

```
User-agent: *
Allow: /en/latest/
Disallow: /en/
```

Previous: [Testing](#) | Next: [Dependency Management](#)

5.10 Security

This section describes security practices and procedures for the Dataverse team.

Contents:

- [Intake of Security Issues](#)
- [Sending Security Notices](#)

5.10.1 Intake of Security Issues

As described under [Reporting Security Issues](#), we encourage the community to email security@dataverse.org if they have any security concerns. These emails go into our private ticket tracker ([RT](#)).

We use a private GitHub issue tracker at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-security/issues> for security issues.

5.10.2 Sending Security Notices

When drafting the security notice, it might be helpful to look at [previous examples](#).

Gather email addresses from the following sources (these are also described under [Ongoing Security of Your Installation](#) in the Installation Guide):

- “contact_email” in the [public](#) installation spreadsheet
- “Other Security Contacts” in the [private](#) installation spreadsheet

Once you have the emails, include them as bcc.

5.11 Dependency Management

Contents:

- *Introduction*
- *Terms*
- *Direct dependencies*
- *Transitive dependencies*
 - *Managing transitive dependencies in pom.xml*
- *Helpful tools*
- *Repositories*
- *Dataverse Parent POM*

5.11.1 Introduction

As explained under [Core Technologies](#), the Dataverse Software is a Jakarta EE 8 based application that uses a lot of additional libraries for special purposes. This includes support for the SWORD API, S3 storage, and many other features.

Besides the code that glues together individual pieces, any developer needs to describe dependencies used within the Maven-based build system. As is familiar to any Maven user, this happens inside the “Project Object Model” (POM) file, `pom.xml`.

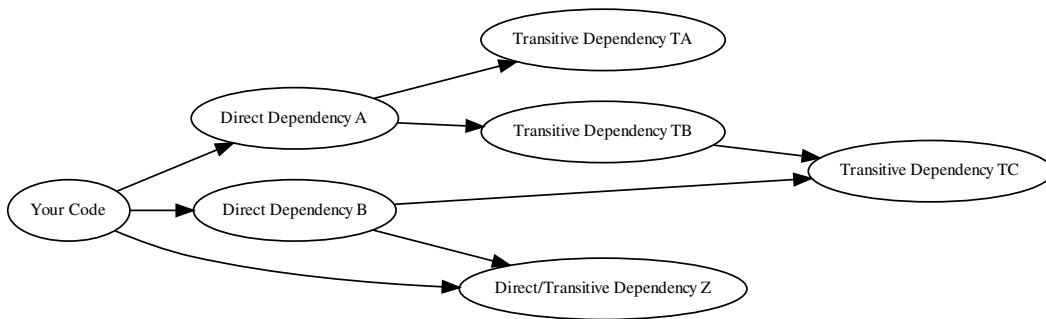
Recursive and convergent dependency resolution makes dependency management with Maven quite easy, but sometimes, in projects with many complex dependencies like the Dataverse Software, you have to help Maven make the right choices.

Maven can foster good development practices by enabling modular monolithic (modular monolithic) architecture: splitting functionalities into different Maven submodules while expressing dependencies between them. But there’s more: the parent-child model allows you to create consistent dependency versioning (see below) within children.

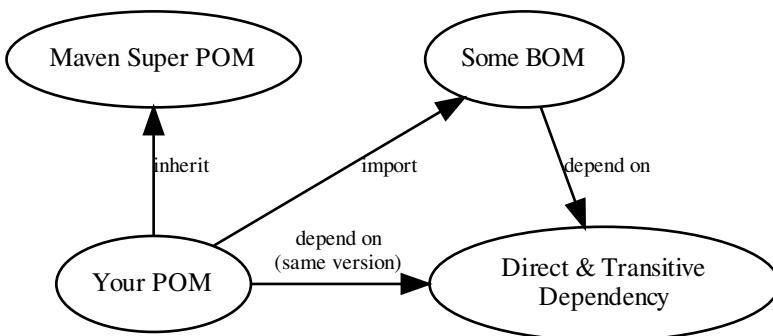
5.11.2 Terms

As a developer, you should familiarize yourself with the following terms:

- **Direct dependencies:** things *you use* yourself in your own code for the Dataverse Software.
- **Transitive dependencies:** things *others use* for things you use, pulled in recursively. See also: [Maven docs](#).

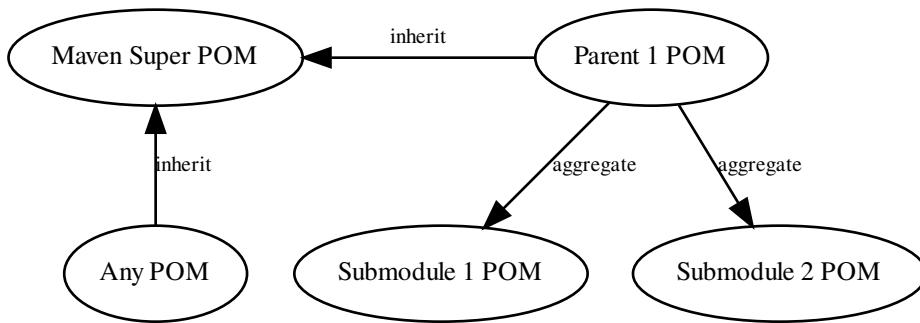


- **Project Object Model (POM)**: the basic XML file unit to describe a Maven-based project.
- **Bill Of Materials (BOM)**: larger projects like Payara, Amazon SDK etc. provide lists of their direct dependencies. This comes in handy when adding these dependencies (transitive for us) as direct dependencies, see below.

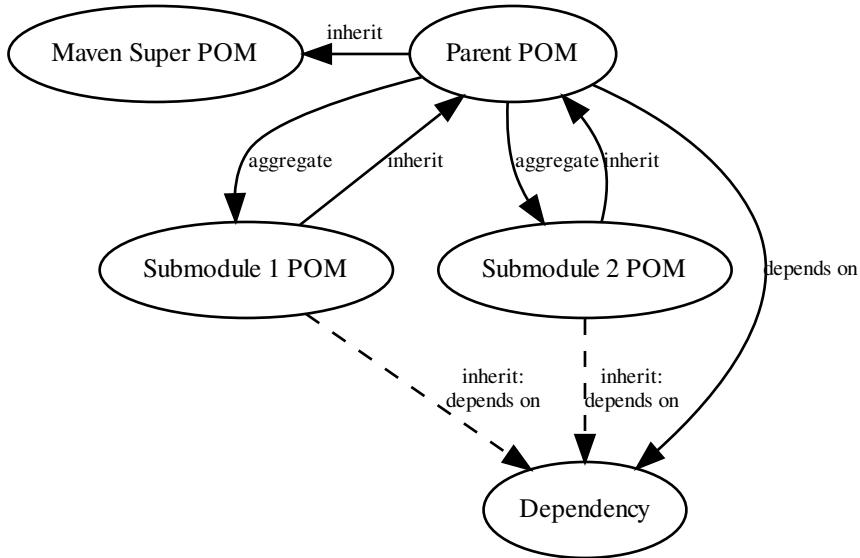


- **Parent POM, Super POM**: any project may be a child of a parent.

Project silently inherit from a “super POM”, which is the global Maven standard parent POM. Children may also be aggregated by a parent (without them knowing) for convenient builds of larger projects.



Children may inherit dependencies, properties, settings, plugins etc. from the parent (making it possible to share common ground). Both approaches may be combined. Children may import as many BOMs as they want, but can have only a single parent to inherit from at a time.



- **Modules:** when using parents and children, these are called “modules” officially, each having their own POM.

Using modules allows bundling different aspects of (Dataverse) software in their own domains, with their own behavior, dependencies etc. Parent modules allow for sharing of common settings, properties, dependencies and more. Submodules may also be used as parent modules for a lower level of submodules.

Maven modules within the same software project may also depend on each other, allowing to create complex structures of packages and projects. Each module may be released on their own (e. g. on Maven Central) and other projects may rely on and reuse them. This is especially useful for parent POMs: they may be reused as

BOMs or to share a standard between independent software projects.

Maven modules should not be confused with the Java Platform Module System ([JPMS](#)) introduced in Java 9 under Project Jigsaw.

5.11.3 Direct dependencies

Within the POM, any direct dependencies reside within the `<dependencies>` tag:

```
<dependencies>
  <dependency>
    <groupId>org.example</groupId>
    <artifactId>example</artifactId>
    <version>1.1.0</version>
    <scope>compile</scope>
  </dependency>
</dependencies>
```

Anytime you add a `<dependency>`, Maven will try to fetch it from defined/configured repositories and use it within the build lifecycle. You have to define a `<version>` (note exception below), but `<scope>` is optional for `compile`. (See [Maven docs: Dep. Scope](#))

During fetching, Maven will analyze all transitive dependencies (see graph above) and, if necessary, fetch those too. Everything downloaded once is cached locally by default, so nothing needs to be fetched again and again, as long as the dependency definition does not change.

Rules to follow:

1. You should only use direct dependencies for **things you are actually using** in your code.
2. When declaring a direct dependency with its **version** managed by `<dependencyManagement>`, a BOM or parent POM, you may not provide one unless you want to explicitly override!
3. **Clean up** direct dependencies no longer in use. It will bloat the deployment package otherwise!
4. Care about the **scope**¹:
 - Do not include “testing only” dependencies in the final package - it will hurt you in IDEs and bloat things. There is scope `test` for this!
 - Make sure to use the `runtime` scope when you need to ensure a library is present on our classpath at runtime. An example is the SLF4J JUL bridge: we want to route logs from SLF4J into `java.util.logging`, so it needs to be present on the classpath, although we aren’t using SLF4J unlike, some of our dependencies.
 - Some dependencies might be provided by the runtime environment. Good example: everything from Jakarta EE! We use the Payara BOM to ensure using the same version during development and runtime.
5. Avoid using different dependencies for the **same purpose**, e. g. different JSON parsing libraries.
6. Refactor your code to **use Jakarta EE** standards as much as possible.
7. When you rely on big SDKs or similar big cool stuff, try to **include the smallest portion possible**. Complete SDK bundles are typically heavyweight and most of the time unnecessary.
8. **Don’t include transitive dependencies**.²
 - Exception: if you are relying on it in your code (see Z in the graph above), you must declare it. See below for proper handling in these (rare) cases.

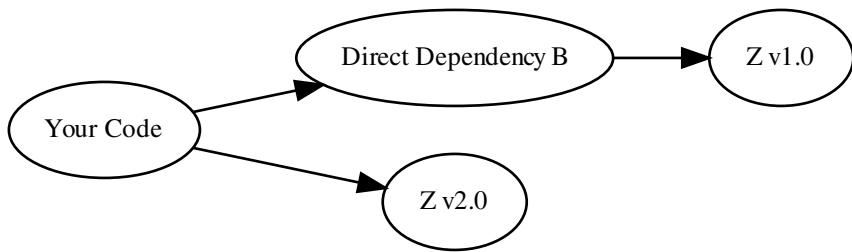
¹ Modern IDEs import your Maven POM and offer import autocompletion for classes based on direct dependencies in the model. You might end up using legacy or repackaged classes because of a wrong scope.

² This is going to bite back in modern IDEs when importing classes from transitive dependencies by “autocompletion accident”.

5.11.4 Transitive dependencies

Maven is comfortable for developers; it handles recursive resolution, downloading, and adding “dependencies of dependencies”. However, as life is a box of chocolates, you might find yourself in *version conflict hell* sooner than later without even knowing, but experiencing unintended side effects.

When you look at the topmost graph above, imagine *B* and *TB* rely on different *versions* of *TC*. How does Maven decide which version it will include? Easy: the version of the dependency nearest to our project (“Your Code”) wins. The following graph gives an example:



In this case, version “2.0” will be included. If you know something about semantic versioning, a red alert should ring in your mind right now. How do we know that *B* is compatible with *Z v2.0* when depending on *Z v1.0*?

Another scenario getting us in trouble: indirect use of transitive dependencies. Imagine the following: we rely on *Z* in our code, but do not include a direct dependency for it within the POM. Now assume *B* is updated and removed its dependency on *Z*. You definitely don’t want to head down that road.

Follow the rules to be safe:

1. **Do not use transitive deps implicitly:** add a direct dependency for transitive deps you re-use in your code.
2. On every build, check that no implicit usage was added by accident.
3. **Explicitly declare versions** of transitive dependencies in use by multiple direct dependencies.
4. On every build, check that there are no convergence problems hiding in the shadows.
5. **Do special tests** on every build to verify these explicit combinations work.

Managing transitive dependencies in pom.xml

Maven can manage versions of transitive dependencies in four ways:

Safe Good Practice	(1) Explicitly declare the transitive dependency in <code><dependencyManagement></code> with a <code><version></code> tag.	(2) For more complex transitive dependencies, reuse a “Bill of Materials” (BOM) within <code><dependencyManagement></code> . Many bigger projects provide them, making the POM much less bloated compared to adding every bit yourself.
Better Avoid Don't or	(3) Use <code><optional></code> or <code><exclusion></code> tags on direct dependencies that request the transitive dependency. <i>Last resort</i> , you really should avoid this. Not explained or used here, but sometimes unavoidable. See Maven docs.	(4) Make a transitive-only dependency not used in your code a direct one and add a <code><version></code> tag. Typically a bad idea; don't do that.

Note: when the same transitive dependency is used in multiple Maven modules of a software project, it might be added to a common `<dependencyManagement>` section of an inherited parent POM instead. (Overrides are still possible.)

A reduced example, only showing bits relevant to the above cases and usage of an explicit transitive dep directly:

```

1 <properties>
2   <aws.version>1.11.172</aws.version>
3   <!-- We need to ensure that our chosen version is compatible with every dependency, -->
4   <!-- relying on it.
5   This is manual work and needs testing, but a good investment in stability and, -->
6   <!-- up-to-date dependencies. -->
7   <jackson.version>2.9.6</jackson.version>
8   <joda.version>2.10.1</joda.version>
9 </properties>
10
11 <!-- Transitive dependencies, bigger library "bill of materials" (BOM) and -->
12   <!-- versions of dependencies used both directly and transitive are managed here. -->
13 <dependencyManagement>
14   <dependencies>
15     <!-- First example for case 4. Only one part of the SDK (S3) is used and, -->
16     <!-- transitive deps
17       of that are again managed by the upstream BOM. -->
18     <dependency>
19       <groupId>com.amazonaws</groupId>
20       <artifactId>aws-java-sdk-bom</artifactId>
21       <version>${aws.version}</version>
22       <type>pom</type>
23       <scope>import</scope>
24     </dependency>
25     <!-- Second example for case 4 and an example for explicit direct usage of a, -->
26     <!-- transitive dependency.
27       Jackson is used by AWS SDK and others, but we also use it in the Dataverse, -->
28       <Software. -->
29     <dependency>
30       <groupId>com.fasterxml.jackson</groupId>
31       <artifactId>jackson-bom</artifactId>
32       <version>${jackson.version}</version>

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

28   <scope>import</scope>
29   <type>pom</type>
30 </dependency>
31   <!-- Example for case 3. Joda is not used in the Dataverse Software (as of
32   writing this). -->
33   <dependency>
34     <groupId>joda-time</groupId>
35     <artifactId>joda-time</artifactId>
36     <version>${joda.version}</version>
37   </dependency>
38 </dependencies>
39 </dependencyManagement>

40 <!-- Declare any DIRECT dependencies here.
41     In case the dependency is both transitive and direct (e. g. some common lib for
42     logging),
43     manage the version above and add the direct dependency here WITHOUT version tag,
44     too.
45 -->
46 <dependencies>
47   <dependency>
48     <groupId>com.amazonaws</groupId>
49     <artifactId>aws-java-sdk-s3</artifactId>
50     <!-- no version here as managed by BOM above! -->
51   </dependency>
52   <!-- Should be refactored and removed now that we are on Jakarta EE 8 -->
53   <dependency>
54     <groupId>com.fasterxml.jackson.core</groupId>
55     <artifactId>jackson-core</artifactId>
56     <!-- no version here as managed above! -->
57   </dependency>
58   <!-- Should be refactored and removed now that we are on Jakarta EE 8 -->
59   <dependency>
60     <groupId>com.fasterxml.jackson.core</groupId>
61     <artifactId>jackson-databind</artifactId>
62     <!-- no version here as managed above! -->
63   </dependency>
64 </dependencies>

```

5.11.5 Helpful tools

Maven provides some plugins that are of great help to detect possible conflicts and implicit usage.

For *implicit usage detection*, use `mvn dependency:analyze`. Examine the output with great care. Sometimes you will see implicit usages that do no harm, especially if you are using bigger SDKs having some kind of *core* package. This will also report on any direct dependency which is not in use and can be removed from the POM. Again, do this with great caution and double check.

If you want to see the dependencies both direct and transitive in a *dependency tree format*, use `mvn dependency:tree`.

This will however not help you with detecting possible version conflicts. For this you need to use the [Enforcer Plugin](#) with its built in `dependency` convergence rule.

5.11.6 Repositories

Maven receives all dependencies from *repositories*. These can be public like [Maven Central](#) and others, but you can also use a private repository on premises or in the cloud. Last but not least, you can use local repositories, which can live next to your application code (see `local_lib` dir within the Dataverse Software codebase).

Repositories are defined within the Dataverse Software POM like this:

```
<repositories>
  <repository>
    <id>central-repo</id>
    <name>Central Repository</name>
    <url>http://repo1.maven.org/maven2</url>
    <layout>default</layout>
  </repository>
  <repository>
    <id>prime-repo</id>
    <name>PrimeFaces Maven Repository</name>
    <url>http://repository.primefaces.org</url>
    <layout>default</layout>
  </repository>
  <repository>
    <id>dvn.private</id>
    <name>Local repository for hosting jars not available from network repositories.
    </name>
    <url>file://${project.basedir}/local_lib</url>
  </repository>
</repositories>
```

You can also add repositories to your local Maven settings, see [docs](#).

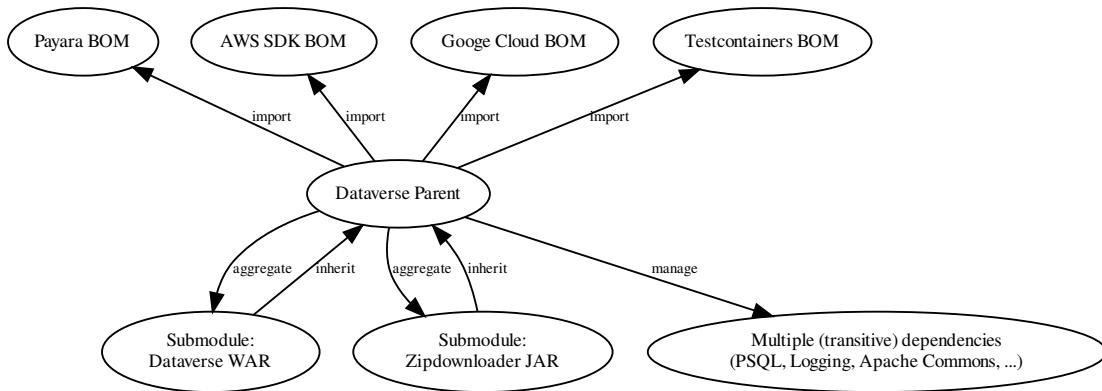
Typically you will skip the addition of the central repository, but adding it to the POM has the benefit that dependencies are first looked up there (which in theory can speed up downloads). You should keep in mind that repositories are used in the order they appear.

5.11.7 Dataverse Parent POM

Within `modules/dataverse-parent` you will find the parent POM for the Dataverse codebase. It serves different purposes:

1. Provide the common version number for a Dataverse release (may be overridden where necessary).
2. Provide common metadata necessary for releasing modules to repositories like Maven Central.
3. Declare aggregated submodules via `<modules>`.
4. Collate common BOMs and transitive dependencies within `<dependencyManagement>`. (Remember: a direct dependency declaration may omit the version element when defined in that area!)
5. Collect common `<properties>` regarding the Maven project (encoding, ...), dependency versions, target Java version, etc.
6. Gather common `<repositories>` and `<pluginRepositories>` - no need to repeat those in submodules.
7. Make submodules use current Maven plugin release versions via `<pluginManagement>`.

As of this writing (2022-02-10), our parent module looks like this:



The codebase is structured like this:

```
<project root>
  pom.xml                      # Dataverse WAR Module
  modules
    dataverse-parent
      pom.xml                  # (POM file of WAR module)
    #
    zipdownload
      pom.xml                  # Dataverse Parent Module
      # (POM file of Parent Module)
    scripts
      zipdownload
        pom.xml                # Zipdownloader JAR Module
        # (POM file of Zipdownloader Module)
```

- Any developer cloning the project and running `mvn` within the project root will interact with the Dataverse WAR module, which is the same behavior since Dataverse 4.0 has been released.
- Running `mvn` targets within the parent module will execute all aggregated submodules in one go.

Previous: [Writing Documentation](#) | Next: [Debugging](#)

5.12 Debugging

Contents:

- [Logging](#)
- [Java Server Faces \(JSF\) Configuration Options](#)

5.12.1 Logging

By default, the app server logs at the “INFO” level but logging can be increased to “FINE” on the fly with (for example) `./asadmin set-log-levels edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.api.Datasets=FINE`. Running `./asadmin list-log-levels` will show the current logging levels.

5.12.2 Java Server Faces (JSF) Configuration Options

Some JSF options can be easily changed via MicroProfile Config (using environment variables, system properties, etc.) during development without recompiling. Changing the options will require at least a redeployment, obviously depending how you get these options in. (Variable substitution only happens during deployment and when using system properties or environment variables, you’ll need to pass these into the domain, which usually will require an app server restart.)

Please note that since Payara 5.2021.1 supporting MicroProfile Config 2.0, you can [use profiles](#) to maintain your settings more easily for different environments.

JSF Option	MPCONFIG Key	Description	Default
<code>javax.faces.PROJECT_STAGE</code>	<code>JAVAEE_STAGE</code>	Switch to different levels to make JSF more verbose, disable caches etc. Read more at various places .	Production
<code>javax.faces.INTERPRET_EMPTY_STRING_SUBMITTED_VALUES_AS_NULL</code>	<code>JAVAEE_EMPTYSUBMITTEDVALUES_AS_NULL</code>	See Jakarta Server Faces 3.0 Spec	true
<code>javax.faces.FACELETS_SKIP_COMPONENTS</code>	<code>JAVAEE_SKIP_COMPONENTS</code>	See Jakarta Server Faces 3.0 Spec	true
<code>javax.faces.FACELETS_BUFFER_SIZE</code>	<code>JAVAEE_BUFSIZE</code>	See Jakarta Server Faces 3.0 Spec	102400 (100 KB)
<code>javax.faces.FACELETS_REFRESH_PERIOD</code>	<code>JAVAEE_REFRESHPERIOD</code>	See Jakarta Server Faces 3.0 Spec	-1
<code>primefaces.THEME</code>	<code>data-verse.jsf.primefaces.theme</code>	See PrimeFaces Configuration Docs	bootstrap

Previous: [Writing Documentation](#) | Next: [Coding Style](#)

5.13 Coding Style

Like all development teams, the Dataverse Project developers at IQSS have their habits and styles when it comes to writing code. Let’s attempt to get on the same page. :)

Contents:

- [Java](#)
 - [Formatting Code](#)
 - * [Tabs vs. Spaces](#)
 - * [Braces Placement](#)

- * Format Code You Changed with Netbeans
- * Checking Your Formatting With Checkstyle
- Logging
- Avoid Hard-Coding Strings (Use Constants)
- Avoid Hard-Coding User-Facing Messaging in English
- Type Safety
- Bash
 - Formatting Code
 - * Tabs vs. Spaces
- Bike Shedding

5.13.1 Java

Formatting Code

Tabs vs. Spaces

Don't use tabs. Use 4 spaces.

Braces Placement

Place curly braces according to the style below, which is an example you can see from Netbeans.

```
public class ClassA {

    private String letters[] = new String[]{"A", "B"};

    public int meth(String text, int number) {
        BinaryOperator plus = (a, b) -> {
            return a + b;
        };
        if (text != null) {
            try {
                meth("Some text", text.length());
            } catch (Throwable t) {
            } finally {
            }
        } else if (number >= 0) {
            text = number == 0 ? "empty" : "nonempty";
        }
        do {
            number = number + 1;
        } while (number < 2);
        for (int i = 1; i < 100; i++) {
            number = number + i;
        }
    }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    }
    while (number > 0) {
        number--;
    }
}

```

Format Code You Changed with Netbeans

As you probably gathered from the [Development Environment](#) section, IQSS has standardized on Netbeans. It is much appreciated when you format your code (but only the code you touched!) using the out-of-the-box Netbeans configuration. If you have created an entirely new Java class, you can just click Source -> Format. If you are adjusting code in an existing class, highlight the code you changed and then click Source -> Format. Keeping the “diff” in your pull requests small makes them easier to code review.

Checking Your Formatting With Checkstyle

The easiest way to adopt the Dataverse Project coding style is to use Netbeans as your IDE, avoid change the default Netbeans formatting settings, and only reformat code you’ve changed, as described above.

If you do not use Netbeans, you are encouraged to check the formatting of your code using Checkstyle.

To check the entire project:

```
mvn checkstyle:checkstyle
```

To check a single file:

```
mvn checkstyle:checkstyle -Dcheckstyle.includes=**\SystemConfig*.java
```

Logging

We have adopted a pattern where the top of every class file has a line like this:

```
private static final Logger logger = Logger.getLogger(DatasetUtil.class.  
    ↪getCanonicalName());
```

Use this logger field with varying levels such as `fine` or `info` like this:

```
logger.fine("will get thumbnail from dataset logo");
```

Generally speaking you should use `fine` for everything that you don’t want to show up by default in the app server’s log file. If you use a higher level such as `info` for common operations, you will probably hear complaints that your code is too “chatty” in the logs. These logging levels can be controlled at runtime both on your development machine and in production as explained in the [Debugging](#) section.

When adding logging, do not simply add `System.out.println()` lines because the logging level cannot be controlled.

Avoid Hard-Coding Strings (Use Constants)

Special strings should be defined as public constants. For example, `DatasetFieldConstant.java` contains a field for “title” and it’s used in many places in the code (try “Find Usages” in Netbeans). This is better than writing the string “title” in all those places.

Avoid Hard-Coding User-Facing Messaging in English

There is an ongoing effort to translate the Dataverse Software into various languages. Look for “lang” or “languages” in the `Configuration` section of the Installation Guide for details if you’d like to help or play around with this feature.

The translation effort is hampered if you hard code user-facing messages in English in the Java code. Put English strings in `Bundle.properties` and use `BundleUtil` to pull them out. This is especially important for messages that appear in the UI. We are aware that the API has many, many hard coded English strings in it. If you touch a method in the API and notice English strings, you are strongly encouraged to use that opportunity to move the English to `Bundle.properties`.

Type Safety

If you just downloaded Netbeans and are using the out-of-the-box settings, you should be in pretty good shape. Unfortunately, the default configuration of Netbeans doesn’t warn you about type-safety problems you may be inadvertently introducing into the code. To see these warnings, click Netbeans -> Preferences -> Editor -> Hints and check the following:

- “Raw Types” under “Standard Javac Warnings”

If you know of a way to easily share Netbeans configuration across a team, please get in touch.

5.13.2 Bash

Generally, Google’s Shell Style Guide at <https://google.github.io/styleguide/shell.xml> seems to have good advice.

Formatting Code

Tabs vs. Spaces

Don’t use tabs. Use 2 spaces.

`shfmt` from <https://github.com/mvdan/sh> seems like a decent way to enforce indentation of two spaces (i.e. `shfmt -i 2 -w path/to/script.sh`) but be aware that it makes other changes.

5.13.3 Bike Shedding

What color should the `bike shed` be? :)

Come debate with us about coding style in this Google doc that has public comments enabled: <https://docs.google.com/document/d/1KTd3FpM1BI3HIBofaZjMmBiQEJtFf11jiiGpQeJzy7A/edit?usp=sharing>

Previous: [Debugging](#) | Next: [Deployment](#)

5.14 Consuming Configuration

Contents:

- *Simple Configuration Options*
- *Complex Configuration Options*
- *Why should I care about MicroProfile Config API?*
- *Adopting MicroProfile Config API*
 - *Adding a JVM Setting*
 - *Moving or Replacing a JVM Setting*

The Dataverse Software uses different types of configuration:

1. JVM system properties
2. Simple database value settings
3. Complex database stored data structures

1 and 2 are usually simple text strings, boolean switches or digits. All of those can be found in [Configuration](#).

Anything for 3 is configured via the API using either TSV or JSON structures. Examples are metadata blocks, authentication providers, harvesters and others.

5.14.1 Simple Configuration Options

Developers can access simple properties via:

1. `JvmSettings.<SETTING NAME>.lookup(...)` for JVM system property settings.
2. `SettingsServiceBean.get(...)` for database settings.
3. `SystemConfig.xxx()` for specially treated settings, maybe mixed from 1 and 2 and other sources.
4. `SettingsWrapper` for use in frontend JSF (xhtml) pages to obtain settings from 2 and 3. Using the wrapper is a must for performance as explained in [avoid common efficiency issues with JSF render logic expressions](#).
5. `System.getProperty()` only for very special use cases not covered by `JvmSettings`.

As of Dataverse Software 5.3, we start to streamline our efforts into using a more consistent approach, also bringing joy and happiness to all the system administrators out there. This will be done by adopting the use of [MicroProfile Config](#) over time.

So far we streamlined configuration of these Dataverse Software parts:

- [x] Database Connection

5.14.2 Complex Configuration Options

We should enable variable substitution in JSON configuration. Example: using substitution to retrieve values from MicroProfile Config and insert into the authentication provider would allow much easier provisioning of secrets into the providers.

5.14.3 Why should I care about MicroProfile Config API?

Developers benefit from:

- A streamlined API to retrieve configuration, backward-compatible renaming strategies and easier testbed configurations.
- Config API is also pushing for validation of configuration, as it's typesafe and converters for non-standard types can be added within our codebase.
- Defaults in code or bundled in `META-INF/microprofile-config.properties` allow for optional values without much hassle.
- A single place to lookup any existing JVM setting in code, easier to keep in sync with the documentation.

System administrators benefit from:

- Lots of database settings have been introduced in the past, but should be more easily configurable and not rely on a database connection.
- Running a Dataverse installation in containers gets much easier when configuration can be provisioned in a streamlined fashion, mitigating the need for scripting glue and distinguishing between setting types.
- Classic installations have a profit, too: we can enable using a single config file, e.g. living in `/etc/dataverse/config.properties` by adding our own, hot-reload config source.
- Features for monitoring resources and others are easier to use with this streamlined configuration, as we can avoid people having to deal with `asadmin` commands and change a setting with comfort instead.

5.14.4 Adopting MicroProfile Config API

This technology is introduced on a step-by-step basis. There will not be a big shot, crashing upgrades for everyone. Instead, we will provide backward compatibility by deprecating renamed or moved config options, while still supporting the old way of setting them.

- Introducing a new setting or moving an old one should result in a scoped key `dataverse.<scope/task/module/...>.<setting>`. That way we enable sys admins to recognize the meaning of an option and avoid name conflicts. Starting with `dataverse` makes it perfectly clear that this is a setting meant for this application, which is important when using environment variables, system properties or other MPCONFIG sources.
- Replace `System.getProperty()` calls with `JvmSettings.<SETTING NAME>.lookup(...)`, adding the setting there first. This might be paired with renaming and providing backward-compatible aliases.
- Database settings need to be refactored in multiple steps and it is not yet clear how this will be done. Many Database settings are of very static nature and might be moved to JVM settings (in backward compatible ways).

Adding a JVM Setting

Whenever a new option gets added or an existing configuration gets migrated to `edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.settings.JvmSettings`, you will attach the setting to an existing scope or create new sub-scopes first.

- Scopes and settings are organised in a tree-like structure within a single enum `JvmSettings`.
- The root scope is “dataverse”.
- All sub-scopes are below that.
- Scopes are separated by dots (periods).
- A scope may be a placeholder, filled with a variable during lookup. (Named object mapping.)

Any consumer of the setting can choose to use one of the fluent `lookup()` methods, which hides away alias handling, conversion etc from consuming code. See also the detailed Javadoc for these methods.

Moving or Replacing a JVM Setting

When moving an old key to a new (especially when doing so with a former JVM system property setting), you should add an alias to the `JvmSettings` definition to enable backward compatibility. Old names given there are capable of being used with patterned lookups.

Another option is to add the alias in `src/main/resources/META-INF/microprofile-aliases.properties`. The format is always like `dataverse.<scope/....>.newname...=old.property.name`. Note this doesn't provide support for patterned aliases.

Details can be found in `edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.settings.source.AliasConfigSource`

5.15 Deployment

Developers often only deploy the Dataverse Software to their *Development Environment* but it can be useful to deploy the Dataverse Software to cloud services such as Amazon Web Services (AWS).

Contents:

- *Deploying the Dataverse Software to Amazon Web Services (AWS)*
 - *Install AWS CLI*
 - * *Troubleshooting “aws: command not found”*
 - *Configure AWS CLI*
 - *Configure Ansible File (Optional)*
 - *Download and Run the “Create Instance” Script*
 - *Caveat Recipients*
 - *Migrating Datafiles from Local Storage to S3*
 - * *To Update Dataset Location to S3, Assuming a file:// Prefix*
 - * *To Update Datafile Location to your-s3-bucket, Assuming a file:// Prefix*
 - * *To Update Datafile Location to your-s3-bucket, Assuming no file:// Prefix*

5.15.1 Deploying the Dataverse Software to Amazon Web Services (AWS)

We have written scripts to deploy the Dataverse Software to Amazon Web Services (AWS) but they require some setup.

Install AWS CLI

First, you need to have AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI) installed, which is called `aws` in your terminal. Launching your terminal and running the following command to print out the version of AWS CLI will tell you if it is installed or not:

```
aws --version
```

If you have not yet installed AWS CLI you should install it by following the instructions at <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/userguide/installing.html>

Afterwards, you should re-run the “version” command above to verify that AWS CLI has been properly installed. If “version” still doesn’t work, read on for troubleshooting advice. If “version” works, you can skip down to the “Configure AWS CLI” step.

Troubleshooting “aws: command not found”

Please note that as of this writing the AWS docs are not especially clear about how to fix errors such as `aws: command not found`. If the AWS CLI cannot be found after you followed the AWS installation docs, it is very likely that the `aws` program is not in your `$PATH`. `$PATH` is an “environment variable” that tells your shell (usually Bash) where to look for programs.

To see what `$PATH` is set to, run the following command:

```
echo $PATH
```

On Mac, to update your `$PATH` to include the location where the current AWS docs install AWS CLI on the version of Python included with your Mac, run the following command:

```
export PATH=$PATH:$HOME/Library/Python/2.7/bin
```

After all this, you can try the “version” command again.

Note that it’s possible to add an `export` line like the one above to your `~/.bash_profile` file so you don’t have to run it yourself when you open a new terminal.

Configure AWS CLI

Next you need to configure AWS CLI.

Create a `.aws` directory in your home directory (which is called `~`) like this:

```
mkdir ~/.aws
```

We will be creating two plain text files in the `.aws` directory and it is important that these files do not end in “.txt” or any other extension. After creating the files, you can verify their names with the following command:

```
ls ~/.aws
```

Create a plain text file at `~/.aws/config` with the following content:

<code>[default]</code>
<code>region = us-east-1</code>

Please note that at this time the region must be set to “us-east-1” but in the future we could improve our scripts to support other regions.

Create a plain text file at `~/.aws/credentials` with the following content:

```
[default]
aws_access_key_id = XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
aws_secret_access_key = XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
```

Then update the file and replace the values for “aws_access_key_id” and “aws_secret_access_key” with your actual credentials by following the instructions at <https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/security/wheres-my-secret-access-key/>

If you are having trouble configuring the files manually as described above, see <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/userguide/cli-chap-getting-started.html> which documents the `aws configure` command.

Configure Ansible File (Optional)

In order to configure Dataverse installation settings such as the password of the `dataverseAdmin` user, download <https://raw.githubusercontent.com/GlobalDataverseCommunityConsortium/dataverse-ansible/master/defaults/main.yml> and edit the file to your liking.

You can skip this step if you’re fine with the values in the “`main.yml`” file in the link above.

Download and Run the “Create Instance” Script

Once you have done the configuration above, you are ready to try running the “`ec2-create-instance.sh`” script to spin up a Dataverse installation in AWS.

Download `ec2-create-instance.sh` and put it somewhere reasonable. For the purpose of these instructions we’ll assume it’s in the “Downloads” directory in your home directory.

To run it with default values you just need the script, but you may also want a current copy of the ansible `group vars` file.

`ec2-create-instance` accepts a number of command-line switches, including:

- `-r`: GitHub Repository URL (defaults to <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse.git>)
- `-b`: branch to build (defaults to `develop`)
- `-p`: pemfile directory (defaults to `$HOME`)
- `-g`: Ansible GroupVars file (if you wish to override role defaults)
- `-h`: help (displays usage for each available option)

```
bash ~/Downloads/ec2-create-instance.sh -b develop -r https://github.com/scholarsportal/dataverse.git -g main.yml
```

You will need to wait for 15 minutes or so until the deployment is finished, longer if you’ve enabled sample data and/or the API test suite. Eventually, the output should tell you how to access the Dataverse installation in a web browser or via SSH. It will also provide instructions on how to delete the instance when you are finished with it. Please be aware that AWS charges per minute for a running instance. You may also delete your instance from <https://console.aws.amazon.com/console/home?region=us-east-1>.

Caveat Recipients

Please note that while the script should work well on new-ish branches, older branches that have different dependencies such as an older version of Solr may not produce a working Dataverse installation. Your mileage may vary.

Migrating Datafiles from Local Storage to S3

A number of pilot Dataverse installations start on local storage, then administrators are tasked with migrating datafiles into S3 or similar object stores. The files may be copied with a command-line utility such as `s3cmd<https://s3tools.org/s3cmd>`. You will want to retain the local file hierarchy, keeping the authority (for example: 10.5072) at the bucket “root.”

The below example queries may assist with updating dataset and datafile locations in the Dataverse installation’s PostgreSQL database. Depending on the initial version of the Dataverse Software and subsequent upgrade path, Datafile storage identifiers may or may not include a `file://` prefix, so you’ll want to catch both cases.

To Update Dataset Location to S3, Assuming a `file://` Prefix

```
UPDATE dvobject SET storageidentifier=REPLACE(storageidentifier,'file://','s3://')
WHERE dtype='Dataset';
```

To Update Datafile Location to your-s3-bucket, Assuming a `file://` Prefix

```
UPDATE dvobject
SET storageidentifier=REPLACE(storageidentifier,'file://','s3://your-s3-bucket:')
WHERE id IN (SELECT o.id FROM dvobject o, dataset s WHERE o.dtype = 'DataFile'
AND s.id = o.owner_id AND s.harvestingclient_id IS null
AND o.storageidentifier NOT LIKE 's3://%');
```

To Update Datafile Location to your-s3-bucket, Assuming no `file://` Prefix

```
UPDATE dvobject SET storageidentifier=CONCAT('s3://your-s3-bucket:', storageidentifier)
WHERE id IN (SELECT o.id FROM dvobject o, dataset s WHERE o.dtype = 'DataFile'
AND s.id = o.owner_id AND s.harvestingclient_id IS null
AND o.storageidentifier NOT LIKE '%://%');
```

Previous: [Coding Style](#) | Next: [Docker, Kubernetes, and Containers](#)

5.16 Docker, Kubernetes, and Containers

The Dataverse Community is exploring the use of Docker, Kubernetes, and other container-related technologies. The primary community-lead projects to watch are:

- <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-kubernetes>
- <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse-docker>

The *Testing* section mentions using Docker for integration tests.

See also the [Container Guide](#).

Previous: [Deployment](#) | Next: [Making Releases](#)

5.17 Making Releases

Contents:

- *Introduction*
- *Write Release Notes*
- *Create a GitHub Issue and Branch for the Release*
- *Bump Version Numbers*
- *Check in the Changes Above into a Release Branch and Merge It*
- *Merge “develop” into “master”*
- *Build the Guides for the Release*
- *Create a Draft Release on GitHub*
- *Run a Build to Create the War File*
- *Build Installer (dvinstall.zip)*
- *Make Artifacts Available for Download*
- *Publish the Release*
- *Update Guides Link*
- *Close Milestone on GitHub and Create a New One*
- *Add the Release to the Dataverse Roadmap*
- *Announce the Release on the Dataverse Blog*
- *Announce the Release on the Mailing List*
- *For Hotfixes, Merge Hotfix Branch into “develop” and Rename SQL Scripts*

5.17.1 Introduction

See [Version Control](#) for background on our branching strategy.

The steps below describe making both regular releases and hotfix releases.

5.17.2 Write Release Notes

Developers express the need for an addition to release notes by creating a file in `/doc/release-notes` containing the name of the issue they're working on. The name of the branch could be used for the filename with “.md” appended (release notes are written in Markdown) such as `5053-apis-custom-homepage.md`.

The task at or near release time is to collect these notes into a single doc.

- Create an issue in GitHub to track the work of creating release notes for the upcoming release.
- Create a branch, add a .md file for the release (ex. 5.10.1 Release Notes) in `/doc/release-notes` and write the release notes, making sure to pull content from the issue-specific release notes mentioned above.
- Delete the previously-created, issue-specific release notes as the content is added to the main release notes file.
- Take the release notes .md through the regular Code Review and QA process.

5.17.3 Create a GitHub Issue and Branch for the Release

Usually we branch from the “develop” branch to create the release branch. If we are creating a hotfix for a particular version (5.11, for example), we branch from the tag (e.g. v5.11).

Use the GitHub issue number and the release tag for the name of the branch. (e.g. `8583-update-version-to-v5.10.1`)

Note: the changes below must be the very last commits merged into the develop branch before it is merged into master and tagged for the release!

Make the following changes in the release branch.

5.17.4 Bump Version Numbers

Increment the version number to the milestone (e.g. 5.10.1) in the following two files:

- `modules/dataverse-parent/pom.xml` -> `<properties>` -> `<revision>` (e.g. `pom.xml` commit)
- `doc/sphinx-guides/source/conf.py` (two places, e.g. `conf.py` commit)

Add the version being released to the lists in the following file:

- `doc/sphinx-guides/source/versions.rst` (e.g. `versions.rst` commit)

5.17.5 Check in the Changes Above into a Release Branch and Merge It

For a regular release, make the changes above in the release branch you created, make a pull request, and merge it into the “develop” branch. Like usual, you can safely delete the branch after the merge is complete.

If you are making a hotfix release, make the pull request against the “master” branch. Do not delete the branch after merging because we will later merge it into the “develop” branch to pick up the hotfix. More on this later.

Either way, as usual, you should ensure that all tests are passing. Please note that you will need to bump the version in `jenkins.yml` in `dataverse-ansible` to get the tests to pass. Consider doing this before making the pull request. Alternatively, you can bump `jenkins.yml` after making the pull request and re-run the Jenkins job to make sure tests pass.

5.17.6 Merge “develop” into “master”

If this is a regular (non-hotfix) release, create a pull request to merge the “develop” branch into the “master” branch using this “compare” link: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/compare/master...develop>

Once important tests have passed (compile, unit tests, etc.), merge the pull request. Don’t worry about style tests failing such as for shell scripts.

If this is a hotfix release, skip this whole “merge develop to master” step (the “develop” branch is not involved until later).

5.17.7 Build the Guides for the Release

Go to <https://jenkins.dataverse.org/job/guides.dataverse.org/> and make the following adjustments to the config:

- Repository URL: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse.git>
- Branch Specifier (blank for ‘any’): */master
- VERSION (under “Build Steps”): 5.10.1 (for example)

Click “Save” then “Build Now”.

Make sure the guides directory appears in the expected location such as <https://guides.dataverse.org/en/5.10.1/>

As described below, we’ll soon point the “latest” symlink to that new directory.

5.17.8 Create a Draft Release on GitHub

Go to <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/releases/new> to start creating a draft release.

- Under “Choose a tag” you will be creating a new tag. Have it start with a “v” such as v5.10.1. Click “Create new tag on publish”.
- Under “Target” go to “Recent Commits” and select the merge commit from when you merged develop into master above. This commit will appear in `/api/info/version` from a running installation.
- Under “Release title” use the same name as the tag such as v5.10.1.
- In the description, copy and paste the content from the release notes .md file created in the “Write Release Notes” steps above.
- Click “Save draft” because we do not want to publish the release yet.

At this point you can send around the draft release for any final feedback. Links to the guides for this release should be working now, since you build them above.

Make corrections to the draft, if necessary. It will be out of sync with the .md file, but that's ok ([#7988](#) is tracking this).

5.17.9 Run a Build to Create the War File

ssh into the dataverse-internal server and undeploy the current war file.

Go to https://jenkins.dataverse.org/job/IQSS_Dataverse_Internal/ and make the following adjustments to the config:

- Repository URL: <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse.git>
- Branch Specifier (blank for ‘any’): */master
- Execute shell: Update version in filenames to dataverse-5.10.1.war (for example)

Click “Save” then “Build Now”.

The build number will appear in /api/info/version (along with the commit mentioned above) from a running installation (e.g. {"version": "5.10.1", "build": "907-b844672").

Note that the build number comes from script in an early build step...

```
COMMIT_SHA1=`echo $GIT_COMMIT | cut -c-7`  
echo "build_number=${BUILD_NUMBER}-${COMMIT_SHA1}" > $WORKSPACE/src/main/java/  
↳BuildNumber.properties
```

... but we can explore alternative methods of specifying the build number, as described in [Automation of Custom Build Number on Webpage](#).

5.17.10 Build Installer (dvinstall.zip)

ssh into the dataverse-internal server and do the following:

- In a git checkout of the dataverse source switch to the master branch and pull the latest.
- Copy the war file from the previous step to the target directory in the root of the repo (create it, if necessary).
- cd scripts/installer
- make

A zip file called dvinstall.zip should be produced.

5.17.11 Make Artifacts Available for Download

Upload the following artifacts to the draft release you created:

- the war file (e.g. dataverse-5.10.1.war, from above)
- the installer (dvinstall.zip, from above)
- other files as needed:
 - updated Solr schema
 - metadata block tsv files
 - config files

5.17.12 Publish the Release

Click the “Publish release” button.

5.17.13 Update Guides Link

“latest” at <https://guides.dataverse.org/en/latest/> is a symlink to the directory with the latest release. That directory (e.g. 5.10.1) was put into place by the Jenkins “guides” job described above.

ssh into the guides server and update the symlink to point to the latest release.

5.17.14 Close Milestone on GitHub and Create a New One

You can find our milestones at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/milestones>

Now that we’ve published the release, close the milestone and create a new one.

Note that for milestones we use just the number without the “v” (e.g. “5.10.1”).

5.17.15 Add the Release to the Dataverse Roadmap

Add an entry to the list of releases at <https://www.iq.harvard.edu/roadmap-dataverse-project>

5.17.16 Announce the Release on the Dataverse Blog

Make a blog post at <https://dataverse.org/blog>

5.17.17 Announce the Release on the Mailing List

Post a message at <https://groups.google.com/g/dataverse-community>

5.17.18 For Hotfixes, Merge Hotfix Branch into “develop” and Rename SQL Scripts

Note: this only applies to hotfixes!

We’ve merged the hotfix into the “master” branch but now we need the fixes (and version bump) in the “develop” branch. Make a new branch off the hotfix branch and create a pull request against develop. Merge conflicts are possible and this pull request should go through review and QA like normal. Afterwards it’s fine to delete this branch and the hotfix branch that was merged into master.

Because of the hotfix version, any SQL scripts in “develop” should be renamed (from “5.11.0” to “5.11.1” for example). To read more about our naming conventions for SQL scripts, see [SQL Upgrade Scripts](#).

Please note that version bumps and SQL script renaming both require all open pull requests to be updated with the latest from the “develop” branch so you might want to add any SQL script renaming to the hotfix branch before you put it through QA to be merged with develop. This way, open pull requests only need to be updated once.

Previous: [Docker, Kubernetes, and Containers](#) | Next: [Tools](#)

5.18 Tools

These are handy tools for your *Development Environment*.

Contents:

- *Netbeans Connector Chrome Extension*
- *pgAdmin*
- *Maven*
- *Vagrant*
- *PlantUML*
- *Eclipse Memory Analyzer Tool (MAT)*
- *PageKite*
- *MSV*
- *FontCustom*
- *SonarQube*
- *Infer*
- *lsof*
- *jmap and jstat*

5.18.1 Netbeans Connector Chrome Extension

The Netbeans Connector extension for Chrome allows you to see changes you've made to HTML pages the moment you save the file without having to refresh your browser. See also <http://wiki.netbeans.org/ChromeExtensionInstallation>

Unfortunately, while the Netbeans Connector Chrome Extension used to "just work", these days a workaround described at <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=J6lOQS2rWK0&t=130> seems to be necessary. For now, under "Run" (under project properties), choose "Chrome" as the browser rather than "Chrome with NetBeans Connector". After you run the project, click the Netbeans logo in Chrome and then "Debug in NetBeans". For more information, please see the "workaround for Netbeans Connector Chrome Extension" post at <https://groups.google.com/d/msg/dataverse-dev/agJZilD110Q/cMBkt5KDBQAJ>

5.18.2 pgAdmin

You probably installed pgAdmin when following the steps in the *Development Environment* section but if not, you can download it from <https://www.pgadmin.org>

5.18.3 Maven

With Maven installed you can run `mvn package` and `mvn test` from the command line. It can be downloaded from <https://maven.apache.org>

5.18.4 Vagrant

Vagrant allows you to spin up a virtual machine running the Dataverse Software on your development workstation. You'll need to install Vagrant from <https://www.vagrantup.com> and VirtualBox from <https://www.virtualbox.org>.

We assume you have already cloned the repo from <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse> as explained in the *Development Environment* section.

From the root of the git repo (where the `Vagrantfile` is), run `vagrant up` and eventually you should be able to reach a Dataverse installation at <http://localhost:8888> (the `forwarded_port` indicated in the `Vagrantfile`).

Please note that running `vagrant up` for the first time should run the `downloads/download.sh` script for you to download required software such as an app server, Solr, etc. However, these dependencies change over time so it's a place to look if `vagrant up` was working but later fails.

On Windows if you see an error like `/usr/bin/perl^M: bad interpreter` you might need to run `dos2unix` on the installation scripts.

5.18.5 PlantUML

PlantUML is used to create diagrams in the guides and other places. Download it from <http://plantuml.com> and check out an example script at <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/blob/v4.6.1/doc/Architecture/components.sh>. Note that for this script to work, you'll need the `dot` program, which can be installed on Mac with `brew install graphviz`.

5.18.6 Eclipse Memory Analyzer Tool (MAT)

The Memory Analyzer Tool (MAT) from Eclipse can help you analyze heap dumps, showing you “leak suspects” such as seen at <https://github.com/payara/Payara/issues/350#issuecomment-115262625>

It can be downloaded from <http://www.eclipse.org/mat>

If the heap dump provided to you was created with `gcore` (such as with `gcore -o /tmp/app.core $app_pid`) rather than `jmap`, you will need to convert the file before you can open it in MAT. Using `app.core.13849` as example of the original 33 GB file, here is how you could convert it into a 26 GB `app.core.13849.hprof` file. Please note that this operation took almost 90 minutes:

```
/usr/java7/bin/jmap -dump:format=b,file=app.core.13849.hprof /usr/java7/bin/java app.core.13849
```

A file of this size may not “just work” in MAT. When you attempt to open it you may see something like “An internal error occurred during: “Parsing heap dump from ‘/tmp/heapdumps/app.core.13849.hprof’”. Java heap space”. If so, you will need to increase the memory allocated to MAT. On Mac OS X, this can be done by editing `MemoryAnalyzer.app/Contents/MacOS/MemoryAnalyzer.ini` and increasing the value “`-Xmx1024m`” until it’s high enough to open the file. See also http://wiki.eclipse.org/index.php/MemoryAnalyzer/FAQ#Out_of_Memory_Error_while_Running_the_Memory_Analyzer

5.18.7 PageKite

PageKite is a fantastic service that can be used to share your local development environment over the Internet on a public IP address.

With PageKite running on your laptop, the world can access a URL such as <http://pdurbin.pagekite.me> to see what you see at <http://localhost:8080>

Sign up at <https://pagekite.net> and follow the installation instructions or simply download <https://pagekite.net/pk/pagekite.py>

The first time you run `./pagekite.py` a file at `~/.pagekite.rc` will be created. You can edit this file to configure PageKite to serve up port 8080 (the default app server HTTP port) or the port of your choosing.

According to <https://pagekite.net/support/free-for-foss/> PageKite (very generously!) offers free accounts to developers writing software the meets <http://opensource.org/docs/definition.php> such as the Dataverse Project.

5.18.8 MSV

MSV (Multi Schema Validator) can be used from the command line to validate an XML document against a schema. Download the latest version from <https://java.net/downloads/msv/releases/> (msv.20090415.zip as of this writing), extract it, and run it like this:

```
$ java -jar /tmp/msv-20090415/msv.jar Version2-0.xsd ddi.xml
start parsing a grammar.
validating ddi.xml
the document is valid.
```

5.18.9 FontCustom

The custom file type icons were created with the help of *FontCustom* <<https://github.com/FontCustom/fontcustom>>. Their README provides installation instructions as well as directions for producing your own vector-based icon font.

A vector-based SVG file `icon-template.svg` to start with, is located at `/_static/icon-template.svg`

5.18.10 SonarQube

SonarQube is a static analysis tool that can be used to identify possible problems in the codebase, or with new code. It may report false positives or false negatives, but can help identify potential problems before they are reported in production or to identify potential causes of problems reported in production.

Download SonarQube from <https://www.sonarqube.org> and start look in the `bin` directory for a `sonar.sh` script for your architecture. Once the tool is running on <http://localhost:9000> you can use it as the URL in this example script to run sonar:

```
#!/bin/sh

mvn sonar:sonar \
-Dsonar.host.url=${your_sonar_url} \
-Dsonar.login=${your_sonar_token_for_project} \
-Dsonar.test.exclusions='src/test/**,src/main/webapp/resources/**' \
-Dsonar.issuesReport.html.enable=true \
-Dsonar.issuesReport.html.location='sonar-issues-report.html' \
-Dsonar.jacoco.reportPath=target/jacoco.exec
```

Once the analysis is complete, you should be able to access <http://localhost:9000/dashboard?id=edu.harvard.iq%3Adata> to see the report. To learn about resource leaks, for example, click on “Bugs”, the “Tag”, then “leak” or “Rule”, then “Resources should be closed”.

5.18.11 Infer

Infer is another static analysis tool that can be downloaded from <https://github.com/facebook/infer>

Example command to run infer:

```
$ infer -- mvn package
```

Look for “RESOURCE_LEAK”, for example.

5.18.12 lsof

If file descriptors are not closed, eventually the open but unused resources can cause problems with system (app servers in particular) stability. Static analysis and heap dumps are not always sufficient to identify the sources of these problems. For a quick sanity check, it can be helpful to check that the number of file descriptors does not increase after a request has finished processing.

For example...

```
$ lsof | grep M6EI0N | wc -l
0
$ curl -X GET "http://localhost:8083/dataset.xhtml?persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/M6EI0N"
-> /dev/null
$ lsof | grep M6EI0N | wc -l
500
```

would be consistent with a file descriptor leak on the dataset page.

5.18.13 jmap and jstat

jmap and jstat are parts of the standard JDK distribution. jmap allows you to look at the contents of the java heap. It can be used to create a heap dump, that you can then feed to another tool, such as [Memory Analyzer Tool](#) (see above). It can also be used as a useful tool of its own, for example, to list all the classes currently instantiated in memory:

```
$ jmap -histo <app process id>
```

will output a list of all classes, sorted by the number of instances of each individual class, with the size in bytes. This can be very useful when looking for memory leaks in the application. Another useful tool is jstat, that can be used in combination with jmap to monitor the effectiveness of garbage collection in reclaiming allocated memory.

In the example script below we stress running Dataverse Software application with GET requests to a specific page in a Dataverse installation, use jmap to see how many Dataverse collection, Dataset and DataFile class object get allocated, then run jstat to see how the numbers are affected by both “Young Generation” and “Full” garbage collection runs (YGC and FGC respectively):

(This is script is provided **as an example only!** You will have to experiment and expand it to suit any specific needs and any specific problem you may be trying to diagnose, and this is just to give an idea of how to go about it)

```

#!/bin/sh

# the script takes the numeric id of the app server process as the command line argument:
id=$1

while :
do
    # Access the Dataverse collection xxx 10 times in a row:
    for ((i = 0; i < 10; i++))
    do
        # hide the output, standard and stderr:
        curl http://localhost:8080/dataverse/xxx 2>/dev/null > /dev/null
    done

    sleep 1

    # run jmap and save the output in a temp file:

    jmap -histo $id > /tmp/jmap.histo.out

    # grep the output for Dataverse Collection, Dataset and DataFile classes:
    grep '\.Dataverse$' /tmp/jmap.histo.out
    grep '\.Dataset$' /tmp/jmap.histo.out
    grep '\.DataFile$' /tmp/jmap.histo.out
    # (or grep for whatever else you may be interested in)

    # print the last line of the jmap output (the totals):
    tail -1 /tmp/jmap.histo.out

    # run jstat to check on GC:
    jstat -gcutil ${id} 1000 1 2>/dev/null

    # add a time stamp and a new line:

    date
    echo

done

```

The script above will run until you stop it, and will output something like:

439:	141	28200	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Dataverse						
472:	160	24320	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Dataset						
674:	60	9600	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.DataFile						
S0	S1	E	O	P	YGC	YGCT	FGC	FGCT	GCT
0.00	100.00	35.32	20.15	?	7	2.145	0	0.000	2.145
Total	108808814	5909776392							
Wed Aug 14 23:13:42 EDT 2019									
385:	181	36200	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Dataverse						
338:	320	48640	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Dataset						
524:	120	19200	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.DataFile						
S0	S1	E	O	P	YGC	YGCT	FGC	FGCT	GCT

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

0.00	100.00	31.69	45.11	?	9	3.693	0	0.000	3.693
Total	167998691		9080163904						
Wed Aug 14 23:14:59 EDT 2019									
367:	201		40200	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Dataverse					
272:	480		72960	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Dataset					
442:	180		28800	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.DataFile					
S0	S1	E	O	P	YGC	YGCT	FGC	FGCT	GCT
0.00	100.00	28.05	69.94	?	11	5.001	0	0.000	5.001
Total	226826706		12230221352						
Wed Aug 14 23:16:16 EDT 2019									
... etc.									

How to analyze the output, what to look for:

First, look at the numbers in the jmap output. In the example above, you can immediately see, after the first three iterations, that every 10 Dataverse installation page loads results in the increase of the number of Dataset classes by 160. I.e., each page load leaves 16 of these on the heap. We can also see that each of the 10 page load cycles increased the heap by roughly 3GB; that each cycle resulted in a couple of YG (young generation) garbage collections, and in the old generation allocation being almost 70% full. These numbers in the example are clearly quite high and are an indication of some problematic memory allocation by the Dataverse installation page - if this is the result of something you have added to the page, you probably would want to investigate and fix it. However, overly generous memory use **is not the same as a leak** necessarily. What you want to see now is how much of this allocation can be reclaimed by "Full GC". If all of it gets freed by FGC, it is not the end of the world (even though you do not want your system to spend too much time running FGC; it costs CPU cycles, and actually freezes the application while it's in progress!). It is however a **really** serious problem, if you determine that a growing portion of the old. gen. memory ("0" in the jmap output) is not getting freed, even by FGC. This *is* a real leak now, i.e. something is leaving behind some objects that are still referenced and thus off limits to garbage collector. So look for the lines where the FGC counter is incremented. For example, the first FGC in the example output above:

271:	487		97400	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Dataverse					
216:	3920		150784	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Dataset					
337:	372		59520	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.DataFile					
Total	277937182		15052367360						
S0	S1	E	O	P	YGC	YGCT	FGC	FGCT	GCT
0.00	100.00	77.66	88.15	?	17	8.734	0	0.000	8.734
Wed Aug 14 23:20:05 EDT 2019									
265:	551		110200	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Dataverse					
202:	4080		182400	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.Dataset					
310:	450		72000	edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.DataFile					
Total	142023031		8274454456						
S0	S1	E	O	P	YGC	YGCT	FGC	FGCT	GCT
0.00	100.00	71.95	20.12	?	22	25.034	1	4.455	29.489
Wed Aug 14 23:21:40 EDT 2019									

We can see that the first FGC resulted in reducing the "0" by almost 7GB, from 15GB down to 8GB (from 88% to 20% full). The number of Dataset classes has not budged at all - it has grown by the same 160 objects as before (very suspicious!). To complicate matters, FGC does not **guarantee** to free everything that can be freed - it will balance how much the system needs memory vs. how much it is willing to spend in terms of CPU cycles performing GC (remember, the application freezes while FGC is running!). So you should not assume that the "20% full" number above means that you have 20% of your stack already wasted and unrecoverable. Instead, look for the next **minimum** value of "0"; then

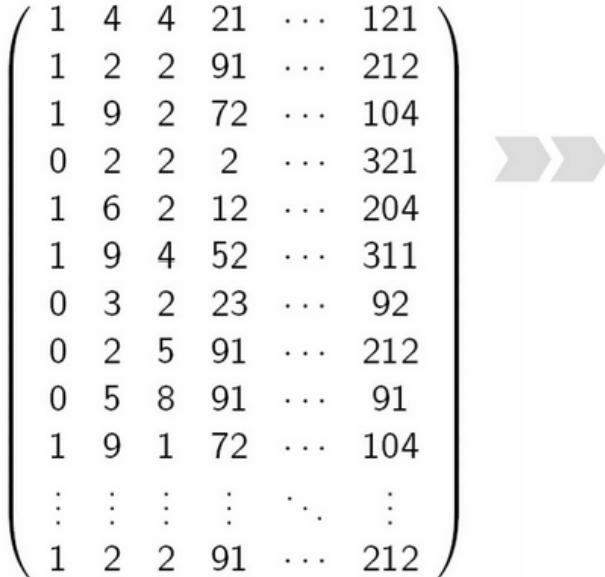
for the next, etc. Now compare these consecutive miniums. With the above test (this is an output of a real experiment, a particularly memory-hungry feature added to the Dataverse installation page), the miniums sequence (of old. gen. usage, in %) was looking as follows:

```
2.19
2.53
3.00
3.13
3.95
4.03
4.21
4.40
4.64
5.06
5.17
etc. ...
```

It is clearly growing - so now we can conclude that indeed something there is using memory in a way that's not recoverable, and this is a clear problem.

Previous: [Making Releases](#) | Next: [Universal Numerical Fingerprint \(UNF\)](#)

5.19 Universal Numerical Fingerprint (UNF)



- Apply a **cryptographic algorithm**
- Solely based on semantic contents of the digital object:
 - **data changes** result in **new UNF**
 - **format or location changes** retain **original UNF**
- Final alphanumeric string:
 - **uniquely** summarizes the contents,
 - but does **not convey its information**



ZNQRI14053UZq389x0Bffg?==

Fig. 1: Fig.1 UNF: used to uniquely identify and verify data.

Universal Numerical Fingerprint (UNF) is a unique signature of the **semantic content** of a digital object. It is **not** simply a checksum of a binary data file. Instead, the UNF algorithm approximates and normalizes the data stored within. A cryptographic hash of that normalized (or canonicalized) representation is then computed. The signature is thus independent of the storage format. E.g., the same data object stored in, say, SPSS and Stata, will have the same UNF.

Early versions of the Dataverse Software were using the first released implementation of the UNF algorithm (v.3, implemented in R). Starting with Dataverse Software 2.0 and throughout the 3.* lifecycle, UNF v.5 (implemented in Java) was used. Dataverse Software 4.0 uses the latest release, UNF v.6. Two parallel implementation, in R and Java, will be available, for cross-validation.

Learn more: Micah Altman and Gary King. 2007. “A Proposed Standard for the Scholarly Citation of Quantitative Data.” D-Lib Magazine, 13. Publisher’s Version Copy at <http://j.mp/2ovSzot>

Contents:

5.19.1 UNF Version 3

Version 3 of the UNF algorithm was used by the Dataverse Network software prior to version 2.0, and was implemented in R code. This algorithm was used on digital objects containing vectors of numbers, vectors of character strings, data sets comprising such vectors, and studies comprising one or more such data sets.

The UNF V3 algorithm applied to the content of a data set or study is as follows:

1. Round each element in a numeric vector to k significant digits using the IEEE 754 round towards zero rounding mode. The default value of k is seven, the maximum expressible in single-precision floating point calculations. UNF calculation for vectors of character strings is identical, except that you truncate to k characters and the default value of k is 128.
2. Convert each vector element to a character string in exponential notation, omitting noninformational zeros. If an element is missing, represent it as a string of three null characters. If an element is an IEEE 754, nonfinite, floating-point special value, represent it as the signed, lowercase, IEEE minimal printable equivalent (that is, +inf, -inf, or +nan).

Each character string comprises the following:

- A sign character.
- A single leading digit.
- A decimal point.
- Up to k-1 digits following the decimal, consisting of the remaining k-1 digits of the number, omitting trailing zeros.
- A lowercase letter “e.”
- A sign character.
- The digits of the exponent, omitting trailing zeros.

For example, the number pi at five digits is represented as -3.1415e+, and the number 300 is represented as the string +3.e+2.

1. Terminate character strings representing nonmissing values with a POSIX end-of-line character.
2. Encode each character string with [Unicode bit encoding](#). Versions 3 through 4 use UTF-32BE; Version 4.1 uses UTF-8.
3. Combine the vector of character strings into a single sequence, with each character string separated by a POSIX end-of-line character and a null byte.

4. Compute a hash on the resulting sequence using the standard MD5 hashing algorithm for Version 3 and using [SHA256](#) for Version 4. The resulting hash is [base64](#) encoded to support readability.
5. Calculate the UNF for each lower-level data object, using a consistent UNF version and level of precision across the individual UNFs being combined.
6. Sort the base64 representation of UNFs in POSIX locale sort order.
7. Apply the UNF algorithm to the resulting vector of character strings using k at least as large as the length of the underlying character string.
8. Combine UNFs from multiple variables to form a single UNF for an entire data frame, and then combine UNFs for a set of data frames to form a single UNF that represents an entire research study.

Learn more: Software for computing UNFs is available in an R Module, which includes a Windows standalone tool and code for Stata and SAS languages. Also see the following for more details: Micah Altman and Gary King. 2007. "A Proposed Standard for the Scholarly Citation of Quantitative Data," D-Lib Magazine, Vol. 13, No. 3/4 (March). (Abstract: [HTML](#) | Article: [PDF](#))

5.19.2 UNF Version 5

Important Update:

UNF Version 5 has been in use by the Dataverse Project since 2009. It was built into every version of The Dataverse Software, starting with 2.0 and up to 3.6.2. However, some problems were recently found in that implementation. Namely, in certain cases data normalization is not implemented fully to the spec. UNF signatures it generates are still reasonably strong statistically; however, this means that at least some of our signatures are not independently verifiable. I.e., if somebody fully implements their own version of UNF calculator, for certain datasets it would calculate signatures different from those generated by the DVN. Unless of course they implement it with the exact same bugs as ours.

To address this, the Project is about to release UNF Version 6. The release date is still being discussed. It may coincide with the release of Dataverse Software 4.0. Alternatively, the production release of DVN 3.6.3 may get upgraded to use UNF v6 prior to that. This will be announced shortly. In the process, we are solving another problem with UNF v5 - this time we've made an effort to offer very implementer-friendly documentation that describes the algorithm fully and unambiguously. So if you are interested in implementing your own version of a UNF calculator, (something we would like to encourage!) please proceed directly to the Version 6 documentation.

Going forward, we are going to offer a preserved version of the Version 5 library and, possibly, an online UNF v5 calculator, for the purposes of validating vectors and data sets for which published Version 5 UNFs exist.

5.19.3 UNF Version 6

(this document is a draft!)

The document is primarily intended for those who are interested in implementing their own UNF Version 6 calculator. We would like to encourage multiple parallel implementations, since that would be a great (the only, really) way to cross-validate UNF signatures calculated for specific sets of data.

Algorithm Description

UNF v5, on which v6 is based, was originally described in Dr. Micah Altman's paper "A Fingerprint Method for Verification of Scientific Data", Springer Verlag, 2008. The reader is encouraged to consult it for the explanation of the theory behind UNF. However, various changes and clarifications concerning the specifics of normalization have been made to the algorithm since the publication. These crucial details were only documented in the author's unpublished edits of the article and in private correspondence. With this document, a serious effort has been made to produce a complete step-by-step description of the entire process. It should be fully sufficient for the purposes of implementing the algorithm.

Contents:

- *I. UNF of a Data Vector*
- *II. Combining multiple UNFs to create UNFs of higher-level objects.*
- *Footnotes:*

I. UNF of a Data Vector

For each individual vector in a data frame, calculate its UNF signature as follows:

Ia. Normalize each vector element as follows:

1. For a vector of numeric elements: Round each vector element to N significant digits using the IEEE 754 “round towards nearest, ties to even” rounding mode. The default value of N is 7.

(See an Important [Note](#) on the use of *default and optional* values and methods!)

Convert each vector element into a character string in exponential notation, as follows:

A sign character.

A single leading non-zero digit.

A decimal point.

Up to N-1 remaining digits following the decimal, no trailing zeros.

A lowercase letter “e”.

A sign character.

The digits of the exponent, omitting trailing zeros.

Special cases:

Zero representation (an exception to the “leading non-zero digit” rule, above):

+0.e+ for positive zero.

-0.e+ for negative zero.

(see the [Note](#) below on *negative zero*)

Infinity and NaN (“Not a Number”) values:

If an element is an IEEE 754, non-finite, special floating-point value, represent it as the signed, lowercase, IEEE minimal printable equivalent, that is, +inf, -inf, or +nan. No attempt is made to differentiate between various types of NaNs allowed under IEEE 754.

Examples:

The number 1 is normalized as +1.e+

The number pi at 5 digits is normalized as +3.1415e+

The number -300 is normalized as -3.e+2

The number 0.00073 is normalized as +7.3e-4

Positive infinity is normalized as `+inf`

The number `1.23456789`, normalized with the default rounding to 7 digits of precision, is normalized as `+1.234568e+`

An “official” list of pre-calculated sample UNFs is supplied with the source of the Java implementation of UNF v6; see the [Note](#) at the end of the document.

2. For a vector of character strings:

Encode each character string with Unicode bit encoding. In UNF Version 6 UTF-8 is used. Truncate each string to X characters; the default value of X is 128. No further normalization is performed.

3. Vectors of Boolean values

Should be treated as numeric vectors of 0 s and 1 s.

4. Bit fields.

Normalize bit fields by converting to big-endian form, truncating all leading empty bits, aligning to a byte boundary by padding with leading zero bits, and base64 encoding to form a character string representation.

5. Normalize dates, times and intervals as follows:

5a. Dates.

Convert calendar dates to a character string of the form `YYYY-MM-DD`, zero padded. Partial dates in the form `YYYY` or `YYYY-MM` are permitted

5b. Time.

Time representation is based on an ISO 8601 format `hh:mm:ss.fffff`. `hh`, `mm` and `ss` are 2 digit, zero-padded numbers. `fffff` represents fractions of a second, it must contain no trailing (non-significant) zeroes, and must be omitted altogether the value is zero. No other fractional representations, such as fractional minutes or hours, are permitted. If the time zone of the observation is known, convert the time value to the UTC time zone and append a “Z” to the time representation. (In other words, no time zones other than UTC are allowed in the final normalized representation).

(see the [Note](#) at the end of this document for a discussion on *potential issues when calculating UNFs of time values*).

5c. Combined Date and Time values.

Format elements that comprise a combined date and time by concatenating the (full) date representation, a single letter “T”, and the time representation. Partial date representations are **prohibited** in combined date and time values.

5d. Intervals.

Represent intervals by using two date-time values, each formatted as defined previously, and separated by a slash (“/”).

Durations, that were mentioned in the old UNF v5 document are NOT in fact implemented and have been dropped from the spec.

Examples:

2:29 pm on Jun 10, 2012 is normalized as “2012-06-10T14:29:00”.

Fri Aug 22 12:51:05 EDT 2014 is normalized as “2014-08-22T16:51:05Z”
(The UTC offset of Eastern Daylight Time is -4:00).

6. Missing values Missing values, of all of the above types, are encoded as 3 null bytes: \000\000\000.

Ib. Calculate the UNF of the vector as follows:

Terminate each character string representing a NON-MISSING value with a POSIX end-of-line character and a null byte (\000). Do not terminate missing value representations (3 null bytes \000\000\000). Concatenate all the individual character strings, and compute the SHA256 hash of the combined string. Truncate the resulting hash to 128 bits (128 being the default, with other values possible - see the note at the end of the document). Encode the resulting string in base64, for readability. Prepend the encoded hash string with the signature header UNF:6: (with 6 indicating the current version).

Example:

Vector (numeric): {1.23456789, <MISSING VALUE>, 0}
Normalized elements (N = 7, default): “+1.234568e+”, “\000\000\000”, “+0.e+”
Combined string: “+1.234568e+\n\000\000\000+0.e+\n\000”
SHA256 hash. truncated to the default 128 bits: Do5dfAo00Ft4FSj0JcByEw==
Printable UNF: UNF:6:Do5dfAo00Ft4FSj0JcByEw==

II. Combining multiple UNFs to create UNFs of higher-level objects.

IIa. Combine the UNFs of multiple variables to form the UNF for an entire data frame as follows:

UNF of a data frame (datafile) with 1 variable:

The UNF of the data frame is the same as the UNF of the variable.

UNF of a data frame with the number of variables > 1:

Sort the printable UTF8 representations of the individual UNFs in the POSIX locale sort order.

Apply the UNF algorithm to the resulting vector of character strings.

Do note the **sorting** part, above, it is important! In a vector of observations, the order is important; changing the order of observations changes the UNF. A data frame, however, is considered an unordered set of individual vectors. I.e., re-arranging the order in which data variable columns occur in an R or Stata file should not affect the UNF. Hence the UNFs of individual variables are sorted, before the combined UNF of the data frame is calculated.

IIb. Similarly, combine the UNFs for a set of data frames to form a single UNF that represents an entire research study (“dataset”).

Again, the UNF of a study (dataset) with a single file = the UNF of the file; for more than one file, calculate the study UNF as described above.

Using a consistent UNF version and level of precision across an entire dataset is recommended when calculating the UNFs of individual data objects.

Footnotes:

Note: On default and non-default parameter values: Here and throughout the rest of this document, phrases like “The default value of N is 7” suggest that it is possible to use non-default values, such as a different number of digits of precision, in this case. This has been a source of some confusion in the past. UNF relies on data normalization to produce “data fingerprints” that are meaningful and descriptive. So how do you generate reproducible and verifiable signatures if any flexibility is allowed in the normalization algorithm? The answer, as specified in the original UNF paper: any non-default parameters used are embedded in the header portion of the UNF!

For example, to specify a non-default precision the parameter it is specified using the parameter **N**, formatted as follows:
Nnnn - where **nnn** is the number of precision digits, different from the default 7.

Example:

The UNF of a floating point (Double) vector with a single element of 1.23456789, calculated with the default 7 digits of precision, is **UNF:6:vcKELUSS4s4k1snF40TB9A==**. If we want to calculate the signature with **N = 9**, the resulting printable UNF is **UNF:6:N9:IKw+14ywdwsJeDze8dp1JA==**. With the parameter value embedded in the signature, it can be recalculated and verified unambiguously.

Other optional parameters supported:

(multiple parameters are added comma-separated, in any order)

X### - where **###** is the number of bytes for truncation of character strings;
 128 is the default.

H### - where **###** is the number of bits to which the SHA256 hash should be truncated.
 Allowed values are {128, 192, 196, 256} with 128 being the default.

R1 - **truncate** numeric values to N digits, **instead of rounding**, as previously described.

Dr. Micah Altman’s classic UNF v5 paper mentions another optional parameter **T###**, for specifying rounding of date and time values (implemented as stripping the values of entire components - fractional seconds, seconds, minutes, hours... etc., progressively) - but it doesn’t specify its syntax. It is left as an exercise for a curious reader to contact the author and work out the details, if so desired. (Not implemented in UNF Version 6 by the Dataverse Project).

Note: we do not recommend truncating character strings at fewer bytes than the default 128 (the X parameter). At the very least this number **must** be high enough so that the printable UNFs of individual variables or files are not truncated, when calculating combined UNFs of files or datasets, respectively.

It should also be noted that the Dataverse Software never calculates UNFs with any non-default parameters. And we are not aware of anyone else actually doing so. If you are considering creating your own implementation of the UNF, it may be worth trying to create a simplified, defaults-only version first. Such an implementation would be sufficient to independently verify Dataverse Software-produced UNFs, among other things.

Note: Negative Zero

IEEE 754 zero is signed. I.e., there are 2 zeros, positive and negative. As implemented in most programming languages, floating point types can have negative zero values. It is the responsibility of the implementer, to properly identify the sign of a floating point zero value. Which can be a bit tricky; for example, in Java programming language, when performing arithmetic comparison on values of the primitive type **double**, the following evaluates to TRUE:

0.0d == -0.0d

However, Java also provides a wrapper class `Double`, with comparison methods that recognize `-0.0` and `0.0` as different values, and `0.0` to be greater than `-0.0`. So all of the following expressions evaluate to FALSE:

```
new Double(0.0d).equals(new Double(-0.0d))
Double.compare(-0.0d, 0.0d) >= 0
new Double(-0.0d).compareTo(new Double(0.0d)) >= 0
```

Note: UNFs of time values in real-life statistical packages

The following is not by itself an implementation concern. But it is something you may need to consider when calculating UNFs of time values from real-world data.

The fact that the same time value with and without the time zone specified produces different UNFs presents an interesting issue when converting data between different formats. For example, in STATA none of the available time types support time zones. In R, on the other hand, ALL time values are stored with a time zone. While it is possible to create an R time value from a character representation with no time zone - for example:

```
timevar<-as.POSIXct("03/19/2013 18:20:00", format = "%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%OS");
```

it still results in R assuming the time is in the **current** time zone, and storing the UTC equivalent of that time. In fact R always stores its time values in UTC; specific time zones can be defined, as attributes, in which case the values will be adjusted accordingly for display. Otherwise the display representation will be readjusted each time the vector is viewed, according to the time zone **current to the viewer**. Meaning that the human readable representation of the same stored time value will be different when viewed on systems in different time zones. With that in mind, it appears that the only way to calculate a meaningful UNF of a time value from an R data frame is to use the stored UTC time - resulting in the "Z" in the normalized string. And that further means that it is impossible to convert a data frame with time values from STATA to R, or the other way around, and have the same UNF preserved.

We do not consider this a problem with the algorithm. These differences between the two approaches to handling time values, in R and STATA, should in fact be considered as **significant**. Enough so to conclude that the format conversion actually changes the data **semantically**. Which, in turn, justifies a new UNF.

If for whatever reason it is important to produce an R version of a STATA file while preserving the UNF, it can still be done. One way to achieve that would be to convert the original time vector to a String vector in R, in the format identical to that used in the UNF normalization algorithm, e.g., "yy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss". One would not be able to use this resulting R vector in any time-based calculations without extra type conversion. But the data frame would produce the same UNF.

More UNF Examples:

An “official” list of sample UNFs of various data types is provided with the source of the UNF v6 Java implementation.

Previous: [Tools](#) | Next: [Shibboleth, OAuth and OIDC](#)

5.20 Make Data Count

Support for Make Data Count is a feature of the Dataverse Software that is described in the [Make Data Count](#) section of the Admin Guide. In order for developers to work on the feature, they must install Counter Processor, a Python 3 application, as described below. Counter Processor can be found at <https://github.com/CDLUC3/counter-processor>

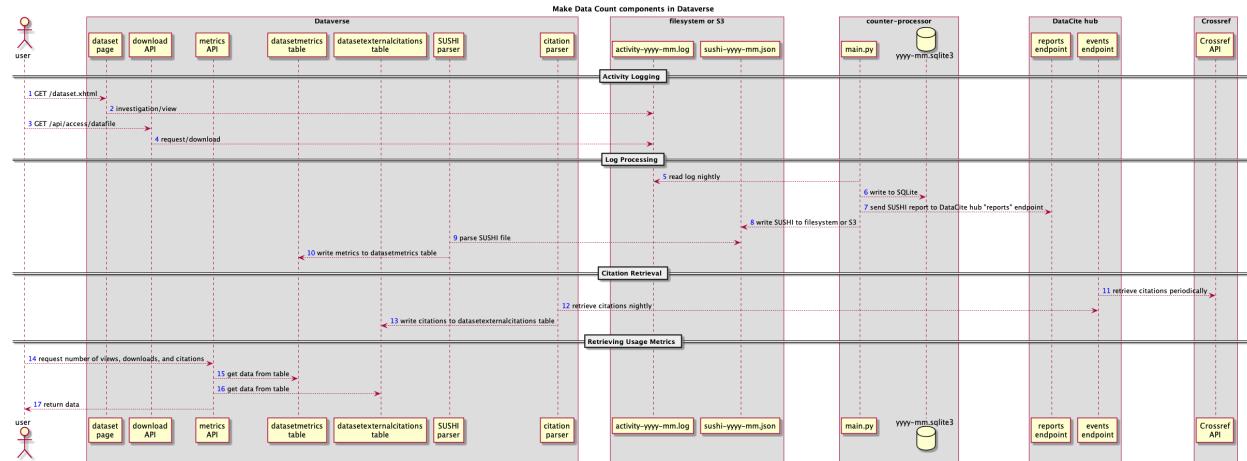
Contents:

- [Architecture](#)

- *Dev Environment Setup for Make Data Count*
 - *Generate Fake Metrics Only*
 - *Full Setup*
- *Testing Make Data Count and Your Dataverse Installation*
- *Resources*

5.20.1 Architecture

There are many components involved in the Dataverse Software's architecture for Make Data Count as shown in the diagram below.



5.20.2 Dev Environment Setup for Make Data Count

Generate Fake Metrics Only

The quickest way to put populate tables with some data is to run the `MakeDataCountApiIT` integration test. For more on running integration tests see the [Testing](#) section. This will populate views and downloads.

To insert a citation you could insert a row like below, changing “72” in the example below with the dataset id for your dataset.

```
INSERT INTO datasetexternalcitations (id, citedbyurl, dataset_id) VALUES (1, 'https://doi.org/10.1007/s12520-017-0578-2', 72);
```

Full Setup

The recommended way to work on the Make Data Count feature is to spin up an EC2 instance that has both the Dataverse Software and Counter Processor installed. Go to the [Deployment](#) page for details on how to spin up an EC2 instance and make sure that your Ansible file is configured to install Counter Processor before running the “create” script.

(Alternatively, you can try installing Counter Processor in Vagrant. Using the `setup-counter-processor.sh` located at `/scripts/vagrant/setup-counter-processor.sh` might help you get it installed.)

After you have spun to your EC2 instance, set `:MDCLogPath` so that the Dataverse installation creates a log for Counter Processor to operate on. For more on this database setting, see the [Configuration](#) section of the Installation Guide.

Next you need to have the Dataverse installation add some entries to the log that Counter Processor will operate on. To do this, click on some published datasets and download some files.

Next you should run Counter Processor to convert the log into a SUSHI report, which is in JSON format. Before running Counter Processor, you need to put a configuration file into place. As a starting point use `counter-processor-config.yaml` located at `/scripts/vagrant/counter-processor-config.yaml` and edit the file, paying particular attention to the following settings:

- `log_name_pattern` You might want something like `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/counter_(yyyy-mm-dd).log`
- `year_month` You should probably set this to the current month.
- `output_file` This needs to be a directory that the “dataverse” Unix user can read but that the “counter” user can write to. In dev, you can probably get away with “`/tmp`” as the directory.
- `platform` Out of the box from Counter Processor this is set to Dash but this should be changed to match the name of your Dataverse installation. Examples are “Harvard Dataverse Repository” for Harvard University or “LibraData” for the University of Virginia.
- `upload_to_hub` This should be “`False`” unless you are testing sending SUSHI reports to the DataCite hub.
- `simulate_date` You should probably set this to tomorrow.

Once you are done with your configuration, you can run Counter Processor like this:

```
sudo -i  
su - counter  
cd /usr/local/counter-processor-0.1.04  
CONFIG_FILE=counter-processor-config.yaml python39 main.py
```

(Please note that the Counter Processor README says you can also pass in values like `START_DATE`, `END_DATE` etc. at the command line if you find this to be more convenient.)

After `main.py` has finished, you should see output that a JSON file has been placed in the directory you specified in `output_file`. Next, pass this JSON file to curl like this, substituting the DOI of the dataset you’re testing with:

```
curl -X POST 'http://localhost:8080/api/admin/makeDataCount/:persistentId/  
addUsageMetricsFromSushiReport?reportOnDisk=/tmp/sushi_sample_logs.  
json&persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/BL2IBM'
```

(Note that in production the `persistentId` of a dataset is not passed. Instead the PIDs for the datasets are pulled out of the JSON file.)

Assuming the curl command above worked, you should be able to retrieve the views and downloads via API like this, substituting the metric you’re interested in (`viewsTotal`, `viewsUnique`, `downloadsTotal`, `downloadsUnique`) and the DOI of the dataset you’re testing with:

```
curl -X POST 'http://localhost:8080/api/datasets/:persistentId/makeDataCount/viewsTotal/  
2019-01&persistentId=doi:10.5072/FK2/BL2IBM'
```

If all this is working and you want to send data to the test instance of the Datacite hub, change `upload_to_hub` to “`True`” and contact support@datacite.org to get a JSON Web Token (JWT) to test with. Counter Processor should send the SUSHI reports for you but if you need to troubleshoot sending the reports manually, you can try the following curl command, substituting your JWT:

```
curl --header "Content-Type: application/json; Accept: application/json" -H  
"Authorization: Bearer $JSON_WEB_TOKEN" -X POST https://api.test.datacite.org/reports/  
-d @sushi_report.json
```

For how to put citations into your dev database and how to get them out again, see [Configuring Your Dataverse Installation for Make Data Count Citations](#) section in Make Data Count of the Admin Guide.

5.20.3 Testing Make Data Count and Your Dataverse Installation

A developer running Counter Processor alongside the Dataverse installation for development or testing purposes will notice that once the raw Dataverse installation logs have been processed, there is no straightforward way to re-test those same logs.

The first thing to fix is to clear two files from Counter Processor state folder, `statefile.json` and `counter_db_[yyyy-mm].sqlite3`

Second, if you are also sending your SUSHI report to Make Data Count, you will notice that re-running Counter Processor will not update the information logged on their servers. This is due to us clearing the state of Counter Processor, which in turn causes Counter Processor to send incorrectly structured requests to Make Data Count. The easiest way to resolve this issue is to DELETE the record Counter Processor has created on Make Data Count:

```
curl -H "Authorization: Bearer $JSON_WEB_TOKEN" -X DELETE https://$MDC_SERVER/reports/$REPORT_ID
```

To get the `REPORT_ID`, look at the logs generated in `/usr/local/counter-processor-0.1.04/tmp/datacite_response_body.txt`

To read more about the Make Data Count api, see <https://github.com/datacite/sashimi>

You can compare the MDC metrics display with the Dataverse installation's original by toggling the `:DisplayMDCMetrics` setting (true by default to display MDC metrics).

5.20.4 Resources

The original issue for adding Make Data Count support is <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/4821>

5.21 Shibboleth, OAuth and OIDC

Contents:

- [Shibboleth and OAuth](#)
- [OpenID Connect \(OIDC\)](#)

5.21.1 Shibboleth and OAuth

If you are working on anything related to users, please keep in mind that your changes will likely affect Shibboleth and OAuth users. For some background on user accounts in the Dataverse Software, see [Auth Modes: Local vs. Remote vs. Both](#) section of Configuration in the Installation Guide.

Rather than setting up Shibboleth on your laptop, developers are advised to add the Shibboleth auth provider (see “Add the Shibboleth Authentication Provider to Your Dataverse Installation” at [Shibboleth](#)) and add a value to their database to enable Shibboleth “dev mode” like this:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DebugShibAccountType -X PUT -d RANDOM
```

For a list of possible values, please “find usages” on the settings key above and look at the enum.

Now when you go to <http://localhost:8080/shib.xhtml> you should be prompted to create a Shibboleth account.

OAuth is much more straightforward to get working on your laptop than Shibboleth. GitHub is a good identity provider to test with because you can easily request a Client ID and Client Secret that works against localhost. Follow the instructions in the [OAuth Login Options](#) section of the installation Guide and use “<http://localhost:8080/oauth2/callback.xhtml>” as the callback URL.

In addition to setting up OAuth on your laptop for real per above, you can also use a dev/debug mode:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DebugOAuthAccountType -X PUT -d RANDOM_EMAIL2
```

For a list of possible values, please “find usages” on the settings key above and look at the enum.

Now when you go to <http://localhost:8080/oauth2/firstLogin.xhtml> you should be prompted to create an OAuth account.

5.21.2 OpenID Connect (OIDC)

If you are working on the OpenID Connect (OIDC) user authentication flow, you do not need to connect to a remote provider (as explained in [OpenID Connect Login Options](#)) to test this feature. Instead, you can use the available configuration that allows you to run a test Keycloak OIDC identity management service locally through a Docker container.

(Please note! The client secret (ss6gE8mODCDfgesQaSG3gwUwZqZt547E) is hard-coded in `oidc-realm.json` and `oidc-keycloak-auth-provider.json`. Do not use this config in production! This is only for developers.)

You can find this configuration in `conf/keycloak`. There are two options available in this directory to run a Keycloak container: bash script or docker-compose.

To run the container via bash script, execute the following command (positioned in `conf/keycloak`):

```
./run-keycloak.sh
```

The script will create a Keycloak container or restart it if the container was already created and stopped. Once the script is executed, Keycloak should be accessible from <http://localhost:8090/>

Now load the configuration defined in `oidc-keycloak-auth-provider.json` into your Dataverse installation to enable Keycloak as an authentication provider.

```
curl -X POST -H 'Content-type: application/json' --upload-file oidc-keycloak-auth-provider.json http://localhost:8080/api/admin/authenticationProviders
```

You should see the new provider, called “OIDC-Keycloak”, under “Other options” on the Log In page.

You should be able to log into Keycloak with the following credentials:

- username: kcuser
- password: kcpassword

In case you want to stop and remove the Keycloak container, just run the other available bash script:

```
./rm-keycloak.sh
```

Previous: [Universal Numerical Fingerprint \(UNF\)](#) | Next: [Geospatial Data](#)

5.22 Geospatial Data

Contents:

- *How The Dataverse Software Ingests Shapefiles*
 - *Ingest*
 - *Example*

5.22.1 How The Dataverse Software Ingests Shapefiles

A shapefile is a set of files, often uploaded/transferred in .zip format. This set may contain up to fifteen files. A minimum of three specific files (.shp, .shx, .dbf) are needed to be a valid shapefile and a fourth file (.prj) is required for some applications – or any type of meaningful visualization.

For ingest, four files are the minimum required:

- .shp - shape format; the feature geometry itself
- .shx - shape index format; a positional index of the feature geometry to allow seeking forwards and backwards quickly
- .dbf - attribute format; columnar attributes for each shape, in dBase IV format
- .prj - projection format; the coordinate system and projection information, a plain text file describing the projection using well-known text format

Ingest

When uploaded to a Dataverse installation, the .zip is unpacked (same as all .zip files). Shapefile sets are recognized by the same base name and specific extensions. These individual files constitute a shapefile set. The first four are the minimum required (.shp, .shx, .dbf, .prj)

For example:

- bicycles.shp (required extension)
- bicycles.shx (required extension)
- bicycles.prj (required extension)
- bicycles.dbf (required extension)
- bicycles.sbx (NOT required extension)
- bicycles.sbn (NOT required extension)

Upon recognition of the four required files, the Dataverse installation will group them as well as any other relevant files into a shapefile set. Files with these extensions will be included in the shapefile set:

- Required: .shp, .shx, .dbf, .prj
- Optional: .sbn, .sbx, .fbn, .fbx, .ain, .aih, .ixs, .mzs, .atx, .cpg, shp.xml

Then the Dataverse installation creates a new .zip with mimetype as a shapefile. The shapefile set will persist as this new .zip.

Example

1a. Original .zip contents:

A file named `bikes_and_subways.zip` is uploaded to the Dataverse installation. This `.zip` contains the following files.

- `bicycles.shp` (shapefile set #1)
- `bicycles.shx` (shapefile set #1)
- `bicycles.prj` (shapefile set #1)
- `bicycles.dbf` (shapefile set #1)
- `bicycles.sbx` (shapefile set #1)
- `bicycles.sbn` (shapefile set #1)
- `bicycles.txt`
- `the_bikes.md`
- `readme.txt`
- `subway_line.shp` (shapefile set #2)
- `subway_line.shx` (shapefile set #2)
- `subway_line.prj` (shapefile set #2)
- `subway_line.dbf` (shapefile set #2)

1b. The Dataverse installation unzips and re-zips files:

Upon ingest, the Dataverse installation unpacks the file `bikes_and_subways.zip`. Upon recognizing the shapefile sets, it groups those files together into new `.zip` files:

- files making up the “`bicycles`” shapefile become a new `.zip`
- files making up the “`subway_line`” shapefile become a new `.zip`
- remaining files will stay as they are

To ensure that a shapefile set remains intact, individual files such as `bicycles.sbn` are kept in the set – even though they are not used for mapping.

1c. The Dataverse installation final file listing:

- `bicycles.zip` (contains shapefile set #1: `bicycles.shp`, `bicycles.shx`, `bicycles.prj`, `bicycles.dbf`, `bicycles.sbx`, `bicycles.sbn`)
- `bicycles.txt` (separate, not part of a shapefile set)
- `the_bikes.md` (separate, not part of a shapefile set)
- `readme.txt` (separate, not part of a shapefile set)
- `subway_line.zip` (contains shapefile set #2: `subway_line.shp`, `subway_line.shx`, `subway_line.prj`, `subway_line.dbf`)

For two “final” shapefile sets, `bicycles.zip` and `subway_line.zip`, a new mimetype is used:

- Mimetype: `application/zipped-shapefile`
- Mimetype Label: “Shapefile as ZIP Archive”

5.23 SELinux

Contents:

- *Introduction*
- *Development Environment*
- *Recreating the shibboleth.te File*
 - *Ensure that SELinux is Enforcing*
 - *Removing the Existing shibboleth.te Rules*
 - *Exercising SELinux denials*
 - *Stub out the new shibboleth.te file*
 - *Iteratively Use audit2allow to Add Rules and Test Your Change*

5.23.1 Introduction

The shibboleth.te file below that is mentioned in the *Shibboleth* section of the Installation Guide was created on CentOS 6 as part of <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/issues/3406> but may need to be revised for future versions of RHEL/CentOS (pull requests welcome!). The file is versioned with the docs and can be found in the following location:

`doc/sphinx-guides/source/_static/installation/files/etc/selinux/targeted/src/policy/domains/misc/shibboleth.te`

```
module shibboleth 1.0;

require {
    class file {open read;};
    class sock_file write;
    class unix_stream_socket connectto;
    type httpd_t;
    type initrc_t;
    type var_run_t;
    type var_t;
}

allow httpd_t initrc_t:unix_stream_socket connectto;
allow httpd_t var_run_t:sock_file write;
allow httpd_t var_t:file {open read};
```

This document is something of a survival guide for anyone who is tasked with updating this file.

5.23.2 Development Environment

In order to work on the `shibboleth.te` file you need to ssh into a RHEL or CentOS box running Shibboleth (instructions are in the *Shibboleth* section of the Installation Guide) such as <https://beta.dataverse.org> or <https://demo.dataverse.org> that has all the commands below installed. As of this writing, the `policycoreutils-python` RPM was required.

5.23.3 Recreating the shibboleth.te File

If you're reading this page because someone has reported that Shibboleth doesn't work with SELinux anymore (due to an operating system upgrade, perhaps) you *could* start with the existing `shibboleth.te` file, but it is recommended that you create a new one instead to ensure that extra lines aren't included that are no longer necessary.

The file you're recreating is called a Type Enforcement (TE) file, and you can read more about it at https://access.redhat.com/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux/6/html/Security-Enhanced_Linux/chap-Security-Enhanced_Linux-SELinux_Contexts.html

The following doc may or may not be helpful to orient you: https://access.redhat.com/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux/6/html/Security-Enhanced_Linux/sect-Security-Enhanced_Linux-Fixing_Problems-Allowing_Access_audit2allow.html

Ensure that SELinux is Enforcing

If `getenforce` returns anything other than Enforcing, run `setenforce Enforcing` or otherwise configure SELinux by editing `/etc/selinux/config` and rebooting until SELinux is enforcing.

Removing the Existing shibboleth.te Rules

Use `semodule -l | grep shibboleth` to see if the `shibboleth.te` rules are already installed. Run `semodule -r shibboleth` to remove the module, if necessary. Now we're at square one (no custom rules) and ready to generate a new `shibboleth.te` file.

Exercising SELinux denials

As of this writing, the only component of the Dataverse Software which is known not to work with SELinux out of the box is Shibboleth.

We will be exercising SELinux denials with Shibboleth, and the SELinux-related issues are expected out the box:

- Problems with the dropdown of institutions being created on the Login Page (“Internal Error - Failed to download metadata from /Shibboleth.sso/DiscoFeed.”).
- Problems with the return trip after you've logged into HarvardKey or whatever (“shibsp::ListenerException” and “Cannot connect to shibd process, a site administrator should be notified.”).

In short, all you need to do is try to log in with Shibboleth and you'll see problems associated with SELinux being enabled.

Stub out the new shibboleth.te file

Iterate on the new `shibboleth.te` file wherever you like, such as the root user's home directory in the example below. Start by adding a `module` line like this:

```
echo 'module shibboleth 1.0;' > /root/shibboleth.te
```

Note that a version is required and perhaps it should be changed, but we'll stick with `1.0` for now. The point is that the `shibboleth.te` file must begin with that "module" line or else the `checkmodule` command you'll need to run later will fail. Your file should look like this:

```
module shibboleth 1.0;
# require lines go here
# allow lines go here
```

Iteratively Use audit2allow to Add Rules and Test Your Change

Now that `shibboleth.te` has been stubbed out, we will iteratively add lines to it from the output of piping SELinux Access Vector Cache (AVC) denial messages to `audit2allow -r`. These errors are found in `/var/log/audit/audit.log` so tail the file as you attempt to log in to Shibboleth.

```
# tail -f /var/log/audit/audit.log | fgrep type=AVC
```

You should see messages that look something like this:

```
type=AVC msg=audit(1476728970.378:271405): avc: denied { write } for pid=28548
comm="httpd" name="shibd.sock" dev=dm-2 ino=393300 scontext=unconfined_u:system_r:httpd_t:s0
tcontext=unconfined_u:object_r:var_run_t:s0 tclass=sock_file
```

Next, pipe these message to `audit2allow -r` like this:

```
echo 'type=AVC msg=audit(1476728970.378:271405): avc: denied { write
} for pid=28548 comm="httpd" name="shibd.sock" dev=dm-2 ino=393300
scontext=unconfined_u:system_r:httpd_t:s0 tcontext=unconfined_u:object_r:var_run_t:s0
tclass=sock_file' | audit2allow -r
```

This will produce output like this:

```
require {
    type var_run_t;
    type httpd_t;
    class sock_file write;
}

===== httpd_t =====
allow httpd_t var_run_t:sock_file write;
```

Copy and paste this output into the `shibboleth.te` file you stubbed out above. Then, use the same `checkmodule`, `semodule_package`, and `semodule` commands documented in the [Shibboleth](#) section of the Installation Guide on your file to activate the SELinux rules you're constructing.

Once your updated SELinux rules are in place, try logging in with Shibboleth again. You should see a different AVC error. Pipe that error into `audit2allow -r` as well and put the resulting content into the `shibboleth.te` file you're constructing. As you do this, manually reformat the file using the following rules:

- Put the `require` block at the top.
- Within the `require` block, sort the lines.

- Put the `allow` lines at the bottom and sort them.
- Where possible, avoid duplicate lines by combining operations such as `open` and `read` into `{open read}`.
- Remove all comment lines.

Keep iterating until it works and then create a pull request based on your updated file. Good luck!

Many thanks to Bill Horka from IQSS for his assistance in explaining how to construct a SELinux Type Enforcement (TE) file!

Previous: [Geospatial Data](#)

5.24 Big Data Support

Big data support includes some highly experimental options. Eventually more of this content will move to the Installation Guide.

Contents:

- [*S3 Direct Upload and Download*](#)
 - [*Allow CORS for S3 Buckets*](#)
- [*Trusted Remote Storage with the `remote` Store Type*](#)
- [*Globus File Transfer*](#)
- [*Data Capture Module \(DCM\)*](#)
 - [*Install a DCM*](#)
 - [*Downloading rsync scripts via Your Dataverse Installation's API*](#)
 - [*How a DCM reports checksum success or failure to your Dataverse Installation*](#)
 - [*Steps to set up a DCM mock for Development*](#)
 - [*Troubleshooting*](#)
 - [*Steps to set up a DCM via Docker for Development*](#)
 - * [*Docker Image Set-up*](#)
 - * [*Optional steps for setting up the S3 Docker DCM Variant*](#)
 - * [*Using the DCM Docker Containers*](#)
 - * [*Additional DCM docker development tips*](#)
- [*Repository Storage Abstraction Layer \(RSAL\)*](#)
 - [*Steps to set up a DCM via Docker for Development*](#)
 - * [*Using the RSAL Docker Containers*](#)
 - [*Configuring the RSAL Mock*](#)
 - [*Configuring download via rsync*](#)

Various components will need to be installed and/or configured for big data support via the methods described below.

5.24.1 S3 Direct Upload and Download

A lightweight option for supporting file sizes beyond a few gigabytes - a size that can cause performance issues when uploaded through a Dataverse installation itself - is to configure an S3 store to provide direct upload and download via ‘pre-signed URLs’. When these options are configured, file uploads and downloads are made directly to and from a configured S3 store using secure ([https](https://)) connections that enforce a Dataverse installation’s access controls. (The upload and download URLs are signed with a unique key that only allows access for a short time period and a Dataverse installation will only generate such a URL if the user has permission to upload/download the specific file in question.)

This option can handle files >300GB and could be appropriate for files up to a TB or larger. Other options can scale farther, but this option has the advantages that it is simple to configure and does not require any user training - uploads and downloads are done via the same interface as normal uploads to a Dataverse installation.

To configure these options, an administrator must set two JVM options for the Dataverse installation using the same process as for other configuration options:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.download-redirect=true"
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.upload-redirect=true"
```

With multiple stores configured, it is possible to configure one S3 store with direct upload and/or download to support large files (in general or for specific Dataverse collections) while configuring only direct download, or no direct access for another store.

The direct upload option now switches between uploading the file in one piece (up to 1 GB by default) and sending it as multiple parts. The default can be changed by setting:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.min-part-size=<size in bytes>"
```

For AWS, the minimum allowed part size is $5*1024*1024$ bytes and the maximum is 5 GB ($5*1024**3$). Other providers may set different limits.

It is also possible to set file upload size limits per store. See the :MaxFileSizeInBytes setting described in the [Configuration](#) guide.

At present, one potential drawback for direct-upload is that files are only partially ‘ingested’ - tabular and FITS files are processed, but zip files are not unzipped, and the file contents are not inspected to evaluate their mimetype. This could be appropriate for large files, or it may be useful to completely turn off ingest processing for performance reasons (ingest processing requires a copy of the file to be retrieved by the Dataverse installation from the S3 store). A store using direct upload can be configured to disable all ingest processing for files above a given size limit:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.ingestsizelimit=<size in bytes>"
```

Allow CORS for S3 Buckets

IMPORTANT: One additional step that is required to enable direct uploads via a Dataverse installation and for direct download to work with previewers and direct upload to work with dvwebloader ([Folder Upload](#)) is to allow cross site (CORS) requests on your S3 store. The example below shows how to enable CORS rules (to support upload and download) on a bucket using the AWS CLI command line tool. Note that you may want to limit the AllowedOrigins and/or AllowedHeaders further. <https://github.com/gdcc/dataverse-previewers/wiki/Using-Previewers-with-download-redirects-from-S3> has some additional information about doing this.

If you’d like to check the CORS configuration on your bucket before making changes:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-cors --bucket <BUCKET_NAME>
```

To proceed with making changes:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-cors --bucket <BUCKET_NAME> --cors-configuration file://cors.json
```

with the contents of the file cors.json as follows:

```
{  
  "CORSRules": [  
    {  
      "AllowedOrigins": ["*"],  
      "AllowedHeaders": ["*"],  
      "AllowedMethods": ["PUT", "GET"],  
      "ExposeHeaders": ["ETag"]  
    }  
  ]  
}
```

Alternatively, you can enable CORS using the AWS S3 web interface, using json-encoded rules as in the example above.

Since the direct upload mechanism creates the final file rather than an intermediate temporary file, user actions, such as neither saving or canceling an upload session before closing the browser page, can leave an abandoned file in the store. The direct upload mechanism attempts to use S3 Tags to aid in identifying/removing such files. Upon upload, files are given a “dv-state”:“temp” tag which is removed when the dataset changes are saved and the new file(s) are added in the Dataverse installation. Note that not all S3 implementations support Tags: Minio does not. WIth such stores, direct upload works, but Tags are not used.

5.24.2 Trusted Remote Storage with the remote Store Type

For very large, and/or very sensitive data, it may not make sense to transfer or copy files to Dataverse at all. The experimental `remote` store type in the Dataverse software now supports this use case.

With this storage option Dataverse stores a URL reference for the file rather than transferring the file bytes to a store managed directly by Dataverse. Basic configuration for a remote store is described at [File Storage: Using a Local Filesystem and/or Swift and/or Object Stores and/or Trusted Remote Stores](#) in the Configuration Guide.

Once the store is configured, it can be assigned to a collection or individual datasets as with other stores. In a dataset using this store, users can reference remote files which will then appear the same basic way as other datafiles.

Currently, remote files can only be added via the API. Users can also upload smaller files via the UI or API which will be stored in the configured base store.

If the store has been configured with a `remote-store-name` or `remote-store-url`, the dataset file table will include this information for remote files. These provide a visual indicator that the files are not managed directly by Dataverse and are stored/managed by a remote trusted store.

Rather than sending the file bytes, metadata for the remote file is added using the “`jsonData`” parameter. `jsonData` normally includes information such as a file description, tags, provenance, whether the file is restricted, etc. For remote references, the `jsonData` object must also include values for:

- “`storageIdentifier`” - String, as specified in prior calls
- “`fileName`” - String
- “`mimeType`” - String
- fixity/checksum: either:
 - “`md5Hash`” - String with MD5 hash value, or
 - “`checksum`” - Json Object with “`@type`” field specifying the algorithm used and “`@value`” field with the value from that algorithm, both Strings

The allowed checksum algorithms are defined by the `edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.DataFile.CheckSumType` class and currently include MD5, SHA-1, SHA-256, and SHA-512

(The remote store leverages the same JSON upload syntax as the last step in direct upload to S3 described in the [Adding the Uploaded file to the Dataset](#) section of the [Direct DataFile Upload/Replace API](#).)

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK27U7YBV
export JSON_DATA="{'description':'My description.', 'directoryLabel':'data subdir1',
  ↪ 'categories':[ 'Data' ], 'restrict': 'false', 'storageIdentifier': 'trs://images/dataverse_
  ↪ project_logo.svg', 'fileName': 'dataverse_logo.svg', 'mimeType': 'image/svg+xml',
  ↪ 'checksum': { '@type': 'SHA-1', '@value': '123456' }}"

curl -X POST -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
  ↪ add?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER" -F "jsonData=$JSON_DATA"
```

The variant allowing multiple files to be added once that is discussed in the [Direct DataFile Upload/Replace API](#) document can also be used.

Considerations:

- Remote stores are configured with a base-url which limits what files can be referenced, i.e. the absolute URL for the file is <base-url>/<path in storageidentifier>.
- The current store will not prevent you from providing a relative URL that results in a 404 when resolved. (I.e. if you make a typo). You should check to make sure the file exists at the location you specify - by trying to download in Dataverse, by checking to see that Dataverse was able to get the file size (which it does by doing a HEAD call to that location), or just manually trying the URL in your browser.
- Admins are trusting the organization managing the site/service at base-url to maintain the referenced files for as long as the Dataverse instance needs them. Formal agreements are recommended for production
- For large files, direct-download should always be used with a remote store. (Otherwise the Dataverse will be involved in the download.)
- For simple websites, a remote store should be marked public which will turn off restriction and embargo functionality in Dataverse (since Dataverse cannot restrict access to the file on the remote website)
- Remote stores can be configured with a secret-key. This key will be used to sign URLs when Dataverse retrieves the file content or redirects a user for download. If remote service is able to validate the signature and reject invalid requests, the remote store mechanism can be used to manage restricted and embargoes files, access requests in Dataverse, etc. Dataverse contains Java code that validates these signatures which could be used, for example, to create a validation proxy in front of a web server to allow Dataverse to manage access. The secret-key is a shared secret between Dataverse and the remote service and is not shared with/is not accessible by users or those with access to user's machines.
- Sophisticated remote services may wish to register file URLs that do not directly reference the file contents (bytes) but instead direct the user to a website where further information about the remote service's download process can be found.
- Due to the current design, ingest cannot be done on remote files and administrators should disable ingest when using a remote store. This can be done by setting the ingest size limit for the store to 0 and/or using the recently added option to not perform tabular ingest on upload.
- Dataverse will normally try to access the file contents itself, i.e. for ingest (in future versions), full-text indexing, thumbnail creation, etc. This processing may not be desirable for large/sensitive data, and, for the case where the URL does not reference the file itself, would not be possible. At present, administrators should configure the relevant size limits to avoid such actions.
- The current implementation of remote stores is experimental in the sense that future work to enhance it is planned. This work may result in changes to how the store works and lead to additional work when upgrading for sites that start using this mechanism now.

To configure the options mentioned above, an administrator must set two JVM options for the Dataverse installation using the same process as for other configuration options:

```
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.download-redirect=true"      ./asadmin  
create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.secret-key=somelongrandomalphabetickeythelongerthebetter12  
./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.public=true"                  ./asadmin  
create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.<id>.ingestsizelimit=<size in bytes>"
```

5.24.3 Globus File Transfer

Note: Globus file transfer is still experimental but feedback is welcome! See [Getting Help](#).

Users can transfer files via [Globus](#) into and out of datasets when their Dataverse installation is configured to use a Globus accessible S3 store and a community-developed [dataverse-globus](#) “transfer” app has been properly installed and configured.

Due to differences in the access control models of a Dataverse installation and Globus, enabling the Globus capability on a store will disable the ability to restrict and embargo files in that store.

As Globus aficionados know, Globus endpoints can be in a variety of places, from data centers to personal computers. This means that from within the Dataverse software, a Globus transfer can feel like an upload or a download (with Globus Personal Connect running on your laptop, for example) or it can feel like a true transfer from one server to another (from a cluster in a data center into a Dataverse dataset or vice versa).

Globus transfer uses a very efficient transfer mechanism and has additional features that make it suitable for large files and large numbers of files:

- robust file transfer capable of restarting after network or endpoint failures
- third-party transfer, which enables a user accessing a Dataverse installation in their desktop browser to initiate transfer of their files from a remote endpoint (i.e. on a local high-performance computing cluster), directly to an S3 store managed by the Dataverse installation

Globus transfer requires use of the Globus S3 connector which requires a paid Globus subscription at the host institution. Users will need a Globus account which could be obtained via their institution or directly from Globus (at no cost).

The setup required to enable Globus is described in the [Community Dataverse-Globus Setup and Configuration document](#) and the references therein.

As described in that document, Globus transfers can be initiated by choosing the Globus option in the dataset upload panel. (Globus, which does asynchronous transfers, is not available during dataset creation.) Analogously, “Globus Transfer” is one of the download options in the “Access Dataset” menu and optionally the file landing page download menu (if/when supported in the dataverse-globus app).

An overview of the control and data transfer interactions between components was presented at the 2022 Dataverse Community Meeting and can be viewed in the [Integrations and Tools Session Video](#) around the 1 hr 28 min mark.

See also [Globus settings](#).

5.24.4 Data Capture Module (DCM)

Data Capture Module (DCM) is an experimental component that allows users to upload large datasets via rsync over ssh.

DCM was developed and tested using Glassfish but these docs have been updated with references to Payara.

Install a DCM

Installation instructions can be found at <https://github.com/sbgrid/data-capture-module/blob/master/doc/installation.md>. Note that shared storage (posix or AWS S3) between your Dataverse installation and your DCM is required. You cannot use a DCM with Swift at this point in time.

Once you have installed a DCM, you will need to configure two database settings on the Dataverse installation side. These settings are documented in the *Configuration* section of the Installation Guide:

- `:DataCaptureModuleUrl` should be set to the URL of a DCM you installed.
- `:UploadMethods` should include `dcm/rsync+ssh`.

This will allow your Dataverse installation to communicate with your DCM, so that your Dataverse installation can download rsync scripts for your users.

Downloading rsync scripts via Your Dataverse Installation's API

The rsync script can be downloaded from your Dataverse installation via API using an authorized API token. In the curl example below, substitute `$PERSISTENT_ID` with a DOI or Handle:

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" $DV_BASE_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
dataCaptureModule/rsync?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID
```

How a DCM reports checksum success or failure to your Dataverse Installation

Once the user uploads files to a DCM, that DCM will perform checksum validation and report to your Dataverse installation the results of that validation. The DCM must be configured to pass the API token of a superuser. The implementation details, which are subject to change, are below.

The JSON that a DCM sends to your Dataverse installation on successful checksum validation looks something like the contents of `checksumValidationSuccess.json` located at `/static/installation/files/root/big-data-support/checksumValidationSuccess.json` below:

```
{
  "status": "validation passed",
  "uploadFolder": "OS708Y",
  "totalSize": 72
}
```

- `status` - The valid strings to send are `validation passed` and `validation failed`.
- `uploadFolder` - This is the directory on disk where your Dataverse installation should attempt to find the files that a DCM has moved into place. There should always be a `files.sha` file and a least one data file. `files.sha` is a manifest of all the data files and their checksums. The `uploadFolder` directory is inside the directory where data is stored for the dataset and may have the same name as the “identifier” of the persistent id (DOI or Handle). For example, you would send `"uploadFolder": "DNXV2H"` in the JSON file when the absolute path to this directory is `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/files/10.5072/FK2/DNXV2H/DNXV2H`.

- `totalSize` - Your Dataverse installation will use this value to represent the total size in bytes of all the files in the “package” that’s created. If 360 data files and one `files.sha` manifest file are in the `uploadFolder`, this value is the sum of the 360 data files.

Here’s the syntax for sending the JSON.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST -H 'Content-type: application/json' --upload-file checksumValidationSuccess.json $DV_BASE_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/dataCaptureModule/checksumValidation?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_ID
```

Steps to set up a DCM mock for Development

See instructions at <https://github.com/sbgrid/data-capture-module/blob/master/doc/mock.md>

Add Dataverse Installation settings to use mock (same as using DCM, noted above):

- `curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DataCaptureModuleUrl -X PUT -d "http://localhost:5000"`
- `curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:UploadMethods -X PUT -d "dcm/rsync+ssh"`

At this point you should be able to download a placeholder rsync script. Your Dataverse installation is then waiting for news from the DCM about if checksum validation has succeeded or not. First, you have to put files in place, which is usually the job of the DCM. You should substitute “X1METO” for the “identifier” of the dataset you create. You must also use the proper path for where you store files in your dev environment.

- `mkdir /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/files/10.5072/FK2/X1METO`
- `mkdir /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/files/10.5072/FK2/X1METO/X1METO`
- `cd /usr/local/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/files/10.5072/FK2/X1METO/X1METO`
- `echo "hello" > file1.txt`
- `shasum file1.txt > files.sha`

Now the files are in place and you need to send JSON to your Dataverse installation with a success or failure message as described above. Make a copy of `doc/sphinx-guides/source/_static/installation/files/root/big-data-support/checksumValidationSuccess.json` and put the identifier in place such as “X1METO” under “uploadFolder”). Then use curl as described above to send the JSON.

Troubleshooting

The following low level command should only be used when troubleshooting the “import” code a DCM uses but is documented here for completeness.

```
curl -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" -X POST "$DV_BASE_URL/api/batch/jobs/import/datasets/files/$DATASET_DB_ID?uploadFolder=$UPLOAD_FOLDER&totalSize=$TOTAL_SIZE"
```

Steps to set up a DCM via Docker for Development

If you need a fully operating DCM client for development purposes, these steps will guide you to setting one up. This includes steps to set up the DCM on S3 variant.

Docker Image Set-up

See <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/blob/develop/conf/docker-dcm/readme.md>

- Install docker if you do not have it

Optional steps for setting up the S3 Docker DCM Variant

- Before: the default bucket for DCM to hold files in S3 is named test-dcm. It is coded into *post_upload_s3.bash* (line 30). Change to a different bucket if needed.
- Also Note: With the new support for multiple file store in the Dataverse Software, DCM requires a store with id="s3" and DCM will only work with this store.
 - Add AWS bucket info to dcmsrv - Add AWS credentials to `~/.aws/credentials`
 - * `[default]`
 - * `aws_access_key_id =`
 - * `aws_secret_access_key =`
 - Dataverse installation configuration (on dvsrv):
 - Set S3 as the storage driver
 - * `cd /opt/payara5/bin/`
 - * `./asadmin delete-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.storage-driver-id=file"`
 - * `./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.storage-driver-id=s3"`
 - * `./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.s3.type=s3"`
 - * `./asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.s3.label=s3"`
 - Add AWS bucket info to your Dataverse installation - Add AWS credentials to `~/.aws/credentials`
 - * `[default]`
 - * `aws_access_key_id =`
 - * `aws_secret_access_key =`
 - Also: set region in `~/.aws/config` to create a region file. Add these contents:
 - `[default]`
 - `region = us-east-1`
 - Add the S3 bucket names to your Dataverse installation
 - * S3 bucket for your Dataverse installation
 - `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/bin/asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.s3.bucket-name=iqsstestdcmbucket"`
 - * S3 bucket for DCM (as your Dataverse installation needs to do the copy over)

- `/usr/local/payara5/glassfish/bin/asadmin create-jvm-options "-Ddataverse.files.dcm-s3-bucket-name=test-dcm"`
- Set download method to be HTTP, as DCM downloads through S3 are over this protocol `curl -X PUT "http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DownloadMethods" -d "native/http"`

Using the DCM Docker Containers

For using these commands, you will need to connect to the shell prompt inside various containers (e.g. `docker exec -it dvsvr /bin/bash`)

- Create a dataset and download rsync upload script
 - connect to client container: `docker exec -it dcm_client bash`
 - create dataset: `cd /mnt ; ./create.bash`; this will echo the database ID to stdout
 - download transfer script: `./get_transfer.bash $database_id_from_create_script`
 - execute the transfer script: `bash ./upload-${database_id_from-create_script}.bash`, and follow instructions from script.
- Run script
 - e.g. `bash ./upload-3.bash` (3 being the database id from earlier commands in this example).
- Manually run post upload script on dcmsrv
 - for posix implementation: `docker exec -it dcmsrv /opt/dcm/scn/post_upload.bash`
 - for S3 implementation: `docker exec -it dcmsrv /opt/dcm/scn/post_upload_s3.bash`

Additional DCM docker development tips

- You can completely blow away all the docker images with these commands (including non DCM ones!) - `docker-compose -f docker-compose.yml down -v`
- There are a few logs to tail
 - dvsvr : `tail -n 2000 -f /opt/payara5/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/server.log`
 - dcmsrv : `tail -n 2000 -f /var/log/lighttpd/breakage.log`
 - dcmsrv : `tail -n 2000 -f /var/log/lighttpd/access.log`
- You may have to restart the app server domain occasionally to deal with memory filling up. If deployment is getting realllllly slow, its a good time.

5.24.5 Repository Storage Abstraction Layer (RSAL)

Steps to set up a DCM via Docker for Development

See <https://github.com/IQSS/dataverse/blob/develop/conf/docker-dcm/readme.md>

Using the RSAL Docker Containers

- Create a dataset (either with the procedure mentioned in DCM Docker Containers, or another process)
- Publish the dataset (from the client container): `cd /mnt; ./publish_major.bash ${database_id}`
- Run the RSAL component of the workflow (from the host): `docker exec -it rsalsrv /opt/rsal/scn/pub.py`
- If desired, from the client container you can download the dataset following the instructions in the dataset access section of the dataset page.

Configuring the RSAL Mock

Info for configuring the RSAL Mock: <https://github.com/sbgrid/rsal/tree/master/mock>

Also, to configure your Dataverse installation to use the new workflow you must do the following (see also the *Workflows* section):

1. Configure the RSAL URL:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'http://<myipaddr>:5050' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:RepositoryStorageAbstractionLayerUrl
```

2. Update workflow json with correct URL information:

Edit internal-httpSR-workflow.json and replace url and rollbackUrl to be the url of your RSAL mock.

3. Create the workflow:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/workflows -X POST --data-binary @internal-httpSR-workflow.json -H "Content-type: application/json"
```

4. List available workflows:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/workflows
```

5. Set the workflow (id) as the default workflow for the appropriate trigger:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/workflows/default/PrePublishDataset -X PUT -d 2
```

6. Check that the trigger has the appropriate default workflow set:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/workflows/default/PrePublishDataset
```

7. Add RSAL to whitelist

8. When finished testing, unset the workflow:

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/workflows/default/PrePublishDataset
```

Configuring download via rsync

In order to see the rsync URLs, you must run this command:

```
curl -X PUT -d 'rsal/rsync' http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:DownloadMethods
```

To specify replication sites that appear in rsync URLs:

Adjust the add-storage-site.json located under /scripts/api/data/storageSites/add-storage-site.json to meet your needs. The file should look something like this:

```
{  
  "hostname": "dataverse.librascholar.edu",  
  "name": "LibraScholar, USA",  
  "primaryStorage": true,  
  "transferProtocols": "rsync,posix,globus"  
}
```

Then add the storage site using curl:

```
curl -H "Content-type:application/json" -X POST http://localhost:8080/api/admin/storageSites --upload-file add-storage-site.json
```

You make a storage site the primary site by passing “true”. Pass “false” to make it not the primary site. (id “1” in the example):

```
curl -X PUT -d true http://localhost:8080/api/admin/storageSites/1/primaryStorage
```

You can delete a storage site like this (id “1” in the example):

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:8080/api/admin/storageSites/1
```

You can view a single storage site like this: (id “1” in the example):

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/storageSites/1
```

You can view all storage site like this:

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/storageSites
```

In the GUI, this is called “Local Access”. It’s where you can compute on files on your cluster.

```
curl http://localhost:8080/api/admin/settings/:LocalDataAccessPath -X PUT -d "/programs/datagrid"
```

5.25 Auxiliary File Support

Auxiliary file support is experimental and as such, related APIs may be added, changed or removed without standard backward compatibility. Auxiliary files in the Dataverse Software are being added to support depositing and downloading differentially private metadata, as part of the [OpenDP project](#). In future versions, this approach will likely become more broadly used and supported.

5.25.1 Adding an Auxiliary File to a Datafile

To add an auxiliary file, specify the primary key of the datafile (FILE_ID), and the formatTag and formatVersion (if applicable) associated with the auxiliary file. There are multiple form parameters. “Origin” specifies the application/entity that created the auxiliary file, and “isPublic” controls access to downloading the file. If “isPublic” is true, any user can download the file if the dataset has been published, else, access authorization is based on the access rules as defined for the DataFile itself. The “type” parameter is used to group similar auxiliary files in the UI. Currently, auxiliary files with type “DP” appear under “Differentially Private Statistics”, while all other auxiliary files appear under “Other Auxiliary Files”.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export FILENAME='auxfile.json'  
export FILETYPE='application/json'  
export FILE_ID='12345'  
export FORMAT_TAG='dpJson'
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
export FORMAT_VERSION='v1'
export TYPE='DP'
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST -F "file=@$FILENAME;type=$FILETYPE" -F
→'origin=myApp' -F 'isPublic=true' -F "type=$TYPE" "$SERVER_URL/api/access/datafile/
→$FILE_ID/auxiliary/$FORMAT_TAG/$FORMAT_VERSION"
```

You should expect a 200 (“OK”) response and JSON with information about your newly uploaded auxiliary file.

5.25.2 Downloading an Auxiliary File that Belongs to a Datafile

To download an auxiliary file, use the primary key of the datafile, and the formatTag and formatVersion (if applicable) associated with the auxiliary file. An API token is shown in the example below but it is not necessary if the auxiliary file was uploaded with isPublic=true and the dataset has been published.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export FILE_ID='12345'
export FORMAT_TAG='dpJson'
export FORMAT_VERSION='v1'

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN "$SERVER_URL/api/access/datafile/$FILE_ID/auxiliary/
→$FORMAT_TAG/$FORMAT_VERSION"
```

5.25.3 Listing Auxiliary Files for a Datafile by Origin

To list auxiliary files, specify the primary key of the datafile (FILE_ID), and the origin associated with the auxiliary files to list (the application/entity that created them).

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export FILE_ID='12345'
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export ORIGIN='app1'

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN "$SERVER_URL/api/access/datafile/$FILE_ID/auxiliary/
→$ORIGIN"
```

You should expect a 200 (“OK”) response and a JSON array with objects representing the auxiliary files found, or a 404/Not Found response if no auxiliary files exist with that origin.

5.25.4 Deleting an Auxiliary File that Belongs to a Datafile

To delete an auxiliary file, use the primary key of the datafile, and the formatTag and formatVersion (if applicable) associated with the auxiliary file:

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export FILE_ID='12345'
export FORMAT_TAG='dpJson'
export FORMAT_VERSION='v1'

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN DELETE -X "$SERVER_URL/api/access/datafile/$FILE_ID/
↪auxiliary/$FORMAT_TAG/$FORMAT_VERSION"
```

5.26 Direct DataFile Upload/Replace API

The direct Datafile Upload API is used internally to support direct upload of files to S3 storage and by tools such as the DVUploader.

Direct upload involves a series of three activities, each involving interacting with the server for a Dataverse installation:

- Requesting initiation of a transfer from the server
- Use of the pre-signed URL(s) returned in that call to perform an upload/multipart-upload of the file to S3
- A call to the server to register the file/files as part of the dataset/replace a file in the dataset or to cancel the transfer

This API is only enabled when a Dataset is configured with a data store supporting direct S3 upload. Administrators should be aware that partial transfers, where a client starts uploading the file/parts of the file and does not contact the server to complete/cancel the transfer, will result in data stored in S3 that is not referenced in the Dataverse installation (e.g. should be considered temporary and deleted.)

5.26.1 Requesting Direct Upload of a DataFile

To initiate a transfer of a file to S3, make a call to the Dataverse installation indicating the size of the file to upload. The response will include a pre-signed URL(s) that allow the client to transfer the file. Pre-signed URLs include a short-lived token authorizing the action represented by the URL.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK27U7YBV
export SIZE=1000000000

curl -H "X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/uploadurls?
↪persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER&size=$SIZE"
```

The response to this call, assuming direct uploads are enabled, will be one of two forms:

Single URL: when the file is smaller than the size at which uploads must be broken into multiple parts

```
{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

"url":"...",
"partSize":1073741824,
"storageIdentifier":"s3://demo-dataverse-bucket:177883619b8-892ca9f7112e"
}
}

```

Multiple URLs: when the file must be uploaded in multiple parts. The part size is set by the Dataverse installation and, for AWS-based storage, range from 5 MB to 5 GB

```

{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": {
    "urls": {
      "1": "...",
      "2": "...",
      "3": "...",
      "4": "...",
      "5": ...
    }
  },
  "abort": "/api/datasets/mpupload?...",
  "complete": "/api/datasets/mpupload?...",
  "partSize": 1073741824,
  "storageIdentifier": "s3://demo-dataverse-bucket:177883b000e-49cedef268ac"
}

```

In the example responses above, the URLs, which are very long, have been omitted. These URLs reference the S3 server and the specific object identifier that will be used, starting with, for example, <https://demo-dataverse-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com/10.5072/FK2FOQPJS/177883b000e-49cedef268ac?...>

The client must then use the URL(s) to PUT the file, or if the file is larger than the specified partSize, parts of the file.

In the single part case, only one call to the supplied URL is required:

```
curl -H 'x-amz-tagging:dv-state=temp' -X PUT -T <filename> "<supplied url>"
```

In the multipart case, the client must send each part and collect the ‘eTag’ responses from the server. The calls for this are the same as the one for the single part case except that each call should send a <partSize> slice of the total file, with the last part containing the remaining bytes. The responses from the S3 server for these calls will include the ‘eTag’ for the uploaded part.

To successfully conclude the multipart upload, the client must call the ‘complete’ URI, sending a json object including the part eTags:

```
curl -X PUT "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/mpload?..." -d '{"1":<eTag1 string>,"2":<eTag2 string>,"3":<eTag3 string>,"4":<eTag4 string>,"5":<eTag5 string>}'
```

If the client is unable to complete the multipart upload, it should call the abort URL:

```
curl -X DELETE "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/mpload?..."
```

5.26.2 Adding the Uploaded file to the Dataset

Once the file exists in the s3 bucket, a final API call is needed to add it to the Dataset. This call is the same call used to upload a file to a Dataverse installation but, rather than sending the file bytes, additional metadata is added using the “jsonData” parameter. jsonData normally includes information such as a file description, tags, provenance, whether the file is restricted, etc. For direct uploads, the jsonData object must also include values for:

- “storageIdentifier” - String, as specified in prior calls
- “fileName” - String
- “mimeType” - String
- fixity/checksum: either:
 - “md5Hash” - String with MD5 hash value, or
 - “checksum” - Json Object with “@type” field specifying the algorithm used and “@value” field with the value from that algorithm, both Strings

The allowed checksum algorithms are defined by the edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.DataFile.CheckSumType class and currently include MD5, SHA-1, SHA-256, and SHA-512

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK27U7YBV
export JSON_DATA="{'description':'My description.', 'directoryLabel':'data subdir1',
  ↪'categories':[{'Data'}, 'restrict': 'false', 'storageIdentifier': 's3://demo-dataverse-
  ↪bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357c42', 'fileName': 'file1.txt', 'mimeType': 'text/plain',
  ↪'checksum': {'@type': 'SHA-1', '@value': '123456'}}"

curl -X POST -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
  ↪add?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER" -F "jsonData=$JSON_DATA"
```

Note that this API call can be used independently of the others, e.g. supporting use cases in which the file already exists in S3/has been uploaded via some out-of-band method. With current S3 stores the object identifier must be in the correct bucket for the store, include the PID authority/identifier of the parent dataset, and be guaranteed unique, and the supplied storage identifier must be prefaced with the store identifier used in the Dataverse installation, as with the internally generated examples above.

5.26.3 To add multiple Uploaded Files to the Dataset

Once the files exists in the s3 bucket, a final API call is needed to add all the files to the Dataset. In this API call, additional metadata is added using the “jsonData” parameter. jsonData for this call is an array of objects that normally include information such as a file description, tags, provenance, whether the file is restricted, etc. For direct uploads, the jsonData object must also include values for:

- “description” - A description of the file
- “directoryLabel” - The “File Path” of the file, indicating which folder the file should be uploaded to within the dataset
- “storageIdentifier” - String
- “fileName” - String
- “mimeType” - String
- “fixity/checksum” either:

- “md5Hash” - String with MD5 hash value, or
- “checksum” - Json Object with “@type” field specifying the algorithm used and “@value” field with the value from that algorithm, both Strings

The allowed checksum algorithms are defined by the `edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.DataFile.CheckSumType` class and currently include MD5, SHA-1, SHA-256, and SHA-512

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV
export JSON_DATA="[{\"description\": 'My description.', \"directoryLabel\": 'data subdir1',\n  \"categories\": ['Data'], \"restrict\": 'false', \"storageIdentifier\": 's3://demo-dataverse-\n  bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357c42', \"fileName\": 'file1.txt', \"mimeType\": 'text/plain',\n  \"checksum\": {\"@type\": 'SHA-1', \"@value\": '123456'}}, {\n    \"description\": 'My description.', \"directoryLabel\": 'data subdir1',\n    \"categories\": ['Data'], \"restrict\": 'false', \"storageIdentifier\": 's3://demo-dataverse-\n    bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357d53', \"fileName\": 'file2.txt', \"mimeType\": 'text/plain',\n    \"checksum\": {\"@type\": 'SHA-1', \"@value\": '123789'}}]]"
curl -X POST -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/\n  addFiles?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER" -F "jsonData=$JSON_DATA"
```

Note that this API call can be used independently of the others, e.g. supporting use cases in which the files already exists in S3/has been uploaded via some out-of-band method. With current S3 stores the object identifier must be in the correct bucket for the store, include the PID authority/identifier of the parent dataset, and be guaranteed unique, and the supplied storage identifier must be prefaced with the store identifier used in the Dataverse installation, as with the internally generated examples above.

5.26.4 Replacing an existing file in the Dataset

Once the file exists in the s3 bucket, a final API call is needed to register it as a replacement of an existing file. This call is the same call used to replace a file to a Dataverse installation but, rather than sending the file bytes, additional metadata is added using the “jsonData” parameter. jsonData normally includes information such as a file description, tags, provenance, whether the file is restricted, whether to allow the mimetype to change (forceReplace=true), etc. For direct uploads, the jsonData object must include values for:

- “storageIdentifier” - String, as specified in prior calls
- “fileName” - String
- “mimeType” - String
- fixity/checksum: either:
 - “md5Hash” - String with MD5 hash value, or
 - “checksum” - Json Object with “@type” field specifying the algorithm used and “@value” field with the value from that algorithm, both Strings

The allowed checksum algorithms are defined by the `edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.DataFile.CheckSumType` class and currently include MD5, SHA-1, SHA-256, and SHA-512. Note that the API call does not validate that the file matches the hash value supplied. If a Dataverse instance is configured to validate file fixity hashes at publication time, a mismatch would be caught at that time and cause publication to fail.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

export FILE_IDENTIFIER=5072
export JSON_DATA='{"description":"My description.", "directoryLabel": "data/subdir1",
  ↪ "categories": ["Data"], "restrict": "false", "forceReplace": "true", "storageIdentifier":
  ↪ "s3://demo-dataverse-bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357c42", "fileName": "file1.txt",
  ↪ "mimeType": "text/plain", "checksum": {"@type": "SHA-1", "@value": "123456"} }'

curl -X POST -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/files/$FILE_IDENTIFIER/
  ↪ replace" -F "jsonData=$JSON_DATA"

```

Note that this API call can be used independently of the others, e.g. supporting use cases in which the file already exists in S3/has been uploaded via some out-of-band method. With current S3 stores the object identifier must be in the correct bucket for the store, include the PID authority/identifier of the parent dataset, and be guaranteed unique, and the supplied storage identifier must be prefaced with the store identifier used in the Dataverse installation, as with the internally generated examples above.

5.26.5 Replacing multiple existing files in the Dataset

Once the replacement files exist in the s3 bucket, a final API call is needed to register them as replacements for existing files. In this API call, additional metadata is added using the “jsonData” parameter. jsonData for this call is array of objects that normally include information such as a file description, tags, provenance, whether the file is restricted, etc. For direct uploads, the jsonData object must include some additional values:

- “fileToReplaceId” - the id of the file being replaced
- “forceReplace” - whether to replace a file with one of a different mimetype (optional, default is false)
- “description” - A description of the file
- “directoryLabel” - The “File Path” of the file, indicating which folder the file should be uploaded to within the dataset
- “storageIdentifier” - String
- “fileName” - String
- “mimeType” - String
- “fixity/checksum” either:
 - “md5Hash” - String with MD5 hash value, or
 - “checksum” - Json Object with “@type” field specifying the algorithm used and “@value” field with the value from that algorithm, both Strings

The allowed checksum algorithms are defined by the `edu.harvard.iq.dataverse.DataFile.CheckSumType` class and currently include MD5, SHA-1, SHA-256, and SHA-512

```

export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK2/7U7YBV
export JSON_DATA='[{"fileToReplaceId": 10, "description": "My description.",
  ↪ "directoryLabel": "data/subdir1", "categories": ["Data"], "restrict": "false",
  ↪ "storageIdentifier": "s3://demo-dataverse-bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357c42", "fileName":
  ↪ "file1.txt", "mimeType": "text/plain", "checksum": {"@type": "SHA-1", "@value": "123456
  ↪ "}}, {"fileToReplaceId": 11, "forceReplace": true, "description": "My description.",
  ↪ "directoryLabel": "data/subdir1", "categories": ["Data"], "restrict": "false",
  ↪ "storageIdentifier": "s3://demo-dataverse-bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357d53", "fileName":}]

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
↳ "file2.txt", "mimeType": "text/plain", "checksum": {"@type": "SHA-1", "@value": "123789"
↳ "}}]'
```

```
curl -X POST -H "X-Dataverse-key: $API_TOKEN" "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/:persistentId/
↳ replaceFiles?persistentId=$PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER" -F "jsonData=$JSON_DATA"
```

The JSON object returned as a response from this API call includes a “data” that indicates how many of the file replacements succeeded and provides per-file error messages for those that don’t, e.g.

```
{
  "status": "OK",
  "data": {
    "Files": [
      {
        "storageIdentifier": "s3://demo-dataverse-bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357c42",
        "errorMessage": "Bad Request:The file to replace does not belong to this dataset.
      },
      {
        "fileDetails": {
          "fileToReplaceId": 10,
          "description": "My description.",
          "directoryLabel": "data/subdir1",
          "categories": [
            "Data"
          ],
          "restrict": "false",
          "storageIdentifier": "s3://demo-dataverse-bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357c42",
          "fileName": "file1.Bin",
          "mimeType": "application/octet-stream",
          "checksum": {
            "@type": "SHA-1",
            "@value": "123456"
          }
        }
      },
      {
        "storageIdentifier": "s3://demo-dataverse-bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357d53",
        "successMessage": "Replaced successfully in the dataset",
        "fileDetails": {
          "description": "My description.",
          "label": "file2.txt",
          "restricted": false,
          "directoryLabel": "data/subdir1",
          "categories": [
            "Data"
          ],
          "dataFile": {
            "persistentId": "",
            "pidURL": "",
            "filename": "file2.txt",
            "contentType": "text/plain",
            "filesize": 2407,
            "description": "My description."
          }
        }
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    "storageIdentifier": "s3://demo-dataverse-bucket:176e28068b0-1c3f80357d53",
    "rootDataFileId": 11,
    "previousDataFileId": 11,
    "checksum": {
        "type": "SHA-1",
        "value": "123789"
    }
}
],
"Result": {
    "Total number of files": 2,
    "Number of files successfully replaced": 1
}
}
}

```

Note that this API call can be used independently of the others, e.g. supporting use cases in which the files already exists in S3/has been uploaded via some out-of-band method. With current S3 stores the object identifier must be in the correct bucket for the store, include the PID authority/identifier of the parent dataset, and be guaranteed unique, and the supplied storage identifier must be prefaced with the store identifier used in the Dataverse installation, as with the internally generated examples above.

5.27 Dataset Semantic Metadata API

Contents:

- [Get Dataset Metadata](#)
- [Add Dataset Metadata](#)
- [Delete Dataset Metadata](#)
- [Create a Dataset](#)

The OAI_ORE metadata export format represents Dataset metadata using json-ld (see the [Metadata Export](#) section). As part of an RDA-supported effort to allow import of Datasets exported as Bags with an included OAI_ORE metadata file, an experimental API has been created that provides a json-ld alternative to the v1.0 API calls to get/set/delete Dataset metadata in the [Native API](#).

You may prefer to work with this API if you are building a tool to import from a Bag/OAI-ORE source or already work with json-ld representations of metadata, or if you prefer the flatter json-ld representation to Dataverse software's json representation (which includes structure related to the metadata blocks involved and the type/multiplicity of the metadata fields.) You may not want to use this API if you need stability and backward compatibility (the 'experimental' designation for this API implies that community feedback is desired and that, in future Dataverse software versions, the API may be modified based on that feedback).

Note: The examples use the 'application/ld+json' mimetype. For compatibility reasons, the APIs also be used with mimetype "application/json-ld"

5.27.1 Get Dataset Metadata

To get the json-ld formatted metadata for a Dataset, specify the Dataset ID (DATASET_ID) or Persistent identifier (DATASET_PID), and, for specific versions, the version number.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export DATASET_ID='12345'
export DATASET_PID='doi:10.5072/FK2A1B2C3'
export VERSION='1.0'
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
```

Example 1: Get metadata **for** version '1.0'

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -H 'Accept: application/ld+json' "$SERVER_URL/api/
datasets/$DATASET_ID/versions/$VERSION/metadata"
```

Example 2: Get metadata **for** the latest version using the DATASET PID

```
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -H 'Accept: application/ld+json' "$SERVER_URL/api/
datasets/:persistentId/metadata?persistentId=$DATASET_PID"
```

You should expect a 200 (“OK”) response and JSON-LD mirroring the OAI-ORE representation in the returned ‘data’ object.

5.27.2 Add Dataset Metadata

To add json-ld formatted metadata for a Dataset, specify the Dataset ID (DATASET_ID) or Persistent identifier (DATASET_PID). Adding ‘?replace=true’ will overwrite an existing metadata value. The default (replace=false) will only add new metadata or add a new value to a multi-valued field.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export DATASET_ID='12345'
export DATASET_PID='doi:10.5072/FK2A1B2C3'
export VERSION='1.0'
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
```

Example: Change the Dataset title

```
curl -X PUT -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -H 'Content-Type: application/ld+json' -d '{
  "title": "Submit menu test",
  "@context": {"title": "http://purl.org/dc/terms/title"}
}' "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/$DATASET_ID/metadata?replace=true"
```

Example 2: Add a description using the DATASET PID

```
curl -X PUT -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -H 'Content-Type: application/ld+json' -d '{
  "citation:dsDescription": {"citation:dsDescriptionValue": "New description"}, 
  "@context": {"citation": "https://dataverse.org/schema/citation/"}
}' "$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/
$DATASET_ID/metadata?persistentId=$DATASET_PID"
```

You should expect a 200 (“OK”) response indicating whether a draft Dataset version was created or an existing draft was updated.

5.27.3 Delete Dataset Metadata

To delete metadata for a Dataset, send a json-ld representation of the fields to delete and specify the Dataset ID (DATASET_ID) or Persistent identifier (DATASET_PID).

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export DATASET_ID='12345'  
export DATASET_PID='doi:10.5072/FK2A1B2C3'  
export VERSION='1.0'  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
```

Example: Delete the TermsOfUseAndAccess 'restrictions' value 'No restrictions' for the latest version using the DATASET PID

```
curl -X PUT -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -H 'Content-Type: application/ld+json' -d '{  
  "https://dataverse.org/schema/core#restrictions": "No restrictions"}' "$SERVER_URL/api/  
datasets/:persistentId/metadata/delete?persistentId=$DATASET_PID"
```

Note, this example uses the term URI directly rather than adding an @context element. You can use either form in any of these API calls.

You should expect a 200 (“OK”) response indicating whether a draft Dataset version was created or an existing draft was updated.

5.27.4 Create a Dataset

Specifying the Content-Type as application/ld+json with the existing /api/dataverses/{id}/datasets API call (see *Create a Dataset in a Dataverse Collection*) supports using the same metadata format when creating a Dataset.

With curl, this is done by adding the following header:

```
-H 'Content-Type: application/ld+json'  
  
.. code-block:: bash  
  
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx  
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org  
export DATAVERSE_ID=root  
export PERSISTENT_IDENTIFIER=doi:10.5072/FK27U7YBV  
  
curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -H 'Content-Type: application/ld+json' -X POST  
$SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$DATAVERSE_ID/datasets --upload-file dataset-create.jsonld
```

An example dataset-create.jsonld file is available at /_static/api/dataset-create.jsonld (dataset-create_en.jsonld is a version that sets the metadata language (see :MetadataLanguages) to English (en).)

5.28 Dataset Migration API

The Dataverse software includes several ways to add Datasets originally created elsewhere (not to mention Harvesting capabilities). These include the Sword API (see the [SWORD API](#) guide) and the /dataverses/{id}/datasets/:import methods (json and ddi) (see the [Native API](#) guide).

This experimental migration API offers an additional option with some potential advantages:

- metadata can be specified using the json-ld format used in the OAI-ORE metadata export
- existing publication dates and PIDs are maintained (currently limited to the case where the PID can be managed by the Dataverse software, e.g. where the authority and shoulder match those the software is configured for)
- updating the PID at the provider can be done immediately or later (with other existing APIs)
- adding files can be done via the standard APIs, including using direct-upload to S3

This API consists of 2 calls: one to create an initial Dataset version, and one to ‘republish’ the dataset through Dataverse with a specified publication date. Both calls require super-admin privileges.

These calls can be used in concert with other API calls to add files, update metadata, etc. before the ‘republish’ step is done.

5.28.1 Start Migrating a Dataset into a Dataverse Collection

Note: This action requires a Dataverse installation account with superuser permissions.

To import a dataset with an existing persistent identifier (PID), the provided json-ld metadata should include it.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export DATaverse_ID=root

curl -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST $SERVER_URL/api/dataverses/$DATaverse_ID/
  ↵datasets/:startmigration --upload-file dataset-migrate.jsonld
```

An example dataset-migrate.jsonld file can be found at `/_static/api/dataset-migrate.jsonld`. Note that you would need to replace the PID in the sample file with one supported in your Dataverse instance.

5.28.2 Publish a Migrated Dataset

The call above creates a Dataset. Once it is created, other APIs can be used to add files, add additional metadata, etc. When a version is complete, the following call can be used to publish it with its original publication date.

Note: This action requires a Dataverse installation account with superuser permissions.

```
export API_TOKEN=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org

curl -H 'Content-Type: application/ld+json' -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST -d '{
  ↵"schema:datePublished": "2020-10-26", "@context": { "schema": "http://schema.org/" } }'
  ↵$SERVER_URL/api/datasets/{id}/actions/:releasemigrated"
```

datePublished is the only metadata supported in this call.

An optional query parameter: updatepidatprovider (default is false) can be set to true to automatically update the metadata and targetUrl of the PID at the provider. With this set true, the result of this call will be that the PID redirects to this dataset rather than the dataset in the source repository.

```
curl -H 'Content-Type: application/ld+json' -H X-Dataverse-key:$API_TOKEN -X POST -d '{  
  "schema:datePublished": "2020-10-26", "@context": { "schema": "http://schema.org/" } }'  
  $SERVER_URL/api/datasets/{id}/actions/:releasemigrated?updatepidatprovider=true"
```

If the parameter is not added and set to true, other existing APIs can be used to update the PID at the provider later, e.g. [Send Dataset metadata to PID provider](#)

5.29 Workflows

The Dataverse Software has a flexible workflow mechanism that can be used to trigger actions before and after Dataset publication.

Contents:

- *Introduction*
 - *Administration*
 - *Available Steps*
 - * *log*
 - * *pause*
 - * *pause/message*
 - * *http/sr*
 - * *http/authext*
 - * *archiver*
 - * *ldnannounce*

5.29.1 Introduction

The Dataverse Software can perform two sequences of actions when datasets are published: one prior to publishing (marked by a `PrePublishDataset` trigger), and one after the publication has succeeded (`PostPublishDataset`). The pre-publish workflow is useful for having an external system prepare a dataset for being publicly accessed (a possibly lengthy activity that requires moving files around, uploading videos to a streaming server, etc.), or to start an approval process. A post-publish workflow might be used for sending notifications about the newly published dataset.

Workflow steps are created using *step providers*. The Dataverse Software ships with an internal step provider that offers some basic functionality, and with the ability to load 3rd party step providers (currently disabled). This allows installations to implement functionality they need without changing the Dataverse Software source code.

Steps can be internal (say, writing some data to the log) or external. External steps involve the Dataverse Software sending a request to an external system, and waiting for the system to reply. The wait period is arbitrary, and so allows the external system unbounded operation time. This is useful, e.g., for steps that require human intervention, such as manual approval of a dataset publication.

The external system reports the step result back to the Dataverse installation, by sending a HTTP POST command to `api/workflows/{invocation-id}` with Content-Type: text/plain. The body of the request is passed to the paused step for further processing.

Steps can define messages to send to the log and to users. If defined, the message to users is sent as a user notification (creating an email and showing in the user notification tab) and will show once for the given user if/when they view the relevant dataset page. The latter provides a means for the asynchronous workflow execution to report success or failure analogous to the way the publication and other processes report on the page.

If a step in a workflow fails, the Dataverse installation makes an effort to roll back all the steps that preceded it. Some actions, such as writing to the log, cannot be rolled back. If such an action has a public external effect (e.g. send an EMail to a mailing list) it is advisable to put it in the post-release workflow.

Tip: For invoking external systems using a REST api, the Dataverse Software's internal step provider offers two steps for sending and receiving customizable HTTP requests. `http/sr` and `http/authExt`, detailed below, with the latter able to use the API to make changes to the dataset being processed. (Both lock the dataset to prevent other processes from changing the dataset between the time the step is launched to when the external process responds to the Dataverse instance.)

Administration

A Dataverse installation stores a set of workflows in its database. Workflows can be managed using the `api/admin/workflows/` endpoints of the [Native API](#). Sample workflow files are available in `scripts/api/data/workflows`.

At the moment, defining a workflow for each trigger is done for the entire instance, using the endpoint `api/admin/workflows/default/<trigger type>`.

In order to prevent unauthorized resuming of workflows, the Dataverse installation maintains a “white list” of IP addresses from which resume requests are honored. This list is maintained using the `/api/admin/workflows/ip-whitelist` endpoint of the [Native API](#). By default, the Dataverse installation honors resume requests from localhost only (`127.0.0.1::1`), so set-ups that use a single server work with no additional configuration.

Available Steps

The Dataverse Software has an internal step provider, whose id is `:internal`. It offers the following steps:

log

A step that writes data about the current workflow invocation to the instance log. It also writes the messages in its `parameters` map.

```
{
  "provider":":internal",
  "stepType": "log",
  "parameters": {
    "aMessage": "message content",
    "anotherMessage": "message content, too"
  }
}
```

pause

A step that pauses the workflow. The workflow is paused until a POST request is sent to /api/workflows/{invocation-id}. Sending ‘fail’ in the POST body (Content-type:text/plain) will trigger a failure and workflow rollback. All other responses are considered as successes. The pause step is intended for testing - the invocationId required to end the pause is only available in the log (and database). Adding a parameter (see log step) with the key/value “authorized”:”true” will allow the invocationId to be used as a credential as with the http/authext step below.

```
{  
    "provider":":internal",  
    "stepType": "pause"  
}
```

pause/message

A variant of the pause step that pauses the workflow and allows the external process to send a success/failure message. The workflow is paused until a POST request is sent to /api/workflows/{invocation-id}. The response in the POST body (Content-type:application/json) should be a json object (the same as for the http/extauth step) containing:

- “status” - can be “success” or “failure”
- “reason” - a message that will be logged
- “message” - a message to send to the user that will be sent as a notification and as a banner on the relevant dataset page. An unparsable reponse will be considered a Failure that will be logged with no user message. (See the http/authext step for an example POST call)

```
{  
    "provider":":internal",  
    "stepType": "pause/message"  
}
```

http/sr

A step that sends a HTTP request to an external system, and then waits for a response. The response has to match a regular expression specified in the step parameters. The url, content type, and message body can use data from the workflow context, using a simple markup language. This step has specific parameters for rollback. The workflow is restarted when the external system replies with a POST request to /api/workflows/{invocation-id}. Responses starting with “OK” (Content-type:text/plain) are considered successes. Other responses will be considered failures and trigger workflow rollback.

```
{  
    "provider":":internal",  
    "stepType": "http/sr",  
    "parameters": {  
        "url": "http://localhost:5050/dump/${invocationId}",  
        "method": "POST",  
        "contentType": "text/plain",  
        "body": "START RELEASE ${dataset.id} as ${dataset.displayName}",  
        "expectedResponse": "OK.*",  
        "rollbackUrl": "http://localhost:5050/dump/${invocationId}",  
        "rollbackMethod": "DELETE ${dataset.id}"  
    }  
}
```

Available variables are:

- invocationId
- dataset.id
- dataset.identifier
- dataset.globalId
- dataset.displayName
- dataset.citation
- minorVersion
- majorVersion
- releaseStatus

http/authext

Similar to the *http/sr* step. A step that sends a HTTP request to an external system, and then waits for a response. The receiver can use the invocationId of the workflow in lieu of an api key to perform work on behalf of the user launching the workflow. The invocationId must be sent as an ‘X-Dataverse-invocationId’ HTTP Header or as an ?invocationId= query parameter. *Note that any external process started using this step then has the ability to access a Dataverse instance via the API as the user.* Once this step completes and responds, the invocationId is invalidated and will not allow further access.

The url, content type, and message body can use data from the workflow context, using a simple markup language. This step has specific parameters for rollback. The workflow is restarted when the external system replies with a POST request to /api/workflows/{invocation-id} (Content-Type: application/json).

The response has is expected to be a json object with three keys: - “status” - can be “success” or “failure” - “reason” - a message that will be logged - “message” - a message to send to the user that will be sent as a notification and as a banner on the relevant dataset page.

```
export INVOCATION_ID=xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx
export SERVER_URL=https://demo.dataverse.org
export MESSAGE={"status":"success", "reason":"Workflow completed in 10 seconds", "message": "An external workflow to virus check your data was successfully run prior to publication of your data"}

curl -H 'Content-Type:application/json' -X POST -d $MESSAGE "$SERVER_URL/api/workflows/$INVOCATION_ID"
```

```
{
  "provider":":internal",
  "stepType":":http/authext",
  "parameters": {
    "url": "http://localhost:5050/dump/${invocationId}",
    "method": "POST",
    "contentType": "text/plain",
    "body": "START RELEASE ${dataset.id} as ${dataset.displayName}",
    "rollbackUrl": "http://localhost:5050/dump/${invocationId}",
    "rollbackMethod": "DELETE ${dataset.id}"
  }
}
```

Available variables are:

- invocationId
- dataset.id
- dataset.identifier
- dataset.globalId
- dataset.displayName
- dataset.citation
- minorVersion
- majorVersion
- releaseStatus

archiver

A step that sends an archival copy of a Dataset Version to a configured archiver, e.g. the DuraCloud interface of Chronopolis. See [RDA BagIt \(BagPack\) Archiving](#) for further detail.

Note - the example step includes two settings required for any archiver, three (DuraCloud*) that are specific to DuraCloud, and the optional BagGeneratorThreads setting that controls parallelism when creating the Bag.

```
{  
  "provider":":internal",  
  "stepType": "archiver",  
  "parameters": {  
    "stepName": "archive submission"  
  },  
  "requiredSettings": {  
    ":ArchiverClassName": "string",  
    ":ArchiverSettings": "string",  
    ":DuraCloudHost": "string",  
    ":DuraCloudPort": "string",  
    ":DuraCloudContext": "string",  
    ":BagGeneratorThreads": "string"  
  }  
}
```

ldnannounce

An experimental step that sends a Linked Data Notification (LDN) message to a specific LDN Inbox announcing the publication/availability of a dataset meeting certain criteria.

The two parameters are * :LDNAnnounceRequiredFields - a list of metadata fields that must exist to trigger the message. Currently, the message also includes the values for these fields but future versions may only send the dataset's persistent identifier (making the receiver responsible for making a call-back to get any metadata). * :LDNTarget - a JSON object containing an inbox key whose value is the URL of the target LDN inbox to which messages should be sent, e.g. {"id": "https://dashv7-dev.lib.harvard.edu", "inbox": "https://dashv7-api-dev.lib.harvard.edu/server/ldn/inbox", "type": "Service"}).

The supported message format is described by [our preliminary specification](#). The format is expected to change in the near future to match the standard for relationship announcements being developed as part of the [COAR Notify Project](#).

```
{
  "provider":":internal",
  "stepType": "ldnannounce",
  "parameters": {
    "stepName": "LDN Announce"
  },
  "requiredSettings": {
    ":LDNAnnounceRequiredFields": "string",
    ":LDNTarget": "string"
  }
}
```

5.30 Font Custom

As mentioned under [Font Custom Icon Font](#) in the Style Guide, Dataverse uses [Font Custom](#) to create custom icon fonts.

Contents:

- [Previewing Icons](#)
- [Install Font Custom](#)
 - [Ruby Version](#)
 - [Install Dependencies and Font Custom Gem](#)
- [Updating Icons](#)
 - [Updating the Guides Icons](#)
 - [Updating the App Icons](#)
 - [Committing Changes to Git](#)
- [Caveats About Font Custom](#)

5.30.1 Previewing Icons

The process below updates a [preview page](#) that you can use to see how the icons look.

In `scripts/icons/svg` in the source tree, you can see the SVG files that the icons are built from.

5.30.2 Install Font Custom

You'll need Font Custom and its dependencies installed if you want to update the icons.

Ruby Version

Font Custom is written in Ruby. Ruby 3.0 didn't "just work" with FontAwesome but Ruby 2.7 was fine.

RVM is a good way to install a specific version of Ruby: <https://rvm.io>

Install Dependencies and Font Custom Gem

The brew commands below assume you are on a Mac. See [Development Environment](#) for more on brew.

```
brew tap bramstein/webfonttools
brew update
brew install woff2
brew install sfnt2woff
brew install fontforge
brew install eot-utils
gem install fontcustom
```

(`brew install sfnt2woff` isn't currently listed in the FontCustom README but it's in mentioned in <https://github.com/FontCustom/fontcustom/pull/385>)

If `fontcustom --help` works now, you have it installed.

5.30.3 Updating Icons

Navigate to `scripts/icons` in the source tree (or [online](#)) and you will find:

- An `svg` directory containing the "source" for the icons.
- Scripts to update the icons.

There is a copy of these icons in both the app and the guides. We'll update the guides first because it's much quicker to iterate and notice any problems with the icons.

Updating the Guides Icons

Run `docs.sh` and then open `../../../../doc/sphinx-guides/source/_static/fontcustom-preview.html` in a browser to look at the icons. (This is the [preview page](#) mentioned above that gets incorporated in the next Sphinx build.)

Update any files in the `svg` directory and run the script again to see any differences.

Note that Font Custom creates font files with unique names. For this reason, we should remove the old files from git as we add the new ones. The script deletes the old files for you but in a step below we'll do a `git add` to stage this change.

Updating the App Icons

Assuming you're happy with how the icons look in the preview page in the guides, you can move on to updating the icons in the Dataverse app itself.

This time the script is called `app.sh` and it works the same way with the addition of tweaking some URLs. Go ahead and run this script and do a full “clean and build” before making sure the changes are visible in the application.

Committing Changes to Git

As mentioned above, icons are in both the app and the docs. Again, because the filenames change, we should make sure the old files are removed from git.

From the root of the repo, run the following:

```
git add doc/sphinx-guides/source/_static  
git add src/main/webapp/resources
```

That should be enough to make sure old files are replaced by new ones. At this point, you can commit and make a pull request.

5.30.4 Caveats About Font Custom

Font Custom is a useful tool and has an order of magnitude more stars on GitHub than its competitors. However, an issue suggests that the tool is somewhat abandoned. Its domain has expired but you can still get at what used to be its website at <https://fontcustom.github.io/fontcustom/>

CONTAINER GUIDE

Running the Dataverse software in containers is quite different than in a *standard installation*.

Both approaches have pros and cons. These days, containers are very often used for development and testing, but there is an ever rising move toward running applications in the cloud using container technology.

NOTE: As the Institute for Quantitative Social Sciences (IQSS) at Harvard is running a standard, non-containerized installation, container support described in this guide is mostly created and maintained by the Dataverse community on a best-effort basis.

This guide is *not* about installation on technology like Docker Swarm, Kubernetes, Rancher or other solutions to run containers in production. There is the [Dataverse on K8s project](#) for this purpose, as mentioned in the [Docker, Kubernetes, and Containers](#) section of the Developer Guide.

This guide focuses on describing the container images managed from the main Dataverse repository (again: by the community, not IQSS), their features and limitations. Instructions on how to build the images yourself and how to develop and extend them further are provided.

Contents:

6.1 Application Base Image

Contents:

- [*Supported Image Tags*](#)
- [*Image Contents*](#)
- [*Build Instructions*](#)
 - [*Automated Builds & Publishing*](#)
 - [*Processor Architecture and Multiarch*](#)
- [*Tunables*](#)
- [*Locations*](#)
- [*Exposed Ports*](#)
- [*Entry & Extension Points*](#)
- [*Other Hints*](#)

A “base image” offers you a pre-installed and pre-tuned application server to deploy Dataverse software to. Adding basic functionality like executing scripts at container boot, monitoring, memory tweaks etc is all done at this layer, to make the application image focus on the app itself.

NOTE: The base image does not contain the Dataverse application itself.

Within the main repository, you may find the base image’s files at <git root>/modules/container-base. This Maven module uses the [Maven Docker Plugin](#) to build and ship the image. You may use, extend, or alter this image to your liking and/or host in some different registry if you want to.

NOTE: This image is created, maintained and supported by the Dataverse community on a best-effort basis. IQSS will not offer you support how to deploy or run it, please reach out to the community for help on using it. You might be interested in taking a look at [Docker](#), [Kubernetes](#), and [Containers](#), linking you to some (community-based) efforts.

6.1.1 Supported Image Tags

This image is sourced from the main upstream code [repository of the Dataverse software](#). Development and maintenance of the [image’s code](#) happens there (again, by the community). Community-supported image tags are based on the two most important upstream branches:

- The `unstable` tag corresponds to the `develop` branch, where pull requests are merged. ([Dockerfile](#))
- The `stable` tag corresponds to the `master` branch, where releases are cut from. ([Dockerfile](#))

6.1.2 Image Contents

The base image provides:

- [Eclipse Temurin JRE using Java 11](#)
- [Payara Community Application Server](#)
- CLI tools necessary to run Dataverse (i. e. `curl` or `jq` - see also [Prerequisites](#) in Installation Guide)
- Linux tools for analysis, monitoring and so on
- [Jattach](#) (attach to running JVM)
- [wait-for](#) (tool to “wait for” a service to be available)
- [dumb-init](#) (see [below](#) for details)

This image is created as a “multi-arch image”, see [below](#).

It inherits (is built on) an Ubuntu environment from the upstream [base image of Eclipse Temurin](#). You are free to change the JRE/JDK image to your liking (see below).

6.1.3 Build Instructions

Assuming you have [Docker](#), [Docker Desktop](#), [Moby](#) or some remote Docker host configured, up and running from here on.

Simply execute the Maven modules packaging target with activated “container profile”. Either from the projects Git root:

```
mvn -Pct -f modules/container-base install
```

Or move to the module and execute:

```
cd modules/container-base && mvn -Pct install
```

Some additional notes, using Maven parameters to change the build and use ...:

- ... a different tag only: add `-Dbase.image.tag=tag`.
Note: default is `develop`
- ... a different image name and tag: add `-Dbase.image=name:tag`.
Note: default is `gdcc/base:${base.image.tag}`
- ... a different image registry than Docker Hub: add `-Ddocker.registry=registry.example.org` (see also [DMP docs on registries](#))
- ... a different Payara version: add `-Dpayara.version=V.YYYY.R`.
- ... a different Temurin JRE version A: add `-Dtargt.java.version=A` (i.e. 11, 17, ...).
Note: must resolve to an available image tag A-jre of Eclipse Temurin! (See also [Docker Hub search example](#))
- ... a different Java Distribution: add `-Djava.image="name:tag"` with precise reference to an image available local or remote.
- ... a different UID/GID for the payara user/group: add `-Dbase.image.uid=1234` (or `.gid`)

Automated Builds & Publishing

To make reusing most simple, the image is built with a Github Action within the IQSS repository and then pushed to [Docker Hub gdcc/base repository](#). It is built and pushed on every edit to its sources plus uncached scheduled nightly builds to make sure security updates are finding their way in.

Note: For the Github Action to be able to push to Docker Hub, two repository secrets (DOCKERHUB_USERNAME, DOCKERHUB_TOKEN) have been added by IQSS admins to their repository.

Processor Architecture and Multiarch

This image is created as a “multi-arch image”, supporting the most common architectures Dataverse usually runs on: AMD64 (Windows/Linux/...) and ARM64 (Apple M1/M2), by using Maven Docker Plugin’s *BuildX* mode.

Building the image via `mvn -Pct package` or `mvn -Pct install` as above will only build for the architecture of the Docker machine’s CPU.

Only `mvn -Pct deploy` will trigger building on all enabled architectures. Yet, to enable building with non-native code on your build machine, you will need to setup a cross-platform builder.

On Linux, you should install `qemu-user-static` (preferably via your package management) on the host and run `docker run --rm --privileged multiarch/qemu-user-static --reset -p yes` to enable that builder. The Docker plugin will setup everything else for you.

6.1.4 Tunables

The base image provides a Payara domain suited for production use, but can also be used during development. Many settings have been carefully selected for best performance and stability of the Dataverse application.

As with any service, you should always monitor any metrics and make use of the tuning capabilities the base image provides. These are mostly based on environment variables (very common with containers) and provide sane defaults.

Env. variable	Default	Type	Description
DEPLOY_PROPS	(empty)	String	Set to add arguments to generated <code>asadmin deploy</code> commands.
PREBOOT_COMMANDS	¹	Abs. path	Provide path to file with <code>asadmin</code> commands to run before boot of application server. See also Pre/postboot script docs .
POSTBOOT_COMMANDS	²	Abs. path	Provide path to file with <code>asadmin</code> commands to run after boot of application server. See also Pre/postboot script docs .
JVM_ARGS	(empty)	String	Additional arguments to pass to application server's JVM on start.
MEM_MAX_RAM_PERCENTAGE	70.0	Percent-age	Maximum amount of container's allocated RAM to be used as heap space. Make sure to leave some room for native memory, OS overhead etc!
MEM_XSS	512k	Size	Tune the maximum JVM stack size.
MEM_MIN_HEAP_FREE_RATIO	20	Integer	Make the heap shrink aggressively and grow conservatively. See also run-java-sh recommendations .
MEM_MAX_HEAP_FREE_RATIO	40	Integer	Make the heap shrink aggressively and grow conservatively. See also run-java-sh recommendations .
MEM_MAX_GC_PAUSE_MILLIS	500	Mil-lisec-onds	Shorter pause times might result in lots of collections causing overhead without much gain. This needs monitoring and tuning. It's a complex matter.
MEM_METASPACE_SIZE	256m	Size	Initial size of memory reserved for class metadata, also used as trigger to run a garbage collection once passing this size.
MEM_MAX_METASPACE_SIZE	2g	Size	The metaspace's size will not outgrow this limit.
ENABLE_DUMPS	0	Bool, 0 1	If enabled, the argument(s) given in <code>JVM_DUMP_ARG</code> will be added to the JVM starting up. This means it will enable dumping the heap to <code> \${DUMPS_DIR}</code> (see below) in "out of memory" cases. (You should back this location with disk space / ramdisk, so it does not write into an overlay filesystem!)
JVM_DUMPS_ARG	³	String	Can be fine tuned for more grained controls of dumping behaviour.
ENABLE_JMX	0	Bool, 0 1	Allow insecure JMX connections, enable AMX and tune all JMX monitoring levels to HIGH. See also Payara Docs - Basic Monitoring . A basic JMX service is enabled by default in Payara, exposing basic JVM MBeans, but especially no Payara MBeans.
ENABLE_JDWP	0	Bool, 0 1	Enable the "Java Debug Wire Protocol" to attach a remote debugger to the JVM in this container. Listens on port 9009 when enabled. Search the internet for numerous tutorials to use it.
ENABLE_RELOAD	0	Bool, 0 1	Enable the dynamic "hot" reloads of files when changed in a deployment. Useful for development when new artifacts are copied into the running domain.
538			Chapter 6: Container Guide
DATAVERSE_HTTP_TIMEOUT	900	Seconds	See Application Server Settings http.request-timeout-seconds . <i>Note:</i> can also be set using any other

6.1.5 Locations

This environment variables represent certain locations and might be reused in your scripts etc. All of these variables aren't meant to be reconfigurable and reflect state in the filesystem layout!

Writeable at build time:

The overlay filesystem of Docker and other container technologies is not meant to be used for any performance IO. You should avoid *writing* data anywhere in the file tree at runtime, except for well known locations with mounted volumes backing them (see below).

The locations below are meant to be written to when you build a container image, either this base or anything building upon it. You can also use these for references in scripts, etc.

Env. variable	Value	Description
HOME_DIR	/opt/payara	Home base to Payara and the application
PAYARA_DIR	<code> \${HOME_DIR}/appserver</code>	Installation directory of Payara server
SCRIPT_DIR	<code> \${HOME_DIR}/scripts</code>	Any scripts like the container entrypoint, init scripts, etc
CONFIG_DIR	<code> \${HOME_DIR}/config</code>	Payara Server configurations like pre/postboot command files go here (Might be reused for Dataverse one day) ¹
DEPLOY_DIR	<code> \${HOME_DIR}/deployments</code>	Any EAR or WAR file, exploded WAR directory etc are autodeployed on start
DOMAIN_DIR	<code> \${PAYARA_DIR}/glassfish/domains/ \${DOMAIN_NAME}</code>	Path to root of the Payara domain applications will be deployed into. Usually <code> \${DOMAIN_NAME}</code> will be <code>domain1</code> .

Writeable at runtime:

The locations below are defined as [Docker volumes](#) by the base image. They will by default get backed by an “anonymous volume”, but you can (and should) bind-mount a host directory or named Docker volume in these places to avoid data loss, gain performance and/or use a network file system.

Notes: 1. On Kubernetes you still need to provide volume definitions for these places in your deployment objects! 2. You should not write data into these locations at build time - it will be shadowed by the mounted volumes!

Env. variable	Value	Description
STORAGE_DIR	/dv	This place is writeable by the Payara user, making it usable as a place to store research data, customizations or other. Images inheriting the base image should create distinct folders here, backed by different mounted volumes.
SECRETS_DIR	/secrets	Mount secrets or other here, being picked up automatically by Directory Config Source . See also various Configuration options involving secrets.
DUMPS_DIR	/dumps	Default location where heap dumps will be stored (see above). You should mount some storage here (disk or ephemeral).

¹ `${CONFIG_DIR}/pre-boot-commands.asadmin`

² `${CONFIG_DIR}/post-boot-commands.asadmin`

³ `-XX:+HeapDumpOnOutOfMemoryError`

6.1.6 Exposed Ports

The default ports that are exposed by this image are:

- 8080 - HTTP listener
- 4848 - Admin Service HTTPS listener
- 8686 - JMX listener
- 9009 - “Java Debug Wire Protocol” port (when `ENABLE_JDWP=1`)

The HTTPS listener (on port 8181) becomes deactivated during the build, as we will always need to reverse-proxy the application server and handle SSL/TLS termination at this point. Save the memory and some CPU cycles!

6.1.7 Entry & Extension Points

The entrypoint shell script provided by this base image will by default ensure to:

- Run any scripts named `${SCRIPT_DIR}/init_*` or in `${SCRIPT_DIR}/init.d/*` directory for initialization **before** the application server starts.
- Run an executable script `${SCRIPT_DIR}/startInBackground.sh` in the background - if present.
- Run the application server startup scripting in foreground (`${SCRIPT_DIR}/startInForeground.sh`).

If you need to create some scripting that runs in parallel under supervision of `dumb-init`, e.g. to wait for the application to deploy before executing something, this is your point of extension: simply provide the `${SCRIPT_DIR}/startInBackground.sh` executable script with your application image.

6.1.8 Other Hints

By default, `domain1` is enabled to use the G1GC garbage collector.

For running a Java application within a Linux based container, the support for CGroups is essential. It has been included and activated by default since Java 8u192, Java 11 LTS and later. If you are interested in more details, you can read about those in a few places like <https://developers.redhat.com/articles/2022/04/19/java-17-whats-new-openjdk-contain-awareness>, <https://www.eclipse.org/openj9/docs/xxusecontainersupport>, etc. The other memory defaults are inspired from `run-java-sh` recommendations.

STYLE GUIDE

This style guide is meant to help developers implement clear and appropriate UI elements consistent with the Dataverse Project's standards.

Contents:

7.1 Foundations

Foundation elements are the very basic building blocks to create a page in Dataverse. Here we will outline how we've applied Bootstrap CSS to our UI, and how the CSS settings in our stylesheet mesh with it. Each section includes links to relevant parts of the official Bootstrap guides and other useful resources, where you can find more detailed documentation. We will also outline other UI resources like FontCustom and Socicon and how they are utilized.

Contents:

- *Grid Layout*
- *Typography*
- *Color Palette*
 - *Brand Colors*
 - *Text Colors*
 - *Link Colors*
 - *Contextual Classes*
- *Icons*
 - *Bootstrap Glyphicons*
 - *Font Custom Icon Font*
 - *Socicon Icon Font*
- *Logos*

7.1.1 Grid Layout

Bootstrap provides a responsive, fluid, 12-column grid system that we use to organize our page layouts.

We use the fixed-width `.container` class which provides responsive widths (i.e. auto, 750px, 970px or 1170px) based on media queries for the page layout, with a series of rows and columns for the content.

The grid layout uses `.col-sm-*` classes for horizontal groups of columns, inside a containing element with a `.row` class. Content should be placed within columns, and only columns may be immediate children of rows.

```
<div class="container">
  <div class="row">
    <div class="col-sm-1">.col-sm-1</div>
    <div class="col-sm-1">.col-sm-1</div>
  </div>
  <div class="row">
    <div class="col-sm-8">.col-sm-8</div>
    <div class="col-sm-4">.col-sm-4</div>
  </div>
</div>
```

7.1.2 Typography

The typeface, text size, and line-height are set in the [Bootstrap CSS](#). We use Bootstrap's global default `font-size` of **14px**, with a `line-height` of **1.428**, which is applied to the `<body>` and all paragraphs.

```
/* bootstrap.css */
body {
  font-family: "Helvetica Neue", Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
  font-size: 14px;
  line-height: 1.42857143;
}
```

7.1.3 Color Palette

The default color palette is set in the [Bootstrap CSS](#). It provides the background, border, text and link colors used across the application.

Brand Colors

The Dataverse Project uses a particular color palette to help users quickly and easily identify the different types of objects: Dataverse collections, datasets, and files.

We use our brand color, a custom burnt orange `{color:#C55B28;}`, which is set in our CSS stylesheet, “structure.css”. There is also a set of blue “dataset” classes and grey “file” classes, used to help identify those objects when searching and navigating the application.

```
/* structure.css */
.bg-dataverse {
  background:#C55B28;
}
.bg-dataset {
  background:#337AB7;
}
.bg-file {
  background:#F5F5F5;
}

#navbarFixed .navbar-brand {
  color: #C55B28;
}
#navbarFixed .icon-dataverse {
  color: #C55B28;
}
```

```
<div class="bg-dataverse">...</div>
<div class="bg-dataset">...</div>
<div class="bg-file">...</div>
```

```
/* structure.css */
.text-dataverse {
  color:#C55B28;
}
.text-dataset {
  color:#31708F;
}
.text-file {
  color:#F5F5F5;
}
```

```
<p class="text-dataverse">...</p>
<p class="text-dataset">...</p>
<p class="text-file">...</p>
```

Text Colors

Text color is the default setting from Bootstrap CSS.

```
/* bootstrap.css */
body {
    color: #333;
}
```

```
<p>...</p>
```

Link Colors

Link color is the default setting from Bootstrap CSS. The hover state color is set to 15% darker.

Please note, there is a CSS override issue with the link color due to the use of both a Bootstrap stylesheet and a PrimeFaces stylesheet in the UI. We've added CSS such as `.ui-widget-content a {color: #428BCA;}` to our stylesheet to keep the link color consistent.

```
/* bootstrap.css */
a {
    color: #337AB7;
}
a:hover {
    color: #23527C;
}

/* structure.css */
.ui-widget-content a {
    color: #337AB7;
}
.ui-widget-content a:hover, .ui-widget-content a:focus {
    color: #23527C;
}
```

```
<a>...</a>
```

Contextual Classes

Contextual classes from Bootstrap CSS can be used to style background and text colors. Semantic colors include various colors assigned to meaningful contextual values. We convey meaning through color with a handful of emphasis utility classes.

```
<div class="bg-primary">...</div>
<div class="bg-success">...</div>
<div class="bg-info">...</div>
<div class="bg-warning">...</div>
<div class="bg-danger">...</div>
```

```
<p class="text-muted">...</p>
<p class="text-primary">...</p>
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
<p class="text-success">...</p>
<p class="text-info">...</p>
<p class="text-warning">...</p>
<p class="text-danger">...</p>
```

7.1.4 Icons

We use various icons across the application, which we get from Bootstrap, FontCustom and Socicon. They appear in buttons, in message blocks or as default thumbnails for Dataverse collections, datasets, and files.

Bootstrap Glyphicons

There are over 250 glyphs in font format from the Glyphicon Halflings set provided by [Bootstrap](#). We utilize these mainly as icons inside of buttons and in message blocks.

```
<span class="glyphicon glyphicon-search"></span>
<span class="glyphicon glyphicon-user"></span>
<span class="glyphicon glyphicon-lock"></span>
```

Font Custom Icon Font

With the use of [Font Custom](#) we generate our own custom icon fonts. We use these in the search result cards to help distinguish between Dataverse collection, dataset and file results.

```
<span class="icon-dataverse text-dataverse"></span>
<span class="icon-dataset text-dataset"></span>
<span class="icon-file text-file"></span>
```

The [Font Custom](#) section of the Developer Guide explains how to update these custom icons.

Socicon Icon Font

We use [Socicon](#) for our custom social icons. In the footer we use icons for Twitter and Github. In our Share feature, we also use custom social icons to allow users to select from a list of social media channels.

```
<span class="socicon socicon-github" title="Dataverse Project On GitHub"></span>
<span class="socicon socicon-twitter" title="Dataverse Project On Twitter"></span>
<span class="socicon socicon-facebook" title="Dataverse Project On Facebook"></span>
```

7.1.5 Logos

The Dataverse Project logo (below) is displayed in the footer, and was the basis for the creation of the application's icons and favicon.

Create both print and web version of the Dataverse Project logo by using this vector-based SVG file: `dataverse_project_logo.svg` located at `/_static/dataverse_project_logo.svg`

The brand logo (below) was created as a custom icon to represent the concept of a Dataverse collection. It is used as the logo in the Bootstrap navbar component and across the application.

Create both print and web version of the Dataverse collection logo by using this vector-based SVG file: `Dataverse_brand_icon.svg` located at `/_static/Dataverse_brand_icon.svg`

7.2 Patterns

Patterns are what emerge when using the foundation elements together with basic objects like buttons and alerts, more complex Javascript components from [Bootstrap](#) like tooltips and dropdowns, and AJAX components from [PrimeFaces](#) like datatables and commandlinks.

Contents:

- [*Navbar*](#)
- [*Breadcrumbs*](#)
- [*Tables*](#)
- [*Forms*](#)
- [*Buttons*](#)
 - [*Action Buttons*](#)
 - [*Action Buttons Block*](#)
 - [*Form Buttons*](#)
 - [*Icon-Only Buttons*](#)
- [*Pagination*](#)
- [*Labels*](#)
- [*Alerts*](#)
 - [*Message Classes*](#)
- [*Images*](#)
- [*Panels*](#)
- [*Tabs*](#)
- [*Modals*](#)

7.2.1 Navbar

The `Navbar` component from Bootstrap spans the top of the application and contains the logo/branding, aligned to the left, plus search form and links, aligned to the right.

When logged in, the account name is a dropdown menu, linking the user to account-specific content and the log out link.

```
<nav id="navbarFixed" class="navbar navbar-default navbar-fixed-top">
  <div class="container">
    <div class="navbar-header">
      <a href="#" onclick="return false;">
        <span class="navbar-brand"><i id="icon-dataverse" class="icon-dataverse"></i>_
        Dataverse</span>
      </a>
    </div>
    <div class="collapse navbar-collapse" id="topNavBar">
      <ul class="nav navbar-nav navbar-right">
        <li>
          ...
        </li>
      </ul>
    </div>
  </div>
</nav>
```

7.2.2 Breadcrumbs

The breadcrumbs are displayed under the header, and provide a trail of links for users to navigate the hierarchy of containing objects, from file to dataset to Dataverse collection. It utilizes a JSF `repeat` component to iterate through the breadcrumbs.

```
<div id="breadcrumbNavBlock" class="container" jsf:rendered="#{true}">
  <ui:repeat value="#{page.breadcrumbs}" var="breadcrumb" varStatus="status">
    <h:outputText value=" &gt; " styleClass="breadcrumbCarrot" rendered="#{true}"/>
    <div class="breadcrumbBlock">
      ...
    </div>
  </ui:repeat>
</div>
```

7.2.3 Tables

Most tables use the `DataTable` components from PrimeFaces and are styled using the `Tables` component from Bootstrap.

```
<p: dataTable id="itemTable" styleClass="headerless-table margin-top" value="#{page.item}"
  var="item" widgetVar="itemTable">
  <p: column>
  ...
  </p: column>
</p: dataTable>
```

7.2.4 Forms

Forms fulfill various functions across the site, but we try to style them consistently. We use the `.form-horizontal` layout, which uses `.form-group` to create a grid of rows for the labels and inputs. The consistent style of forms is maintained using the [Forms component](#) from Bootstrap. Form elements like the [InputText component](#) from PrimeFaces are kept looking clean and consistent across each page.

```
<div class="form-horizontal">
  <div class="form-group">
    <label for="userNameEmail" class="col-sm-3 control-label">
      #{bundle['user.username']}
    </label>
    <div class="col-sm-4">
      <p:>inputText id="userName" styleClass="form-control"></p>
    </div>
  </div>
</div>
```

Here are additional form elements that are common across many pages, including required asterisks, icon tooltips, placeholder text, input info message with popover link, and validation error message.

```
<div class="form-group form-col-container col-sm-9 edit-compound-field">
  <div class="form-col-container col-sm-12">
    <p class="help-block">
      <h:outputFormat value="#{bundle.htmlAllowedMsg}" escape="false">
        <f:param value="#{bundle.htmlAllowedTags}" />
      </h:outputFormat>
    </p>
    <label class="control-label" for="metadata_#{subdsf.datasetFieldType.name}">
      #{subdsf.datasetFieldType.localeTitle}
      <h:outputText styleClass="glyphicon glyphicon-asterisk text-danger" value="" />
      <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-question-sign tooltip-icon" data-toggle="tooltip" data-placement="auto right" data-original-title="#{subdsf.datasetFieldType.localeDescription}"></span>
    </label>
    <div>
      <p:>inputTextarea value="#{dsfv.valueForEdit}" id="description" tabindex="#{block.index+1}" rows="5" cols="60" styleClass="form-control" />
      <div class="alert-danger" jsf:rendered="#{!empty subdsf.validationMessage}">
        <strong>#{subdsf.validationMessage}</strong>
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
</div>
```

7.2.5 Buttons

There are various types of buttons for various actions, so we have many components to use, including the `CommandButton` component and `CommandLink` component from PrimeFaces, as well as the basic JSF `Link` component and `OutputLink` component. Those are styled using the `Buttons` component, `Button Groups` component and `Buttons Dropdowns` component from Bootstrap.

Action Buttons

For action buttons on a page, we include an icon and text label.

```
<div class="btn-group" jsf:rendered="#{true}">
  <button type="button" id="editDataSet" class="btn btn-default dropdown-toggle" data-
  ↵toggle="dropdown">
    <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-pencil"/> Edit <span class="caret"></span>
  </button>
  <ul class="dropdown-menu text-left">
    <li>
      <h:outputLink> ... </h:outputLink>
    </li>
    <li class="dropdown-submenu pull-left">
      <a tabindex="-1" href="#">Option</a>
      <ul class="dropdown-menu">
        <li>
          <h:link> ... </h:link>
        </li>
        <li>
          <h:link> ... </h:link>
        </li>
      </ul>
    </li>
    ...
  </ul>
</div>
```

Action Buttons Block

For the main actions on a page, we use a container block to group them together. They use the Bootstrap justified button groups style class `.btn-group.btn-group-justified` in order to create a group of buttons that stretch at equal sizes to span the entire width of its parent.

The Bootstrap theme provides a `.btn-primary` style class to highlight the primary action for the user. This stronger color provides extra visual weight and identifies the primary action in a set of buttons on the page. In this example button group from the file page, you can see the Download and Explore options are listed together, providing a more scalable solution to configurable options.

```
<div class="col-xs-4">
  <div id="actionButtonBlock">
    <div class="btn-group btn-group-justified">
      <div class="btn-group">
        <button type="button" id="accessFile" class="btn btn-primary btn-access-file_
  ↵dropdown-toggle" data-toggle="dropdown" aria-haspopup="true" aria-expanded="false">
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

Access File
</button>
<ul class="dropdown-menu pull-right text-left">
    <li class="dropdown-header">
        Download Options <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-download-alt"></span>
    </li>
    ...
</ul>
</div>
</div>
<div class="btn-group btn-group-justified">
    <div class="btn-group">
        <button type="button" id="editFile" class="btn btn-default btn-access btn-edit" data-toggle="dropdown" data-target="#" data-type="button" data-value="Edit File" data-action="edit" data-label="Edit File" data-title="Edit File" aria-haspopup="true" aria-expanded="false">
            Edit File <span class="caret"></span>
        </button>
        <ul class="dropdown-menu pull-right text-left">
            <li>
                ...
            </li>
            ...
        </ul>
    </div>
</div>
<div class="btn-group btn-group-justified">
    <a href="#" onclick="return false;" class="btn btn-default btn-xs btn-contact" data-type="button" data-value="Contact Owner" data-action="contact" data-label="Contact Dataset Owner" data-title="Contact Dataset Owner">
        Contact Owner
    </a>
    <a href="#" onclick="return false;" class="btn btn-default btn-xs btn-share" data-type="button" data-value="Share" data-action="share" data-label="Share Dataset" data-title="Share Dataset">
        Share
    </a>
</div>
</div>
</div>

```

Form Buttons

Form buttons typically appear at the bottom of a form, aligned to the left. They do not have icons, just text labels. The primary button is styled differently.

```

<div class="button-block">
    <p:commandButton id="save" styleClass="btn btn-default" value="#{bundle.saveChanges}" data-type="button" data-value="Save" data-action="save" data-label="Save" data-title="Save" data-update="@form,:messagePanel" />
    <p:commandButton id="cancel" styleClass="btn btn-link" value="#{bundle.cancel}" action="#{page.cancel}" process="@this" update="@form">
        <p:resetInput target="@form" />
    </p:commandButton>
</div>

```

Icon-Only Buttons

There are a few places where we use icon-only buttons with no text label. For these buttons, we do utilize tooltips that display on hover, containing a text label.

We use the style class `.no-text` with the `.glyphicon` class to fix spacing issues from margins and padding applied to buttons with text labels.

```
<p:commandLink styleClass="btn btn-default btn-sm bootstrap-button-tooltip" title="#
↳ {bundle.add}" actionListener="#{Page.add(valCount.index + 1)}">
    <h:outputText styleClass="glyphicon glyphicon-plus no-text"/>
</p:commandLink>
<p:commandLink styleClass="btn btn-default btn-sm bootstrap-button-tooltip" title="#
↳ {bundle.delete}" actionListener="#{Page.remove(valCount.index)}">
    <h:outputText styleClass="glyphicon glyphicon-minus no-text"/>
</p:commandLink>
```

Another variation of icon-only buttons uses the `.btn-link` style class from Bootstrap, styling it more like a link while maintaining button behavior. The button group provides space for up to three buttons for a file in the table, and if there are more than three action button, they utilize the “kebab” More Options button dropdown with the `.glyphicon-option-vertical` icon.

```
<div class="btn-group" role="group" aria-label="#{bundle['file.actionsBlock']}
```

```
    <ui:fragment rendered="#{true}">
        <a class="btn-preview btn btn-link bootstrap-button-tooltip" title="#{bundle.
↳ preview}"
            href="#{widgetWrapper.wrapURL('/file.xhtml?' . concat(...))}">
            <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-eye-open"/><span class="sr-only">#{bundle.
↳ preview}</span>
            </a>
        </ui:fragment>

        <p:commandLink rendered="#{true}" styleClass="btn-download btn btn-link bootstrap-
↳ button-tooltip"
            title="#{bundle.download}"
            disabled="#{locked ? 'disabled' : ''}"
            process="@this" update="@widgetVar.popup" oncomplete="PF('popup').
↳ show();">
            <f:actionListener binding="#{pageBean.function()}" />
            <f:actionListener binding="#{pageBean.function()}" />
            <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-download-alt"/><span class="sr-only">#{bundle.
↳ download}</span>
        </p:commandLink>

        <div class="btn-group" jsf:rendered="#{true}">
            <a class="btn-explore btn btn-link bootstrap-button-tooltip"
                title="#{bundle.explore}" id="exploreBtn" data-toggle="dropdown" aria-haspopup=
↳ "true" aria-expanded="false" data-original-title="#{bundle.explore}">
                <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-equalizer"/><span class="sr-only">#{bundle.
↳ explore}</span><span class="caret"></span>
            </a>
            <ul class="dropdown-menu multi-level pull-right text-left" aria-labelledby=
↳ "exploreBtn">
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

<ui:repeat var="tool" value="#{exploreTools}">
    <li>
        <p:commandLink styleClass="#{locked ? 'disabled' : ''}"
            disabled="#{locked ? 'disabled' : ''}"
            action="#{pageBean.function()}">
            #{tool.getDisplayNameLang()}
        </p:commandLink>
    </li>
</ui:repeat>
</ul>
</div>

<div class="btn-group" jsf:rendered="#{true}">
    <a class="btn-options btn btn-link bootstrap-button-tooltip"
        id="optionsBtn" data-toggle="dropdown" aria-haspopup="true" aria-expanded="false"
        title="#{bundle.moreOptions}" data-original-title="#{bundle.moreOptions}">
        <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-option-vertical"/><span class="sr-only">#{bundle.moreOptions}</span><span class="caret"></span>
    </a>
    <ul class="dropdown-menu multi-level pull-right text-left" aria-labelledby="optionsBtn">
        <ui:repeat var="options" value="#{fileOptions}">
            <li>
                <p:commandLink styleClass="#{locked ? 'disabled' : ''}"
                    disabled="#{locked ? 'disabled' : ''}"
                    action="#{pageBean.function()}">
                    ...
                </p:commandLink>
            </li>
        </ui:repeat>
    </ul>
</div>
</div>

```

7.2.6 Pagination

We use the `Pagination` component from Bootstrap for paging through search results.

```

<ul class="pagination">
    <li class="#{include.page == '1' ? 'disabled' : ''}">
        <h:outputLink value="#{page.page}">
            <h:outputText value="&#171;"/>
            ...
        </h:outputLink>
    </li>
    <li class="#{include.page == '1' ? 'disabled' : ''}">
        <h:outputLink value="#{page.page}">
            <h:outputText value="&lt; #{bundle.previous}" />
            ...
        </h:outputLink>
    </li>

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
...
<li class="#{include.page == include.totalPages ? 'disabled' : ''}">
  <h:outputLink value="#{page.page}">
    <h:outputText value="#{bundle.next} &gt;" />
  ...
</h:outputLink>
</li>
<li class="#{include.page == include.totalPages ? 'disabled' : ''}">
  <h:outputLink value="#{page.page}">
    <h:outputText value="&#187;" />
  ...
</h:outputLink>
</li>
</ul>
```

7.2.7 Labels

The [Labels component](#) from Bootstrap is used for publication status (DRAFT, In Review, Unpublished, Deaccessioned), and Dataset version, as well as Tabular Data Tags (Survey, Time Series, Panel, Event, Genomics, Network, Geospatial).

```
<span class="label label-default">Version 2.0</span>
<span class="label label-primary">DRAFT</span>
<span class="label label-success">In Review</span>
<span class="label label-info">Geospatial</span>
<span class="label label-warning">Unpublished</span>
<span class="label label-danger">Deaccessioned</span>
```

7.2.8 Alerts

For our help/information, success, warning, and error message blocks we use a custom built UI component based on the [Alerts component](#) from Bootstrap.

```
<div class="alert alert-success" role="alert">...</div>
<div class="alert alert-info" role="alert">...</div>
<div class="alert alert-warning" role="alert">...</div>
<div class="alert alert-danger" role="alert">...</div>
```

Message Classes

Style classes can be added to p, div, span and other elements to add emphasis to inline message blocks.

```
<p class="help-block">
  <span class="text-muted">...</span>
</p>

<p class="help-block">
  <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-ok-sign text-success"></span> <span class="text-
  success">...</span>
</p>
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
<p class="help-block">
  <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-asterisk text-info"></span> <span class="text-info">...
  <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-warning-sign text-warning"></span> <span class="text-warning">...</span>
</p>

<p class="help-block">
  <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-exclamation-sign text-danger"></span> <span class="text-danger">...</span>
</p>
```

7.2.9 Images

For images, we use the [GraphicImage component](#) from PrimeFaces, or the basic JSF [GraphicImage component](#).

To display images in a responsive way, they are styled with `.img-responsive`, an [Images CSS class](#) from Bootstrap.

```
<p:graphicImage styleClass="img-responsive" value="#{Page.imageId}?imageThumb=400" />
```

7.2.10 Panels

The most common of our containers, the [Panels component](#) from Bootstrap is used to add a border and padding around sections of content like metadata blocks. Displayed with a header and/or footer, it can also be used with the [Collapse plugin](#) from Bootstrap.

```
<div class="panel panel-default">
  <div class="panel-body">
    Basic panel example
  </div>
</div>

<div class="panel panel-default">
  <div data-toggle="collapse" data-target="#panelCollapse0" class="panel-heading">
    <span class="text-info">Panel Heading &#160;<span class="glyphicon glyphicon-chevron-up"/></span>
  </div>
  <div id="panelCollapse0" class="panel-body form-horizontal collapse in">
    <div class="form-group">
      <label class="col-sm-4 control-label">
        Label
      </label>
      <div class="col-sm-6">
        Value
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
</div>
</div>
```

7.2.11 Tabs

Tabs are used to provide content panes on a page that allow the user to view different sections of content without navigating to a different page.

We use the [TabView component](#) from PrimeFaces, which is styled using the [Tab component](#) from Bootstrap.

```
<p:tabView id="tabView" widgetVar="content" activeIndex="#{Page.selectedTabIndex}">
  <p:ajax event="tabChange" listener="#{Page.tabChanged}" update="@this" />
  <p:tab id="dataTab" title="#{bundle.files}">
    ...
  </p:tab>
  ...
</p:tabView>
```

7.2.12 Modals

Modals are dialog prompts that act as popup overlays, but don't create a new browser window. We use them for confirmation on a delete to make sure the user is aware of the consequences of their actions. We also use them to allow users to execute simple actions on a page without requiring them to navigate to and from a separate page.

Buttons usually provide the UI prompt. A user clicks the button, which then opens a [Dialog component](#) or [Confirm Dialog component](#) from PrimeFaces that displays the modal with the necessary information and actions to take.

The modal is styled using the [Modal component](#) from Bootstrap, for a popup window that prompts a user for information, with overlay and a backdrop, then header, content, and buttons. We can use style classes from Bootstrap for large (`.bs-example-modal-lg`) and small (`.bs-example-modal-sm`) width options.

```
<!-- Large modal -->
<button type="button" class="btn btn-primary" data-toggle="modal" data-target=".bs-
example-modal-lg">Large modal</button>

<div class="modal bs-example-modal-lg" tabindex="-1" role="dialog" aria-labelledby=
"myLargeModalLabel">
  <div class="modal-dialog modal-lg" role="document">
    <div class="modal-content">
      ...
    </div>
  </div>
</div>
```

7.3 Text

Here we describe the guidelines that help us provide helpful, clear and consistent textual information to users.

Contents:

- *Metadata Text Guidelines*

7.3.1 Metadata Text Guidelines

These guidelines are maintained in a [Google Doc](#) as we expect to make frequent changes to them. We welcome comments in the Google Doc.

**CHAPTER
EIGHT**

HOW THE GUIDES ARE ORGANIZED

The guides are documentation that explain how to use Dataverse, which are divided into the following sections: User Guide, Installation Guide, Developer Guide, API Guide, Style Guide and Container Guide. The User Guide is further divided into primary activities: finding & using data, adding Datasets, administering dataverses or Datasets, and Dataset exploration/visualizations. Details on all of the above tasks can be found in the Users Guide. The Installation Guide is for people or organizations who want to host their own Dataverse. The Container Guide gives information on how to deploy Dataverse with containers. The Developer Guide contains instructions for people who want to contribute to the Open Source Dataverse project or who want to modify the code to suit their own needs. Finally, the API Guide is for Developers that work on other applications and are interested in connecting with Dataverse through our APIs.

OTHER RESOURCES

Dataverse Project Site

Additional information about the Dataverse Project itself including presentations, information about upcoming releases, data management and citation, and announcements can be found at <http://dataverse.org/>

User Group

As the user community grows we encourage people to share ideas, ask questions, or offer suggestions for improvement. Go to <https://groups.google.com/group/dataverse-community> to register to our dataverse community group.

Follow Us on Twitter

For up to date news, information and developments, follow our twitter account: <https://twitter.com/dataverseorg>

Support

We maintain an email based support service that is free of charge. We attempt to respond within one business day to all questions and if it cannot be resolved immediately, we will let you know what to expect.

The support email address is support@dataverse.org.

Reporting Issues and Contributing

Report bugs and add feature requests in [GitHub Issues](#) or use [GitHub pull requests](#), if you have some code, scripts or documentation that you'd like to share. If you have a **security issue** to report, please email security@dataverse.org. See also [Reporting Security Issues](#).

Searching the documentation

The documentation can be searched on this site using the search or search box located atop the left menu on pages within the documentation. For more advanced searching capabilities you may download a PDF copy of the documentation.